# Exhibit 3

# EXPERT DECLARATION OF VIJAY K. MADISETTI, Ph.D.

Case No. IPR2022-00352 and
Case No. IPR2022-00471
Patent No. 8,462,835

# I. INTRODUCTION & SUMMARY OF OPINIONS

1. My name is Vijay K. Madisetti. I have been engaged by TQ Delta, LLC in connection with IPR2022-00352 ("the 352 IPR") and IPR2022-00471 ("the 471 IPR"), which relate to U.S. Patent No. 8,462,835 ("the 835 Patent"). I understand that in the 352 IPR, Petitioner, Commscope, has challenged the validity of claims 8-10, 15, 24-26, and 31 of the 835 Patent (the "Challenged Claims"). I understand that in the 471 IPR, Petitioner, Nokia, has challenged the validity of those same claims on identical grounds. In both of these IPRs the Petitioners have submitted the identical declaration from Dr. Krista Jacobsen.

2. In this declaration, I provide my opinion regarding the correct meaning of the claim term "flag signal" as used in the Challenged Claims. I also provide a description of the Dynamic Rate Adaptation ("DRA") procedure of the ITU-T G.992.1 Recommendation ("G.992.1") and explain one of the reasons why the DRA_Swap_Request message is not a "flag signal."

# II. PROFESSIONAL QUALIFICATIONS

## A. Background and Experience

3. I received my Bachelor of Technology (Honors) in Electronics and Electrical Communication Engineering at the Indian Institute of Technology (IIT) in Kharagpur, India in 1984. I obtained my Ph.D. in Electrical Engineering and Computer Science at the University of California, Berkeley, in 1989. I received the

Demetri Angelakos Outstanding Graduate Student Award from the University of California, Berkeley and the IEEE/ACM Ira M. Kay Memorial Paper Prize in 1989.

4. I am a full tenured Professor in the Colleges of Engineering and Computing (Electrical and Computer Engineering and Cybersecurity) at the Georgia Institute of Technology ("Georgia Tech"). I am knowledgeable regarding wireless communications, microprocessor architecture, hardware, RF, cellular networks, ASIC design, computer engineering, embedded systems, digital signal processing, and associated software and firmware design for wireless and telecommunications terminals and base stations. I have created and taught undergraduate and graduate courses in hardware and software design for signal processing and wireless communication circuits at Georgia Tech for the past twenty years. Additionally, I have been active in the areas of wireless communications, digital signal processing, integrated circuit design (analog & digital), software engineering, system-level design methodologies and tools, and software systems. I have been the principal investigator ("PI") or co-PI in several active research programs in these areas, including DARPA's Rapid Prototyping of Application Specific Signal Processors, the State of Georgia's Yamacraw Initiative, the United States Army's Federated Sensors Laboratory Program, and the United States Air Force Electronics Parts Obsolescence Initiative. I have received an IBM Faculty Award and NSF's Research Initiation Award.

5. I have designed several specialized computer and communication systems over the past two decades at Georgia Tech for tasks such as wireless audio and video processing and protocol processing for portable platforms, such as cell phones and PDAs. I have worked on designing systems that are efficient from performance, size, weight, area, and thermal considerations. I have developed courses and classes for the industry on these topics, and many of my lectures in advanced computer system design, developed under the sponsorship of the United States Department of Defense in the late 1990s, are available for educational use at "http://www.eda.org/rassp" and have been used by several U.S. and international universities as part of their course work. Some of my recent publications in the area of design of wireless communications systems and associated protocols are listed in Exhibit A. I graduated more than 20 Ph.D. students that now work as professors or in technical positions around the world.

6. I have studied a variety of signal processing and communications technologies with respect to wired and wireless modulation for digital subscriber loops since the early 1990s. In "Multilevel Range/Next Performance of Digital Subscriber Loops", IEE Proceedings, Vol 136, April 1989, I discussed results on range performance of multilevel signal schemes in the presence of Near End Crosstalk (NEXT) over digital subscriber loops. I was part of the team from

University of California Berkeley that submitted a proposal for standardization to the T1D1 as noted below:

**BRAND, G.H., LEE, E.A., LIN, N.S., HODGES, D.A., MADISETTI, V.K., and MESSERSCHMITT, D.G.: 'Comparison of line codes with optimal DFE design'. Standard for ISDN basic access interface for applications at the network side of NT1, Layer 1 Specifications, 24th January 1986, Contribution T1D1.3/86-018**

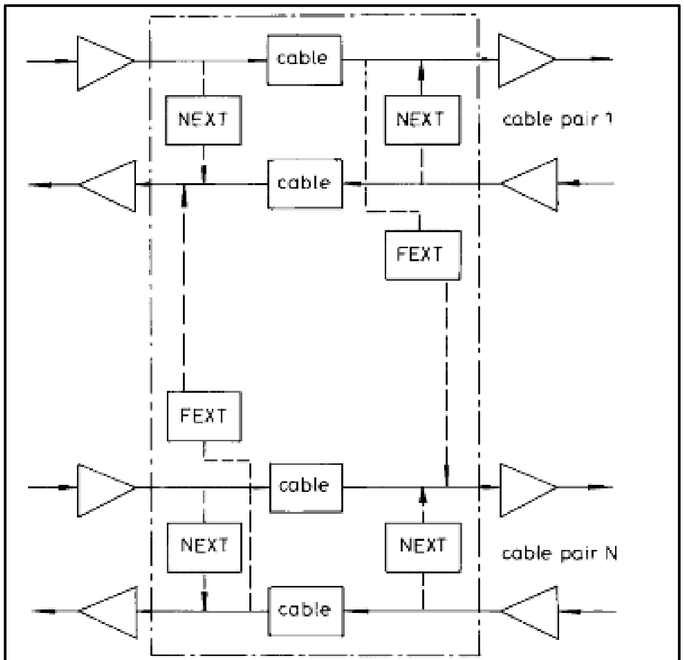



**Fig. 1** *Crosstalk coupling model*

7. I have been an active consultant to industry and various research laboratories (including Massachusetts Institute of Technology Lincoln Labs and Johns Hopkins University Applied Physics Laboratory). My consulting work for MIT Lincoln Labs involved high resolution imaging for defense applications, where I worked in the area of prototyping complex and specialized computing systems. My consulting work for the Johns Hopkins Applied Physics Lab ("APL") mainly

involved localization of objects in image fields, where I worked on identifying targets in video and other sensor fields and identifying computer architectures and circuits for power and space-efficient designs.

8. I have founded three companies in the areas of embedded software, military chipsets involving imaging technology, and wireless communications. I have supervised the Ph.D. dissertations of over twenty engineers in the areas of computer engineering, signal processing, communications, rapid prototyping, and system-level design methodology, of which five have resulted in thesis prizes or paper awards. The first of the companies I founded, VP Technologies, offers products in the area of semiconductor integrated circuits, including building computing systems for imaging systems for avionics electronics for the United States Air Force and the US Navy, since 1995. I remain a director of VP Technologies. The second of these companies, Soft Networks, LLC, offers software for multimedia and wireless computing platforms, including the development of a set-top box for Intel that decodes MPEG-2 video streams, wireless protocol stacks, and imaging codecs for multimedia phones. The technology involved with the design, development, and implementation of the Intel set-top box included parsing the bit streams, decoding communications protocols, extracting image and video data, and then processing for subsequent display or storage. The third of these companies, Elastic Video, uses region of interest based video encoding or decoding

for capturing high quality video at very low bit rates, with primary application for wireless video systems.

9. I have authored more than sixty refereed journal publications and around forty peer reviewed conference publications. I have been active in research in the area of wireless and mobile communications and some of my recent peer-reviewed publications in this area include: (i) Mustafa Turkboylari & Vijay K. Madisetti, Effect of Handoff Delay on the System Performance of TDMA Cellular Systems, Proceedings of the Fourth IEEE Conference on Mobile and Wireless Communications Network 411-15 (Sept. 9-11, 2002); (ii) Loran A. Jatunov & Vijay K. Madisetti, Computationally-Efficient SNR Estimation for Bandlimited Wideband CDMA Systems, 5 IEEE Transactions on Wireless Communications, no. 12 (2006) at 3480-91; and (iii) Nimish Radio, Ying Zhang, Mallik Tatipamula & Vijay K. Madisetti, Next Generation Applications on Cellular Networks: Trends, Challenges, and Solutions, 100 Proceedings of the IEEE, no. 4 (April 2012) at 841-54. I have extensive experience analyzing, designing, and testing systems based on 3GPP Technical Specifications, including specifications describing WCDMA and HSDPA technologies. I have been active in the area of location-based services and wireless localization techniques since the mid-1990s, and have authored several papers on location-based services, including, Vijay K. Madisetti et al., Mobile Fleet Application Using SOAP and System on Devices (SyD) Middleware Technologies,

Communications, Internet, and Information Technology (2002) at 426-31. I have served as associate editor or on the editorial board for technical journals, including IEEE Transactions on Circuits & Systems II, International Journal in Computer Simulation, and International Journal in VLSI Signal Processing.

10. I have authored or co-authored several books, including VLSI Digital Signal Processors (IEEE Press 1995) and the Digital Signal Processing Handbook (CRC Press, 1998, 2010). I co-authored Quick-Turnaround ASIC Design in VHDL (Kluwer Academic Press 1996) and Platform-Centric Approach to System-on-Chip (SoC) Design (Springer 2004). I am also the editor of several books, including the three-volume DSP Handbook set: Volume 1: Digital Signal Processing Fundamentals, Volume 2: Video, Speech, and Audio Signal Processing and Associated Standards, and Volume 3: Wireless, Networking, Radar, Sensory Array Processing, and Nonlinear Signal Processing, published in 2010 by CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida. More recently I have authored Cloud Computing (2014, CreateSpace Press), and Internet of Things (2014, CreateSpace), and the book, Cloud Computing, was nominated as a Notable Book of 2014 by the Association of Computing Machinery (ACM) in July 2015.

11. My experience is relevant to this case. I have been working in the area of communications and signal processing, since the early 1980s. I have performed research in the area of multicarrier communications and error correction techniques

in multicarrier communications. A subset of research work that is relevant to this case and informs my understanding of error-correction techniques is set forth by the papers I co-authored with Dr. Jaejin Lee and others (including Dr. Sinnokrot) over the past twenty years. See e.g., https://www.google.com/search?q=jaejin+lee+and+madisetti+IEEE&rlz=1C1CHBF_enUS813US813&oq=jaejin+lee+and+madisetti+IEEE&aqs=chrome..69i57.8990j0j4&sourceid=chrome&ie=UTF-8 . Also relevant are my research efforts that have been published in the following papers.

| **Year** | **Title** |
|---|---|
| 2012 | Radio N, Zhang Y, Tatipamula M, Madisetti VK. Next-generation applications on cellular networks: Trends, challenges, and solutions Proceedings of the Ieee. 100: 841-854. DOI: 10.1109/JPROC.2011.2182092 |
| 2011 | Bahga A, Madisetti VK. A dynamic resource management and scheduling environment for embedded multimedia and communications platforms Ieee Embedded Systems Letters. 3: 24-27. DOI: 10.1109/LES.2010.2092414 |
| 2011 | Sinnokrot MO, Barry JR, Madisetti VK. The asymmetric golden code for fast decoding on time-varying channels Wireless Personal Communications. 58: 421-437. DOI: 10.1007/s11277-010-0128-z |
| 2009 | Sinnokrot MO, Barry JR, Madisetti VK. Embedded orthogonal space-time codes |

| **Year** | **Title** |
|---|---|
| | for high rate and low decoding complexity Globecom - Ieee Global Telecommunications Conference. DOI: 10.1109/GLOCOM.2009.5425604 |
| 2008 | Sinnokrot MO, Barry JR, Madisetti VK. Embedded alamouti space-time codes for high rate and low decoding complexity Conference Record - Asilomar Conference On Signals, Systems and Computers. 1749-1753. DOI: 10.1109/ACSSC.2008.5074726 |

12. I have designed noise cancellers, Reed-Solomon codecs and equalizers. These components were designed consistent with DSL standards. I have participated in the T1E1 standards group and I have authored and submitted proposals to the T1E1 standards committee.

13. I have been elected a Fellow of the IEEE, for contributions to embedded computing systems. The Fellow is the highest grade of membership of the IEEE, a world professional body consisting of over 300,000 electrical and electronics engineers, with only one-tenth of one percent (0.1%) of the IEEE membership being elected to the Fellow grade each year. Election to Fellow is based upon votes cast by existing Fellows in IEEE. I have also been awarded the 2006 Frederick Emmons Terman Medal by the American Society of Engineering Education for contributions to Electrical Engineering, including authoring a widely used textbook in the design of VLSI digital signal processors. I was awarded VHDL International Best PhD

Dissertation Advisor Award in 1997 and the NSF RI Award in 1990. I was Technical Program Chair for both the IEEE MASCOTS in 1994 and the IEEE Workshop on Parallel and Distributed Simulation in 1990. In 1989 I was recognized with the Ira Kay IEEE/ACM Best Paper Award for Best Paper presented at the IEEE Annual Simulation Symposium.

14. I have submitted approximately seventy invention disclosures and provisional patents over the past ten years. To date, I have been granted approximately thirty US patents.

15. I have testified as an expert witness before. Over the past six years, I've testified as an expert in more than 20 proceedings. About half of the proceedings in which I have testified as an expert were in the area of 2G/3G/4G wireless receiver design, including six to seven in the area of digital physical layer design.

16. Attached as Attachment A is a copy of my Curriculum Vitae.

### B. Compensation

17. I am being compensated by TQ Delta at my usual rate per hour for my work in this case, including time spent testifying. I am also being reimbursed for reasonable fees and expenses, including hotel and travel expenses, incurred as a result of my work in this case. I have not received any additional compensation for my work in this investigation. My compensation is not tied in any way to the

substance of my testimony or the outcome of this proceeding. I am available to offer these opinions at deposition and at trial if called upon to do so.

### C. Materials Relied Upon

18. In the course of preparing this expert declaration, I have considered the 835 Patent and file history, the 352 Petition and 471 Petition, the declaration of Dr. Krista Jacobsen submitted in support of those petitions, G.992.1, and the ITU-T G.992.3 Recommendation, also referred to as ADSL2.

## III. THE 835 PATENT

19. I understand that the 835 Patent has been filed as Exhibit 1001 to the Petition. The 835 Patent provides a novel solution that improves DSL performance and reliability by adapting impulse noise protection to changing conditions while continuing to communicate data. Ex. 1001 at 1:20–25, 8:4–9:18, and Figures 1, 3, 4 and 6; 162 Patent at 1:22-27, 8:4-9:18, and Figures 1, 3, 4, and 6.

20. The 835 Patent explains that, at the time of the inventions, it was standard practice for DSL systems to use interleaving in conjunction with FEC coding to counter the effects of impulse noise. Ex. 1001 at 1:27–37 (stating "[i]t is standard practice for communications systems to use interleaving in combination with Forward Error Correction (FEC) to correct the errors caused by impulse

noise"). DSL systems implementing the ADSL2 (G.992.3) standard, were an example of such systems.

21. FEC and interleaving parameters include the FEC codeword size, the FEC input block length, the number of added FEC redundancy bytes, and the interleaver depth D. Ex. 1001 at 2:22–25. The 835 Patent refers to FEC and Interleaving Parameters by the acronym "FIP." Ex. 1001 at 2:22–25.

22. The 835 Patent describes a problem wherein DSL systems do not properly characterize impulse noise and therefore may choose FIP parameters that result in an unacceptably high bit error rate. Ex. 1001 at 1:45–62. Various possible solutions to address this problem had problems of their own. For example, one possible solution is to reinitialize the DSL transceiver in an attempt to arrive at more appropriate FIP parameters. But this requires disabling the communication link for an unacceptably long period of time. Another possible solution is to initially choose FIP values that provide more impulse noise protection than needed at the time of initialization. But this solution results in a connection with higher latency (i.e., longer delay) than needed. Ex. 1001 at 2:22–3:16.

23. The inventions of the 835 Patent improve a DSL system's ability to deliver a sufficiently low bit error rate in the presence of impulse noise without compromising high data rate or adding more latency (delay) than necessary. The inventions also substantially reduce the need for repeated and lengthy re-

initialization procedures that interrupt steady-state data transmission (i.e., "Showtime"). *Id*. In this regard, the 835 Patent explains that:

> In accordance with one particular aspect of this invention, the system can transition from one FIP setting to another FIP setting without going through the startup initialization procedure such as the startup initialization sequence utilized in traditional xDSL systems. For example, an xDSL system that implements the systems and methods described herein could start using an FIP setting of (N=255, K=247, R=8, D=64) and then transition to an FIP setting of (N=255, K=239, R=16, D=64) without re-executing the startup initialization procedure.

Ex. 1001 at 3:37–47.

24. An example of updating FIPs during Showtime is described with respect to Figures 3 and 6 of the Family 6 Patents:

> FIG. 3 outlines an exemplary method for performing impulse noise protection adaptation during Showtime according to this invention. In particular, control begins in step S300 and continues to step S310. In step S310, traditional DSL initialization occurs. Next, in step S320, Showtime is entered between the two modems using the first FIP setting that was determined during the initialization in step S310. Then, in step S330, a determination is made whether bit errors are occurring using the first FIP setting. If bit errors are not occurring, control continues to step S340 where the control sequence ends. Otherwise, control jumps to step S350.
>
> In step S350, a determination is made that an increase of the INP setting is required that requires modification of the FIP parameters. Next, in step S360, updated INP parameter is determined and a message forwarded to the receiver specifying the new INP setting. Then, in step S370, the receiver forwards to the transmitter updated FIP parameters for the new impulse noise protection requirements. Control then continues to step S380.
>
> In step S380, the transmitter and receiver transition to using the updated INP parameters at a synchronization point. Next, in step S390

> Showtime operation continues. Control then continues back to step S330.

Ex. 1001 at 18:3–26, and Fig. 3. As described above, during Showtime, the modems communicate with each other using a first FIP setting. If a determination is made that impulse noise protection needs to be increased to address bit errors, a new INP requirement may be sent to the receiver. The receiver forwards to the transmitter updated FIP parameters for the new impulse noise protection requirements.

25. The 835 Patent explains that the transmitter and receiver can then transition to the new INP setting by starting to use the new FIP parameters for transmission and reception, respectively, at a synchronized point in time. Ex. 1001 at 8:66-9:2. The 835 Patent describes several methods of performing this synchronization. A first method involves the use of a message; the second method requires use of a flag signal. The 835 Patent discloses:

> FIG. 6 illustrates an exemplary method of synchronization using a flag signal according to this invention. In particular, control begins in step S600 and continues to step S610. In step S610, the modems enter Showtime using the first FIP parameters. Next, in step S620, a message is exchanged indicating the new FIP settings. Then, in step S630, the transmitter forwards to the receiver a flag signal indicating when the new FIP settings are to be used.
>
> At step S640, and at a predefined change time following the transmission of the flag signal, the transmitter begins transmission using the new FIP parameters. Next, at step S650, at the predefined change time following the reception of the flag signal, the receiver commences reception utilizing the new FIP parameters. Control then continues to step S660 where Showtime communication continues with the control sequence ending at step S670.

Ex. 1001 at 19:15–30, and Fig. 6.

26. Examples described in the Family 6 Patents use a flag signal to synchronize the transition from one set of FIP parameter values (i.e., a first FIP setting) to another set of FIP parameter values (i.e., a second FIP setting). A flag signal is sent from a receiving transceiver to a transmitting transceiver to synchronize when the transition to a new (second) FIP setting is to occur. *Id*. At a predefined change time, following the transmission of the flag signal, the transmitter begins transmission using the new (second) FIP setting. *Id.* In one example of "synchronization using a flag signal, the receiver and transmitter would start using updated FEC and interleaving parameters on a pre-defined FEC codeword boundary following the sync flag." 835 Patent at 12:8–11; 162 Patent at 12:10-13.

## IV. PERSON OF ORDINARY SKILL IN THE ART

27. With respect to the 835 Patent, a person of skill in the art would have an electrical engineering background and experience in the design of multicarrier communication systems, such as those employing orthogonal frequency division multiplexing ("OFDM") or discrete multitone ("DMT") modulation. More particularly, a person of skill in the art would be a person with a bachelor's degree in electrical engineering (or a similar technical degree or equivalent work experience) and at least 3 years of experience working with such multicarrier communication systems.

28. I have over 30 years of combined industrial and academic experience in the architecture, design, development, testing and production of communication systems. Furthermore, I have worked directly in the field of multicarrier communication systems, including product design and development, with many engineers meeting the standard defined in the previous paragraph for a person of skill in the art.

## V. CLAIM CONSTRUCTION

29. I have been asked to provide an opinion regarding the meaning of the claim term "flag signal." The term flag signal appears in claims 8 and 24 if the Challenged Claims. I am aware that District Court Judge Richard G. Andrews construed the term to mean a "signal used to indicate when an updated FIP setting is to be used (the signal does not include the FEC codeword counter value upon which the updated FIP setting is to be used)." I understand that Dr. Jacobsen has not provided an opinion on the meaning of this term and has instead applied the District Court's construction to the prior art.

30. Dr. Jacobsen's adopted construction of flag signal is only focused on excluding a particular form of information, i.e., an FEC codeword counter value. However, to be complete and consistent with the specification and the claim language and to be helpful to the Board, the construction must also exclude any information (not *just* an FEC codeword counter value) specifying when the updated

FIP settings are to be used. This opinion is consistent with my opinions and testimony relating to the same claim terms and same prior art that I have offered in related proceedings with respect to the validity of the same claims. It is my opinion that the scope of the Dr. Jacobsen's adopted construction with respect to the negative portion of the construction must be construed more precisely to fully comport with a POSA's understanding of the 835 Patent claims' language in view of the specification, for the following reasons. As previously explained in § III, the 835 Patent describes a transceiver that can switch to a second set of FIP settings without performing a reset. The 835 Patent describes several schemes for synchronizing the switch to new FIP settings between the transmitter and the receiver. A first scheme involves the use of a message; the second method requires use of a flag signal.

31. The Challenged Claims are directed to scheme that contemplates the use of a flag signal to indicate when the switch to new FIP settings should occur. Specifically, a flag signal is sent from a receiving transceiver to a transmitting transceiver to synchronize when the switch to a new (second) FIP setting is to occur. *Id*. At a predefined change time, following the transmission of the flag signal, the transmitter begins transmission using the new (second) FIP setting. *Id.* The 835 Patent specification incorporates the ITU-T G.992.3 Recommendation ("G.992.3") (Attachment B) in its entirety (*id*. at 1:66-67) and explains that a flag signal "is similar to that used in the ADSL2 G.992.3 OLR protocol." Ex. 1001 at 12:4-5; *id*.

at 11:66-67 ("Synchronization can also be performed through the use of a flag signal (sync flag).") and 12:31-32.

32. G.992.3 explains that "[t]he PMD transmit function inserts a synchronization symbol every 68 data symbols." Attachment B (G.992.3) at p. 83, § 8.7.3 On-line reconfiguration during the L0 state. This synchronization symbol or "sync symbol" "provide[s] a time marker for the on-line reconfiguration during the L0 state." *Id.* "At the start of Showtime, the first synchronization symbol transmitted shall be an SS-REVERB symbol." *Id*. The SS-REVERB synchronization symbol is generated by mapping two bits from the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) to each carrier of the MEDLEY set of carriers. *Id.* at p. 82, § 8.7.1 Constellation Mapper. Because the synchronization symbol is transmitted using the MEDLEY set of carriers it is a wideband signal.

33. To provide a time marker or indicator for the on-line reconfiguration (OLR) function of G.992.3, the phase of the synchronization symbol is inverted. *Id.* ("the phase of the first next inserted synchronization symbol shall be inverted."). The inverted synchronization symbol is, for example, an SS-SEGUE symbol, which is "defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of an SS-REVERB symbol (i.e., an SS-SEGUE symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS *data pattern*)." *Id.* The PRBS data pattern is merely a

pseudorandom pattern that does not include any information. Thus, it includes no data content specifying when the reconfiguration should occur.

34. In view of the 835 Patent's disclosure of using a "flag or marker signal that is similar to that used in the ADSL2 G.992.3 ORL protocol (Ex. 1001 at 12:4-5) and that "the flag signal could be an inverted sync symbol, or sync FLAG, as used in theADSL2 G.992.3 OLR protocol, a POSITA would understand "flag signal" to mean a signal that indicates, without containing any information. The sync symbol and sync flag signals are generated from pseudorandom data patterns that do not contain any information; the easily recognized inversion of the signal is what functions as the indication.

35. The 835 Patent specification explains that in the alternative scheme that uses FEC codeword counter values to specify when updated FIP parameters are to be used, "[a] message is exchanged that specifies the FEC Codeword Counter Value on which the updated FIP Parameters are to be used." Ex. 1001, Fig. 5, S540; *see also id*. at 11:18-21 ("send a message indicating the FEC codeword count value on which the FIP parameters will be updated.").

36. When describing the flag signal embodiment, the 835 Patent specification distinguishes it from the message based FEC codeword counter value embodiment by explaining that the flag signal "has greater impulse noise immunity." Ex. 1001 at 12:7. A person of ordinary skill in the art would recognize that any

"signal" that includes information specifying when the updated FIP setting is to be used cannot be a "flag signal" because it would not have the noise immunity of the wideband, pseudorandom noise signal used for the "flag signal" of the claimed invention. In contrast, for the message based FEC codeword counter value embodiment, information data bits comprising the message that specifies the FEC codeword counter value would have to be accurately demodulated and decoded from individual subcarriers.

37. Accordingly, in view of the specification of the 835 Patent, its disclosure of the use of a flag or marker signal that provide an indication without containing any information about what they are indicating, which is expressly contrasted with a message-based FEC codeword counter value embodiment, a person of ordinary skill in the art would interpret a "**flag signal**" to be "**a signal used to indicate when an updated FIP setting is to be used, where the signal does not include information (e.g., a FEC codeword counter value) specifying when the updated FIP setting is to be used**." To be clear, my understanding of the phrase "to be used" is that the updated FIP setting must be used, *i.e.*, the flag signal is a command or directive, not a request. However, my opinions are the same whether or not my proposed clarification of the scope is applied to the prior art.

## VI. THE G.992.1 DYNAMIC RATE ADAPTATION (DRA) DRA_SWAP_REQUEST MESSAGE IS NOT A FLAG SIGNAL

38. I understand that Dr. Jacobsen has opined that the G.992.1 DRA_Swap_Request message is the claimed "flag signal." I disagree that the DRA_Swap_Request message is the claimed "flag signal," as properly construed.

39. Under the positive portion of the Petitioner's proposed construction (which I understand to be the same as that provided by U.S. District Court for the District of Delaware in related litigation), a flag signal is a "signal used to indicate when an updated FIP setting *is to be used*." The 835 Patent specification explains that a switch to an updated FIP setting will occur at a predefined change time following the transmission of the flag signal. Ex. 1001 at 12:8-11 ("For synchronization using a flag signal, the receiver and transmitter ***would*** start using updated FEC and interleaving parameters on a pre-defined FEC codeword boundary following the sync flag."); 19:23-25 ("… at a predefined change time following the transmission of the flag signal, the transmitter begins transmission using the new FIP parameters."); and Figure 6, step 630 (Transmitter forward to Receiver Flag Signal indicating when updated FIP Parameters ***are to be*** used.") (emphasis added). A person of ordinary skill in the art would understand that a flag signal is not a ***request***; rather it is a signal indicating that, following transmission or receipt thereof, the switch to an updated FIP setting MUST occur (i.e., the "updated FIP setting *is to be* used").

40. The DRA_Swap_Request message is not a "flag signal." Rather, as its name suggests and as the G.992.1 specification explains, it is a request that can be rejected. Specifically, G.992.1 provides that the DRA_Swap_Reply "is sent by the ATU-R as a reply to DRA_Swap_Request." Ex. 1004 at p. 236. The DRA_Swap_Reply may reject the request. *Id.* at p. 237 (NACK_SWAP response). When NACK_SWAP is conveyed in the DRA_Swap_Reply transmitted by the modem that received the DRA_Swap_Request, or when the DRA_Swap_Reply is never transmitted because the DRA_Swap_Request was not accurately received, a switch to a new FIP setting will not occur and a new FIP setting will not be used. Because the DRA_Swap_Request is merely a request, it is not a "signal used to indicate when an updated FIP setting is to be used."

41. The DRA_Swap_Request is not a flag signal even under Dr. Jacobsen's construction of flag signal. Specifically, as I have explained below, under the negative portion of Dr. Jacobsen's construction, a signal that includes the FEC codeword counter value upon which the updated FIP setting is not a flag signal. The DRA_Swap_Request includes an FEC codeword counter value, i.e., the SFR, and is therefore not a flag signal.

42. For the limitation, "switching occurs on a pre-defined forward error correction codeword boundary," the Petition (and Dr. Jacobsen) rely on G.992.1's disclosure that, "[i]f the modems operate with the mandatory S-values, these SFR-

references always coincide with codeword boundaries." Pet. at 24. Thus, the Petition is necessarily relying on operation with mandatory S-values because only then will the SFR[1] numbered superframe correspond to an integer number of codewords so that the boundary of the SFR numbered superframe will correspond to a codeword boundary. The S-value is the number of DMT symbols in an FEC codeword. Ex. 1004 at p. 38. The mandatory S-values are 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16. *Id.* However, because of this relationship where an SFR counter value corresponds to an integer number of codewords, the SFR counter value included in the DRA_Swap_Request ***is*** an FEC codeword counter value. For example, where the S-value is 1 (one of the mandatory values), each superframe will include 68 codewords and, if the SFR value in the DRA_Swap_Request message is 3, this corresponds to a codeword counter value of (68 × 4)/1 = 272. In another example, where the S-value is 16 (another mandatory value), an SFR value of 3 would correspond to a codeword counter value of (68 × 4)/16 = 17. Thus, the SFR in the DRA_Swap_Request specifies a FEC codeword counter value.

[1] SFR values are restricted to "SFR = 4 × N – 1 where N is an integer number," i.e., 3, 7, 11, 15, etc. Ex. 1004 at 233. An SFR of 3 is the fourth superframe, an SFR of 7 is the eighth superframe, *etc*., because the count starts at zero. *See id.* ("Notice that SFR equals zero at the first ShowTime symbol and is then increased by one (modulo 256) at each consecutive superframe.").

43. I declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements are made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code.

Dated: May 25, 2022

Vijay K. Madisetti, Ph.D.

# ATTACHMENT A

**Dr. Vijay K. Madisetti**
**Fellow, IEEE**
vkm@madisetti.com
Cell: 770-527-0177
**Address:**
**56 Creekside Park Drive**
**Johns Creek, GA 30022**

## Employment:

- 1989-present: Full Professor of Cybersecurity & Privacy, and Electrical & Computer Engineering (**Georgia Tech, Atlanta, GA 30332**).

**Areas of Technical Interest –** Enterprise Software, Cloud Computing Embedded Systems, Wireless & Mobile Communications, Computer Engineering, Circuit Design (Analog/Digital), Biomedical Instrumentation Hardware/Software, Software Engineering, Digital Signal Processing, Sensors, Wireline & Wireless Computer Networks, Software Systems**,** Control Systems, Chip Design, Cloud Computing.

**Education: PhD** (EECS, University of California at Berkeley, 1989), **B.Tech** (Hons) in Electronics and Electrical Communications Engineering (Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur, 1984).

## Startup Companies:

Director, **VP Technologies, Inc**. (1995- ): A startup commercialized through Georgia Tech's Advanced Technology Development Corporation (ATDC) focusing on digital software and hardware design services for military market. http://www.vptinc.net

Director, **Soft Networks, LLC** (2001-2007): A startup commercialized through Georgia Tech support focusing on software development tools and compilers for Cellular/WiFi/VOIP/telecommunication products. http://www.soft-networks.com

Director, **Elastic Video Inc.** (2007- 2009): A startup commercialized through Georgia Tech's VentureLab (http://venturelab.gatech.edu) development image and video processing software for wireless & IP networking.

## Litigation Experience (2015-2021) With Testimony

**(Note: There may be multiple cases between the parties, e.g., District Court v. ITC, US versus Foreign Cases)**

**Chrimar v. Adtran, Alcatel, et al.**
Technology: Power over Ethernet (2015-2017)
Submitted reports & Deposition & Trial

**Chamberlain v. Ryobi/TTI**
Case No: 1:16-cv-06097 (ND Illinois)
Expert for Ryobi
Technology: Wireless/IoT/Barrier Movement (2016 – 2019)
Submitted reports & deposition & trial testimony

**IOEngine v. IMC/Imation**
Case No: cv-14-1572-GMS (US Delaware)
Expert for IMC/Imation
Technology: Networked Storage Device (2016-2017)
Submitted reports & deposition & trial testimony

**Huawei v. Samsung**
Case No: 3:16-cv-2787-WHO (ND Cal)
Expert for Samsung
Technology: 4G/LTE Random Access Protocols (2016-2019)
Submitted reports & deposition

**Hitachi Maxell v. ZTE/Huawei**
Case No: 5:16-cv-00178-RWS (ED Texas)
Expert for Hitachi Maxell
Technology: Digital Cameras
Submitted reports & deposition (2017 – 2018)

**Hitachi Maxell v. Apple**
Case No: 5:19-cv-00036-RWS
Expert for Hitachi Maxell
Technology: Digital Cameras
Submitted Expert Reports (2020-)

**Qualcomm v. Apple**
Case No: 17-ccv-0108-GPC-MDD (SD Cal) Also, Related ITC/FTC Matters
Expert for Qualcomm
Technology: 4G/Wireless Communications/Smartphones (2017-2019)
Submitted Reports and Deposition

**Qualcomm v. Apple**
Case No: 3:17-cv-01375-DMS-MDD (SD Cal)
Expert for Qualcomm
Technology: 4G/Wireless Communications/Smartphones (2017-2019)
Submitted Reports and Deposition

**Optis v. Huawei**
Case No: 2:17-cv-123 (E.D. Texas)
Expert for Optis Wireless
Technology: 4G/Video (2017-2019)
Submitted reports & deposition

**Beckman Coulter v. Sysmex**
Case No: 1:17-cv-24049-DPG (ND Illinois)
Expert for Sysmex
Technology: Medical Instrumentation Automation (2017-present)
Testifying Expert

**TQ Delta v. Xyxel/Adtran**
Expert for TQ Delta
Technology: DSL Technologies (2018-present)
Testifying Expert

**3GL/KPN v. LG, Blackberry, HTC**
Expert for 3GL/KPN
Technology: 4G/LTE Protocols (2018-present)
Reports and Deposition / Testifying Expert

**Rovi v. Comcast**
ITC No. 337-TA-1103 (ITC)
Expert for Rovi
Technology: Digital Video & interactive GUI (Jan 2018-May 2018)
Reports and Deposition

**Cirba/Densify v. VMWare**
Case No: 1:19-cv-00742-LPS
Expert for Cirba/Densify
Technology: Virtualization (2019-present)
Reports Deposition/PI Hearing / Testifying Expert

**Power Integrations v. On Semiconductor**
Case No: 17-cv-03189-BLF
Expert for On Semiconductor
Technology: Power Electronics (2018-2019)

Reports & Deposition/Testifying Expert.

**Pathway v. Lumens, IPEVO, Aver JDA**
Case No: ITC 337-TA-1045
Expert for Lumens JDA
Technology: Document Cameras (2016-2019)
Reports & Deposition (for IPR/ITC, no trial)

**Wilan v. Apple**
Case No: 3:14-cv-2235
Expert for WiLan
Technology: Voice over LTE/LTE Protocols (2017-2020)
Reports and Testified through Deposition/Trials

**St. Lawrence Comm. v. Amazon**
Case No. 2:19-CV-00027-JRG
Expert for Amazon
Technology: Multimedia Codecs
Submitted Expert Reports/Deposition (2020-2020)

**PanOptis v. Apple**
Case No. 2:19-CV-00066-JRG
Expert for PanOptis
Technology: LTE
Submitted Expert Reports/Deposition/Trial (2019-2020)

**GAS v. Sprint Communications**
Case No. 2:20-cv-00007-RWS
Expert for General Access (GAS)
Technology: LTE
Submitted Expert Reports/Deposition (9/21-)

Additional matters include declarations supporting IPRs at the PTAB for Google (US Patent 8,601,154), On Semiconductor (US Patent 6,212,079), Ubisoft (US Patent 5,490,216), Lumens JDA (2017-2019), Broadcom (WiFi), Sony (US Patent 6,101,534), Kia, (US Patent 5,530,431), Qualcomm, Ericsson, Daimler Benz, VW, Estech, Amazon, Ring, Digital Ally, On Semiconductor, United Patents, Lenovo, BMC Software, BMW, Daimler and Dolby.

## Earned Degrees

1. **B. Tech (Hons), Electronics & Electrical Comm. Engineering**
   *Indian Institute of Technology (IIT), Kharagpur, India*
   1984.

2. **Ph.D., Electrical Engineering & Computer Sciences (EECS)**
   *University of California (UC), Berkeley. CA*
   1989.

## Books

1. **VLSI Digital Signal Processors**
   *Madisetti, V.K.;*
   Boston: MA, IEEE Press: Butterworth Heinemann, 1995, 525 pp.

2. **Quick-Turnaround ASIC Design in VHDL**
   *Romdhane, M., Madisetti, V.K., Hines, J.*
   Boston: MA, Kluwer Academic Press, 1996, 190 pp.

3. **The Digital Signal Processing Handbook (First Edition)**
   *Madisetti, V. K., Williams, D. (Editors)*
   CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla, 1998, 2500 pp.

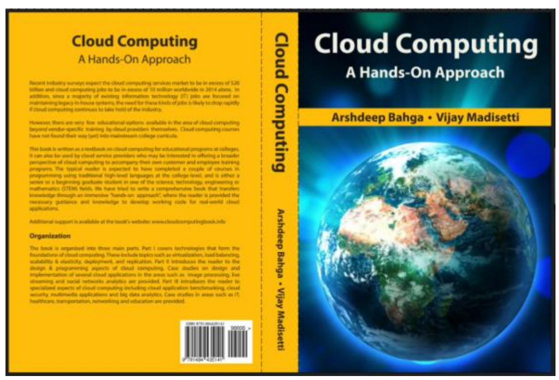
4. **VHDL: Electronics Systems Design Methodologies**.
   *Madisetti, V. K. (Editor)*
   Boston: MA, IEEE Standards Press, 2000, ISBN 0-7381-1878-8.

5. **Platform-Centric Approach to System-on-Chip (SoC) Design.**
   *Madisetti, V. K., Arpnikanondt, A.*
   Springer, Boston: MA, Springer, 2004, 280 pp.

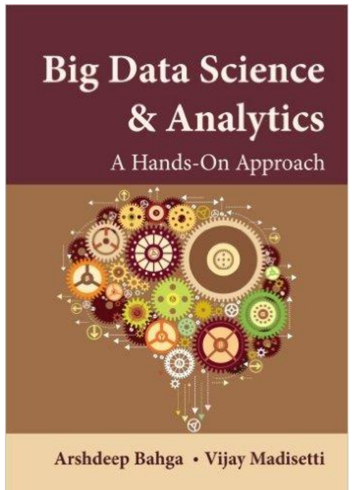
6. **The Digital Signal Processing Handbook – Second Edition.**
   Madisetti, V. K. (2009)
   CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla.

7. **Cloud Computing: A Hands-On Approach**
   *A Bahga, V. Madisetti (2013)*
   Amazon CreateSpace Publishing, 2013, 454 pp.

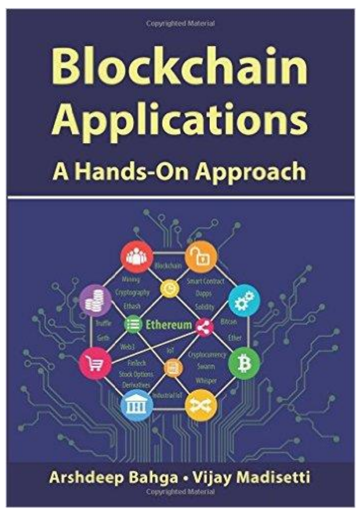
8. **Internet of Things: A Hands-On Approach**
   *A Bahga, V. Madisetti (2014)*
   Amazon CreateSpace Publishing, 2014, 450 pp.


9. **Big Data Science & Analytics: A Hands-On Approach**
*A Bahga, V. Madisetti (2016)*
Amazon CreateSpace Publishing, 2016, 542 pp.




**10.Blockchain Applications: A Hands-On Approach**
*A Bahga, V. Madisetti (2017)*
Amazon CreateSpace Publishing, 2017, 380 pp.




## Edited Books & Collection of Papers

1. **Advances in Parallel & Distributed Simulation**
   *Madisetti, V.K.;Nicol, D., Fujimoto, R. (Editors)*
   San Diego, CA: SCS Press, 1991, 200 pp.

2. **Modeling, Analysis, Simulation of Computer & Telecommunications Systems**
   *Madisetti, V., Gelenbe, E., Walrand, J. W. (Editors)*
   Los Alamitos: CA, IEEE Computer Society Press, 1994, 425 pp.

3. **Modeling & Simulations on Microcomputers**
   *Madisetti, V.K. (Editor)*
   San Diego, CA: SCS Press, 138 pp. 1990.

## Editorship of Journals & Transactions

1. **IEEE Design & Test of Computers**
   Special Issue: Reengineering Digital Systems
   April – June 1999 (Vol 16, No 2)
   *Madisetti, V.K (Editor)*
   Los Alamitos: CA, IEEE Computer Society Press, 1999.

2. **IEEE Design & Test of Computers**
   Special Issue: Rapid Prototyping of Digital Systems
   Fall 1996 (Vol 13, No 3)
   *Madisetti, V., Richards, M. (Editors)*
   Los Alamitos: CA, IEEE Computer Society Press, 1994, 425 pp.

3. **IEEE Transactions on Circuits & Systems II**
   *Associate Editor*: 1993-1995.

4. **International Journal in Computer Simulation**
   *Associate Editor: 1990-1993*

5. **International Journal in VLSI Signal Processing**
   *Editorial Board: 1995 - Present*

## Recent Issued US Patents

[1] 10,503,927 Method and system for securing cloud storage and databases from insider threats and optimizing performance, Issued Dec 10, 2019

[2]. 10,460,283 Smart contract optimization for multiparty service or product ordering system, Issued Oct 29, 2019

[3]. 10,459,946 Method and system for tuning blockchain scalability, decentralization, and security for fast and low-cost payment and transaction processing, Issued Oct 29, 2019

[4]. 10,402,589 Method and system for securing cloud storage and databases from insider threats and optimizing performance, Issued Sep 3, 2019

[5]. 10,394,845 Method and system for tuning blockchain scalability for fast and low-cost payment and transaction processing, Issued Aug 27, 2019

[6]. 10,289,631 Method and system for tuning blockchain scalability for fast and low-cost payment and transaction processing, Issued May 24, 2019

[7]. 10,255,342 Method and system for tuning blockchain scalability, decentralization, and security for fast and low-cost payment and transaction processing, Issued April 9, 2019

[8]. 10,243,743 Tokens or crypto currency using smart contracts and blockchains, Issued March 26. 2019

[9]. 10,204,339 Method and system for blockchain-based combined identity, ownership, integrity and custody management, Issued February 12, 2019

[10]. 10,204,148 Method and system for tuning blockchain scalability, decentralization, and security for fast and low-cost payment and transaction processing, Issued Feb 12, 2019

[11]. 10,121,143 Method and system for blockchain-based combined identity, ownership, integrity and custody management, Issued Nov 6, 2018

[12]. 10,102,526 Method and system for blockchain-based combined identity, ownership, integrity and custody management, October 16, 2018

[13]. 10,102,265 Method and system for tuning blockchain scalability for fast and low-cost payment and transaction processing, October 16, 2018

[14]. 9,935,772 Methods and systems for operating secure digital management aware applications, April 3, 2018

[15]. 9,769,213 Method and system for secure digital object management, Issued Sep 19, 2017

## Refereed Journal Publications

1. **Trends in the Electronic Control of Mine Hoists**
   *Madisetti, V. and Ramlu, M.*, 
   *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications, Vol IA-22, No. 6, November/December 1986. Pages 1105-1112*

2. **Multilevel range/NEXT performance in digital subscriber loops**
   *Brand, G.; Madisetti, V.; Messerschmitt, D.G.;*
   Communications, Speech and Vision, IEE Proceedings I [see also IEE

Proceedings-Communications] ,Volume: 136 , Issue: 2 , April 1989
Pages:169 – 174

3. **Seismic migration algorithms on parallel computers**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Messerschmitt, D.G.;*
Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on [see also Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on] ,Volume: 39 , Issue: 7 , July 1991
Pages:1642 – 1654

4. **Asynchronous algorithms for the parallel simulation of event-driven dynamical systems**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Walrand, J.C.; Messerschmitt, D.G.:*
ACM Transactions on Modeling and Computer Simulation, v 1, n 3, July 1991, Pages: 244-74

5. **Synchronization mechanisms for distributed event-driven computation**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Hardaker, D.:*
ACM Transactions on Modeling and Computer Simulation, v 2, n 1, Jan. 1992, Pages: 12-51

6. **Efficient VLSI Architectures for the Arithmetic Fourier Transform (AFT)**
*Kelley, B.T.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on [see also Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on] ,Volume: 41 , Issue: 1 , January 1993
Pages:365-378

7. **The fast discrete Radon transform. I. Theory**
*Kelley, B.T.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Image Processing, IEEE Transactions on ,Volume: 2 , Issue: 3 , July 1993
Pages:382 – 400

8. **The Georgia Tech digital signal multiprocessor**
*Barnwell, T.P., III; Madisetti, V.K.; McGrath, S.J.A.;*
Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on [see also Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on] ,Volume: 41 , Issue: 7 , July 1993
Pages:2471 – 2487

9. **The MIMDIX Environment for Parallel Simulation**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Hardaker, D.; Fujimoto, R.M.:*
Journal of Parallel and Distributed Computing, v18, no. 4, August 1993, Pages: 473-83.

**10.LMSGEN: a prototyping environment for programmable adaptive digital filters in VLSI**
*Romdhane, M.S.B.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Chapter in VLSI Signal Processing, VII, 1994.,
Pages:33 – 42

**11. Fixed-point co-design in DSP**
*Egolf, T.W.; Famorzadeh, S.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Chapter in VLSI Signal Processing, VII, 1994.,
Pages:113 - 126

**12. A fast spotlight-mode synthetic aperture radar imaging system**
*Madisetti, V.K.;*
Communications, IEEE Transactions on ,Volume: 42 , Issue: 234 , February-April 1994
Pages:873 – 876

**13. Rapid prototyping on the Georgia Tech digital signal multiprocessor**
*Curtis, B.A.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on [see also Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on] ,Volume: 42 , Issue: 3 , March 1994
Pages:649 – 662

**14.Low-power signaling in asymmetric noisy channels via spectral shaping**
*Sipitca, M.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Signal Processing Letters, IEEE, Volume: 1 , Issue: 8 , Aug 1994
Pages:117 – 118

**15. A quantitative methodology for rapid prototyping and high-level synthesis of signal processing algorithms**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Curtis, B.A.;*
Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on [see also Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on] ,Volume: 42 , Issue: 11 , Nov. 1994
Pages:3188 – 3208

**16. Computer Simulation of Application-Specific Signal Processing Systems**
*Casinovi, G.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
International Journal in Computer Simulation, Vol. 4, No. 4, Nov 1994.

**17. System partitioning of MCMs for low power**
*Khan, S.A.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 12 , Issue: 1 , Spring 1995
Pages:41 – 52

**18. Error correcting run-length limited codes for magnetic recording**
*Jaejin Lee; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Magnetics, IEEE Transactions on ,Volume: 31 , Issue: 6 , Nov. 1995
Pages:3084 – 3086

**19. Virtual prototyping of embedded microcontroller-based DSP systems**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Egolf, T.W.;*
Micro, IEEE ,Volume: 15 , Issue: 5 , Oct. 1995
Pages:9 – 21

**20. Constrained multitrack RLL codes for the storage channel**
*Lee, J.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Magnetics, IEEE Transactions on ,Volume: 31 , Issue: 3 , May 1995
Pages:2355 – 2364

**21. Rapid digital system prototyping: current practice, future challenges**
*Madisetti, V.K.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 13 , Issue: 3 , Fall 1996
Pages:12 – 22

**22. Conceptual prototyping of scalable embedded DSP systems**
*Dung, L.-R.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 13 , Issue: 3 , Fall 1996
Pages:54 – 65

**23. Advances in rapid prototyping of digital systems**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Richards, M.A.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 13 , Issue: 3 , Fall 1996
Pages:9

**24. Combined modulation and error correction codes for storage channels**
*Jaejin Lee; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Magnetics, IEEE Transactions on ,Volume: 32 , Issue: 2 , March 1996
Pages:509 – 514

**25. Model-based architectural design and verification of scalable embedded DSP systems-a RASSP approach**
*Dung, L.-R.; Madisetti, V.K.; Hines, J.W.;*
Chapter in VLSI Signal Processing, IX, 1996.
Pages:147 – 156

**26. Low-power digital filter implementations using ternary coefficients**
*Hezar, R.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Chapter in VLSI Signal Processing, IX, 1996.,
Pages:179 – 188

**27. All-digital oversampled front-end sensors**
*Romdhane, M.S.B.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Signal Processing Letters, IEEE, Volume: 3 , Issue: 2 , Feb. 1996
Pages:38 – 39

**28. Modeling COTS components in VHDL**
*Calhoun, S., Reese, R; Egolf, T., Madisetti, V.K.;*
Journal of VLSI Signal Processing, Volume: 14 , Issue: 2 , Nov 1996
Pages: 24 – 31

**29. VHDL-Based Rapid Systems Prototyping**
*Egolf, T.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Journal of VLSI Signal Processing, Volume: 14 , Issue: 2 , Nov 1996
Pages: 40-52

**30. Interface design for core-based systems**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Lan Shen;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 14 , Issue: 4 , Oct.-Dec. 1997
Pages:42 - 51

**31. Incorporating cost modeling in embedded-system design**
*Debardelaben, J.A.; Madisetti, V.K.; Gadient, A.J.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 14 , Issue: 3 , July-Sept. 1997
Pages:24 – 35

**32. On homomorphic deconvolution of bandpass signals**
*Marenco, A.L.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on [see also Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on] ,Volume: 45 , Issue: 10 , Oct. 1997
Pages:2499 – 2514

**33. A case study in the development of multi-media educational material: the VHDL interactive tutorial**
*Gadient, A.J.; Stinson, J.A., Jr.; Taylor, T.C.; Aylor, J.H.; Klenke, R.H.; Salinas, M.H.; Madisetti, V.K.; Egolf, T.; Famorzadeh, S.; Karns, L.N.; Carter, H.W.;*
Education, IEEE Transactions on ,Volume: 40 , Issue: 4 , Nov. 1997
Pages:17 pp.

**34. Adaptive mobility management in wireless networks**
*Jeongwook Kim; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Electronics Letters ,Volume: 34 , Issue: 15 , 23 July 1998
Pages:1453 – 1455

**35. Efficient implementation of two-band PR-QMF filterbanks**
*Hezar, R.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Signal Processing Letters, IEEE ,Volume: 5 , Issue: 4 , April 1998
Pages:92 – 94

**36. On fast algorithms for computing the inverse modified discrete cosine transform**
*Yun-Hui Fan; Madisetti, V.K.; Mersereau, R.M.;*
Signal Processing Letters, IEEE ,Volume: 6 , Issue: 3 , March 1999
Pages:61 – 64

**37. System on chip or system on package?**
*Tummala, R.R.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 16 , Issue: 2 , April-June 1999
Pages:48 – 56

**38. Reengineering legacy embedded systems**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Jung, Y.-K.; Khan, M.H.; Kim, J.; Finnessy, T.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 16 , Issue: 2 , April-June 1999
Pages:38 – 47

**39. Reengineering digital systems**
*Madisetti, V.K.;*
Design & Test of Computers, IEEE ,Volume: 16 , Issue: 2 , April-June 1999
Pages:15 – 16

**40. Parameter optimization of robust low-bit-rate video coders**
*Sangyoun Lee; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Circuits and Systems for Video Technology, IEEE Transactions on, Volume: 9
Issue: 6 , Sept. 1999
Pages:849 – 855

**41. Closed-form for infinite sum in bandlimited CDMA**
*Jatunov, L.A.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Communications Letters, IEEE ,Volume: 8 , Issue: 3 , March 2004
Pages:138 – 140

**42. A new protocol to enhance path reliability and load balancing in mobile ad hoc networks**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V.K.;*

Journal of Ad Hoc Networks, Elsevier Press, 2004

**43. Closed-form analysis of CDMA systems using Nyquist pulse**
*Jatunov, L.A.; Madisetti, V. K.;*
Communications Letters, IEEE (Under Revision), 2005.

**44. Systematic Design of End-to-End Wireless Mobility Management Protototcols,**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V. K.;*
ACM/Springer Wireless Networks (WINET), Accepted 2005.

**45. A Novel End-to-End Approach for Video Streaming Over the Internet,**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V. K.;*
Kluwer Telecommunications Systems, Vol. 28, No. 2, Pages 133-150, Jan 2005. *Special Issue on Multimedia Streaming.*

**46. An Analytical Framework of RD Optimized Video Streaming with TCP,**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V. K.;*
IEEE Transactions on Multimedia, Submitted for review in March 2005.

**47. Modeling the Effect of Handoffs on Transport Protocol Performance,**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V. K.;*
IEEE Transactions on Mobile Computing, Submitted for review in March 2005

**48. Throughput Models for Transport Protocols with CBR and VBR Traffic Workloads",**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V. K.;*
ACM Transactions on Multimedia Computing, Communications & Applications, Submitted for review in April 2005.

**49. "Electronic System, Platform & Package Codesign",**
*Madisetti, V. K.*
*IEEE Design & Test of Computers*, Volume 23, Issue 3, June 2006. pages 220-233.

**50. "The Design of an End-to-End Handoff Management Protocol",**
*A. Argyriou, Madisetti, V. K.*
*Wireless Networks, Springer, May 2006.*

**51."A Soft-Handoff Transport Protocol for Media Flows in Heterogeneous Mobile Networks ",**
*A. Argyriou, Madisetti, V. K.*
*Computer Networks, Vol 50, Issue 11, Pages 1860-1871, August 2006.*

52. **"Computationally Efficient SNR Estimation for Bandlimited WCDMA Systems"**
*L. Jatunov, Madisetti, V. K.*
*IEEE Transactions on Wireless Communications, Volume 5, Issue 13, December 2006, Pages 3480-3491.*

53. **"Space-Time Codes for Wireless & Mobile Applications",**
*M. Sinnokrot, Madisetti, V.K.*
*DSP Handbook, Second Edition, 2009 (to be published)*

54. A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, "**Rapid Prototyping of Advanced Cloud-Based Systems**", *IEEE Computer*, vol. 46, no. 11, Nov 2013, pp 76-83, 2013

55. A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, "**Cloud-Based Information Integration & Informatics Framework for Healthcare Application**s", *IEEE Computer*, February 2015.

56. A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, "**A Cloud-based Approach for Interoperable EHRs**", *IEEE Journal of Biomedical and Health Informatics*, vol. 17, no. 5, Sep 2013, pp. 894-906, 2013

57. A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, "**Cloud-Based Information Technology Framework for Data Driven Intelligent Transportation Systems**", *Journal of Transportation Technologies*, vol.3 no.2, April 2013

58. A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, **"Performance Evaluation Approach for Multi-tier Cloud Applications"**, *Journal of Software Engineering and Applications*, vol. 6, no. 2, pp. 74-83, Mar 2013.

59. Yusuf, A., V. Madisetti, **"Configuration for Predicting Travel Time Using Wavelet Packets and Support Vector Regression"**, ***Journal of Transportation Technologies***, vol 3, no. 3, June 2013.

60. A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, **"Analyzing Massive Machine Maintenance Data in a Computing Cloud"**, *IEEE Transactions on Parallel and Distributed Systems*, vol. 23, no. 10, pp. 1831 - 1843, 2012.

61. N. Radia. Y. Zhang, M. Tatimapula, V. Madisetti, **"Next Generation Applications on Cellular Networks: Trends, Challenges, and Solutions**," *Proceedings of the IEEE*, Vol 100, Issue 4, pp. 841-854, 2012.

62. A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, "**Rapid Prototyping of Advanced Cloud-Based Systems**", *IEEE Computer*, vol. 46, no. 11, Nov 2013, pp 76-83, 2013

**63.**A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, "**A Cloud-based Approach for Interoperable EHRs**", *IEEE Journal of Biomedical and Health Informatics*, vol. 17, no. 5, Sep 2013, pp. 894-906, 2013

**64.**A. Bahga, V. Madisetti, "**Cloud-Based Information Integration & Informatics Framework for Healthcare Application**s", *IEEE Computer*, February 2015.

## Peer Reviewed Conference Publications

1. **Dynamically-reduced complexity implementation of echo cancelers**
   *Madisetti, V.; Messerschmitt, D.; Nordstrom, N.;*
   Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, IEEE International Conference on ICASSP '86. ,Volume: 11 , Apr 1986

2. **Seismic migration algorithms using the FFT approach on the NCUBE multiprocessor**
   *Madisetti, V.K.; Messerschmitt, D.G.;*
   Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1988. ICASSP-88., 1988 International Conference on , 11-14 April 1988

3. **Seismic migration algorithms on multiprocessors**
   *Madisetti, V.K.; Messerschmitt, D.G.;*
   Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1988. ICASSP-88., 1988 International Conference on , 11-14 April 1988
   Pages:2124 - 2127 vol.4

4. **WOLF: A rollback algorithm for optimistic distributed simulation systems**
   *Madisetti, V.; Walrand, J.; Messerschmitt, D.;*
   Simulation Conference Proceedings, 1988 Winter , December 12-14, 1988
   Pages:296 – 305

5. **Efficient distributed simulation**
   *Madisetti, V.; Walrand, J.; Messerschmitt, D.;*
   Simulation Symposium, 1989. The 22nd Annual , March 28-31, 1989
   Pages:5 - 6

6. **High speed migration of multidimensional seismic data**
   *Kelley, B.; Madisetti, V.;*

Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1991. ICASSP-91., 1991 International Conference on , 14-17 April 1991
Pages:1117 - 1120 vol.2

7. **Performance of a fast analog VLSI implementation of the DFT**
*Buchanan, B.; Madisetti, V.; Brooke, M.;*
Circuits and Systems, 1992., Proceedings of the 35th Midwest Symposium on , 9-12 Aug. 1992
Pages:1353 - 1356 vol.2

8. **Task scheduling in the Georgia Tech digital signal multiprocessor**
*Curtis, B.A.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1992. ICASSP-92., 1992 IEEE International Conference on ,Volume: 5 , 23-26 March 1992
Pages:589 - 592 vol.5

9. **The fast discrete Radon transform**
*Kelley, B.T.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1992. ICASSP-92., 1992 IEEE International Conference on ,Volume: 3 , 23-26 March 1992
Pages:409 - 412 vol.3

10. **Yield-based system partitioning strategies for MCM and ASEM design**
*Khan, S.; Madisetti, V.;*
Multi-Chip Module Conference, 1994. MCMC-94, Proceedings., 1994 IEEE,15-17 March 1994
Pages:144 – 149

11. **Multitrack RLL codes for the storage channel with immunity to intertrack interference**
*Lee, J.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Global Telecommunications Conference, 1994. GLOBECOM '94. 'Communications: The Global Bridge'., IEEE,Volume: 3 , 28 Nov.-2 Dec. 1994
Pages:1477 - 1481 vol.3

12. **A parallel mapping of backpropagation algorithm for mesh signal processor**
*Khan, S.A.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Neural Networks for Signal Processing [1995] V. Proceedings of the 1995 IEEE Workshop , 31 Aug.-2 Sept. 1995
Pages:561 – 570

13. **Virtual prototyping of embedded DSP systems**
*Madisetti, V.K.; Egolf, T.; Famorzadeh, S.; Dung, L.-R.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1995. ICASSP-95., 1995

International Conference on ,Volume: 4 , 9-12 May 1995
Pages:2711 - 2714 vol.4

**14. Assessing and improving current practice in the design of application-specific signal processors**
*Shaw, G.A.; Anderson, J.C.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1995. ICASSP-95., 1995 International Conference on ,Volume: 4 , 9-12 May 1995
Pages:2707 - 2710 vol.4

**15. Introduction to ARPA's RASSP initiative and education/facilitation program**
*Corley, J.H.; Madisetti, V.K.; Richards, M.A.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1995. ICASSP-95., 1995 International Conference on ,Volume: 4 , 9-12 May 1995
Pages:2695 - 2698 vol.4

**16. DSP design education at Georgia Tech**
*Madisetti, V.K.; McClellan, J.H.; Barnwell, T.P., III;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1995. ICASSP-95., 1995 International Conference on ,Volume: 5 , 9-12 May 1995
Pages:2869 - 2872 vol.5

**17. Rapid prototyping of DSP systems via system interface module generation**
*Famorzadeh, S.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1996. ICASSP-96. Conference Proceedings., 1996 IEEE International Conference on ,Volume: 2 , 7-10 May 1996
Pages:1256 - 1259 vol. 2

**18. Rapid prototyping of DSP chip-sets via functional reuse**
*Romdhane, M.S.B.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1996. ICASSP-96. Conference Proceedings., 1996 IEEE International Conference on ,Volume: 2 , 7-10 May 1996
Pages:1236 - 1239 vol. 2

**19. A constructive deconvolution procedure of bandpass signals by homomorphic analysis**
*Marenco, A.L.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Geoscience and Remote Sensing Symposium, 1996. IGARSS '96. 'Remote Sensing for a Sustainable Future.', International ,Volume: 3 , 27-31 May 1996
Pages:1592 - 1596 vol.3

20. **BEEHIVE: an adaptive, distributed, embedded signal processing environment**
*Famorzadeh, S.; Madisetti, V.; Egolf, T.; Nguyen, T.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1997. ICASSP-97., 1997 IEEE International Conference on ,Volume: 1 , 21-24 April 1997
Pages:663 - 666 vol.1

21. **Target detection from coregistered visual-thermal-range images**
*Perez-Jacome, J.E.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, 1997. ICASSP-97., 1997 IEEE International Conference on ,Volume: 4 , 21-24 April 1997
Pages:2741 - 2744 vol.4

22. **Variable block size adaptive lapped transform-based image coding**
*Klausutis, T.J.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Image Processing, 1997. Proceedings., International Conference on ,Volume: 3 , 26-29 Oct. 1997
Pages:686 - 689 vol.3

23. **A Rate 8/10 (0, 6) MTR Code And Its Encoder/decoder**
*Jaejin Lee; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Magnetics Conference, 1997. Digests of INTERMAG '97., 1997 IEEE International , 1-4 April 1997
Pages:BS-15 - BS-15

24. **VHDL models supporting a system-level design process: a RASSP approach**
*DeBardelaben, J.A.; Madisetti, V.K.; Gadient, A.J.;*
VHDL International Users' Forum, 1997. Proceedings , 19-22 Oct. 1997
Pages:183 – 188

25. **A performance modeling framework applied to real time infrared search and track processing**
*Pauer, E.K.; Pettigrew, M.N.; Myers, C.S.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
VHDL International Users' Forum, 1997. Proceedings , 19-22 Oct. 1997
Pages:33 – 42

26. **System design and re-engineering through virtual prototyping: a temporal model-based approach**
*Khan, M.H.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Signals, Systems & Computers, 1998. Conference Record of the Thirty-Second Asilomar Conference on ,Volume: 2 , 1-4 Nov. 1998
Pages:1720 - 1724 vol.2

**27. A debugger RTOS for embedded systems**
*Akgul, T.; Kuacharoen, P.; Mooney, V.J.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Euromicro Conference, 2001. Proceedings. 27th , 4-6 Sept. 2001
Pages:264 - 269

**28. Adaptability, extensibility and flexibility in real-time operating systems**
*Kuacharoen, P.; Akgul, T.; Mooney, V.J.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Digital Systems, Design, 2001. Proceedings. Euromicro Symposium on , 4-6 Sept. 2001
Pages:400 – 405

**29. Effect of handoff delay on the system performance of TDMA cellular systems**
*Turkboylari, M.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Mobile and Wireless Communications Network, 2002. 4th International Workshop on , 9-11 Sept. 2002
Pages:411 – 415

**30. Enforcing interdependencies and executing transactions atomically over autonomous mobile data stores using SyD link technology**
*Prasad, S.K.; Bourgeois, A.G.; Dogdu, E.; Sunderraman, R.; Yi Pan; Navathe, S.; Madisetti, V.;*
Distributed Computing Systems Workshops, 2003. Proceedings. 23rd International Conference on , 19-22 May 2003
Pages:803 – 809

**31. Performance evaluation and optimization of SCTP in wireless ad-hoc networks**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V.;*
Local Computer Networks, 2003. LCN '03. Proceedings. 28th Annual IEEE International Conference on , 20-24 Oct. 2003
Pages:317 - 318

**32. Implementation of a calendar application based on SyD coordination links**
*Prasad, S.K.; Bourgeois, A.G.; Dogdu, E.; Sunderraman, R.; Yi Pan; Navathe, S.; Madisetti, V.;*
Parallel and Distributed Processing Symposium, 2003. Proceedings. International , 22-26 April 2003
Pages:8 pp.

**33. Bandwidth aggregation with SCTP**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V.;*
Global Telecommunications Conference, 2003. GLOBECOM '03. IEEE Volume: 7 , 1-5 Dec. 2003
Pages:3716 - 3721 vol.7

**34. Software streaming via block streaming**
*Kuacharoen, P.; Mooney, V.J.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Design, Automation and Test in Europe Conference and Exhibition, 2003, 2003
Pages:912 – 917

**35. Frequency-dependent space-interleaving for MIMO OFDM systems**
*Mohajerani, P.; Madisetti, V.K.;*
Radio and Wireless Conference, 2003. RAWCON '03. Proceedings , Aug. 10-13, 2003
Pages:79 - 82

**36. A media streaming protocol for heterogeneous wireless networks**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V.;*
Computer Communications, 2003. CCW 2003. Proceedings. 2003 IEEE 18th Annual Workshop on , 20-21 Oct. 2003
Pages:30 – 33

**37. Realizing load-balancing in ad-hoc networks with a transport layer protocol**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V.;*
Wireless Communications and Networking Conference, 2004. WCNC. 2004 IEEE ,Volume: 3 , 21-25 March 2004
Pages:1897 - 1902 Vol.3

**38.Streaming H.264/AVC video over the Internet**
*Argyriou, A.; Madisetti, V.;*
Consumer Communications and Networking Conference, 2004. CCNC 2004. First IEEE , 5-8 Jan. 2004
Pages:169 – 174

## Other Publications

1. **A Transport Layer Technology for Improving the QoS of Networked Multimedia Applications <draft-madisetti-arguriou-qos-sctp-00.txt).**
   *Madisetti, V., Argyriou, A.*
   IETF Internet-Draft, Jul 25, 2002.

2. **Voice & Video over Mobile IP Networks <draft-madisetti-argyriou-voice-video-mip-00.txt>**
   *Madisetti, V., Argyriou, A.*
   IETF Internet-Draft, Nov 20, 2002.

3. **Enhancements to ECRTP with Applications to Robust Header Compression for Wireless Applications**. **<draft-madisetti-rao-suresh-rohc-00.txt>**
   *Madisetti, V.; Rao, S., Suresh, N.*
   IETF Internet-Draft, June 30, 2003.

## Ph.D. Students Graduated

1. **Brian T. Kelley, 1992**
   *VLSI Computing Architectures for High Speed Signal Processing*
   Member of Technical Staff, Motorola.

   Winner of Dr. Thurgood Marshall Dissertation Fellowship Award

2. **Bryce A. Curtis, 1992**
   *Special Instruction Set Multiple Chip Computer for DSP*
   Member of Technical Staff, IBM

3. **Jaejin Lee, 1994**
   *Robust Multitrack Codes for the Magnetic Channel*
   Professor, Yonsei University, Korea

4. **Mohamed S. Ben Romdhane, 1995**
   *Design Synthesis of Application-Specific IC for DSP*
   Director of IP, Rockwell.

5. **Shoab A. Khan, 1995**
   *Logic and Algorithm Partitioning on MCMs*
   Professor, National University of Science & Technology, Pakistan

6. **Lan-Rong Dung, 1997**
   *VHDL-based Conceptual Prototyping of Embedded DSP Architectures*
   Professor, National Chaio Tung University, Taiwan.

Winner of VHDL International Best PhD Thesis Award, 1997

7. **Thomas W. Egolf, 1997**
   *Virtual Prototyping of Embedded DSP Systems*
   Distinguished Member of Technical Staff, Agere

8. **Alvaro Marenco, 1997**
   *On Homomorphic Deconvolution of Bandpass Signals*
   Professor, Texas A&M University.

   Winner of GIT ECE Outstanding Teaching Assistant Award

9. **Shahram Famorzadeh, 1997**
   *BEEHIVE: A Distributed Environment for Adaptive Signal Processing*
   Member of Technical Staff, Rockwell.

10. **Timothy J. Klausutis, 1997**
    *Adaptive Lapped Transforms with Applications to Image Coding.*
    US Air Force/Univ. of Florida.

11. **Lan Shen, 1998**
    *Temporal Design of Core-Based Systems*
    Member of Technical Staff, IBM

12. **James DeBardelaben, 1998**
    *Optimization Based Approach to Cost Effective DSP Design*
    Research Scientist, Johns Hopkins University

    Georgia Tech ECE Faculty Award

13. **Sangyoun Lee, 1999**
    *Design of Robust Video Signal Processors*
    Professor, Yonsei University

    US Army Sensors Lab Research Excellence Award, 1999

14. **Rahmi Hezar, 2000**
    *Oversampled Digital Filters*
    Member of Technical Staff, Texas Instruments

15. **Yong-kyu Jung, 2001**
    *Model-Based Processor Synthesis*
    Professor, Texas A&M University

16. **Mustafa Turkboylari, 2002**
    *Handoff Algorithms for Wireless Applications*
    Member of Technical Staff, Texas Instruments

17. **Yun-Hui Fan, 2002**
    *A Stereo Audio Coder with Nearly Constant Signal to Noise Ratio*
    Post-Doctoral Research Associate, Northeastern University

18. **Subrato K. De, 2002**

*Design of a Retargetable Compiler for DSP*
Member of Technical Staff, Qualcomm

US Army Sensors Lab Research Excellence Award, 1999

**19. Chonlameth Aripnikanondt, 2004**
*System-on-Chip Design with UML*
*Professor, King Mongkut's University, Thailand.*

US Army Sensors Lab Research Excellence Award, 1999

**20. Loran Jatunov, 2004**
*Performance Analysis of 3G CDMA Systems*
Senior Research Scientist, Soft Networks, LLC.

**21. Antonios Argyriou, 2005**, Serving in Hellenic Army.

**22. Pilho Kim, 2009, Scientist, VP Technologies, Inc.**

**23. M. Sinnokrot, 2009, Staff Engineer, Qualcomm.**

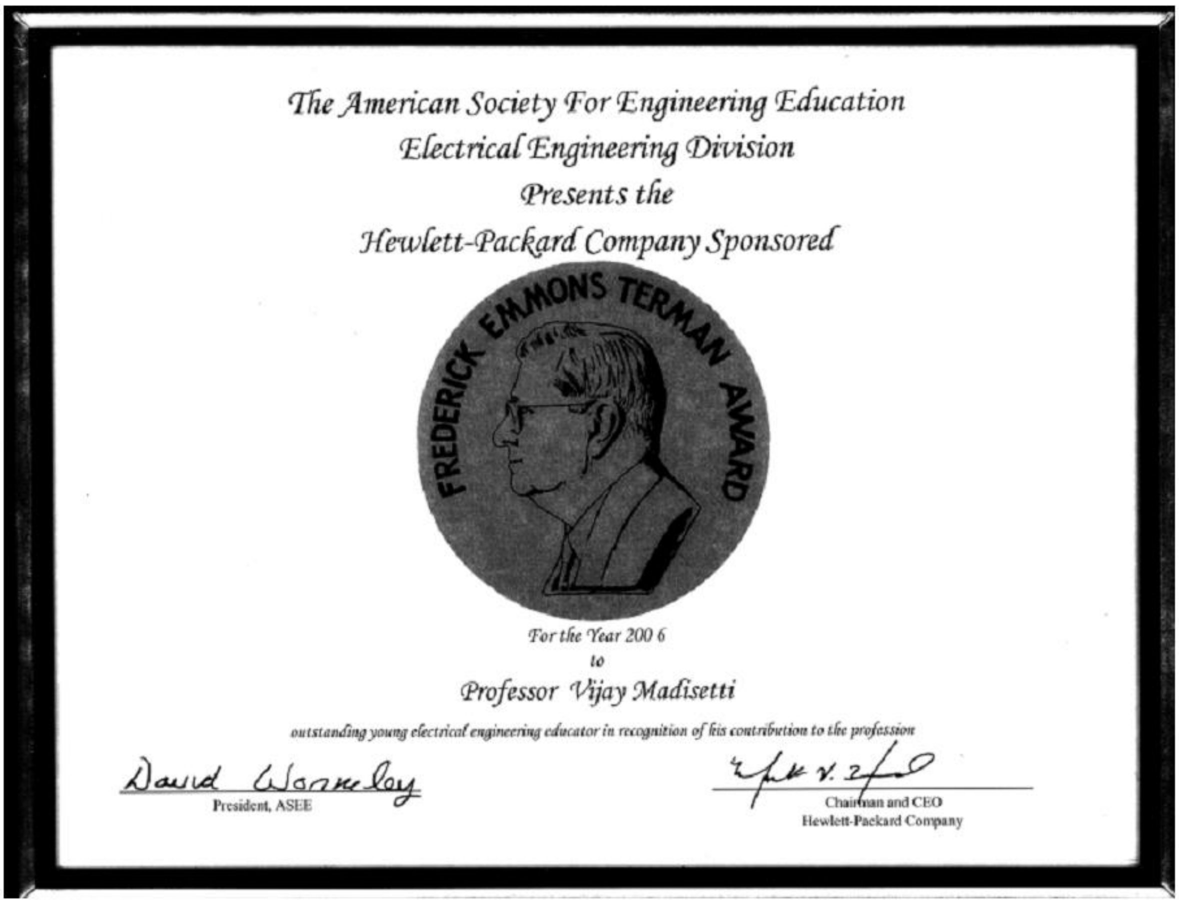
## Awards & Honors

1. **Jagasdis Bose National Science Talent Fellowship**, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur, 1980-1984.
2. **General Proficiency Prize**, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur, 1984.
3. **Demetri Angelakos Outstanding Graduate Student Award**, Univ. of California, Berkeley, 1989
4. **Ira Kay IEEE/ACM Best Paper Award** for Best Paper presented at IEEE Annual Simulation Symposium, 1989
5. **IBM Faculty Development Award** 1990
6. **Technical Program Chair**, IEEE Workshop on Parallel and Distributed Simulation. 1990.
7. **Technical Program Chair**, IEEE MASCOTS'94
8. **NSF RI Award**, 1990
9. **VHDL International Best PhD Dissertation Advisor Award**, 1997

10. **Georgia Tech Outstanding Doctoral Dissertation Advisor Award**, 2001.

11. **ASEE 2006 Frederick Emmons Terman Medal, 2006.**

12. **Fellow of IEEE**




## Intellectual Property Disclosures (Georgia Tech)

| Patent | Date | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 2843 | 2004 | Method and Apparatus for Improving the Performance of Wireless LANs |
| 2825 | 2003 | Method and Apparatus for Optimal Partitioning and Ordering of Antennas for Layered Space-Time Block Codes in MIMO Communications Systems |
| 2815 | 2003 | How to Rapidly Develop a SyD Application |
| GSU-023 | 2003 | Rapid Development of SyD Applications |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2810 | 2003 | System on Mobile Devices Middleware Design |
| 2718 | 2003 | A Transport Layer Algorithm for Improved Anycast Communication |
| 2717 | 2003 | A Novel Transport Layer Load-Balancing Algorithm |
| 2716 | 2003 | A Transport Layer QoS Algorithm |
| 2715 | 2003 | A Novel Transport Layer Algorithm for MPLS Performance |
| 2659 | 2002 | A New Algorithm and Technology for Implementing Mobile IP with Applications to Voice and Video over Mobile IP |
| 2656 | 2002 | Debugging with Instruction-Level Reverse Execution |
| 2655 | 2002 | Embedded Software Streaming |
| 2539 | | System of Databases: An Enabling Technology for Programming |
| 2517 | 2002 | A Dynamic Instantiated Real-Time Operating System Debugger |
| 2516 | 2002 | A Dynamic Real-Time Operating System |
| GSU-009 | 2001 | System of Databases: Architecture,, Global Queries, Triggers and Constraints |
| 2480 | 2001 | Mobile Fleet Application based on SyD Technology |
| 2479 | 2001 | System of Databases: A model with coordination links and a calendar application |
| 1893 | 1999 | Beehive |
| 1726 | 1995 | Very High Scale Integrated Circuit Hardware Description Language Models (VHDL Models) |
| 1401 | 1995 | Self-Compensation Receiver (SCR) |

**Issued Patents**: 9,935,772, 9,769,213

# ATTACHMENT B

INTERNATIONAL TELECOMMUNICATION UNION

# ITU-T

TELECOMMUNICATION
STANDARDIZATION SECTOR
OF ITU

# G.992.3
(07/2002)

SERIES G: TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS AND MEDIA,
DIGITAL SYSTEMS AND NETWORKS

Digital sections and digital line system – Access networks

---

## Asymmetric digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (ADSL2)

ITU-T Recommendation G.992.3

---

ITU-T G-SERIES RECOMMENDATIONS

**TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS AND MEDIA, DIGITAL SYSTEMS AND NETWORKS**

| | |
|---|---|
| INTERNATIONAL TELEPHONE CONNECTIONS AND CIRCUITS | G.100–G.199 |
| GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS COMMON TO ALL ANALOGUE CARRIER-TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS | G.200–G.299 |
| INDIVIDUAL CHARACTERISTICS OF INTERNATIONAL CARRIER TELEPHONE SYSTEMS ON METALLIC LINES | G.300–G.399 |
| GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF INTERNATIONAL CARRIER TELEPHONE SYSTEMS ON RADIO-RELAY OR SATELLITE LINKS AND INTERCONNECTION WITH METALLIC LINES | G.400–G.449 |
| COORDINATION OF RADIOTELEPHONY AND LINE TELEPHONY | G.450–G.499 |
| TESTING EQUIPMENTS | G.500–G.599 |
| TRANSMISSION MEDIA CHARACTERISTICS | G.600–G.699 |
| DIGITAL TERMINAL EQUIPMENTS | G.700–G.799 |
| DIGITAL NETWORKS | G.800–G.899 |
| DIGITAL SECTIONS AND DIGITAL LINE SYSTEM | G.900–G.999 |
| General | G.900–G.909 |
| Parameters for optical fibre cable systems | G.910–G.919 |
| Digital sections at hierarchical bit rates based on a bit rate of 2048 kbit/s | G.920–G.929 |
| Digital line transmission systems on cable at non-hierarchical bit rates | G.930–G.939 |
| Digital line systems provided by FDM transmission bearers | G.940–G.949 |
| Digital line systems | G.950–G.959 |
| Digital section and digital transmission systems for customer access to ISDN | G.960–G.969 |
| Optical fibre submarine cable systems | G.970–G.979 |
| Optical line systems for local and access networks | G.980–G.989 |
| **Access networks** | **G.990–G.999** |
| QUALITY OF SERVICE AND PERFORMANCE | G.1000–G.1999 |
| TRANSMISSION MEDIA CHARACTERISTICS | G.6000–G.6999 |
| DIGITAL TERMINAL EQUIPMENTS | G.7000–G.7999 |
| DIGITAL NETWORKS | G.8000–G.8999 |

*For further details, please refer to the list of ITU-T Recommendations.*

# ITU-T Recommendation G.992.3

## Asymmetric digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (ADSL2)


**Summary**

This Recommendation describes Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line (ADSL) Transceivers on a metallic twisted pair that allows high-speed data transmission between the network operator end (ATU-C) and the customer end (ATU-R). It defines a variety of frame bearers in conjunction with one of two other services or without underlying service, dependent on the environment:

1) ADSL transmission simultaneously on the same pair with voice band service;
2) ADSL transmission simultaneously on the same pair with ISDN (Appendix I or II/G.961 [1]) services;
3) ADSL transmission without underlying service, optimized for deployment with ADSL over voiceband service in the same binder cable;
4) ADSL transmission without underlying service, optimized for deployment with ADSL over ISDN service in the same binder cable.

ADSL transmission on the same pair with voiceband services and operating in an environment with TCM-ISDN (Appendix III/G.961 [1]) services in an adjacent pair, is for further study.

This Recommendation specifies the physical layer characteristics of the Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line (ADSL) interface to metallic loops.

This Recommendation has been written to help ensure the proper interfacing and interworking of ADSL transmission units at the customer end (ATU-R) and at the network operator end (ATU-C), and also to define the transport capability of the units. Proper operation shall be ensured when these two units are manufactured and provided independently. A single twisted pair of telephone wires is used to connect the ATU-C to the ATU-R. The ADSL transmission units must deal with a variety of wire pair characteristics and typical impairments (e.g., crosstalk and noise).

An ADSL transmission unit can simultaneously convey all of the following: a number of downstream frame bearers, a number of upstream frame bearers, a baseband POTS/ISDN duplex channel, and ADSL line overhead for framing, error control, operations, and maintenance. Systems support a net data rate ranging up to a minimum of 8 Mbit/s downstream and 800 kbit/s upstream. Support of net data rates above 8 Mbit/s downstream and support of net data rates above 800 kbit/s upstream are optional.

This Recommendation includes mandatory requirements, recommendations and options; these are designated by the words "shall", "should" and "may" respectively. The word "will" is used only to designate events that take place under some defined set of circumstances.

This Recommendation defines several optional capabilities and features:

- transport of STM and/or ATM and/or Packets;
- transport of a network timing reference;
- multiple latency paths;
- multiple frame bearers;
- short initialization procedure;
- dynamic rate repartitioning;
- seamless rate adaptation.

It is the intention of this Recommendation to provide, by negotiation during initialization, for U-interface compatibility and interoperability between transceivers complying with this Recommendation and between transceivers that include different combinations of options.

**History**

This Recommendation describes the second generation of ADSL, based on the first generation ITU-T Rec. G.992.1. It is intended that this Recommendation be implemented in multi-mode devices that support both ITU-T Recs G.992.3 and G.992.1.

This Recommendation has been written to provide additional features, relative to ITU-T Rec. G.992.1. ITU-T Rec. G.992.1 was approved in June 1999. Since then, several potential improvements have been identified in areas such as data rate versus loop reach performance, loop diagnostics, deployment from remote cabinets, spectrum control, power control, robustness against loop impairments and RFI, and operations and maintenance. This Recommendation provides a new ADSL U-interface specification, including the identified improvements, which the ITU-T believes will be most helpful to the ADSL industry.

Relative to ITU-T Rec. G.992.1, the following application-related features have been added:

- Improved application support for an all digital mode of operation and voice over ADSL operation;
- Packet TPS-TC function, in addition to the existing STM and ATM TPS-TC functions;
- Mandatory support of 8 Mbit/s downstream and 800 kbit/s upstream for TPS-TC function #0 and frame bearer #0;
- Support for IMA in the ATM TPS-TC;
- Improved configuration capability for each TPS-TC with configuration of latency, BER and minimum, maximum and reserved data rate.

Relative to ITU-T Rec. G.992.1, the following PMS-TC-related features have been added:

- A more flexible framing, including support for up to 4 frame bearers, 4 latency paths;
- Parameters allowing enhanced configuration of the overhead channel;
- Frame structure with receiver selected coding parameters;
- Frame structure with optimized use of RS coding gain;
- Frame structure with configurable latency and bit error ratio;
- OAM protocol to retrieve more detailed performance monitoring information;
- Enhanced on-line reconfiguration capabilities including dynamic rate repartitioning.

Relative to ITU-T Rec. G.992.1, the following PMD-related features have been added:

- New line diagnostics procedures available for both successful and unsuccessful initialization scenarios, loop characterization and troubleshooting;
- Enhanced on-line reconfiguration capabilities including bitswaps and seamless rate adaptation;
- Optional short initialization sequence for recovery from errors or fast resumption of operation;
- Optional seamless rate adaptation with line rate changes during showtime;
- Improved robustness against bridged taps with receiver determined pilot tone;
- Improved transceiver training with exchange of detailed transmit signal characteristics;
- Improved SNR measurement during channel analysis;
- Subcarrier blackout to allow RFI measurement during initialization and SHOWTIME;
- Improved performance with mandatory support of trellis coding;
- Improved performance with mandatory one-bit constellations;
- Improved performance with data modulated on the pilot tone;
- Improved RFI robustness with receiver determined tone ordering;
- Improved transmit power cutback possibilities at both CO and remote side;
- Improved Initialization with receiver and transmitter controlled duration of initialization states;
- Improved Initialization with receiver-determined carriers for modulation of messages;
- Improved channel identification capability with spectral shaping during Channel Discovery and Transceiver Training;
- Mandatory transmit power reduction to minimize excess margin under management layer control;
- Power saving feature for the central office ATU with new L2 low power state;
- Power saving feature with new L3 idle state;
- Spectrum control with individual tone masking under operator control through CO-MIB;
- Improved conformance testing including increase in data rates for many existing tests.

Through negotiation during initialization, the capability of equipment to support the G.992.3 and/or the G.992.1 Recommendations is identified. For reasons of interoperability, equipment may choose to support both Recommendations, such that it is able to adapt to the operating mode supported by the far-end equipment.

**Source**

ITU-T Recommendation G.992.3 was approved by ITU-T Study Group 15 (2001-2004) under the ITU-T Recommendation A.8 procedure on 29 July 2003.

It integrates the modifications introduced by ITU-T Rec. G.992.3 (2002) Amendment 1 approved on 22 May 2003.

## FOREWORD

The International Telecommunication Union (ITU) is the United Nations specialized agency in the field of telecommunications. The ITU Telecommunication Standardization Sector (ITU-T) is a permanent organ of ITU. ITU-T is responsible for studying technical, operating and tariff questions and issuing Recommendations on them with a view to standardizing telecommunications on a worldwide basis.

The World Telecommunication Standardization Assembly (WTSA), which meets every four years, establishes the topics for study by the ITU-T study groups which, in turn, produce Recommendations on these topics.

The approval of ITU-T Recommendations is covered by the procedure laid down in WTSA Resolution 1.

In some areas of information technology which fall within ITU-T's purview, the necessary standards are prepared on a collaborative basis with ISO and IEC.

## NOTE

In this Recommendation, the expression "Administration" is used for conciseness to indicate both a telecommunication administration and a recognized operating agency.

Compliance with this Recommendation is voluntary. However, the Recommendation may contain certain mandatory provisions (to ensure e.g. interoperability or applicability) and compliance with the Recommendation is achieved when all of these mandatory provisions are met. The words "shall" or some other obligatory language such as "must" and the negative equivalents are used to express requirements. The use of such words does not suggest that compliance with the Recommendation is required of any party.

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS

ITU draws attention to the possibility that the practice or implementation of this Recommendation may involve the use of a claimed Intellectual Property Right. ITU takes no position concerning the evidence, validity or applicability of claimed Intellectual Property Rights, whether asserted by ITU members or others outside of the Recommendation development process.

As of the date of approval of this Recommendation, ITU had received notice of intellectual property, protected by patents, which may be required to implement this Recommendation. However, implementors are cautioned that this may not represent the latest information and are therefore strongly urged to consult the TSB patent database.

# CONTENTS

Page

# ITU-T Recommendation G.992.3

## Asymmetric digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (ADSL2)

### 1 Scope

For interrelationships of this Recommendation with other G.99x-series Recommendations, see ITU-T Rec. G.995.1 [B1].

This Recommendation describes the interface between the telecommunications network and the customer installation in terms of their interaction and electrical characteristics. The requirements of this Recommendation apply to a single asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL).

ADSL provides a variety of frame bearers in conjunction with other services:

- ADSL service on the same pair with voiceband services (including POTS and voiceband data services). The ADSL service occupies a frequency band above the voiceband service, and is separated from it by filtering;
- ADSL service on the same pair as ISDN service, as defined in Appendices I and II/G.961 [1]. The ADSL service occupies a frequency band above the ISDN service, and is separated from it by filtering;

ADSL also provides a variety of frame bearers without baseband services (i.e., POTS or ISDN) being present on the same pair:

- ADSL service on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS present on an adjacent pair;
- ADSL service on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN present on an adjacent pair.

In the direction from the network operator to the customer premises (i.e., the downstream direction), the frame bearers provided may include low-speed frame bearers and high-speed frame bearers; in the other direction from the customer premises to the Central office (i.e., the upstream direction), only low-speed frame bearers are provided.

The transmission system is designed to operate on two-wire twisted metallic copper pairs with mixed gauges. This Recommendation is based on the use of copper pairs without loading coils, but bridged taps are acceptable in all but a few unusual situations.

Operation on the same pair with voiceband services (e.g., POTS and voiceband data services), and with TCM-ISDN service as defined in Appendix III/G.961 [1] on an adjacent pair, is for further study.

An overview of Digital Subscriber Line Transceivers can be found in ITU-T Rec. G.995.1 [B1].

Specifically, this Recommendation:

- defines the Transmission Protocol Specific Transmission Convergence Sub-layer for ATM, STM and Packet transport through the frame bearers provided;
- defines the combined options and ranges of the frame bearers provided;
- defines the line code and the spectral composition of the signals transmitted by both ATU-C and ATU-R;
- defines the initialization procedure for both the ATU-C and the ATU-R;
- specifies the transmit signals at both the ATU-C and ATU-R;
- describes the organization of transmitted and received data into frames;
- defines the functions of the OAM channel.

In separate annexes it also:

- describes the transmission technique used to support the simultaneous transport of voiceband services and frame bearers (ADSL over POTS, Annex A) on a single twisted-pair;
- describes the transmission technique used to support the simultaneous transport of ISDN services as defined in Appendices I and II/G.961 [1], and frame bearers (ADSL over ISDN, Annex B) on a single twisted-pair;
- describes the transmission technique used to support the transport of only frame bearers on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS present on adjacent pair (All Digital Mode, Annex I);
- describes the transmission technique used to support the transport of only frame bearers on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN present on adjacent pair (All Digital Mode, Annex J).

This Recommendation defines the minimal set of requirements to provide satisfactory simultaneous transmission between the network and the customer interface of a variety of frame bearers and other services such as POTS or ISDN. The Recommendation permits network providers an expanded use of existing copper facilities. All required physical layer aspects to ensure compatibility between equipment in the network and equipment at a remote location are specified. Equipment may be implemented with additional functions and procedures.

## 2 References

The following ITU-T Recommendations, and other references contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this Recommendation. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All Recommendations are subject to revision; all users of this Recommendation are therefore encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent edition of the Recommendations listed below. A list of the currently valid ITU-T Recommendations is regularly published. The reference to a document within this Recommendation does not give it, as a stand-alone document, the status of a Recommendation.

[1] ITU-T Recommendation G.961 (1993), *Digital transmission system on metallic local lines for ISDN basic rate access*.

[2] ITU-T Recommendation G.994.1 (2002), *Handshake procedures for digital subscriber line (DSL) transceivers*.

[3] ITU-T Recommendation G.996.1 (2001), *Test procedures for digital subscriber line (DSL) transceivers*.

[4] ITU-T Recommendation G.997.1 (1999), *Physical layer management for digital subscriber line (DSL) transceivers*.

[5] ISO 8601:2000, *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

[6] ITU-T Recommendation O.42 (1988), *Equipment to measure non-linear distortion using the 4-tone intermodulation method*.

**For Annex B**

[7] ETSI TS 102 080 V1.3.2 (2000), *Transmission and Multiplexing (TM); Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) basic rate access; Digital transmission on metallic local lines*.

**For Annex E**

[8] ETSI TS 101 952-1 V1.1.1 (2002), *Specification of ADSL splitters for European deployment*.

**For Annex F**

[9] DSL Forum TR-048 (2002), *ADSL Interoperability Test Plan*.

**For Annex G**

[10] ETSI TS 101 388 V1.3.1 (2002), ADSL – *European Specific Requirements*.

**For Annex K**

[11] ITU-T Recommendation I.361 (1999), *B-ISDN ATM layer specification*.

[12] ITU-T Recommendation I.432.1 (1999), *B-ISDN user-network interface – Physical layer specification: General characteristics*.

[13] ITU-T Recommendation G.993.1 (2001), *Very high speed digital subscriber line foundation*.

## 3 Definitions

This Recommendation defines the following terms:

**3.1 ADSL line**: The ADSL Line is characterized by a metallic transmission medium utilizing an analogue coding algorithm, which provides both analogue and digital performance monitoring at the line entity. The ADSL Line is delimited by the two end points, known as Line Terminations. ADSL Line Terminations are the points, where the analogue coding algorithms end, and the subsequent digital signal is monitored for integrity. The ADSL Line is defined between the α and the β reference points (see Figure 5-1 and § 5.1/G.997.1).

**3.2 ADSL overhead data**: All data transmitted at the U-x reference point, needed for system control, added by the PMS-TC in any one direction, including CRC octets, OAM overhead messages and fixed indicator bits for OAM; it does not include Reed-Solomon FEC overhead.

**3.3 ADSL system overhead data**: All data transmitted at the U-x reference point, needed for system control and error protection, added by the PMS-TC in any one direction; that is the ADSL overhead plus the Reed-Solomon FEC overhead.

**3.4 aggregate data rate**: The data rate transmitted at the U-x reference point in any one direction; it is the net data rate plus ADSL overhead data rate.

**3.5 anomaly**: A discrepancy between the actual and desired characteristics of an item. The desired characteristics may be expressed in the form of a specification. An anomaly may or may not affect the ability of an item to perform a required function. Performance anomalies are defined in 8.12.1.

**3.6 bridged taps**: Sections of unterminated twisted-pair cables connected in parallel across the cable under consideration.

**3.7 channelization**: Allocation of the net data rate to frame bearers.

**3.8 data frame**: A grouping of bits from different latency paths over a single symbol time period, after addition of FEC octets and after interleaving, which is exchanged over the δ reference point between PMS-TC and PMD layer through the PMD.Bits primitive (see Figures 5-1 and 5-2).

**3.9 data symbol**: A DMT symbol modulating a data frame.

**3.10 data symbol rate**: The net average rate (after allowing for the overhead of the synchronization symbol) at which symbols carrying data frames are transmitted (= 4000 data symbols/second).

**3.11 dBrn**: Ratio (in decibels) of a power level with respect to a reference power of 1 pico-Watt (equivalent –90 dBm) (see ITU-T Rec. O.41 [B2]).

**3.12** **dBm**: Ratio (in decibels) of a power level with respect to a reference power of 1 milliwatt, i.e., dBm = 10 × $\log_{10}$(PSD[watts]/1 mW).

**3.13** **dBm/Hz**: Power spectral density in watts/Hz where the power is expressed in units of dBm, i.e., dBm/Hz = 10 × $\log_{10}$(PSD[watts/Hz]/1 mW).

**3.14** **defects**: A defect is a limited interruption in the ability of an item to perform a required function. It may or may not lead to maintenance action depending on the results of additional analysis. Successive anomalies causing a decrease in the ability of an item to perform a required function are considered as a defect. Performance defects are defined in 8.12.1.

**3.15** **DMT symbol**: A set of complex values $\{Z_i\}$ forming the frequency domain inputs to the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT) (see 8.8.2). The DMT symbol is equivalently the set of real valued time samples, $\{x_n\}$, related to the set of $\{Z_i\}$ via the IDFT.

**3.16** **downstream**: The transport of data in the ATU-C to ATU-R direction.

**3.17** **far-end performance**: Term used at ATU-C to indicate the performance measured at the downstream loop-side input of the ATU-R, where this performance is reported to the ATU-C in upstream overhead messages and indicators, or term used at ATU-R to indicate the performance measured at the upstream loop-side input of the ATU-C, where this performance is reported to the ATU-R in downstream overhead messages and indicators.

**3.18** **FEC data frame**: The grouping of mux data frames within a latency path, after addition of FEC octets, and before interleaving (see 7.4).

**3.19** **frame bearer**: A data stream of a specified data rate between two TPS-TC entities (one in each ATU), that is transported transparently by the PMS-TC and PMD sublayers.

**3.20** **indicator bits**: Overhead bits, part of ADSL overhead data, used for OAM purposes; embedded in the sync octets (see 7.8.2.2).

**3.21** **line rate**: The bit rate transmitted at the U-x reference point in any one direction, that is total data rate plus trellis coding overhead, also defined as $(\sum b_i) \times 4$ kbit/s.

**3.22** **loading coils**: Inductors placed in series with the twisted-pair at regular intervals in order to improve the voiceband response; loading coils are removed for DSL use.

**3.23** **MEDLEYset**: The set of subcarriers transmitted during the Channel Analysis Phase. It consists of the subcarriers in the SUPPORTEDset (as indicated by the transmitter in the Initialization G.994.1 Phase), with removal of the subcarriers in the BLACKOUTset (as indicated by the receiver in the Initialization Channel Discovery Phase) (see 8.13.2.4).

**3.24** **multiple latency**: Simultaneous transport of multiple frame bearers, in which frame bearers are allocated to more than one latency paths (i.e., two, three or four).

**3.25** **monitored subcarrier**: A subcarrier in the MEDLEYset, to which the receiver allocates zero bits ($b_i = 0$) and a non-zero power ($g_i > 0$).

**3.26** **mux data frame**: The grouping of octets from different frame bearers within the same latency path, after the sync octet has been added.

**3.27** **near-end performance**: Term used at ATU-R to indicate the performance measured at the downstream loop-side input of the ATU-R, or term used at ATU-C to indicate the performance measured at the upstream loop-side input of the ATU-C.

**3.28** **net data rate**: The sum of all frame bearer data rates over all latency paths in any one direction.

**3.29** **network timing reference**: An 8 kHz timing marker used to support the distribution of a timing reference over the network.

**3.30 nominal transmit PSD level**: The transmit PSD level (expressed in dBm/Hz) defined in this Recommendation for each of the operating modes (see Annexes A, B, I and J) in any one direction, which is used at the start of initialization and relative to which subsequent transmit PSD level changes may occur, as determined necessary by the transceivers during initialization and showtime.

**3.31 power cutback**: Reduction of the transmit PSD level (expressed in dB) in any one direction, relative to the nominal transmit PSD level. The same transmit PSD level reduction is applied over the whole frequency band (i.e., flat cutback).

**3.32 primitives**: Primitives are basic measures of performance, usually obtained from digital signal line codes and frame formats, or as reported in overhead indicators from the far-end. Performance primitives are categorized as events, anomalies and defects (see 8.12). Primitives may also be basic measures of other quantities (e.g., ac or battery power), usually obtained from equipment indicators . Alternatively, the term is also used to indicate logical information flows over the α, β, δ, γ, and U reference points shown in Figure 5-2.

**3.33 reference transmit PSD level**: The nominal transmit PSD level, lowered by the power cutback, in any one direction.

**3.34 showtime**: The state of either ATU-C or ATU-R, reached after all initialization and training is completed, in which frame bearer data are transmitted.

**3.35 single latency**: Simultaneous transport of one or more frame bearers in any one direction, in which all frame bearers are allocated to the same latency path.

**3.36 splitter**: Filter that separates the high frequency signals (ADSL) from the voiceband or ISDN signals; (frequently called POTS or ISDN splitter, even though the voiceband signals may comprise more than POTS).

**3.37 subcarrier**: A particular complex valued input, $Z_i$, to the IDFT (see 8.8.2).

**3.38 superframe**: A grouping of 68 data frames and one sync frame, modulated onto 69 symbols, over a total time duration of 17 ms (see 8.4).

**3.39 symbol rate**: The rate at which all symbols, including the synchronization symbol, are transmitted; that is ((69/68) × 4000 = 4058.8 symbols/second); contrasted with the data symbol rate.

**3.40 sync octet**: An octet of data that may be present at the beginning of each mux data frame, that contains ADSL overhead.

**3.41 sync frame**: A frame with deterministic content, modulated onto a sync symbol.

**3.42 sync symbol**: A DMT symbol modulating a sync frame.

**3.43 total data rate**: Aggregate data rate plus Reed-Solomon FEC overhead.

**3.44 upstream**: The transport of data in the ATU-R to ATU-C direction.

**3.45 used subcarrier**: A subcarrier in the MEDLEYset, to which the receiver allocates a non-zero number of bits ($b_i > 0$).

**3.46 voiceband**: 0 to 4 kHz; expanded from the traditional 0.3 to 3.4 kHz to deal with voiceband data services wider than POTS.

**3.47 voiceband services**: POTS and all data services that use the voiceband or some part of it.

**3.48 xDSL**: Any of the various types of digital subscriber lines technologies.

## 4 Abbreviations

This Recommendation uses the following abbreviations:

| | |
|---|---|
| ADSL | Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line |
| AFE | Analogue Front End |
| AGC | Automatic Gain Control |
| AN | Access Node |
| ATM | Asynchronous Transfer Mode |
| ATU | ADSL Transceiver Unit |
| ATU-C | ATU at the central office end (i.e., network operator) |
| ATU-R | ATU at the remote terminal end (i.e., CP) |
| ATU-x | Any one of ATU-C or ATU-R |
| BER | Bit Error Ratio |
| CO | Central office |
| CP | Customer Premises |
| CPE | Customer Premises Equipment |
| CRC | Cyclic Redundancy Check |
| DAC | Digital to Analog Converter |
| DC | Direct Current |
| DMT | Discrete multitone |
| DSL | Digital Subscriber Line |
| EC | Echo Cancelling |
| EMS | Element Management System |
| eoc | embedded operation channel |
| ES | Errored Second |
| FDM | Frequency-Division Multiplexing |
| FEC | Forward Error Correction |
| FEXT | Far-End crosstalk |
| FFEC | Far-end Forward Error Correction |
| FHEC | Far-end Header Error Check |
| FLCD | Far-end Loss of Cell Delineation |
| FNCD | Far-end No Cell Delineation |
| FOCD | Far-end Out of Cell Delineation |
| GF | Galois Field |
| GSTN | General Switched Telephone Network |
| HEC | Header Error Control |
| HPF | High pass filter |
| IB | Indicator Bit |

| | |
|---|---|
| ID code | Vendor identification code |
| IDFT | Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform |
| IMA | Inverse Multiplexing over ATM |
| ISDN | Integrated Services Digital Network |
| LCD | Loss-of-Cell Delineation |
| LOF | Loss-of-frame defect |
| LOS | Loss-of-signal defect |
| LPR | Loss-of-power defect |
| LSB | Least Significant Bit |
| LTR | Local Timing Reference |
| MC | Maximum Count indication |
| MDF | Mux Data Frame |
| MIB | Management Information Base |
| MPS | Management Protocol Specific |
| MSB | Most Significant Bit |
| MTPR | Multitone power ratio |
| NCD | No cell delineation |
| NEXT | Near-End crosstalk |
| NID | Network Interface Device |
| NMS | Network Management System |
| NT | Network Termination |
| NTR | Network timing reference: 8 kHz reference to be transmitted downstream |
| OAM | Operations, Administration and Maintenance |
| OCD | Out of Cell Delineation |
| PHY | Physical Layer |
| PMD | Physical Media Dependent (sublayer) |
| PMS-TC | Physical Media-Specific TC |
| POTS | Plain old telephone service; one of the services using the voiceband; sometimes used as a descriptor for all voiceband services |
| ppm | parts per million |
| PRBS | Pseudo-Random Binary Sequence |
| PSD | Power Spectral Density |
| PSTN | Public Switched Telephone Network |
| PTS | Packet Transport Specific |
| QAM | Quadrature Amplitude Modulation |
| RDI | Remote Defect Indication |
| rms | Root mean square |

| | |
|---|---|
| RS | Reed Solomon |
| RT | Remote Terminal |
| RX | Receiver |
| SEF | Severely Errored Frame |
| SM | Service Module |
| SNR | Signal-to-Noise Ratio |
| TC | Transmission convergence (sublayer) |
| TP | Twisted Pair |
| TPS-TC | Transmission Protocol Specific TC Layer |
| T-R | Interface(s) between ATU-R and switching layer (ATM or STM or Packet) |
| T/S | Interface(s) between ADSL network termination and CPE or home network |
| TX | Transmitter |
| U-C | Loop Interface – Central Office end |
| U-R | Loop Interface – Remote Terminal end |
| UTC | Unable to comply |
| V-C | Logical interface between ATU-C and a digital network element such as one or more switching systems |
| ZHP | Impedance high-pass filter |
| 4-QAM | 4 point QAM (i.e., two bits per symbol) |
| $\oplus$ | Exclusive-or; modulo-2 addition |
| $\lceil x \rceil$ | Rounding to the higher integer |

## 5 Reference models

G.992.3 devices fit within the family of DSL Recommendations described in ITU-T Rec. G.995.1 [B1]. Additionally, G.992.3 devices rely upon constituent components described within ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2] and ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. This clause provides the necessary functional, application, and protocol reference models so that the subclauses of this Recommendation may be related to these additional Recommendations.

### 5.1 ATU functional model

Figure 5-1 shows the functional blocks and interfaces of an ATU-C and ATU-R that are referenced in this Recommendation. It illustrates the most basic functionality of the ATU-R and the ATU-C. Each ATU contains both an application invariant section and an application specific section. The application invariant section consists of the PMS-TC and PMD layers and are defined in clauses 7 and 8, while the application specific aspects that are confined to the TPS-TC layer and device interfaces, are defined in Annex K. Management functions, which are typically controlled by the operator's management system (EMS or NMS), are not shown in the Figure 5-1. Figure 5-3 provides a high level view that includes the management interface.

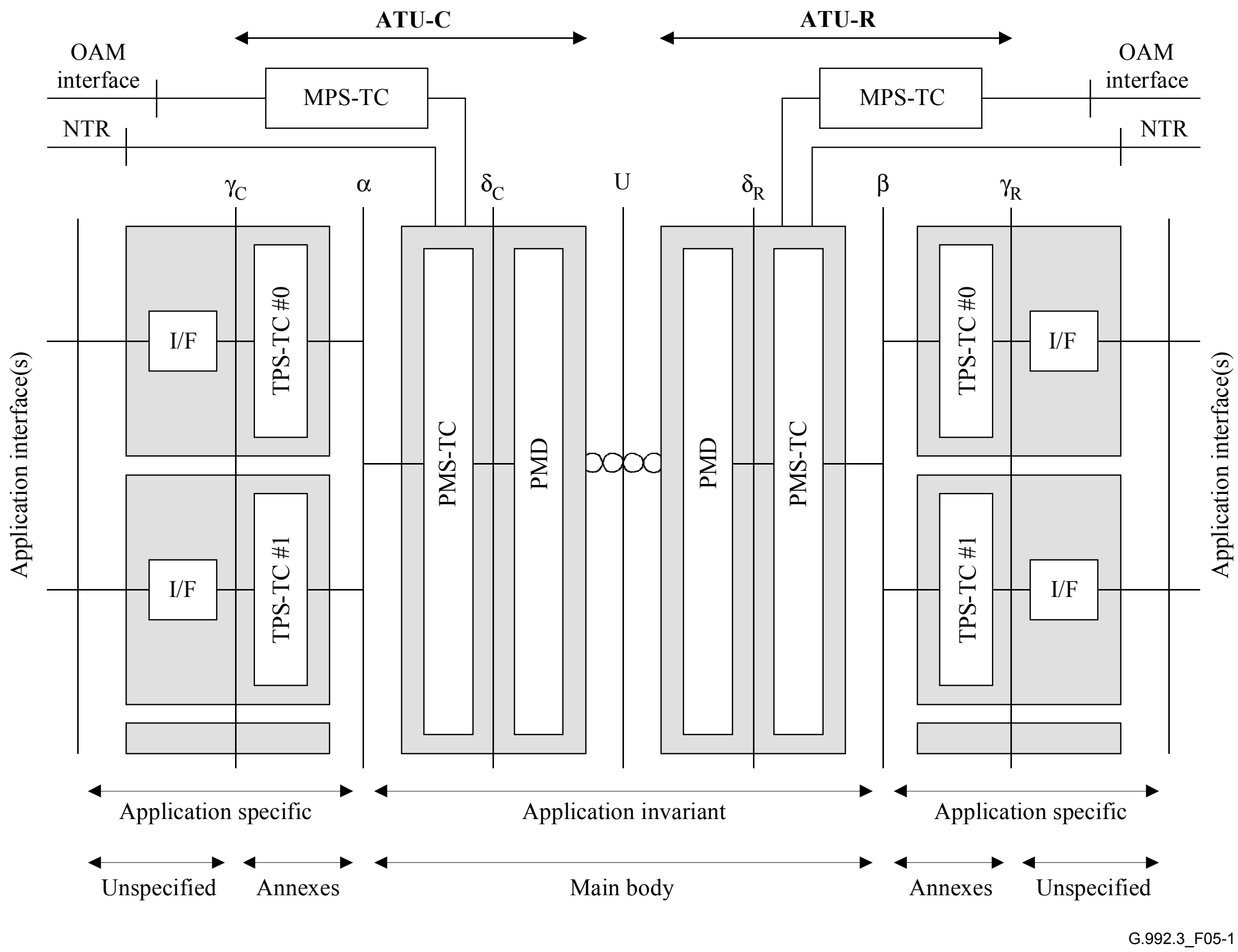



**Figure 5-1/G.992.3 – ATU functional model**

The principal functions of the PMD layer may include symbol timing generation and recovery, encoding and decoding, modulation and demodulation, echo cancellation (if implemented) and line equalization, link startup, and physical layer overhead (superframing). Additionally, the PMD layer may generate or receive control messages via the overhead channel of the PMS-TC layer.

The PMS-TC layer contains the framing and frame synchronization functions, as well as forward error correction, error detection, scrambler and descrambler functions. Additionally, the PMS-TC layer provides an overhead channel that is used to transport control messages generated in the TPS-TC, PMS-TC or PMD layers as well as messages generated at the management interface.

The PMS-TC is connected across the α and β interfaces in the ATU-C and the ATU-R, respectively, to the TPS-TC layer. The TPS-TC is application specific and consists largely of adaptation of the customer interface data and control signals to the (a)synchronous data interface of the TPS-TC. Additionally, the TPC-TC layer may also generate or receive control messages via the overhead channel of the PMS-TC layer.

The TPS-TC layer communicates with the interface blocks across the $\gamma_R$ and $\gamma_C$ interfaces. Depending upon the specific application, the TPS-TC layer may be required to support one or more channels of user data and associated interfaces. The definition of these interfaces is beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

The MPS-TC function provides procedures to facilitate the management of the ATU. The MPS-TC function communicates with higher layer functions in the management plane that are described in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4] (e.g., the Element Management System, controlling the CO-MIB). Management information is exchanged between the MPS-TC functions through an

ADSL overhead channel. The PMS-TC multiplexes the ADSL overhead channel with the TPS-TC data streams for transmission over the DSL. The management information contains indications of anomalies and defects and related performance monitoring counters. In addition, several management command procedures are defined for use by higher layer functions, specifically for testing purposes.

The $\alpha$, $\beta$, $\gamma_R$ and $\gamma_C$ interfaces are only intended as logical separations and need not be physically accessible. The $\gamma_R$ and $\gamma_C$ interfaces are logically equivalent to respectively the T-R and V-C interfaces shown in Figure 5-4.

## 5.2 User plane protocol reference model

The User Plane Protocol Reference Model, shown in Figure 5-2, is an alternate representation of the information shown in Figure 5-1. The user plane protocol reference model is included to emphasize the layered nature of this Recommendation and to provide a view that is consistent with the generic xDSL models shown in ITU-T Rec. G.995.1 [B1].

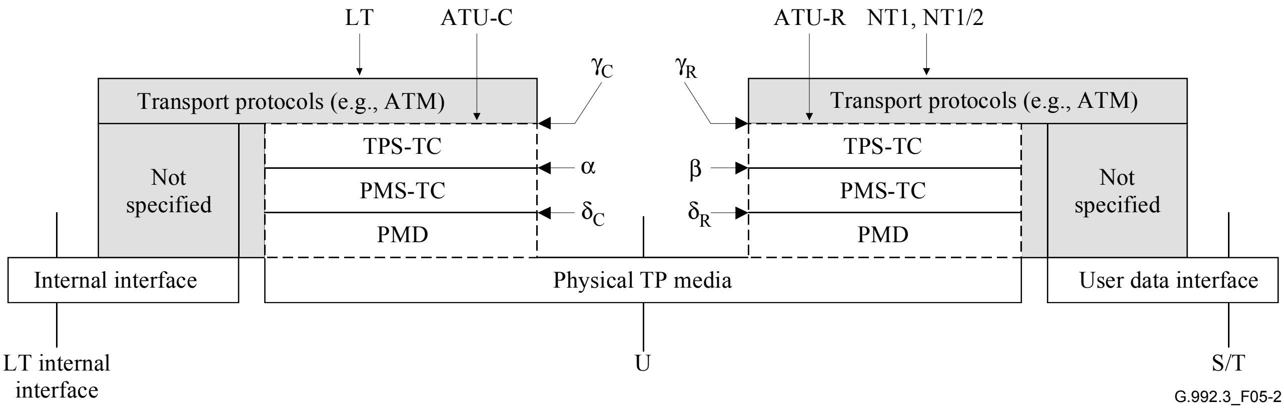



**Figure 5-2/G.992.3 – User plane protocol reference model**

The one way payload transfer delay between the $\gamma_C$ and $\gamma_R$ reference points is the sum of:

- Delay through the TPS-TC at ATU-C and ATU-R;
- Delay through the PMS-TC at ATU-C and ATU-R;
- Delay through the PMD at ATU-C and ATU-R.

The delay through the TPS-TC depends on the TPS-TC type used. The delay through the PMS-TC and PMD sublayer (i.e., the delay between the $\alpha$ and $\beta$ reference points) can be modelled independently of the TPS-TC type used, and is referred to as the nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay. It is defined as:

$$delay_{\alpha-\beta} = 3.75 + \frac{\lceil S_P \times D_P \rceil}{4} ms$$

where the $\lceil x \rceil$ notation denotes rounding to the higher integer,

and $S_P$ and $D_P$ are PMS-TC control parameters defined in 7.5 and 7.6.

Table 5-1 illustrates the data rate terminology and definitions as applicable at various reference points. The reference points refer to those shown in the reference model in Figure 5-2 and the PMS-TC block diagram in Figure 7-6.

**Table 5-1/G.992.3 – Data rate terminology and definitions**

| Data rate | Equation (kbit/s) | Reference point |
|---|---|---|
| **Net data rate** | $\sum \text{Net}_{\text{p.act}}$ (see Table 7-7) | α, β |
| **Aggregate data rate** = Net data rate + Frame overhead rate | $\sum(\text{Net}_{\text{p.act}} + \text{OR}_P)$ (see Table 7-7) | A |
| **Total data rate** = Aggregatedata rate + RS Coding overhead rate | $(\sum L_P) \times 4$ (see Table 7-6) | B, C, δ |
| **Line rate** = Total data rate + Trellis Coding overhead rate | $(\sum b_i) \times 4$ (see Table 8-4) | U |

## 5.3 Management plane reference model

The Management Plane Protocol Reference Model, shown in Figure 5-3 is an alternate representation of the information shown in Figure 5-1. The management plane protocol reference model is included to emphasize the separate functions provided by the MPS-TC and TPS-TC functions and to provide a view that is consistent with the generic xDSL models shown in ITU-T Rec. G.995.1 [B1].

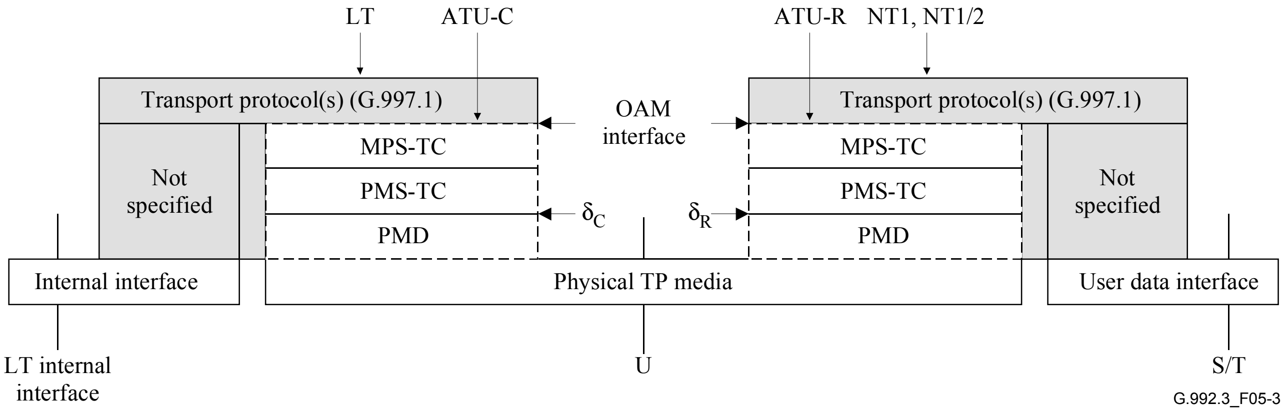



**Figure 5-3/G.992.3 – Management plane protocol reference model**

## 5.4 Application models

The application models for G.992.3 is based upon the generic reference configuration described in 6.1/G.995.1 [B1]. There are four separate applications models, one each for ADSL data service only, ADSL data service with underlying POTS service, ADSL data service with underlying ISDN service and Voice over ADSL service.

Two generic application models for G.992.3 exist. The application model for remote deployment with splitter is shown in Figure 5-4.

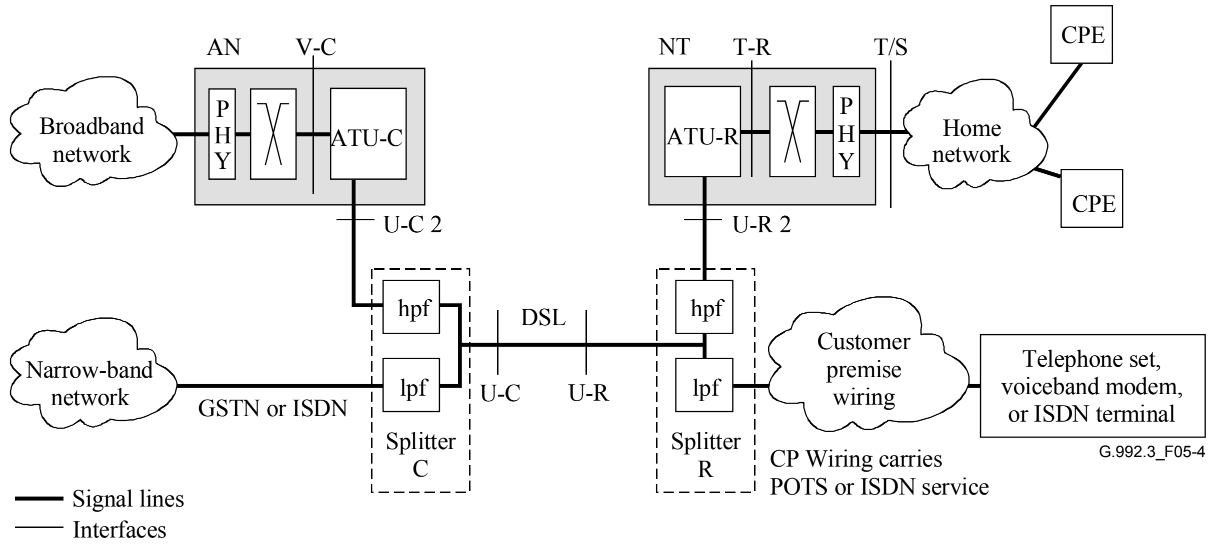



**Figure 5-4/G.992.3 – Generic application reference model for remote deployment with splitter**

The application model for splitterless remote deployment is shown in Figure 5-5. An optional low-pass filter may be included to provide isolation and protection of telephone sets, voiceband modems, ISDN terminals, and the ATU-R. The location of filters in all application model diagrams is intended to be functional only. The specific functions of the filter may be regionally specific. The filter may be implemented in a variety of ways, including splitters, in-line filters, integrated filters with ATU devices, and integrated filters with voice equipment.

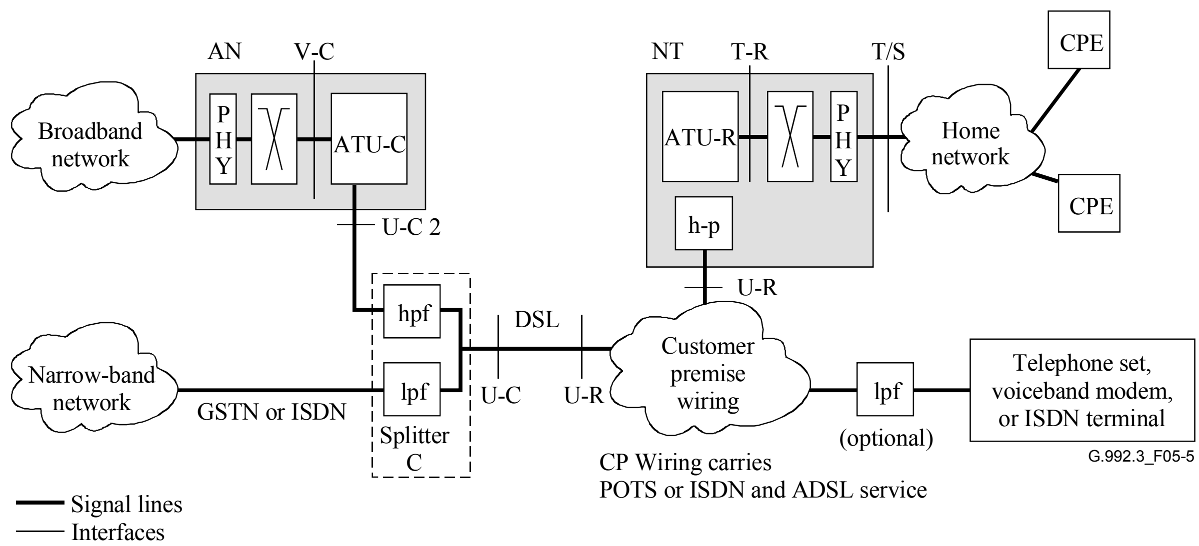



**Figure 5-5/G.992.3 – Generic application reference model for splitterless remote deployment**

NOTE 1 – The U-C and U-R interfaces are fully defined in this Recommendation. The V-C and T-R interfaces are defined only in terms of logical functions, not physical. The T/S interface is not defined in this Recommendation.

NOTE 2 – Implementation of the V-C and T-R interfaces is optional when interfacing elements are integrated into a common element.

NOTE 3 – One or other of the high-pass filters, which are part of the splitters, may be integrated into the ATU-x; if so, then the U-C 2 and U-R 2 interfaces become the same as the U-C and U-R interfaces, respectively.

NOTE 4 – More than one type of T-R interface may be defined, and more than one type of T/S interface may be provided from an ADSL NT (e.g., NT1 or NT2 types of functionalities).

NOTE 5 – A future issue of this Recommendation may deal with customer installation distribution and home network requirements.

NOTE 6 – Specifications for the splitters are given in Annex E.

### 5.4.1 Data service

Figure 5-6 depicts the typical application model for delivering data service over G.992.3, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, an ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals, which may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment, or other devices. These connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The connection between ATU-R and ATU-C will typically be a direct one through a DSL, with the customer premises endpoint of the DSL designated as U-R reference point and the network endpoint designated U-C reference point. The ATU-C is part of the Access Node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the V reference point. In this application model there will be no associated narrowband service carried on the same DSL.

The ADSL may be operated in all digital mode, without underlying service, or, may be operated in the mode for underlying POTS or ISDN service, with the bandwidth reserved for the underlying service being unused.

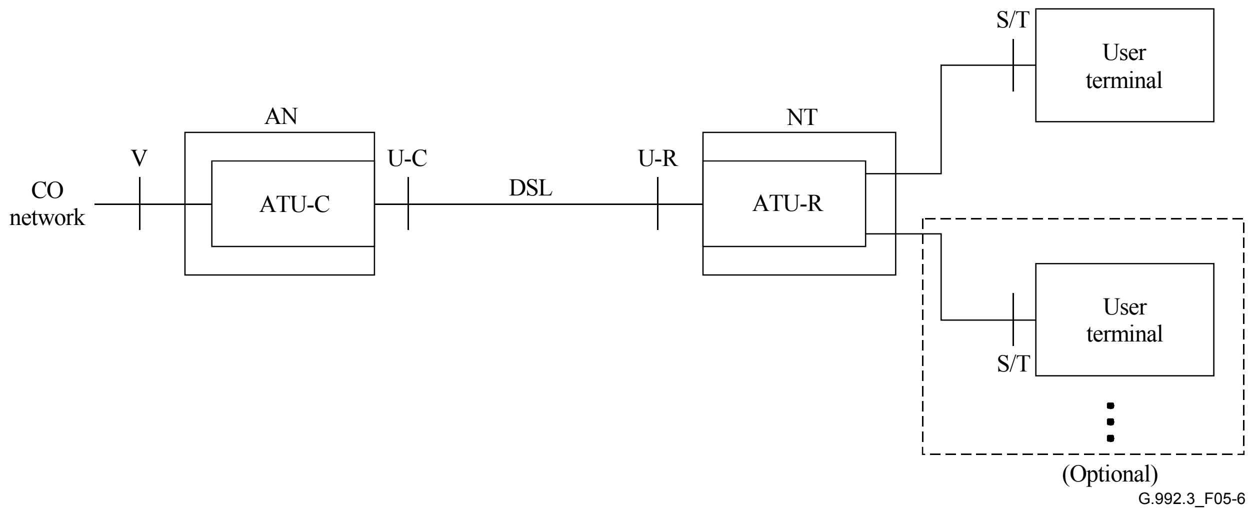



**Figure 5-6/G.992.3 – Data service application model**

### 5.4.2 Data with POTS service

Figure 5-7 depicts the typical application model for delivering data service over G.992.3 with an underlying POTS service on the same DSL, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, an ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals, which may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment, or other devices. The connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The ATU-R will not be directly attached to the U-R reference point but will be separated from the DSL by a high- pass filter element. Additionally, one or more voice terminals will also be part of the application model at the customer premises. These voice terminals may include POTS telephones, telephone answering devices, voiceband analog modems, or other devices. The voice terminals may

be attached directly the U-R reference point or may be connected through a low-pass filter element per voice terminal (splitterless remote deployment) or may be connected through a common low-pass filter element (remote deployment with splitter). At the central endpoint of the DSL, the ATU-C will connect to the U-C reference point through a high-pass filter element. The ATU-C is part of the Access Node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the V reference point. Additionally, there will be a low-pass filter element attached at the U-C reference point to connect with the GSTN core network.

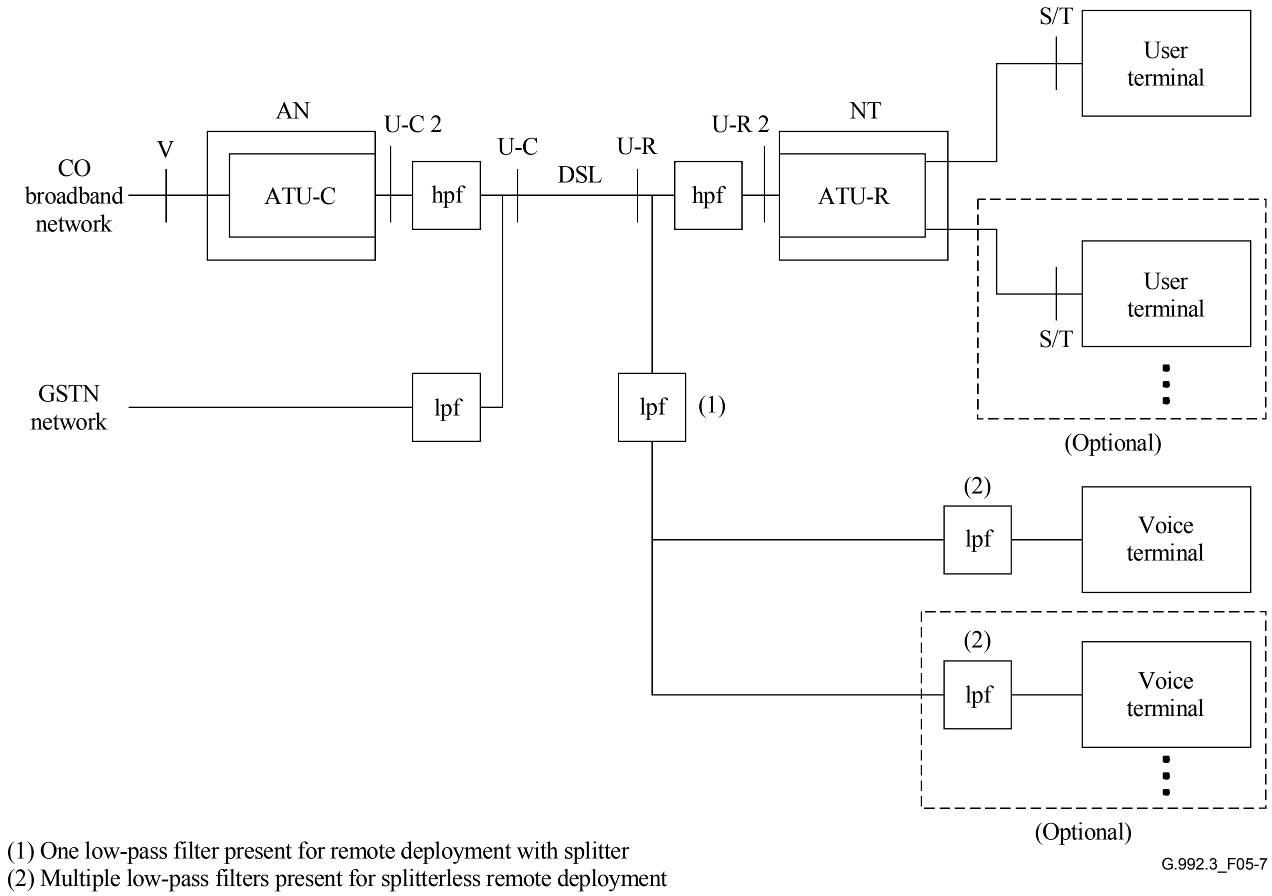



**Figure 5-7/G.992.3 – Data with POTS service application model**

NOTE – The low-pass filter shown at the customer premises in Figures 5-5 and 5-7 is also known as an in-line filter. The specification of in-line filter characteristics is outside the scope of this Recommendation. However, in-line filters are specified by regional standards bodies, e.g., see [B10].

### 5.4.3 Data with ISDN service

Figure 5-8 depicts the typical application model for delivering data service over G.992.3 with an underlying ISDN service on the same DSL, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, the ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals which may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment, or other devices. The connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The ATU-R will not be directly attached to the U-R reference point but will be separated from the DSL by a high-pass filter element. One ISDN NT will also be part of the application model at the customer premises. The ISDN NT is not attached directly the U-R reference point but will be separated from the DSL by a low-pass filter element. Additionally, one or more voice terminals will also be part of the application model at the customer premises. These voice terminals are connected to the ISDN NT and may include POTS or ISDN telephones, telephone answering devices, voiceband analog modems, or other devices. At the central endpoint of the DSL, the ATU-C will

connect to the U-C reference point through a high-pass filter element. The ATU-C is part of the Access Node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the V reference point. Additionally, there will be a low-pass filter element attached at the U-C reference point to connect with the GSTN core network.

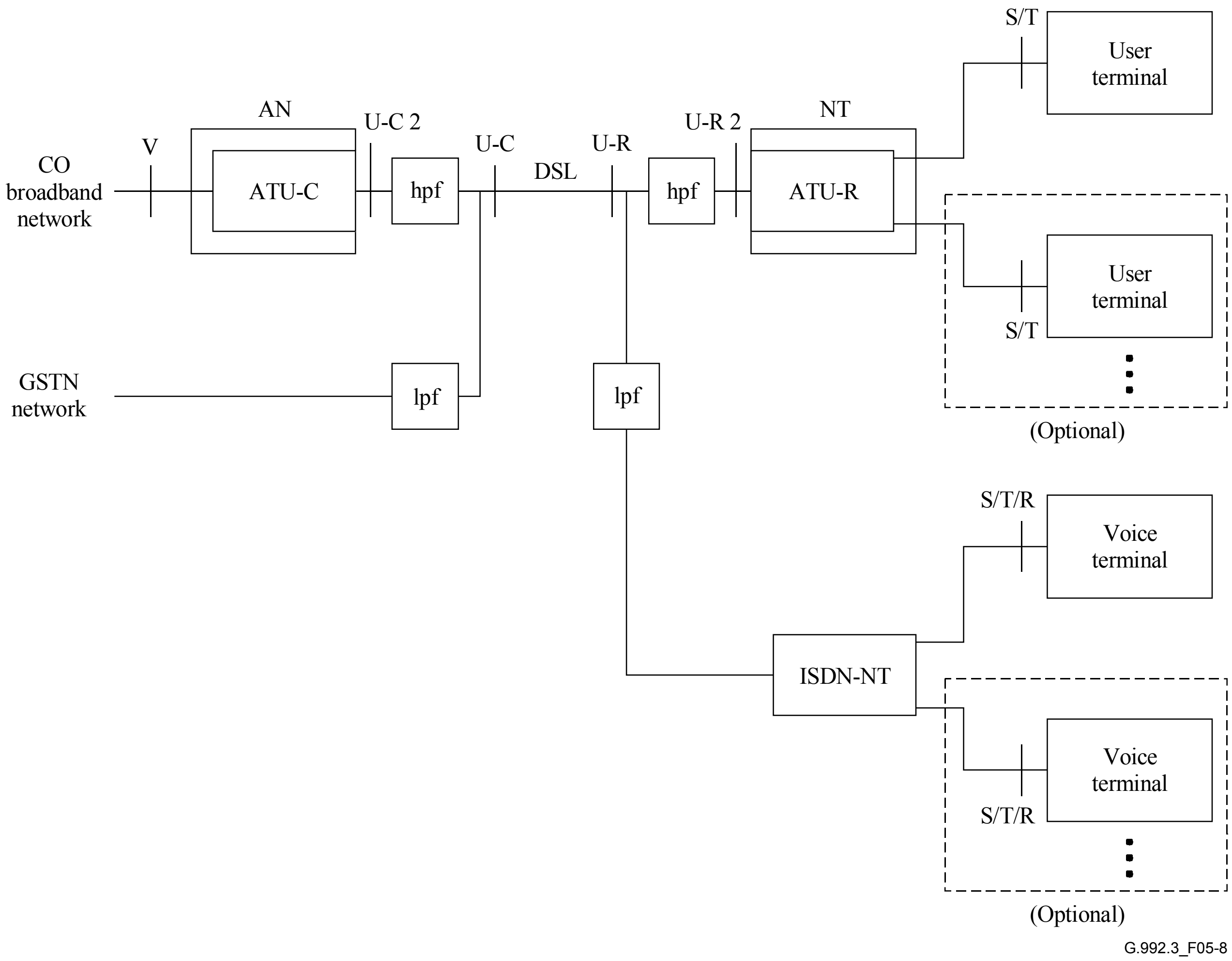



**Figure 5-8/G.992.3 – Data with ISDN service application model**

### 5.4.4 Voice over data service

Figure 5-9 depicts the typical application model for delivering data and voice services over G.992.3, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, an ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals and to one or more voice terminals. The data terminals may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment, or other devices. The voice terminals may include POTS or ISDN telephone devices, telephone answering devices, voiceband analog modems, or other devices. The connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The ATU-R and ATU-C will include a voice interworking function that allows a connection from the GSTN network to the voice terminal equipment. The connection between ATU-R and ATU-C will typically be a direct one through a DSL, with the customer premises endpoint of the DSL designated as U-R reference point and the network endpoint designated U-C reference point. The ATU-C is part of the Access Node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the V reference point. In addition, the ATU-C will connect to the GSTN core network.

The ADSL may be operated in all digital mode, without underlying service, or, may be operated in the mode for underlying POTS or ISDN service, with the bandwidth reserved for the underlying service being unused, or, although not depicted in Figure 5-8, there may also be an underlying POTS or ISDN service delivered through the DSL.

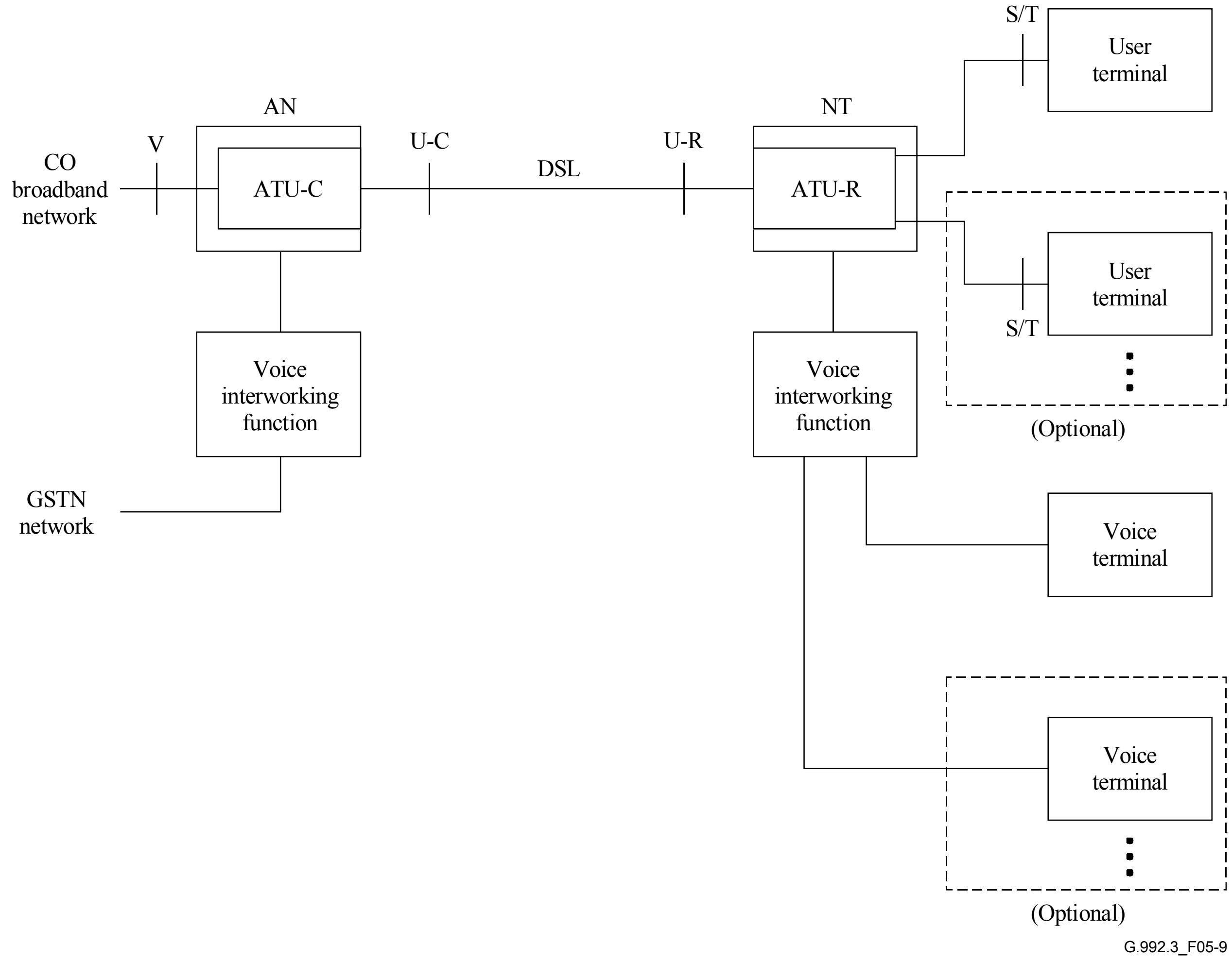



**Figure 5-9/G.992.3 – Voice over data service application model**

## 6 Transport Protocol Specific Transmission Convergence (TPS-TC) function

### 6.1 Transport capabilities

This Recommendation provides procedures for the transport of the output frame bearers of one to four unidirectional TPS-TC functions in both the upstream and downstream directions. For purposes of reference and identification, each of the TPS-TC functions within an ATU is labelled as if it were mapped to a particular frame bearer, i.e., TPS-TC #0, #1, #2, #3 would be mapped on frame bearer #0, #1, #2, #3 respectively. The TPS-TC functions may be of differing types, and each type is described in detail in Annex K.

After each of the transmit and receive TPS-TC functions has been mapped to a frame bearer during the G.994.1 phase of initialization, transport of the TPS-TC functions on frame bearers is carried out by underlying PMS-TC and PMD layers through a series of data frames and PMD symbols. The TPS-TC transport capabilities are configured by the control parameters described in Annex K. The control parameters provide for the application of appropriate data rates and characteristics of each TPS-TC function as if it were mapped to a particular frame bearer. Any receive TPS-TC function can be logically connected to any transmit TPS-TC function that supports the same TPS-TC

function type. Unless specifically described to the contrary in Annex K, the control parameters of the connected transmit and receive TPS-TC functions shall be configured with identical control parameter values during initialization and reconfiguration of the ATUs. The receive PMD, PMS-TC and TPS-TC functions recover the various input signals of the corresponding transmit TPS-TC function whose signals having been transported across the TPS-TC, PMS-TC, and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the TPS-TC function. Each TPS-TC type may have its own unique set of management primitives as defined in Annex K. The management primitives are handled in a transparent manner by the PMS-TC and MPS-TC functions.

## 6.2 Interface signals and primitives

Each ATU-C TPS-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure 6-1. Signals at the upper edge are defined in Annex K for each TPS-TC type; the depicted signals on the upper edge in Figure 6-1 are merely examples. However, signals at the lower, left, and right edges shall conform to the signals required by the PMS-TC and MPS-TC functional interfaces shown in Figure 6-1. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to a higher layer function and are defined for each TPS-TC type in Annex K. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to the PMS-TC function and shall conform to the primitives defined in 7.3. One very important characteristic of the data signals presented to the PMS-TC is that they shall be synchronized to local PMD clocks.

Each ATU-R TPS-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure 6-2, although the upper edge will vary depending on the TPS-TC type. In Figure 6-2 the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from Figure 6-1.

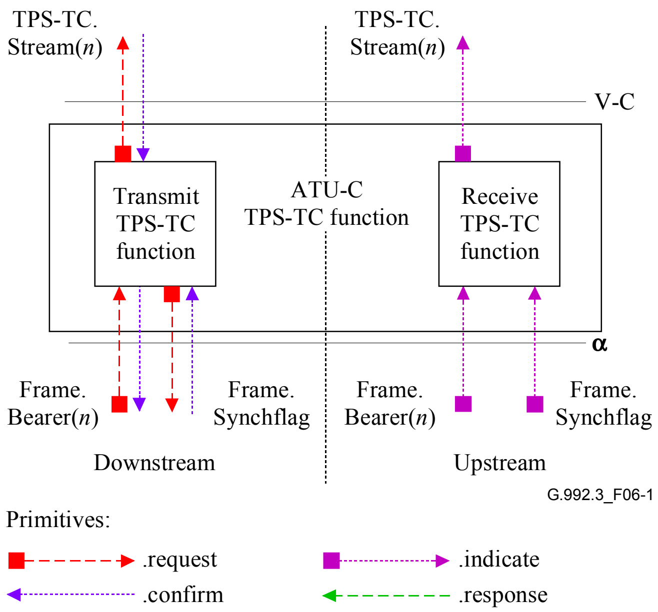



**Figure 6-1/G.992.3 – Signals of an ATU-C TPS-TC function**

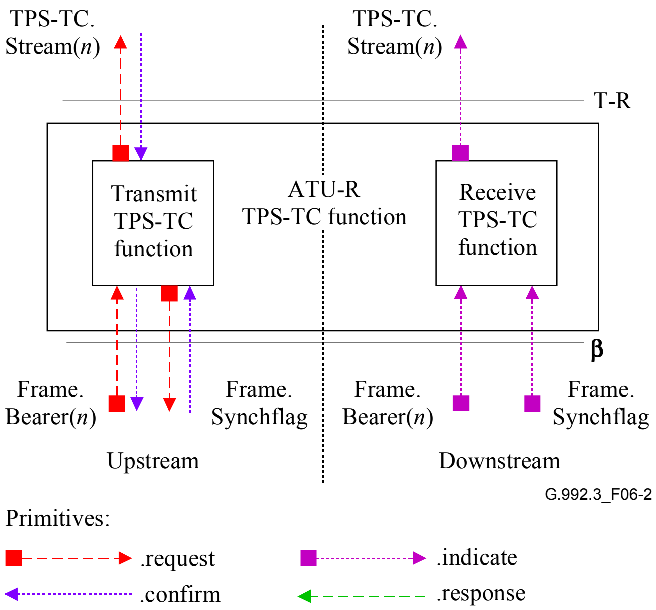



**Figure 6-2/G.992.3 – Signals of an ATU-R TPS-TC function**

The signals shown in Figures 6-1 and 6-2 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between a higher layer function and TPS-TC function are dependent on the type of the TPS-TC function. These are defined in Annex K.

The primitives that are used between the TPS-TC and PMS-TC functions are described in 7.3.

### 6.3 Control parameters

The configuration of the TPS-TC functions is controlled by a set of control parameters. Some of the control parameters are displayed in Table 6-1. The remainder of the control parameters is dependent on the TPS-TC type and is described in Annex K.

**Table 6-1/G.992.3 – TPS-TC Parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $N_{BC}$ | The number of enabled TPS-TC functions and the number of enabled frame bearers. The TPS-TC functions and frame bearers are labeled #0, #1, #2 and #3. $N_{BC}$ is the number of nonzero values in the { $type_0$, $type_1$, $type_2$, $type_3$} set. The value may be different for the ATU-C and the ATU-R. |
| $type_n$ | The TPS-TC type mapped to frame bearer #$n$ ($n$ = 0 to 3). The TPS-TC type shall be set to a value described in Annex K. The $type_n$ value of zero shall be used to disable TPS-TC function # $n$ and frame bearer # $n$. |
| $maxtype_n$ | The maximum number of TPS-TC functions of type $n$ supported. |

The values of all control parameters listed in Table 6-1 shall be set during the G.994.1 phase of initialization, in accordance with common capabilities of the ATU devices as described in 6.6. The capability to support these control parameters by each ATU in each direction may also be exchanged during the G.994.1 phase of initialization, as described in 6.6. All valid control parameter configurations are described in 6.3.1, and operation of the ATU with other configuration is outside the scope of this Recommendation. All mandatory control parameter configurations, which are described in 6.3.2, shall be supported by each ATU.

### 6.3.1 Valid configurations

An ATU may support up to four simultaneous TPS-TC functions in each direction. The control parameter $N_{BC}$ shall be in the 1 to 4 range.

The valid values of the control parameter $type_n$ shall be those contained within the Annex K or the value of zero. All other values are reserved for use by the ITU-T. If the $type_n$ parameter is nonzero for upstream and downstream, then it shall have the same value for upstream and downstream.

An ATU shall support mapping of all supported TPS-TC types to all supported frame bearers. The valid labelling of supported frame bearers shall start from 0 and increase by one. Thus there are only 4 cases: {0}, {0, 1}, {0, 1, 2}, or {0, 1, 2, 3}.

### 6.3.2 Mandatory configurations

An ATU shall support at least one combination of a TPS-TC function (of a type defined in Annex K) and a frame bearer in each direction.

## 6.4 Data plane procedures

Each TPS-TC function shall provide transmit data plane procedures as defined in Annex K that terminate in the assertion of the PMS-TC transmit primitives defined in 7.3. These procedures are otherwise transparent to the PMS-TC function.

## 6.5 Management plane procedures

Each TPS-TC function may provide local management primitives as defined in Annex K. Up to two of these primitives may be transported to the far end using the PMS-TC procedure defined in 7.8.2.2. These are transported in a manner that is otherwise transparent to the PMS-TC function.

Each TPS-TC function may additionally provide local processing of the primitives per ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. The results of local processing may be made available through management counter read commands of the MPS-TC function defined in 9.4.1.6. The format and syntax of the returned data from these commands is defined in Annex K.

## 6.6 Initialization procedure

TPS-TC functions shall be fully configured prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMS function in a manner that is outside the scope of this Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via a G.994.1 MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using G.994.1 CL or CLR messages. Most of the information conveyed through G.994.1 messages is dependent on the TPS-TC type and is defined in Annex K.

### 6.6.1 G.994.1 Phase

#### 6.6.1.1 G.994.1 Capabilities list message

The following information about the TPS-TC function shall be communicated through ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2] as part of the CL and CLR messages. Additional information appropriate to each TPS-TC function shall be arranged in blocks of information as described in Annex K. This information may be optionally requested and reported via G.994.1 CL and CLR messages at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once between ATU-C and ATU-R prior to enabling a TPS-TC function but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- Supported combinations of downstream frame bearers and TPS-TC types;
- Supported combinations of upstream frame bearers and TPS-types;
- Supported number of TPS-TC functions of type *n*.

This information on supported combinations is represented using a G.994.1 tree model of the information as described in Annex K. An ATU shall provide both the upstream and downstream information in CL and CLR messages. Corresponding to each Spar(2) bit from Annex K that is set to a 1, one additional block of information shall be provided in the CL and CLR messages. The supported number of TPS-TC functions of type *n* is represented using a G.994.1 tree model of the information as in Table 6-2.

**Table 6-2/G.992.3 – Format for TPS-TC capabilities information**

| Spar(2) bits | Definition of Npar(3) bits |
|---|---|
| Maxtype Upstream | Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the *maxtype* values for upstream, using an unsigned 3-bit value in the 0 to 4 range for each of the TPS-TC types 1 (STM), 2 (ATM) and 3 (PTM). |
| Maxtype Downstream | Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the *maxtype* values for downstream, using an unsigned 3-bit value in the 0 to 4 range for each of the TPS-TC types 1 (STM), 2 (ATM) and 3 (PTM). |

#### 6.6.1.2 G.994.1 Mode select message

The following control parameters of TPS-TC function shall be configured through ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2] as part of the MS message. Additional control parameters appropriate to each TPS-TC type shall be arranged in blocks of information as described in Annex K. This information shall be selected prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization. The information includes:

- Mapped combinations of downstream frame bearers and TPS-TC types;
- Mapped combinations of upstream frame bearers and TPS-TC types.

The Maxtype information shall not be included in an MS message. The Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.

This configuration for TPS-TC is represented using a G.994.1 tree model of the information as described in Annex K. An ATU provides both the upstream and downstream trees in the MS message. Corresponding to each Spar(2) bit from Annex K (one bit per combination of a frame bearer and TPS-TC type) that is set to a 1, one block of information shall be provided in the MS message as defined in Annex K. For each frame bearer, no more than 1 corresponding Spar(2) bit shall be set. A frame bearer that has one corresponding Spar(2) bit set, shall be enabled (i.e., $type_n > 0$). Any frame bearer that is supported but that does not have any its corresponding Spar(2) bit set shall be disabled (i.e., $type_n = 0$). $N_{BC}$ is the number of nonzero values in the $\{ type_0, type_1, type_2, type_3 \}$ set.

### 6.6.2 Channel analysis phase

No TPS-TC capabilities or control parameter settings are exchanged during the Channel Analysis Phase.

### 6.6.3 Exchange phase

No TPS-TC capabilities or control parameter settings are exchanged during the Exchange Phase.

## 6.7 On-line reconfiguration

On-line reconfiguration procedures are defined uniquely for each TPS-TC type in Annex K. The procedure may rely on the primitives associated with PMD.Synchflag for synchronization of the on-line reconfiguration changes.

## 6.8 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the TPS-TC functions are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

### 6.8.1 L0 link state operation

The TPS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane and management plane procedures defined in 6.4 and 6.5 as well as any specified in Annex K while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in 6.3 and Annex K shall apply.

#### 6.8.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

Entry into the L2 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in 9.5.3.3. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state may rely on the primitives associated with PMD.Synchflag for synchronization as further defined in Annex K.

#### 6.8.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU is intended to provide the transition from link state L0 to state L3. The transition should be as described in 9.5.3.1 or 9.5.3.2. Any specific TPS-TC tear-down procedure shall be as provided in Annex K.

### 6.8.2 L2 link state operation

The TPS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane and management plane procedures defined in 6.4 and 6.5 as well as specified in Annex K while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in 6.3 and Annex K shall apply.

The low power trim procedure shall not effect the operation of the TPS-TC function.

#### 6.8.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in either 9.5.3.4 or 9.5.3.5. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state may rely on the primitives associated with PMD.Synchflag for synchronization as further defined in Annex K.

#### 6.8.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

If operating in link state L2, the ATUs are intended to transition to link state L0 and make use of the orderly shutdown procedure. However, in the event of sudden power loss, the link may transition from link state L2 to state L3 directly. The transition should be as described in 9.5.3.2. Any specific TPS-TC tear-down procedure shall be as provided in Annex K.

### 6.8.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, any specified procedures for the TPS-TC function shall be as provided in Annex K.

#### 6.8.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in 6.6.

# 7 Physical Media Specific Transmission Convergence (PMS-TC) function

## 7.1 Transport capabilities

The primary purpose of the ATU PMS-TC function is to provide for the multiplexing and transport of several channels of information. The ATU PMS-TC function provides procedure to multiplex and transport:

- one to four frame bearers in upstream and downstream directions;
- NTR signal from the ATU-C to the ATU-R; and
- an overhead channel in both directions to support the MPS-TC function of each ATU.

After transmit PMS-TC procedures have been applied, transport of the frame bearers to a receive PMS-TC function is carried out by a pair of PMD functions through a series of PMD symbols. The transport capabilities of the PMS-TC function are configured using a number of control parameters described in 7.5 to provide application appropriate data rates and characteristics for each frame bearer. The values of control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The ATU receive PMS-TC function recovers the various input signals to the corresponding transmit PMS-TC function, those signals having been transported across the PMS-TC and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

The transmit PMS-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane and control plane. As a data plane element, the transmit PMS-TC function accepts one to four input frame bearers from the TPS-TC functions. All transmit data plane input signals are synchronized to the local PMD transmit clocks. These inputs are conveyed to the receive PMS-TC function interface as depicted in Figure 7-1. Octet boundaries in the frame bearers and the position of most significant bits are maintained from the input interface of the transmit PMS-TC function to the output interface of the receive PMS-TC function.

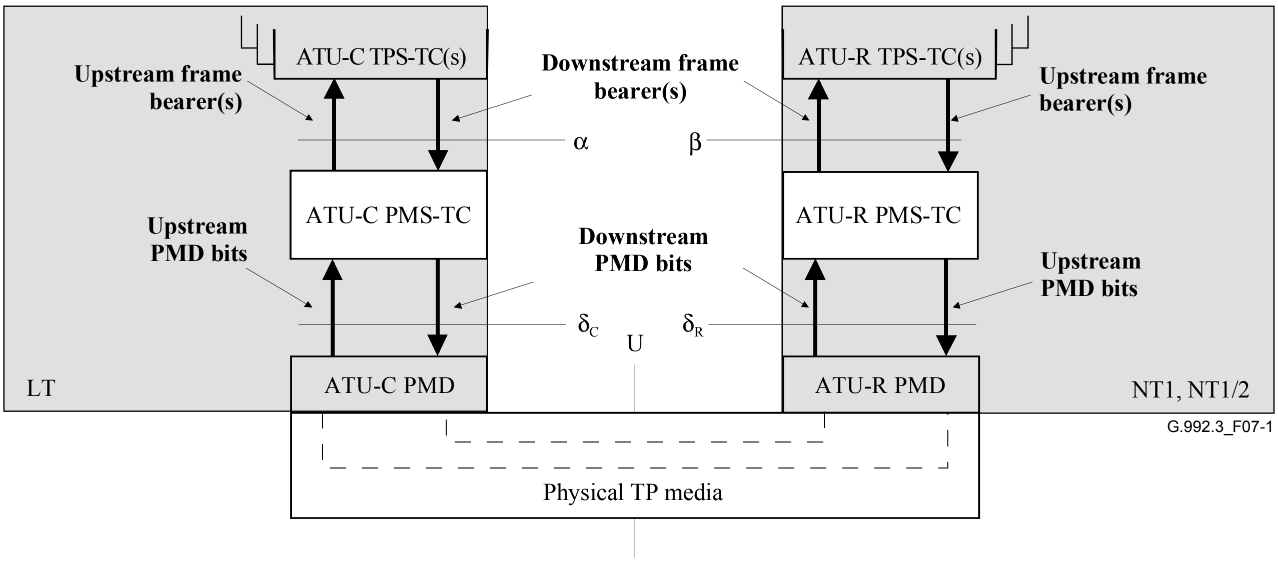



**Figure 7-1/G.992.3 – PMS-TC transport capabilities within the user plane**

As an element of the control plane, the pair of PMS-TC functions transports the NTR timing reference signal from the ATU-C to the ATU-R as depicted in Figure 7-2.

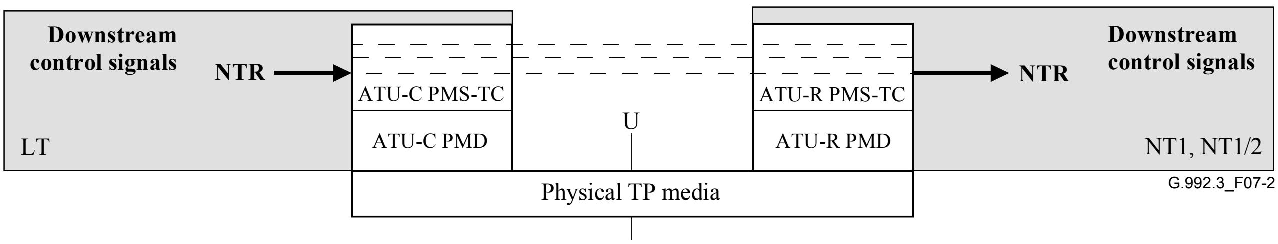



**Figure 7-2/G.992.3 – PMS-TC transport capabilities within the control plane**

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMS-TC function. However, the PMS-TC function provides management primitive indications to the MPS-TC function within the ATU, as depicted in Figure 7-3.

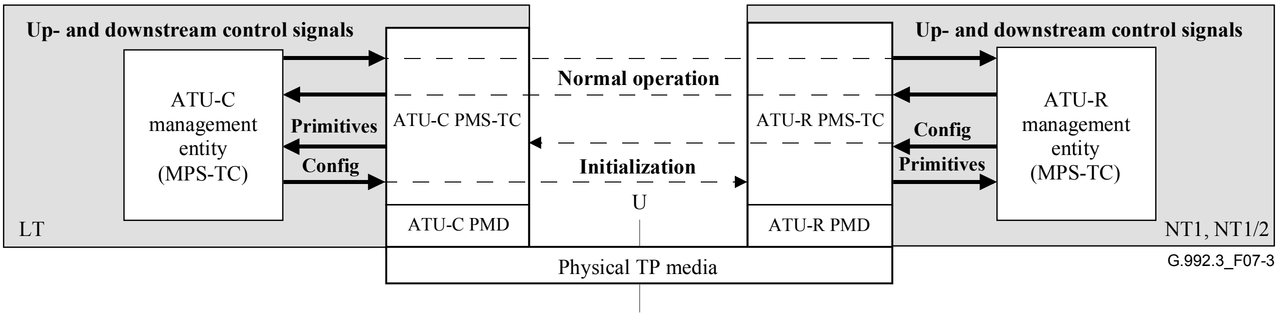



**Figure 7-3/G.992.3 – PMS-TC transport capabilities within the management plane**

### 7.2 Additional functions

In addition to transport functionality, the ATU transmit PMS-TC function also provides procedures for:

- scrambler;
- insertion of redundancy for Reed-Solomon-based forward error correction;
- insertion of checksums for block based error detection; and
- interleaving of data frames to spread the effect of impulsive impairments on the U interface.

These functions are configured by a number of control parameters described in 7.5 to provide application-appropriate FEC protection, latency, and impulse noise immunity for each frame bearer. The values of the control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The ATU receive PMS-TC function reverses each of the listed procedures so that the transported information may be recovered. Additionally, the ATU receive PMS-TC function provides several supervisory primitives associated with some of these functions (e.g., block checksum error, forward error correction event) as described in 7.9.1.

### 7.3 Block interface signals and primitives

The ATU-C PMS-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure 7-4. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to or from the TPS-TC function. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to or from the PMD function. The signals at the left and right edges convey control primitives within the ATU-C.

The ATU-R PMS-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure 7-5. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from the previous figure. Also, the NTR signal is conveyed as an output of the receive PMS-TC function at the ATU-R.

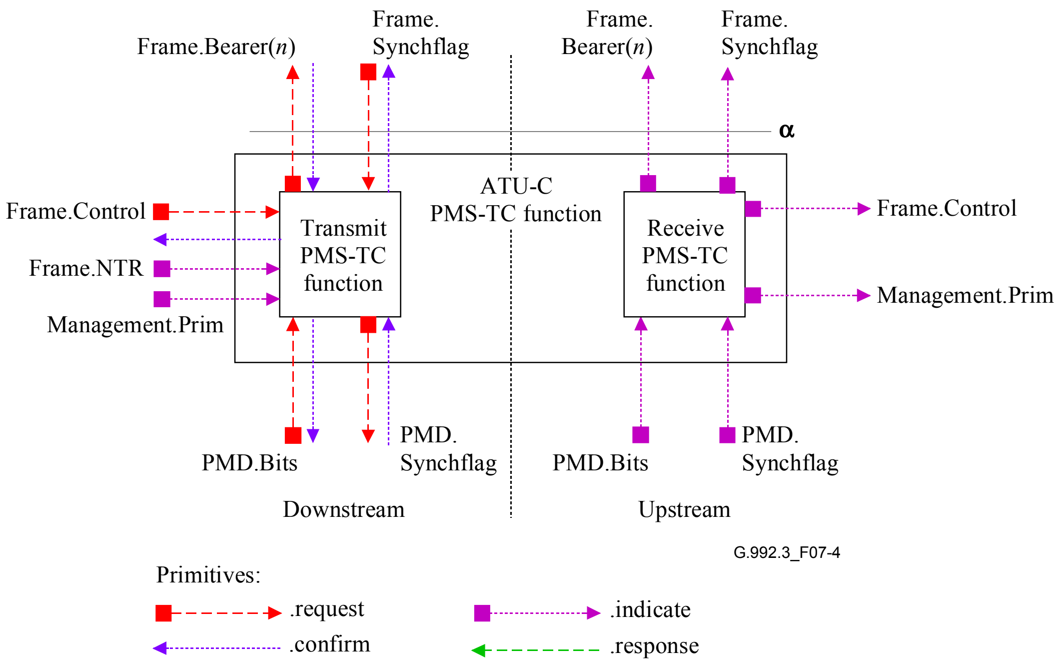



**Figure 7-4/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-C PMS-TC function**

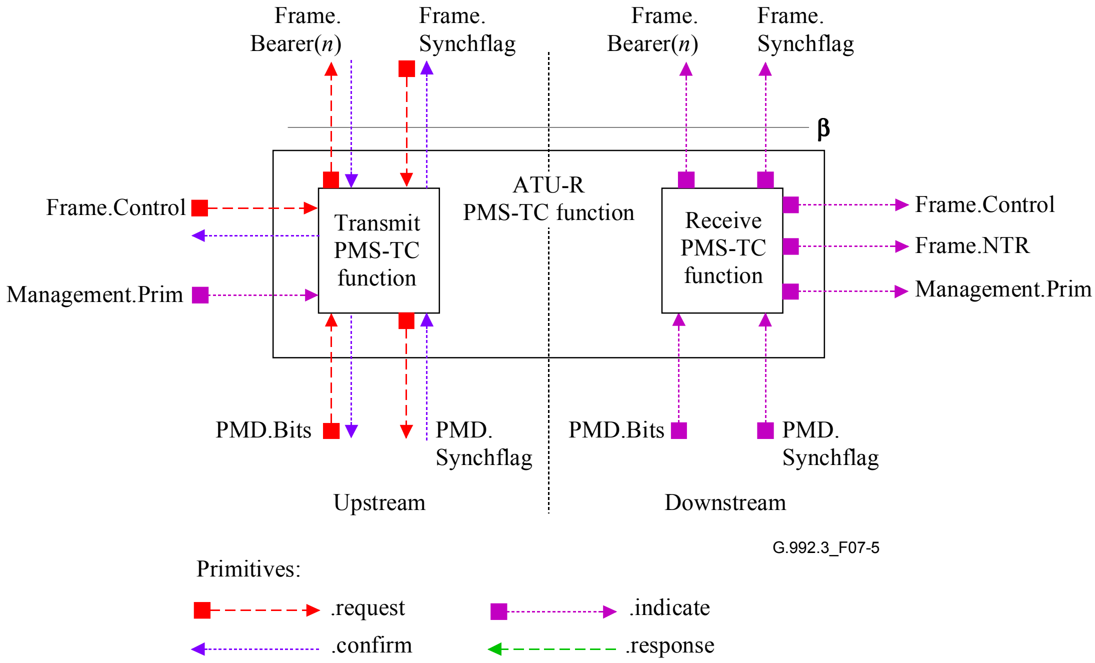



**Figure 7-5/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-R PMS-TC function**

The signals shown in Figures 7-4 and 7-5 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying function to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between the TPS-TC function and the PMS-TC function are described in Table 7-1. These primitives support the exchange of bearer data and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC control parameters. They also support coordinated on-line reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

The primitives that are used between the PMS-TC and PMD functions are described in clause 8.

The primitives for the transport of control messages via the shared overhead channel are described in Table 7-2. These primitives may be used by the PMD, TPS-TC, and other functions of the ATU. These primitives support the exchange of control messages and bits and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC overhead channel configuration.

A miscellaneous primitive for the transport of NTR by the PMS-TC function via the shared overhead channel is described in Table 7-3. Primitives used to signal maintenance indication primitives to the local maintenance entity are described in Table 7-4.

**Table 7-1/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives between the TPS-TC function and PMS-TC function**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Frame.Bearer(*n*) | .request | This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to request one or more octets from the transmit TPS-TC function to be transported. By the interaction of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the PMS-TC configuration (and underlying functions). Primitives are labelled $n$ = 0 to 3 corresponding to frame bearer #0 to #3. |
| | .confirm | The transmit TPS-TC function passes one or more octets to the PMS-TC function to be transported with this primitive. Upon receipt of octets with this primitive, the PMS-TC function shall perform the Mux Data Frame Selector procedure in 7.7.1.1. |
| | .indicate | The receive PMS-TC function passes one or more octets to the TPS-TC function that has been transported with this primitive. |
| Frame.Synchflag | .request | The transmit TPS-TC function passes requests to the PMS-TC function to cause the PMS-TC to relay a PMD.Synchflag request to the PMD layer. This Frame.Synchflag primitive is used to coordinate various reconfigurations of the TPS-TC function pairs. |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to confirm receipt of a Frame.Synchflag.request primitive. By the interaction of the request and confirm, the transmit TPS-TC function is notified that a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive has been received by the PMS-TC function. In particular, any Frame.Bearer(*n*).request primitives that have not yet been confirmed upon receipt of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive are known to be passed to the transmit PMD function after the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive. |
| | .indicate | The receive PMS-TC function makes use of this primitive to indicate to the TPS-TC function that a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive has been received by the PMS-TC function. Any indications already received by the TPS-TC function are known to have been passed from the receive PMD function prior to the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive. |

**Table 7-2/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives to transport control messages over the pair of PMS-TC functions**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Frame.Control | .request | The MPS-TC function uses this primitive to pass one entire control message for transport to the transmit PMS-TC function. Upon receipt of a message, the PMS-TC function shall begin the Transmitter Protocol procedure in 7.8.2.4.1. |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to confirm receipt of a Frame.Control.request primitive. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is synchronized to the rate that can be accommodated by the overhead rate of the PMS-TC functions. |
| | .indicate | The receive PMS-TC function uses this primitive to pass a single control messages or indications that are received to the MPS-TC function. |

**Table 7-3/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives to transport NTR information over the pair of PMS-TC functions**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Frame.NTR | .indicate | This primitive is used to convey the current phase of the NTR signal to the transmit PMS-TC function. Upon receipt of this primitive, the PMS-TC transmit function shall execute the NTR Transport procedure in 7.8.1. At the ATU-R, this primitive is passed by the receive PMS-TC function. |

**Table 7-4/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives to convey maintenance indications to the local maintenance entity**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Management.Prim | .indicate | This primitive is used by various local functions within the ATU to pass management anomalies, defects and parameters to the transmit MPS-TC function. Upon receipt of this primitive, the transmit PMS-TC function shall execute the Indicator Bits procedure in 7.8.2.2. This primitive is used by the receive PMS-TC function to signal a number of anomaly supervisory primitives to the MPS-TC function. |

### 7.4 Block diagram and internal reference point signals

Figure 7-6 depicts the functions within a transmit PMS-TC function that supports $N_{BC}$ frame bearers ($1 \leq N_{BC} \leq 4$). These frame bearers (i.e., Frame.Bearer(*n*).confirm primitives from the transmit TPS-TC function) are shown at the leftmost edge of Figure 7-6. Within the transmit PMS-TC function, there are one to four latency path functions that accept input from zero, one, or more of the frame bearers. Within each latency path function, there are three reference points labeled A, B, and C. The output signals from each latency path function at Reference Point C are combined by an additional multiplexing function to form the PMD bits (i.e., PMD.Bits.confirm primitives to the transmit PMD function), depicted at the rightmost edge of Figure 7-6.

The control input signals are depicted at the uppermost edge of Figure 7-6. These are encoded onto a shared overhead channel, one octet associated with each of the latency path functions. These sync octets are combined with frame bearer data within the latency path function at Reference Point A.

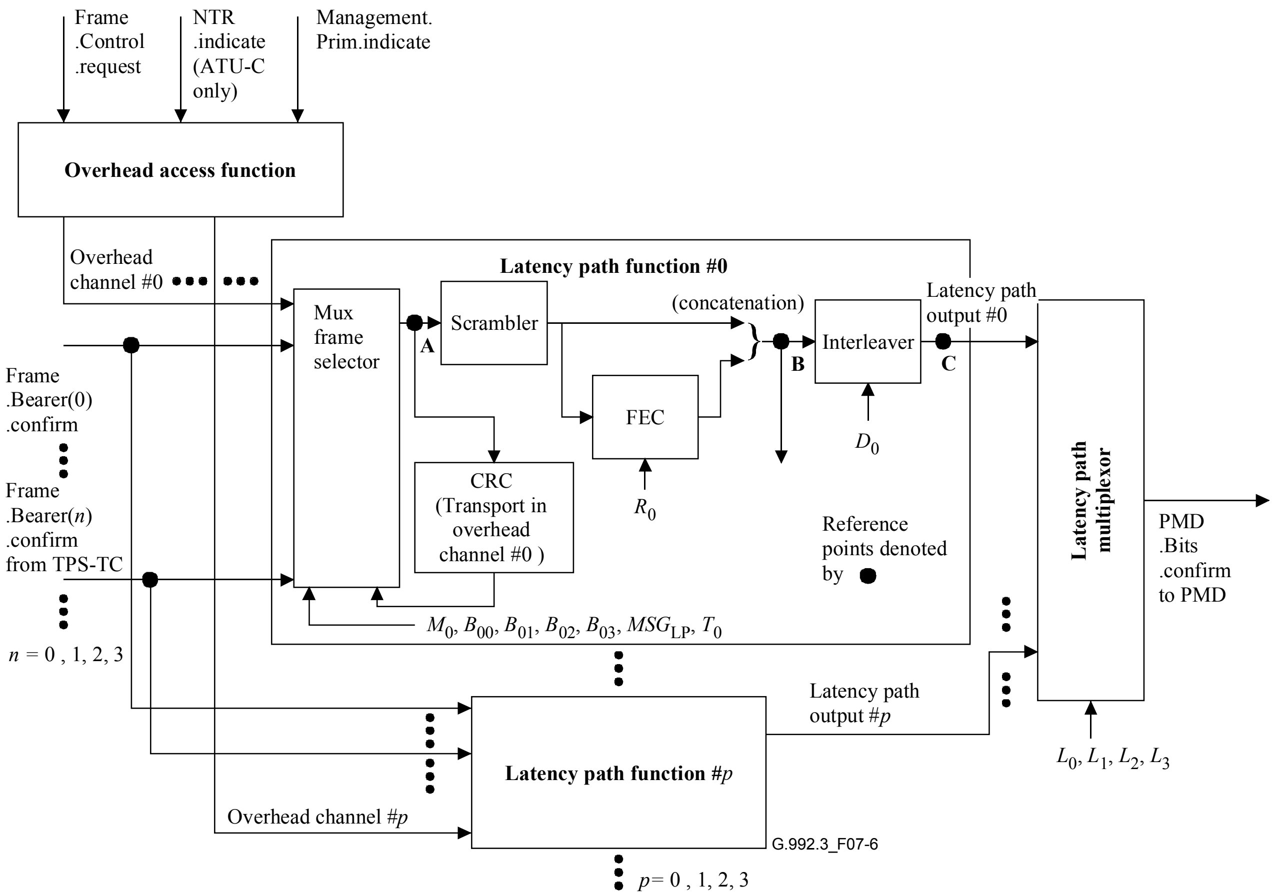



**Figure 7-6/G.992.3 – Block diagram of transmit PMS-TC function**

Because of the various functions depicted in Figure 7-6, the data within the transmit PMS-TC function has a different structural grouping as it moves from the frame bearers to the PMD bits. Reference points are defined within the block diagram for purposes of helping to depict this structure. These reference points are for clarity only. The reference points with which the PMS-TC procedures will be described are depicted in Figure 7-6 and listed in Table 7-5. It is important to note that all octet boundaries and positions of most significant bits in the frame bearers will be maintained at each of the reference points listed in Table 7-5.

**Table 7-5/G.992.3 – PMS-TC function internal reference points**

| Reference point | Definition |
|---|---|
| A: Mux Data Frame | The data within a latency path function after the sync octet has been added. |
| B: FEC Data Frame | The data within a latency path function after the output of the FEC redundancy octets are merged with scrambled data. |
| C: Interleaved FEC Data Frame | The data and redundancy octets that have been interleaved. This is the output signal of a latency path function. |

### 7.5 Control parameters

The configuration of the PMS-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table 7-6.

**Table 7-6/G.992.3 – Framing Parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $MSG_{min}$ | The minimum rate of the message based overhead that shall be maintained by the ATU. $MSG_{min}$ is expressed in bits per second. |
| $MSG_{max}$ | The maximum rate of the message based overhead that shall be allowed by the ATU. $MSG_{max}$ is expressed in bits per second. |
| $N_{BC}$ | See Table 6-1. This is a TPS-TC configuration parameter repeated here for clarity. |
| $N_{LP}$ | The number of latency paths enabled to transport frame bearers and overhead. The latency path functions are labeled #0, #1, #2 and #3. |
| $MSG_{LP}$ | The label of the latency path used to transport the message based overhead information. |
| $MSG_C$ | The number of octets in the message based portion of the overhead structure. |
| $B_{p.n}$ | The nominal number of octets from frame bearer #$n$ per Mux Data Frame at Reference Point A in latency path function #$p$. When $T_p$ is not set to 1 and $n$ is the lowest index of the frame bearers assigned to latency path #$p$, the number of octets from the frame bearer #$n$ in the latency path function #$p$ varies between $B_{p.n}$ and $B_{p.n} + 1$. |
| $M_p$ | The number of Mux Data Frames per FEC Data Frame in latency path function #$p$. |
| $T_p$ | The ratio of the number of Mux Data Frames to the number of sync octets in the latency path function #$p$. A sync octet is inserted with every $T_p$-th Mux Data Frame. When $T_p$ is not set to one, an extra frame bearer octet is carried whenever a sync octet is not inserted. |
| $R_p$ | The number of RS redundancy octets per codeword in latency path function #$p$. This is also the number of redundancy octet per FEC Data Frame in the latency path function #$p$. |
| $D_p$ | The interleaving depth in the latency path function #$p$. |
| $L_p$ | The number of bits from the latency path function #$p$ included per PMD.Bits.confirm primitive. |

The first two control parameters listed in Table 7-6 establish persistent constraints upon the operation of the PMS-TC function that apply during all initialization and reconfiguration procedures. The values of these control parameters shall be set during the G.994.1 phase of initialization, in accordance with common requirements of the ATU devices. The requirements for these control parameters by each ATU in each direction may also be exchanged during the G.994.1 phase of initialization.

The remaining control parameters listed in Table 7-6 establish the specific parameters that control the PMS-TC procedures described in this clause. The values of these control parameters shall be set during the PMD initialization procedure in accordance with capabilities of each ATU and requirements of each ATU's higher layers as determined by TPS-TC initialization procedures. Additionally, some of the control parameters in Table 7-6 may be modified during on-line reconfiguration procedures.

All valid control parameter configurations are described in 7.6.2. All mandatory control parameter configurations described in 7.6.3 shall be supported by each ATU.

### 7.6 Frame structure

The various transported data can be assigned various structural groupings as it moves through the transmit PMS-TC function. These taken together are termed the frame structure. The frame structure is defined for clarity only and the actual groupings within an ATU implementation may vary.

The ATU frame structure for the case of two frame bearers transported over a single latency path ($N_{BC} = 2$, $N_{LP} = 1$, $T_p = 1$) is illustrated in Figure 7-7. This figure shows the frame structure and data groupings at the start of the PMS-TC procedure, at each Reference Point A, B, and C of latency path function #0, and at the end of the PMS-TC procedure.

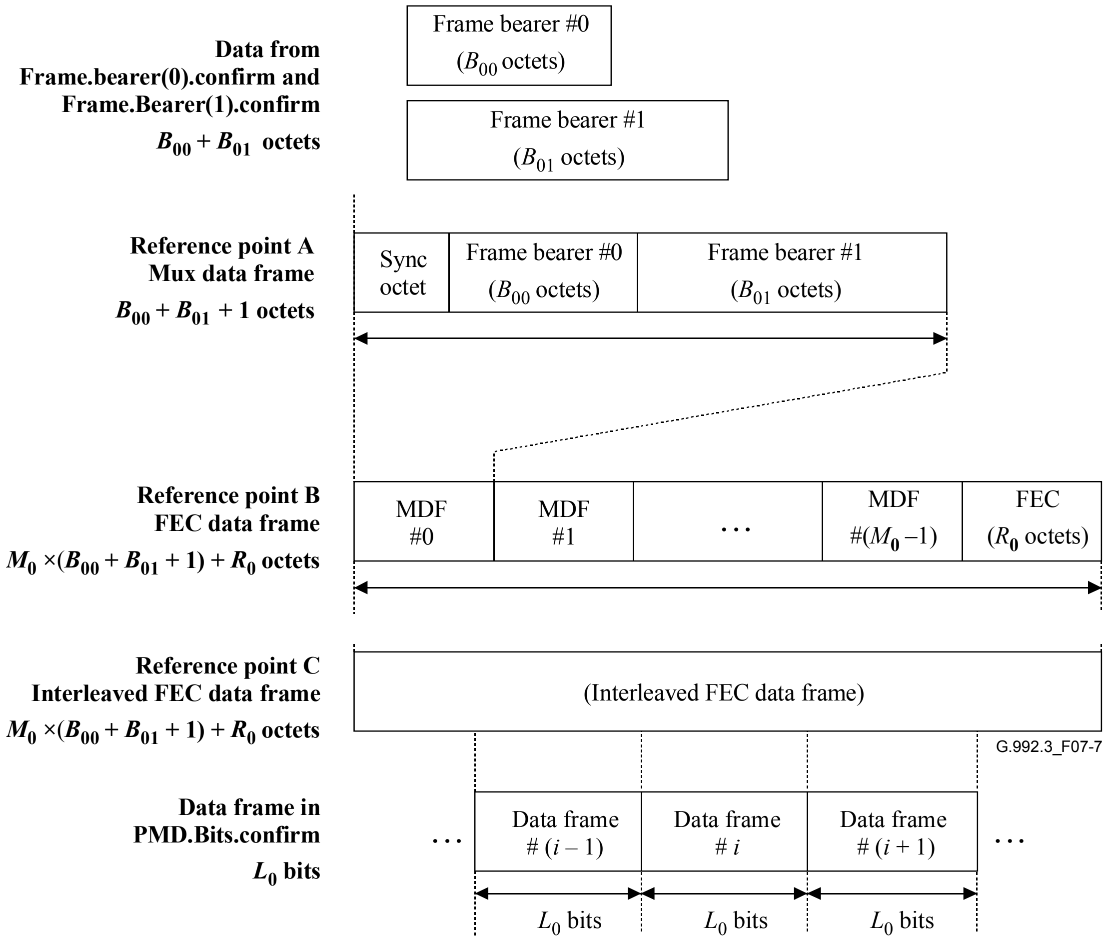



**Figure 7-7/G.992.3 – Illustration of frame structure with single latency dual bearers and $T_p = 1$**

As a further illustration, Figure 7-8 depicts the frame structure when the PMS-TC function is configured to support two frame bearers with two latency paths ($N_{BC} = 2$, $N_{LP} = 2$, $B_{00} = 0$, $B_{11} = 0$). $MSG_{LP}$ is set to one and $T_0 = 1$. Figure 7-8 illustrates PMS-TC functions for a Mux Data Frame (MDF) that does not include the sync octet for the second latency, assuming that $T_1$ is not set to 1 for this example and the current mux data frame selector counter modulo $T_p$ is not equal to 0.

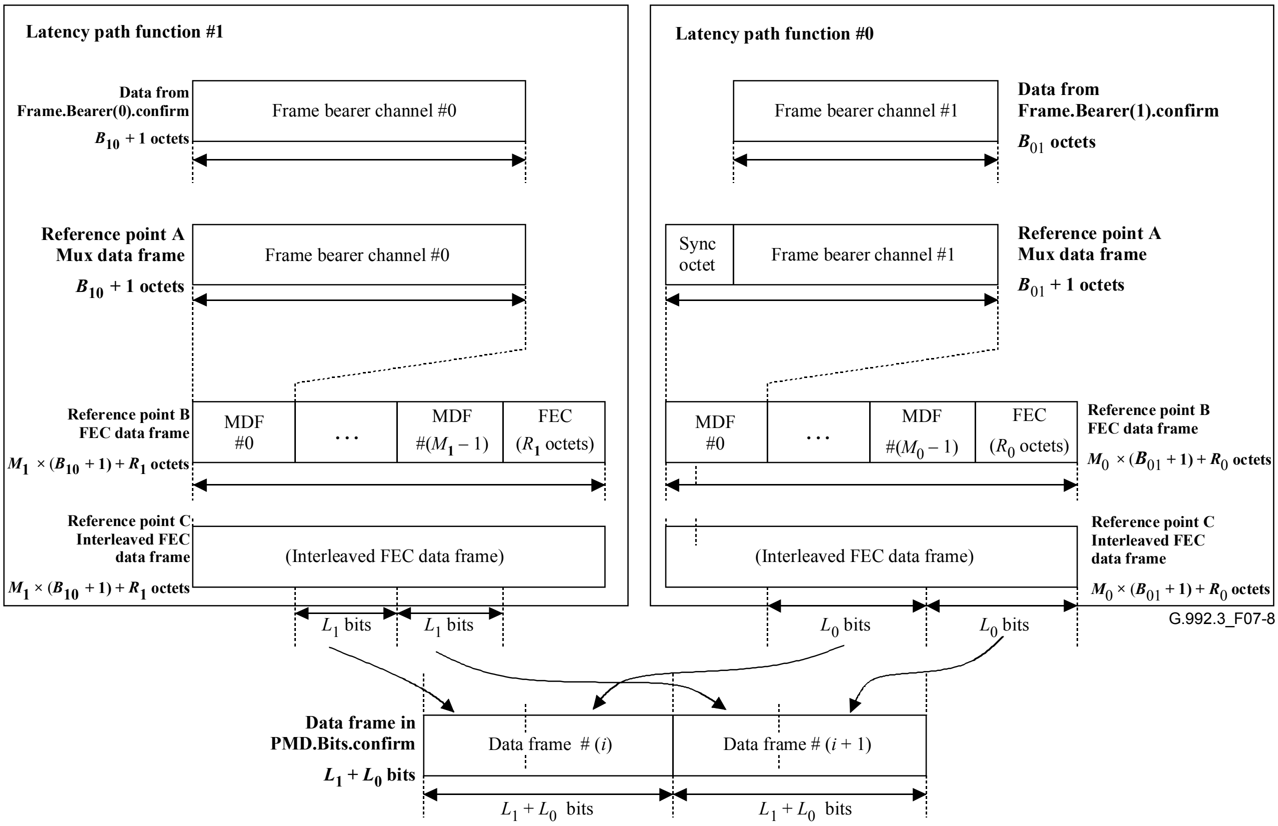



**Figure 7-8/G.992.3 – Illustration of frame structure with dual latency and dual bearers**

### 7.6.1 Derived definitions

Table 7-7 displays several definitions of symbols that derive from the PMS-TC control parameters and that are used to describe characteristics of the ATU data frame. These definitions are for clarity only.

**Table 7-7/G.992.3 – Derived characteristics of the ATU data frame**

| Symbols | Definition and value |
|---|---|
| $K_p$ | **Definition**: The number of octets per Mux Data Frame in latency path function #*p* $$K_p = \sum_{i=0}^{N_{BC}-1} B_{p,i} + 1$$ |
| $N_{FEC.p}$ | **Definition**: The number of octets per FEC Data Frame and Interleaved FEC Data Frame in latency path function #*p* $N_{FEC.p} = M_p \times K_p + R_p$ |
| $S_p$ | **Definition**: The number of PMD.Bits.request primitives (and correspondingly the number of PMD symbols) over which the FEC Data Frame spans, not accounting for the $$S_p = \frac{8 \times N_{FEC.p}}{L_p}$$ The value of $S_p$ may represent a non-integer value. |

**Table 7-7/G.992.3 – Derived characteristics of the ATU data frame**

| Symbols | Definition and value |
|---|---|
| $net\_act_{p.n}$ | **Definition**: Net data rate of frame bearer #$n$ in latency path function #$p$<br>When $T_p = 1$:<br>$net\_act_{p.n} = \frac{B_{p.n} \times M_p}{S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{B_{p.n} \times M_p \times L_p}{K_p \times M_p + R_p} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$<br>When $T_p \neq 1$, for bearers associated to the lowest index:<br>$net\_act_{p.n} = \left( \frac{B_{p.n} \times M_p}{S_p} + \frac{(T_p - 1) \times M_p}{T_p \times S_p} \right) \times 32 \text{ kbit/s}$<br>$= \frac{(T_p \times (B_{p.n} + 1) - 1) \times M_p \times L_p}{T_p \times (K_p \times M_p + R_p)} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$<br>for bearers associated with subsequence values in the list:<br>$net\_act_{p.n} = \frac{B_{p.n} \times M_p}{S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{B_{p.n} \times M_p \times L_p}{K_p \times M_p + R_p} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$ |
| $Net_{p.act}$ | **Definition**: Net data rate of latency path function #$p$<br>When $T_p = 1$, $Net_{p.act} = \frac{(K_p - 1) \times M_p}{S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{(K_p - 1) \times M_p \times L_p}{K_p \times M_p + R_p} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$<br>When $T_p \neq 1$, $Net_{p.act} = \left( \frac{(K_p - 1) \times M_p}{S_p} + \frac{(T_p - 1) \times M_p}{T_p \times S_p} \right) \times 32 \text{ kbit/s}$<br>$= \frac{(T_p \times K_p - 1) \times M_p \times L_p}{T_p \times (K_p \times M_p + R_p)} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$ |
| $OR_p$ | **Definition**: Overhead rate of latency path function #$p$<br>$OR_P = \frac{M_p}{T_p \times S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{M_p \times L_p}{T_p \times (K_p \times M_p + R_p)} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$ |
| $delay_p$ | **Definition**: PMS-TC delay of latency path function #$p$<br>Nominal one-way maximum transport delay of latency path function #$p$ is defined as:<br>$delay_p = \frac{\lceil S_p \times D_p \rceil}{4} ms, (\text{where} \lceil x \rceil \text{denotes rounding to the higher integer})$ |
| $SEQ_p$ | **Definition**: Length of the sync octet sequence of latency path function #$p$<br>$SEQ_p = \begin{cases} 2 & if\ p \neq MSG_{LP}\ and\ latency\ path\ \#p\ is\ not\ the\ lowest\ latency\ path\ (See\ 7.8.2.1) \\ 6 & if\ p \neq MSG_{LP}\ and\ latency\ path\ \#p\ is\ the\ lowest\ latency\ path\ (See\ 7.8.2.1) \\ MSG_C + 2 & if\ p = MSG_{LP}\ and\ latency\ path\ \#p\ is\ not\ the\ lowest\ latency\ path\ (See\ 7.8.2.1) \\ MSG_C + 6 & if\ p = MSG_{LP}\ and\ latency\ path\ \#p\ is\ the\ lowest\ latency\ path\ (See\ 7.8.2.1) \end{cases}$ |

**Table 7-7/G.992.3 – Derived characteristics of the ATU data frame**

| Symbols | Definition and value |
|---|---|
| $PER_p$ | **Definition**: The period of the overhead channel in latency path #$p$ <br> $PER_p = \frac{T_p \times S_p \times SEQ_p}{4 \times M_p} ms$ |
| *PMS-TC* | **Definition**: Impulse Noise Protection $INP_p$ in number of DMT symbols of latency path function #$p$ <br> $INP_p = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \times (S \times D) \times \left(\frac{R}{N\_FEC}\right)$ |

### 7.6.2 Valid framing configurations

Table 7-8 displays the allowable range of each PMS-TC control parameter. Additionally, the control parameters shall satisfy some relationships to one another for the set of control parameter values to be valid as displayed in Table 7-8. Some ranges of the valid control parameter values are expressed in terms of NSC, which is the number of subcarriers as defined in clause 8.

An additional requirement is made on the value of the $B_{p.n}$. Each frame bearer shall be transported in one and only one latency path. This means that in any valid framing configuration, there shall be no more than one non-zero control parameter in each set $\{B_{0.n}, B_{1.n}, B_{2.n}, B_{3.n}\}$.

**Table 7-8/G.992.3 – Valid framing configurations**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $MSG_{min}$ | $4000 \le MSG_{min} \le 64000$ |
| $MSG_{max}$ | $MSG_{max} = 64000$ |
| $N_{BC}$ | $1 \le N_{BC} \le 4$ |
| $N_{LP}$ | $1 \le N_{LP} \le 4$ |
| $MSG_{LP}$ | $0 \le MSG_{LP} \le 3$ |
| $MSG_C$ | The valid values of $MSG_C$ are those required to support valid minimum and maximum overhead rates, $MSG_{min}$ and $MSG_{max}$. |
| $B_{p.n}$ | $0 \le B_{p.n} \le 254,\ \sum_n B_{p.n} \le 254$ |
| $M_p$ | 1, 2, 4, 8 or 16. If $R_p = 0$ then $M_p = 1$ |
| $T_p$ | $1 \le T_p \le 64$ |
| $R_p$ | 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, or 16 |
| $D_p$ | 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64. If $R_p = 0$ then $D_p = 1$ |
| $L_p$ | $1 \le L_p \le 15 \times (NSC - 1)$ <br> and $\sum L_p$ shall be such that $8 \le \sum L_p \le 15 \times (NSC - 1)$ |
| Relation of $S_p$ and $M_p$ | Configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid: $M_p/2 \le S_p \le 32 \times M_p$ (see Note 1). |

**Table 7-8/G.992.3 – Valid framing configurations**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| Overhead Rate Constraints | Configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid:<br>0.8 kbit/s $\leq OR_p \leq$ 64 kbit/s (see Note 2). |
| Delay Constraints | Configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid:<br>$\frac{1}{2} \leq S_p \leq 64$ (see Note 3). |
| Overhead Channel Period | Configurations that provide a period for each overhead channel $PER_p$ between 15 and 20 ms are valid. |
| NOTE 1 – This condition is a bound on the number of Mux Data Frames per symbol.<br>NOTE 2 – The 0.8 kbit/s overhead rate lowerbound corresponds to an $SEQ_p = 2$ (see Table 7-14) and an overhead channel period of 20 ms.<br>NOTE 3 – This condition puts bounds on the number of FEC codewords per symbol. | |

### 7.6.3 Mandatory configurations

#### 7.6.3.1 Mandatory latency path function

An ATU shall support all combinations of the values of PMS-TC control parameters for latency path function #0 displayed in Tables 7-9 and 7-10 in the downstream and upstream direction, respectively. Configurations that result in non-integer values $S_0$ shall be supported. The values shown in the tables shall be supported in all transmitter and receivers.

**Table 7-9/G.992.3 – Mandatory downstream control parameter support for latency path #0**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $MSG_{min}$ | All valid values of $MSG_{min}$ shall be supported within latency path #0. |
| $MSG_{max}$ | $MSG_{max}$ shall be set to 64000 within latency path #0. |
| Number of frame bearers | $N_{BC}$ |
| $B_{00}$ | All valid values of $B_{00}$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |
| $MSG_{LP}$ | 0 |
| $MSG_C$ | All valid values of $MSG_C$ shall be supported within path #0. |
| $M_0$ | All valid values of $M_0$ shall be supported. |
| $T_0$ | All valid values of $T_0$ shall be supported. |
| $R_0$ | All valid values of $R_0$ shall be supported. |
| $D_0$ | All valid values of $D_0$ shall be supported. |
| $L_0$ | All valid values of $L_0$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |

**Table 7-10/G.992.3 – Mandatory upstream control parameter support for latency path #0**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $MSG_{min}$ | All valid values of $MSG_{min}$ shall be supported within latency path #0. |
| $MSG_{max}$ | $MSG_{max}$ shall be set to 64000 within latency path #0. |
| Number of frame bearers | $N_{BC}$ |
| $B_{00}$ | All valid values of $B_{00}$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |
| $MSG_{LP}$ | 0 |
| $MSG_C$ | All valid values of $MSG_C$ shall be supported within latency path #0. |
| $M_0$ | All valid values of $M_0$ shall be supported. |
| $T_0$ | All valid values of $T_0$ shall be supported. |
| $R_0$ | All valid values of $R_0$ shall be supported. |
| $D_0$ | All valid values of $D_0$ shall be supported such that $Dp \leq 8$. |
| $L_0$ | All valid values of $L_0$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |

### 7.6.3.2 Other latency path functions

An ATU shall support all combinations of the values of PMS-TC control parameters for each optional latency path #*p* that is supported as displayed in Tables 7-11 and 7-12 in the downstream and upstream direction, respectively. Configurations that result in non-integer values $S_P$ shall be supported. The values shown in the tables shall be supported in transmitter and receiver.

**Table 7-11/G.992.3 – Mandatory downstream control parameter support for optional latency paths**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $MSG_{min}$ | All valid values of $MSG_{min}$ shall be supported within any supported latency path. |
| $MSG_{max}$ | $MSG_{max}$ shall be set to 64000 within any supported latency path. |
| Number of frame bearers | $N_{BC}$ |
| $B_{p0}$ | All valid values of $B_{p0}$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |
| $MSG_{LP}$ | Any supported latency path function shall be capable of carrying the message based portion of the overhead structure. $MSG_{LP} = p$ shall be supported. |
| $MSG_C$ | All valid values of $MSG_C$ shall be supported within any supported latency path. |
| $M_P$ | All valid values of $M_p$ shall be supported. |
| $T_p$ | All valid values of $T_p$ shall be supported |
| $R_p$ | $R_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of $R_p$ up to and including $R_{p\ max}$ shall be supported. |
| $D_p$ | $D_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of $D_p$ up to and including $D_{p\ max}$ shall be supported. |
| $L_p$ | All valid values of $L_p$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |

**Table 7-12/G.992.3 – Mandatory upstream control parameter support for optional latency paths**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $MSG_{min}$ | All valid values of $MSG_{min}$ shall be supported within any supported latency path. |
| $MSG_{max}$ | $MSG_{max}$ shall be set to 64000 within any supported latency path. |
| Number of frame bearers | $N_{BC}$ |
| $B_{p0}$ | All valid values of $B_{p0}$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |
| $MSG_{LP}$ | Any supported latency path function shall be capable of carrying the message based portion of the overhead structure. $MSG_{LP} = p$ shall be supported. |
| $MSG_C$ | All valid values of $MSG_C$ shall be supported within any supported latency path. |
| $M_p$ | All valid values of $M_p$ shall be supported. |
| $T_p$ | All valid values of $T_p$ shall be supported |
| $R_p$ | $R_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of $R_p$ up to and including $R_{p\ max}$ shall be supported. |
| $D_p$ | $D_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of $D_p$ up to and including $D_{p\ max}$ shall be supported. |
| $L_p$ | All valid values of $L_p$ shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU. |

## 7.7 Data plane procedures

### 7.7.1 Latency path function

#### 7.7.1.1 Mux data frame selector

Within latency path function #*p*, the Mux Data Frame Selector multiplexes the frame bearers with the overhead channel for latency path function #*p*. The output of the Mux Data Frame Selector is in the structure of the Mux Data Frame at Reference Point A. The control parameters $M_p$, $T_p$, and $B_{p0}$, … , $B_{p3}$ determine the selection and the order of the octets from Frame.Bearer(*n*).confirm primitives, the CRC octet described in 7.7.1.2, and the Overhead Channel #*p* from the Overhead Access Function described in 7.8.2.

The Mux Data Frame Selector maintains a counter that is initialized to zero at the completion of initialization. The counter is incremented each time a complete Mux Data Frame is constructed and is used in conjunction with the control parameter $T_p$ in the following manner. The first octet of every Mux Data Frame is nominally used to transport the shared overhead channel of the PMS-TC function. However, this octet is used to carry data sometimes if the value of $T_p$ is not 1. If $T_p$ is not one and if the counter value modulo $T_p$ is zero, then the octet is used to transport overhead; otherwise an extra octet of data is transported. The data is taken from the frame bearer with the lowest index that is assigned to latency path #*p*. In the case that there is no frame bearer assigned to latency path #*p*, an octet with the value of zero is used.

When the octet is used for overhead, the next octet is taken from the overhead message structure described in 7.8.2.1. Because the counter used in conjunction with $T_p$ is reset at the completion of initialization, the first Mux Data Frame generated always has a sync octet carrying the overhead channel.

The remaining octets of every Mux Data Frame in latency path #*p* are constructed by taking $B_{p0}$ octets from Frame.Bearer(0).confirm primitives, $B_{p1}$ octets from Frame.Bearer(1), etc. The octets are taken from the primitives so that their octet alignment, MSB position, and order within the frame bearer are maintained. Each Mux Data Frame always contains a total of $K_p$ octets.

The Mux Data Frame Selector procedure of the latency path function #*p* creates $M_p$ Mux Data Frames, a total of $M_p \times K_p$ octets. This procedure is followed by the CRC procedure.

#### 7.7.1.2 Cyclic redundant checksum

Each latency path periodically calculates a CRC octet, *crc*0 to *crc*7, to enable error detection. The CRC covers $T_P \times SEQ_p \times K_p - 1$ message octets, starting from the first octet after the sync octet of the first Mux Data Frame and ending with the last octet of the last Mux Data Frame.

The *crc*0 to *crc*7 bits shall be computed from $(T_P \times SEQ_p \times K_p - 1) \times 8$ message bits at Reference Point A using the equation:

$$crc(D) = M(D)D^8 \text{ modulo } G(D)$$

where:

$$M(D) = m_0Dk^{-1} + m_1 D^{k-2} + \ldots + m_{k-2} D + m_{k-1}, \text{ is the message polynomial,}$$

$$k = (T_p \times SEQ_p \times K_p - 1) \times 8,$$

$$G(D) = D^8 + D^4 + D^3 + D^2 + 1, \text{ is the generating polynomial,}$$

$$crc(D) = c_0D^7 + c_1D^6 + \ldots + c_6D + c_7, \text{ is the check polynomial,}$$

and $D$ is the delay operator.

That is, the CRC is the remainder when $M(D)\ D^8$ is divided by $G(D)$. Each octet shall be input into the *crc(D)* equation least significant bit first.

The CRC value calculated is presented to the Mux Data Frame Selector described in 7.7.1.1 for transport during the next available overhead channel octet, i.e., first octet in the next repetition of the overhead channel structure (see 7.8.2.1). This procedure is followed by the scrambler procedure.

#### 7.7.1.3 Scrambler

The binary data streams at Reference Point A shall be scrambled as illustrated in Figure 7-9 using the following equation:

$$d'_n = d_n \oplus d'_{n-18} \oplus d'_{n-23}$$

where $d_n$ is the $n$-th input to the scrambler,

and $d'_n$ is the $n$-th output from the scrambler.

Each octet shall be input into the scrambler equation least significant bit first. The scrambler procedure of the latency path function #*p* shall scramble $M_p$ Mux Data Frames, or $M_p \times K_p$ octets. This procedure is followed by the FEC procedure.

NOTE – The starting state of the scrambler is not specified. Receiver implementations should use self-synchronizing descrambler designs.

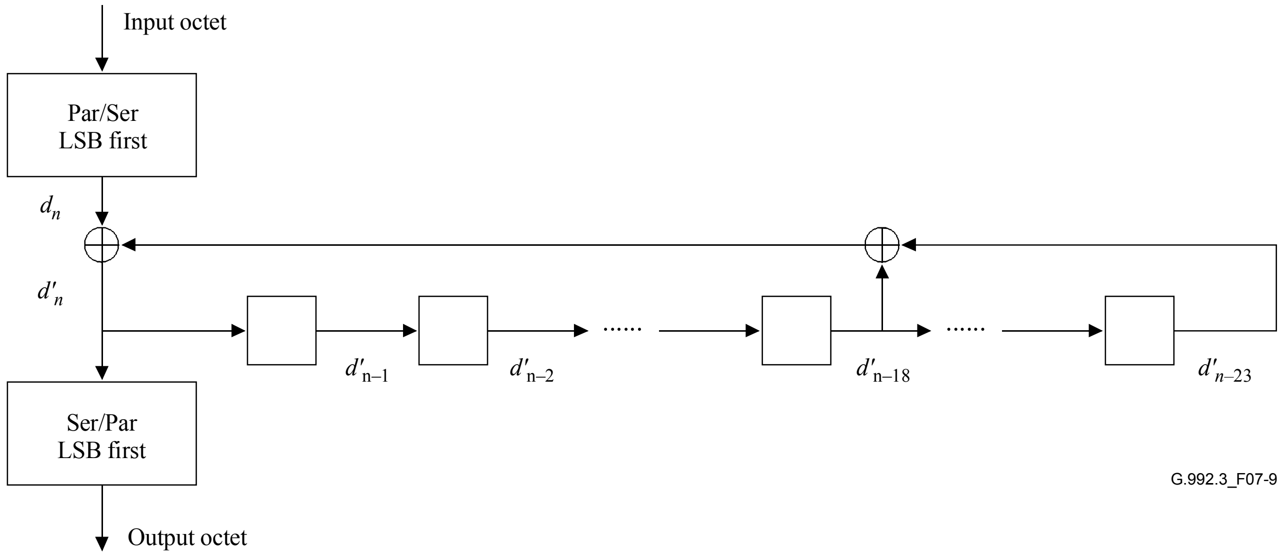



**Figure 7-9/G.992.3 – Scrambler procedure**

### 7.7.1.4 Forward error correction function

The FEC procedure inserts Reed-Solomon FEC redundancy octets to provide coding gain as an outer coding function to the PMD function. The FEC procedure of latency path function #*p* shall calculate $R_p$ octets from $M_p \times K_p$ input octets. The octets are appended to the end of the input octets in the structure of FEC Output Data Frame at Reference Point B.

When $R_p = 0$, no redundancy octets are appended and the values in the FEC Output Data Frame are identical to the input values. For all other values of $R_p$, the following encoding procedure shall be used to create the $R_p$ octets:

The FEC procedure shall take in $M_p$ scrambled Mux Data Frames comprising message octets, $m_0$, $m_1$, … , $m_{Mp \times Kp-2}$, $m_{Mp \times Kp-1}$. The procedure shall produce $R_p$ redundancy octets $c_0$, $c_1$, … , $c_{Rp-2}$, $c_{Rp-1}$. These two taken together comprise the FEC codeword of size $M_p \times K_p + R_p$ octets. The $R_p$ redundancy octets shall be appended to the message octets to form the FEC Output Data Frame at Reference Point B.

At the end of the initialization sequence, the FEC Function always starts with the first of $M_p$ Mux Data Frames.

The redundancy octets are computed from the message octets using the equation:

$$C(D) = M(D)D^{Rp} \text{ modulo } G(D)$$

where:

$M(D) = m_0 D^{Mp \times Kp-1} + m_1 D^{Mp \times Kp-2} + \ldots + m_{Mp \times Kp-2} D + m_{Mp \times Kp-1}$ is the message polynomial,

$C(D) = c_0 D^{Rp-1} + c_1 D^{Rp-2} + \ldots + c_{Rp-2} D + c_{Rp-1}$ is the check polynomial, and

$G(D) = \prod \left(D + \alpha^i\right)$ is the generator polynomial of the Reed-Solomon code,

where the index of the product runs from $i = 0$ to $R_p - 1$.

That is, *C(D)* is the remainder obtained from dividing *M*(D) $D^R$ by *G(D)*. The arithmetic is performed in the Galois Field GF(256), where α is a primitive element that satisfies the primitive binary polynomial $x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1$. A data octet ($d_7$, $d_6$, … , $d_1$, $d_0$) is identified with the Galois Field element $d_7\alpha^7 + d_6\alpha^6 \ldots + d_1\alpha + d_0$.

The FEC procedure of the latency path #$p$ creates $N_{FEC.p}$ octets in the structure of a FEC Output Data Frame at Reference Point B. This procedure is followed by the interleaver procedure.

#### 7.7.1.5 Interleaver

To spread the Reed-Solomon codeword and therefore reduce the probability of failure of the FEC in the presence of impulse noise, the FEC Output Data Frames shall be convolutionally interleaved. The interleaver creates the Interleaved FEC Output Data Frames at Reference point C, at the output of the latency path function. This procedure is followed by the frame multiplexing procedure.

Convolutional interleaving is defined by the rule (using the currently defined values of the framing control parameters $D_p$ and the derived parameter $N_{FEC.p}$):

> Each of the $N_{FEC.p}$ octets $B_0, B_1, \ldots, B_{NFEC.(p-1)}$ in an FEC Output Data Frame is delayed by an amount that varies linearly with the octet index. More precisely, octet $B_i$ (with index $i$) is delayed by $(D_p - 1) \times i$ octets, where $D_p$ is the interleaver depth.

An example for $N_{FEC.p} = 5$, $D_p = 2$ is shown in Table 7-13, where $B_i^j$ denotes the $i$-th octet of the $j$-th FEC Output Data Frame.

**Table 7-13/G.992.3 – Convolutional interleaving example for $N_{FEC.p} = 5$, $D_p = 2$**

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Interleaver input | $B_0^j$ | $B_1^j$ | $B_2^j$ | $B_3^j$ | $B_4^j$ | $B_0^{j+1}$ | $B_1^{j+1}$ | $B_2^{j+1}$ | $B_3^{j+1}$ | $B_4^{j+1}$ |
| Interleaver output | $B_0^j$ | $B_3^{j-1}$ | $B_1^j$ | $B_4^{j-1}$ | $B_2^j$ | $B_0^{j+1}$ | $B_3^j$ | $B_1^{j+1}$ | $B_4^j$ | $B_2^{j+1}$ |

With the above-defined rule, the output octets from the interleaver always occupy distinct time slots when $N_{FEC.p}$ is odd and $D_p$ is a power of 2. When $N_{FEC.p}$ is even, a dummy octet shall be added at the beginning of the codeword at the input to the interleaver. The resultant odd-length codeword is then convolutionally interleaved, and the dummy octet shall then be removed from the output of the interleaver.

The interleaving procedure of the latency path function #$p$ shall interleave a single FEC Output Data Frame, or $M_p \times K_p + R_p$ octets. This procedure is followed by the Frame Multiplexing procedure.

### 7.7.2 Frame multiplexing

The output signals of all latency paths are multiplexed together to form the output of the PMS-TC function. The frame multiplexing procedure combines bits from each configured latency path in decreasing label order, starting from $p = 3$ down to $p = 0$. $L_p$ bits are taken from each latency path. $L_p = 0$ if latency path #$p$ is not supported or disabled. The bits are taken LSB first. The data is packed into a PMD.Bits.confirm primitive in order of latency path $p = 3$ down to $p = 0$.

## 7.8 Control plane procedures

### 7.8.1 NTR transport

An ATU-C may optionally transport an 8 kHz timing marker as NTR to support the transport of a timing reference from voice PSTN access network to equipment located with the ATU-R. The 8 kHz timing marker is provided to the ATU-C as part of the interface at the V reference point. Additionally, if this capability is supported, the local PMD shall provide a PMD sampling clock that is a multiple of 2.208 MHz ±50 ppm along with an indication of when each overhead message structure (described in 7.8.2.1) begins.

If NTR transport is configured during initialization or reconfiguration of the PMS-TC function, the ATU-C shall generate an 8 kHz local timing reference (LTR) by dividing the PMD sampling clock

by the appropriate integer. The ATU-C shall compute the change in phase offset between the input NTR and the LTR from the previous overhead message structure start indication to the present one. The phase offset shall be measured as a difference in cycles of a 2.208 MHz clock in units of approximately 453 ns. The phase offset shall be encoded into a single octet, denoted by bits *ntr*7 to *ntr*0, representing a signed integer in the –128 to +127 range in 2's-complement notation. When *ntr*7 is a 0, the number shall represent a positive value of the change of phase offset, indicating that the LTR is higher in frequency than the NTR.

An ATU-C may choose to lock its transmit PMD function clocks to a multiple of the NTR frequency. In that case, all phase changes between the LTR and NTR would be measured as zero. In this case, the ATU-C shall signal that NTR is supported during initialization and encode the indicator bits *ntr*7 to *ntr*0 to zero.

The bit *ntr*7 to *ntr*0 shall be transported using the overhead channel as described in 7.8.2.2.

NOTE 1 – The NTR should have a maximum frequency variation of ± 32 ppm. The LTR should have a maximum frequency variation of ± 50 ppm. The maximum mismatch should therefore be ± 82 ppm. The offset is communicated via the overhead channel at the same rate as the CRC indicators and can be mapped into a single octet.

NOTE 2 – The NTR phase offset value is transmitted once per Overhead Channel Period (see Table 7-8). The Overhead Channel Period in the L2 state may be longer than in the L0 state (see 7.12.2). For the NTR to work properly, the ATU-C should maintain a maximum Overhead Channel Period in the L2 state, which allows NTR phase offset changes over that period to be represented in the [–128 to +127] range. A mismatch of ±82 ppm allows for an Overhead Channel Period in the L2 state of up to 700 ms.

### 7.8.2 Overhead channel access

Each latency path that is enabled carries an overhead channel structure. Various primitives and messages are signalled over these overhead channels via the overhead channel access procedures described in this clause.

#### 7.8.2.1 Overhead channel structure

Each latency path that is enabled carries an overhead channel to be transported in the sync octets. Generally, each overhead channel can contain a CRC portion, a bit oriented portion, and a message oriented portion over a repeating sequence of sync octets of length $SEQ_p$. The specific structure of the overhead channel for latency path #$p$ shall have one of four formats as displayed in Table 7-14 depending upon the value of the derived parameter $SEQ_p$.

The value of $SEQ_p$ shall be calculated as shown in Table 7-14 and depends upon the value of $MSG_{LP}$ as well as the latency of all paths. The value of $SEQ_p$ shall be implicitly defined through a PARAMS message exchanged during initialization, and shall not be updated otherwise. To determine the value of $SEQ_p$, the indicator bits shall be allocated to the latency path that has the lowest value of the derived parameter $delay_p$, and the message-based overhead shall be allocated to latency path #$MSG_{LP}$. If more than one latency path has the same value of $delay_p$, the path with the lowest latency shall be the latency path with lowest $delay_p$ and lowest label $p$. The values of $SEQ_p$ shall be determined during the initialization procedures, and shall not be changed through on-line reconfiguration or power management transitions not involving the initialization procedures (although the latency path with the lowest delay may change).

An overhead structure frame counter is maintained in each latency path with the frame counter incremented by one for each sync octet transmitted. The overhead structure frame counter starts from zero at the end of the initialization procedure. When the counter reaches the maximum value $SEQ_p$ and the end of the sequence is reached, the counter is reset and the information sequence is begun again from octet sequence 0. This same counter shall be used to control the behavior of the CRC procedure in 7.7.1.2 and the behavior of the NTR transport procedure in 7.8.1. The value of $MSG_C$ is identified during initialization and shall result in a message-based overhead data rate in the $MSG_{min}$ to $MSG_{max}$.range.

The first sync octet following the initialization sequence shall always contain a CRC octet in each latency path. The value of the CRC octet for the first sync octet following initialization is implementation specific.

The CRC octet shall be carried in the path for which it is calculated.

**Table 7-14/G.992.3 – Overhead channel structure depending on $SEQ_p$**

<table>
<tr><th>Octet number</th><th>Information</th><th>$SEQ_p$ length</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if $p \neq MSG_{LP}$ and latency path #$p$ is not the lowest latency path according to the definition in this clause</td><td rowspan="3">2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to $FF_{16}$ in all latency paths</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if $p \neq MSG_{LP}$ and latency path #$p$ is the lowest latency path</td><td rowspan="4">6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1, 2, 3, 4</td><td>Bit-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to $FF_{16}$ in all latency paths</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if $p = MSG_{LP}$ and latency path #$p$ is not the lowest latency path according to the definition in this clause</td><td rowspan="4">$MSG_C + 2$</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to $FF_{16}$ in all latency paths</td></tr>
<tr><td>2, 3, … $MSG_C + 1$</td><td>Message-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if $p = MSG_{LP}$ and latency path #$p$ is the lowest latency path according to the definition in this clause</td><td rowspan="5">$MSG_C + 6$</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1, 2, 3, 4</td><td>Bit-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to $FF_{16}$ in all latency paths</td></tr>
<tr><td>6, 7, … $MSG_C + 5$</td><td>Message-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
</table>

### 7.8.2.2 Indicator bits

The following indicator bits are particularly time sensitive and shall be transported as indicator bits in the bit-oriented portion of the overhead channel. Four octets shall be reserved to carry the indicator bits. The following indicator bits shall be transported relating to the PMS-TC and PMD functions:

– NTR7 to NTR0 downstream (PMS-TC-related);

– LOS and RDI in both directions (PMD-related);

– LPR upstream (PMD-related).

Additionally, each TPS-TC function may provide up to two indicators, designated as *TIB*#0 and *TIB*#1. These are transported transparently by the PMS-TC function. The definition of *TIB*#0 and *TIB*#1 are provided in Annex K.

The structure of the bit-oriented overhead portion is shown in Table 7-15. The PMD and PMS-TC bits are active low. *TIB*#0–*n* and *TIB*#1–*n* are the TPS-TC function indicator bits belonging to the TPS-TC function labeled #*n*. Indicator bits which are not used (e.g., upstream NTR and downstream LPR) shall be set to 1.

**Table 7-15/G.992.3 – Bit-oriented structure of overhead channel**

| Octet Sequence | Bit 7 (MSB) | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 (LSB) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 (NTR) | NTR7 | NTR6 | NTR5 | NTR4 | NTR3 | NTR2 | NTR1 | NTR0 |
| 2 (PMD) | LOS | RDI | LPR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 3 (PMS-TC) | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 4 (TPS-TC) | *TIB*#0–0 | *TIB*#0–1 | *TIB*#0–2 | *TIB*#0–3 | *TIB*#1–0 | *TIB*#1–1 | *TIB*#1–2 | *TIB*#1–3 |

#### 7.8.2.3 Overhead message format

An HDLC-based frame structure as shown in Table 7-16, shall be used to encapsulate overhead messages. These functions carried by these messages include:

a) On-line reconfiguration messages (PMS-TC and PMD-related);

b) Command/response messages (MPS-TC-related);

c) Performance monitoring messages (MPS-TC-related).

The message oriented portion of the overhead channel shall be carried in the latency path as determined by the control variable $MSG_{LP}$.

**Table 7-16/G.992.3 – HDLC frame structure**

| Octet # | MSB LSB |
|---|---|
| | $7E_{16}$ – Opening Flag |
| 1 | Address field |
| 2 | Control field |
| 3 | Message octet 1 |
| … | …. |
| *P* + 2 | Message octet *P* |
| *P* + 3 | FCS high octet |
| *P* + 4 | FCS low octet |
| | $7E_{16}$ – Closing Flag |

A maximum message length of 1024 octets (*P* = 1024 maximum) is defined.

#### 7.8.2.4 Overhead channel protocol

##### 7.8.2.4.1 Transmitter protocol

The transmitter shall accept messages from the MPS-TC function, as described in 9.4.1, with the priorities displayed in Table 7-17.

**Table 7-17/G.992.3 – Overhead message priorities**

| Priority value | Address field value (2 LSBs) | Associated time-out value | Command type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | $00_2$ | 400 ms | High Priority Overhead Messages in Table 9-2 |
| 2 | $01_2$ | 800 ms | Normal Priority Overhead Messages in Table 9-3 |
| 3 | $10_2$ | 1 s | Low Priority Overhead Message in Table 9-4 |

The transmitter shall format messages using the HDLC frame structure described in 7.8.2.3, inserting the Frame Check Sequence octets as described in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. Octet transparency and octet inter-frame time fill shall be as in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. Opening and closing flags may be shared (i.e., only one flag between consecutive messages).

The two least significant bits of the address field shall be set with the priority of the message according to the values shown in Table 7-17. The value of $11_2$ is reserved. All other bits of the address field shall be set to $0_2$.

The second least significant bit of the control field shall be set with a command ($0_2$) or response code ($1_2$). The least significant bit shall be set alternately to $0_2$ and $1_2$ as new messages are sent. All other bits of the control field shall be set to $0_2$.

When sending a new command message, the LSB of the control field shall be inverted from the previous command message. The transmitter shall send the command message one time and await a response message. No more than one command message of each priority value shall be awaiting response message at any time. Upon receipt of a response message, a new command message may be sent. If a response message is not received, a time-out occurs and the command message is repeated without inverting the LSB of the control field. Alternately, the ATU may abandon the command message after an implementation-specific number of retransmissions. There are different time-out durations for the different priority messages and are displayed in Table 7-17. Timeouts are based starting from the last octet of a request message sent to last octet of a response message received.

When sending a new response message, the LSB of the control field shall be inverted from the previous response message.

The transmitter may receive messages from the MPS-TC for transmission at different priorities. The highest priority message shall be transmitted first. At any time, if the transmitter receives a message of a higher priority, the transmitter shall send the higher priority message. Any message of lower priority being transmitted may be aborted using the octet abort sequence described in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4], i.e., a control escape octet followed by a flag. If transmission of the lower priority message is completed, it remains active and the time-out timer values are not affected. If the lower priority message is aborted, the transmitter shall retransmit the message as the priority scheme allows, without inverting the LSB of the control field.

#### 7.8.2.4.2 Receiver protocol

The receiver shall search on octet boundaries for messages matching the structure of the HDLC frame format. Any invalid frames as described in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4] shall be discarded. Any message with an invalid FCS shall be discarded. Any message with an address or control field not in accordance with 7.8.2.4.1 shall be discarded.

The alternating LSB of the control field may be used to detect messages that are being repeated because of timeout or can be used to detect messages that might have been previously lost or discarded due to errors.

Each message received shall be delivered to the MPS-TC function.

## 7.9 Management plane procedures

### 7.9.1 Surveillance primitives

All PMS-TC function primitives are line related. Only anomalies are defined for each receive latency path.

Two near-end anomalies are defined for a receive latency path:

- Forward error correction fec-*p*: A fec-*p* anomaly occurs when a received FEC codeword for the latency path #*p* indicates that errors have been corrected. This anomaly is not asserted if errors are detected and are not correctable.
- Cyclic redundancy check crc-*p*: A crc-*p* anomaly occurs when a received CRC-8 code for the latency path #*p* is not identical to the corresponding locally generated code.

Two far-end anomalies are defined for a receive latency path:

- Far-end forward error correction ffec-*n*: An ffec-*n* anomaly is a fec-*n* anomaly detected at the far-end.
- Far-end Block Error febe-*n* anomaly: A febe-*n* anomaly is a crc-*n* anomaly detected at the far-end.

### 7.10 Initialization procedures

#### 7.10.1 G.994.1 phase

##### 7.10.1.1 G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about the PMS-TC function shall be defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2] as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via G.994.1 messages at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once between ATU-C and ATU-R but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- Capability to transport NTR (downstream only);
- Minimum downstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is needed;
- Minimum upstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is needed;
- Maximum downstream net data rate of each latency path can be supported;
- Maximum upstream net data rate of each latency path that can be supported;
- $R_{p\ max}$ on each optional latency path that can be supported;
- $D_{p\ max}$ on each optional latency path that can be supported.

In addition, non-standard capabilities may be reported through additional NSF messages.

This information is represented using a G.994.1 tree model of the information as in Table 7-18. An ATU provides both the upstream and downstream information in response to the capabilities request message.

The latency paths supported shall start from 0 and increase by one. The Capability List shall indicate that latency paths supported consists of {#0}, {#0, #1}, {#0, #1, #2}, or {#0, #1, #2, #3} (there are only 4 cases). The number of latency paths supported may be different for upstream and downstream.

**Table 7-18/G.992.3 – Format for PMS-TC capability list information**

| **Npar(2) bit** | **Definition of Npar(2) bit** |
|---|---|
| NTR | This bit is set to a one if the ATU has the capability to transport the NTR signal in the downstream direction. |
| **Spar(2) bit** | **Definition of related Npar(3) octets** |
| Downstream Overhead Data Rate | Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the minimum message based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s). |
| Upstream Overhead Data Rate | Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the minimum message based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s). |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 supported (always set to 1) | Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate supported in the latency path #0. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. The net_max downstream rate shall be greater than or equal to the maximum required downstream data rate for each TPS-TC type that is supported by the ATU. |
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 Supported (always set to 1) | Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate supported in the latency path #0. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. The net_max upstream rate shall be greater than or equal to the maximum required upstream data rate for each TPS-TC type that is supported by the ATU. |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #1 Supported | Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate, downstream $R_{1\ max}$, and downstream $D_{1\ max}$ supported in the latency path #1. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid $R_p$ values divided by 2. $D_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid $D_p$ values. |
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #1 Supported | Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate, upstream $R_{1\ max}$, and upstream $D_{1\ max}$ supported in the latency path #1. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid $R_p$ values divided by 2. $D_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid $D_p$ values. |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #2 Supported | Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate, downstream $R_{2\ max}$, and downstream $D_{2\ max}$ supported in the latency path #2. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid $R_p$ values divided by 2. $D_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid $D_p$ values. |
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #2 Supported | Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate, upstream $R_{2\ max}$, and upstream $D_{2\ max}$ supported in the latency path #2. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid $R_p$ values divided by 2. $D_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid $D_p$ values. |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #3 Supported | Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate, downstream $R_{3\ max}$, and downstream $D_{3\ max}$ supported in the latency path #3. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid $R_p$ values divided by 2. $D_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid $D_p$ values. |
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #3 Supported | Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate, upstream $R_{3\ max}$, and upstream $D_{3\ max}$ supported in the latency path #3. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the value $R_p$ values divided by 2. $D_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid $D_p$ values. |

#### 7.10.1.2 G.994.1 mode select message

The following control parameters of PMS-TC function shall be defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2] as part of the MS message. This information shall be selected prior to the PMD initialization. The information includes:

- Minimum downstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is required;
- Maximum downstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is allowed;
- Minimum upstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is required;
- Maximum upstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is allowed.

The Overhead Data Rate in the MS message shall be set to the highest of the Overhead Data Rate values in the CL and CLR message.

This configuration for PMS-TC is represented using a G.994.1 tree model of the information as in Table 7-19. An ATU provides both the upstream and downstream trees in the MS message.

**Table 7-19/G.992.3 – Format for PMS-TC mode select information**

| **Npar(2) bit** | **Definition of Npar(2) bit** |
|---|---|
| NTR | Set to 1 if and only if this bit was set to 1 in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message.<br>When set to 1, both ATUs shall transport the NTR signal in the downstream direction, such that the NTR signal is made available at the T-R interface.<br>When set to 0, indicates that the NTR signal is not available at the T-R interface. |
| **Spar(2) bit** | **Definition of related Npar(3) octets** |
| Downstream Overhead Data Rate | Parameter block of 1 octet that describes the minimum message based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s). |
| Upstream Overhead Data Rate | Parameter block of 1 octet that describes the minimum message based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s). |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 Supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #1 Supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #1 Supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #2 Supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |

**Table 7-19/G.992.3 – Format for PMS-TC mode select information**

| | |
|---|---|
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #2 Supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Downstream PMS-TC latency path #3 Supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Upstream PMS-TC latency path #3 Supported | Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |

### 7.10.2 Channel analysis phase

The PMS-TC function control parameters exchanged in the C-MSG1 message are listed in Table 7-20.

**Table 7-20/G.992.3 – PMS-TC function control parameters included in C-MSG1**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Parameter** | **Format** [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | $RATIO\_BCds_0$ | [0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0 |
| 1 | $RATIO\_BCds_1$ | [0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0 |
| 2 | $RATIO\_BCds_2$ | [0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0 |
| 3 | $RATIO\_BCds_3$ | [0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0 |

The $RATIO\_BC_n$ is the percentage of the net data rate, in excess of sum of the minimum net data rates over all bearer channels, to be allocated to the bearer channel #*n*. The percentage is represented as a 7-bit integer in the 0 to 100 range.

The values are configured through the CO-MIB for each upstream and downstream bearer channel, as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1. The sum of the percentages over the upstream bearer channels shall be 100%. The sum of the percentages over the downstream bearer shall be 100%. The upstream percentages are locally used by the ATU-C to determine the upstream net data rate for each of the upstream bearer channels. The downstream percentages are conveyed to the ATU-R in the C-MSG1 message during initialization and used by the ATU-R to determine the downstream net data rate for each of the downstream bearer channels.

### 7.10.3 Exchange phase

The remaining values of the control parameters for the TPS-TC functions, as well as additional information about the TPS-TC functions, shall be reported by the receive TPS-TC function and transported to the transmit TPS-TC function during the exchange procedure.

The information in C-PARAM includes:

- The latency path $MSG_{LP}$ to carry the upstream message oriented portion of the overhead channel.
- Assignment of upstream frame bearers to upstream latency paths.
- The number of message octets $MSG_c$ included in the upstream overhead structure.
- $B_{p,n}$ for each upstream latency path and frame bearer.

- $M_p$ for each upstream latency path.
- $R_p$ for each upstream latency path.
- $D_p$ for each upstream latency path.
- $T_p$ for each upstream latency path.
- $L_p$ corresponding to each upstream latency path.

The information in R-PARAM includes:

- The latency path $MSG_{LP}$ to carry the downstream message oriented portion of the overhead channel.
- Assignment of downstream frame bearers to downstream latency paths.
- The number of message octets $MSG_c$ include in the downstream overhead structure.
- $B_{p.n}$ for each downstream latency path and frame bearer.
- $M_p$ for each downstream latency path.
- $R_p$ for each downstream latency path.
- $D_p$ for each downstream latency path.
- $T_p$ for each downstream latency path.
- $L_p$ corresponding to each downstream latency path.

This C-PARAMS and R-PARAMS information is represented as a parameter block as in Table 7-21. The information is transmitted in the order shown during C-PARAM and R-PARAM as described in the PMD initialization procedure.

**Table 7-21/G.992.3 – Format for PMS-TC PARAMS information**

| **Octet number** [i] | **PMS-TC format** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] | **Description** |
|---|---|---|
| Octet 0 | [ffff 00bb] bit 1 to 0 | The bits bb encode the value of $MSG_{LP}$. $MSG_{LP}$. Indicates the latency path in which the message based overhead information is to be transmitted. The values 00, 01, 10, and 11 correspond to latency path #0, #1, #2, #3, respectively.<br>The bits ffff encode the initialization success/failure code as defined in this clause. |
| Octet 1 | [cccc dddd] bit 7 to 0 | The bits cccc are set to 0000, 0001, 0010, or 0011 if the frame bearer #0 is to be carried in latency path #0, #1, #2, or #3 respectively. The bits cccc are set to 1111 if $type_0$ is zero (i.e., disabled frame bearer, see Table 6-1).<br>The bits dddd describe where the frame bearer #1 is to be carried using the same encoding method as cccc. |
| Octet 2 | [eeee ffff] bit 7 to 0 | The bits eeee and ffff describe where the frame bearers #2 and #3, respectively, are to be carried using the same encoding method as cccc of octet 1. |
| Octet 3 | [gggg gggg] bit 7 to 0 | The bits gggggggg encode the value of $MSG_C$, the number of octets in the message based portion of the overhead structure. The latency path $\#MSG_{LP}$ is used to transport the message based overhead information. |

**Table 7-21/G.992.3 – Format for PMS-TC PARAMS information**

| **Octet number** [i] | **PMS-TC format** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] | **Description** |
|---|---|---|
| Octet 4 | [hhhh hhhh] bit 7 to 0 | The bits hhhhhhhh give the number of octets from bearer #0 per Mux Data Frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{00}, B_{10}, B_{20}, B_{30}\}$. |
| Octet 5 | [iiii iiii] bit 7 to 0 | The bits iiiiiiii give the number of octets from bearer #1 per Mux Data Frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{01}, B_{11}, B_{21}, B_{31}\}$. |
| Octet 6 | [jjjj jjjj] bit 7 to 0 | The bits jjjjjjjj give the number of octets from bearer #2 per Mux Data Frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{02}, B_{12}, B_{22}, B_{32}\}$. |
| Octet 7 | [kkkk kkkk] bit 7 to 0 | The bits kkkkkkkk give the number of octets from bearer #3 per Mux Data Frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{03}, B_{13}, B_{23}, B_{33}\}$. |
| Octet 8 | [mmmm mmmm] bit 7 to 0 | The bits mmmmmmmm give the value of $M_P$ for latency path #0. They are always present and set to zero if not used. |
| Octet 9 | [tttt tttt] bit 7 to 0 | The bits tttttttt give the value of $T_P$ for latency path #0. They are always present and set to zero if not used. |
| Octet 10 | [rrrr 0DDD] bit 7 to 0 | The bits rrrr0DDD give the value of $R_P$ and $D_P$ for latency path #0. The rrrr and DDD bits are coded as defined in Table 7-18. They are always present and set to zero if not used. |
| Octet 11 | [llll llll] bit 7 to 0 | The bits llllllll give the LSB of the value of $L_P$ for latency path #0. They are always present and set to zero if not used. |
| Octet 12 | [llll llll] bit 15 to 8 | The bits llllllll give the MSB of the value of $L_p$ for the latency path #0. These are always present and set to zero if not used. |
| Octets 13-17 | same as octets 8-12 | These octets describe the parameters for latency path #1, in the same format as octets 8 through 12. They are always present and set to zeros if unused. |
| Octets 18-22 | same as octets 8-12 | These octets describe the parameters for latency path #2, in the same format as octets 8 through 12. They are always present and set to zeros if unused. |
| Octets 23-27 | same as octets 8-12 | These octets describe the parameters for latency path #3, in the same format as octets 8 through 12. They are always present and set to zeros if unused. |

The value of $N_{LP}$ (i.e., the number of enabled latency paths) is conveyed implicitly in the settings of octets 0 (bits bb), 1 (bits cccc and dddd) and 2 (bits eeee and ffff). Latency paths with a label contained in the set {bb, cccc, dddd, eeee, ffff) shall be enabled. Latency paths that are supported but with a label not contained in this set shall be disabled.

The octet 0 in Table 7-21 assigns the message-based overhead to a particular latency path $\#MSG_{LP}$ (with $MSG_{LP}$ in the 0 to 3 range). The octets 1 and 2 in Table 7-21 assign frame bearer $\#n$ (for $n = 0$ to 3) to a particular latency path $\#p$ (with $p$ in the 0 to 3 range), or disable the frame bearer. The message-based overhead and the enabled frame bearers shall be assigned to a latency path that is supported by both ATUs (as indicated in CL and CLR, see Table 7-19). If an ATU supports a particular latency path $\#p$, it shall support assignment of message-based overhead and/or any number of enabled frame bearers (0 to $N_{BC}$) to that latency path. It is possible to assign frame bearer

#*n* to latency path #*p*, with the number of octets from frame bearer #*n* per Mux Data Frame (as indicated in octet 4, 5, 6 or 7 in Table 7-21) set to zero (i.e., $B_{p.n} = 0$).

It is not possible to configure at initialization a latency path #*p* with overhead sequence length $SEQ_p = 6$ (i.e., one that carries only a CRC and the bit oriented portion of the overhead) without also carrying at least one frame bearer in the latency path *p*.

The method used by the receiver to select these values is implementation dependent. However, within the limit of the raw data rate and coding gain provided by the local PMD, the selected values shall meet all of the constraints communicated by the transmitter prior to the Exchange Phase, including:

- (Message based) Overhead data rate ≥ Minimum overhead data rate;
- Net data rate ≥ Minimum net data rate for all bearer channels;
- Impluse noise protection ≥ Minimum impulse noise protection for all bearer channels;
- Delay ≤ Maximum delay for all bearer channels.

Within those constraints, the receiver shall select the values as to optimize in the priority listed:

1) Maximize net data rate for all bearer channels, per the allocation of the net data rate, in excess of the sum of the minimum net data rates over all bearer channels (see 7.10.2).
2) Minimize excess margin (see 8.6.4).

If within those constraints, the receiver is unable to select a set of configuration parameters, then an initialization failure cause shall be indicated in the PMS-TC PARAMS information (4-bit integer, see Table 7-21), with the other bits in the PMS-TC PARAMS information set to 0. The transmitter shall enter the SILENT state (see Annex D) instead of the SHOWTIME state at the completion of the initialization procedures. Valid failure causes are the failure cause values 1 (configuration error) and 2 (configuration not feasible on line), as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1. If within those constraints, the receiver is able to select a set of configuration parameters, then value 0 is used to indicate a successful initialization. The values 3 to 15 are reserved.

### 7.11 On-line reconfiguration

The procedures for on-line reconfiguration of the PMS-TC function support:

- transparency to higher layers by providing means for changes that introduce no transport errors and no interruption of service;
- changing parameters to adapt to slowly varying line conditions; and
- changing parameters to dynamically change data rate (including zero data rate).

#### 7.11.1 Control parameters for reconfiguration

Reconfiguration is accomplished by a coordinated change to the value of one or more of the control parameters defined in 7.5. The control parameters displayed in Table 7-22 may be changed through on-line reconfiguration within the limits described.

**Table 7-22/G.992.3 – Reconfigurable control parameters of the PMS-TC function**

| | |
|---|---|
| $B_{p.n}$ | If frame bearer #$n$ is assigned to latency path #$p$, the number of octets from frame bearer #$n$ in latency path #$p$ per Mux Data Frame may be increased or decreased between a minimum of zero and a maximum corresponding to the maximum data rate for the latency path as identified during the G.994.1 capabilities exchange. A frame bearer may only be assigned to a single latency path. The assignment is not changed through reconfiguration. The $B_{p.n}$ value may only be changed within the conditions defined in 7.11.1.1. |
| $L_p$ | If latency path #$p$ is used, the number of bits from latency path #$p$ included per PMD.Bits.request may be increased or decreased between one and the maximum number of bits per PMD symbol. |

#### 7.11.1.1 Changes in an existing latency path

Reconfiguration of the $B_{p.n}$ values within an existing latency path #$p$ occurs only at boundaries between Interleaved FEC Data Frames. The transmit PMS-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters to generate Interleaved FEC Data Frames that follow the signalling of the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as described in 8.16.2. It is important to note that PMD.Bits.confirm primitives that immediately follow the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive will contain bits associated with old configuration until a boundary of an Interleaved FEC Data Frame. The receive PMS-TC function procedures use the new control parameter values to process the Interleaved FEC Data Frame that follow the signalling of the PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as depicted in step 9 in Figure 10-1.

This procedure is used only if the value of a $B_{p.n}$ is being modified. This procedure is restricted to use for latency paths with $R_p = 0$, $S_p = 1$, and $D_p = 1$, and with alignment of the Interleaved FEC data frame boundary, FEC data frame boundary, Mux Data Frame boundary, and the PMD symbol boundary.

#### 7.11.1.2 Changes in the frame multiplexor

Reconfiguration of the Frame Multiplexor occurs at the start of the next PMD symbol that follows transport of the synchronization flag from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as described in 8.16.2. The reconfiguration of the PMS-TC functions occur at the start of the next PMD symbol that follows transport of the synchronization flag from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as described in 8.16.2. The transmit PMS-TC function uses the new control parameter values in its procedures to generate PMD.Bits.confirm primitives that follows signalling of the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as depicted in step 8 in Figure 10-1. The receive PMS-TC function procedures use the new control parameter values to process PMD.Bits.Indicate primitives that follow the signalling of the PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as depicted in step 9 in Figure 10-1.

A reconfiguration of the PMS-TC functions that result in a change in the number of bits signalled in the PMD.Bits.confirm primitives requires a PMD function reconfiguration in conjunction with it.

This procedure shall be used if $L_p$ is being modified without $B_{p.n}$ modifications.

### 7.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the PMS-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

#### 7.12.1 L0 link state operation

The PMS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane, control plane, and management plane procedures defined in 7.7, 7.8, and 7.9 while the link is in power management state L0.

All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in 7.5 and 7.6 shall apply.

On-line reconfiguration procedures of the PMS-TC function described in 7.11 shall be followed during the link state L0 upon successful completion of protocol described in 9.4.1.1.

#### 7.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

The L0 to L2 transition procedures of the PMS-TC function supports changing some of the control parameters to reduce the number of bits transferred per PMD primitive in the downstream direction. This change is accomplished by changing the downstream control parameter displayed in Table 7-8. The transition is intended to allow changes in the downstream control parameters without errors (i.e., seamless).

**Table 7-23/G.992.3 – Power management control parameters of the PMS-TC function**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $L_p$ | The number of bits from latency path #$p$ shall be decreased from $L_p$ in the L0 link state in the range of $1 \le L_p \le 1024$ and $\sum L_p$ shall be such that $8 \le \sum L_p \le 1024$. |

Entry into the L2 link state occurs with the coordinated change in the downstream $L_p$ parameters in order to decrease the number of bits per PMD primitive. The change shall be preceded by the protocol described in 9.5.3.3. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated change of the $L_p$ parameters shall occur as specified in 7.11.1.2.

The ATUs shall store the L0 link state PMS-TC control parameter $L_p$ when transitioning from link state L0 to state L2.

#### 7.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU is intended to provide the transition from link state L0 to state L3. The transition should be as described in 9.5.3.1 for the orderly shutdown procedure or 9.5.3.2 for the disorderly shutdown procedure. No specific PMS-TC tear-down procedure is provided.

### 7.12.2 L2 link state operation

The PMS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane, control plane, and management plane procedures defined in 7.7, 7.8 and 7.9 while the link is in power management state L2.

All control parameter definitions provided in 7.5 shall apply. During the L2 state, the number of bits transmitted per PMD primitive may be significantly reduced with respect to that while operating in the L0 link state. Therefore, constraints as displayed in Table 7-8 and placed on $MSG_{min}$, the overhead rate, the delay, and overhead channel period do not apply while the link is in L2 state.

On-line reconfiguration of the PMS-TC function shall be disabled during the link state L2. Messages described in 9.4.1.1 shall not be transmitted by either the ATU-C or ATU-R.

The low power trim procedure shall not effect the operation of the PMS-TC function.

#### 7.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The L2 to L0 transition procedures of the PMS-TC function supports restoring the control parameters from the previous L0 state upon re-entering the L0 link state. The transition is intended to allow changes in the downstream control parameters without errors (i.e., seamless).

Entry into the L0 link state occurs with the coordinated change in the downstream $L_p$ parameters in order to restore the number of bits per PMD primitive to that used in the previous L0 link state. The change shall be preceded by the protocol described in either 9.5.3.4 or 9.5.3.5. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated change of the $L_p$ parameters shall occur as specified in 7.11.1.2.

#### 7.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

If operating in link state L2, the ATUs are intended to transition to link state L0 and make use of the orderly shutdown procedure. However, in the event of sudden power loss the link may transition from link state L2 to state L3 directly. The transition should be as described in 9.5.3.2. No specific PMS-TC tear-down procedures are provided.

### 7.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, there are no specified procedures for the PMS-TC function.

#### 7.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in 7.10.

# 8 Physical media dependent function

## 8.1 Transport capabilities

The ATU Physical Media Dependent (PMD) function provides procedures for transporting a bitstream over the physical medium (i.e., over the copper pairs) in both the upstream and downstream directions. The transmit PMD function accepts data from the transmit PMS-TC function and the receive PMD function delivers data to the receive PMS-TC function as shown (for the Data Plane) in Figure 8-1. The transmit and receive TPS-TC functions are specified in clause 6. The transmit and receive PMS-TC functions are specified in clause 7.

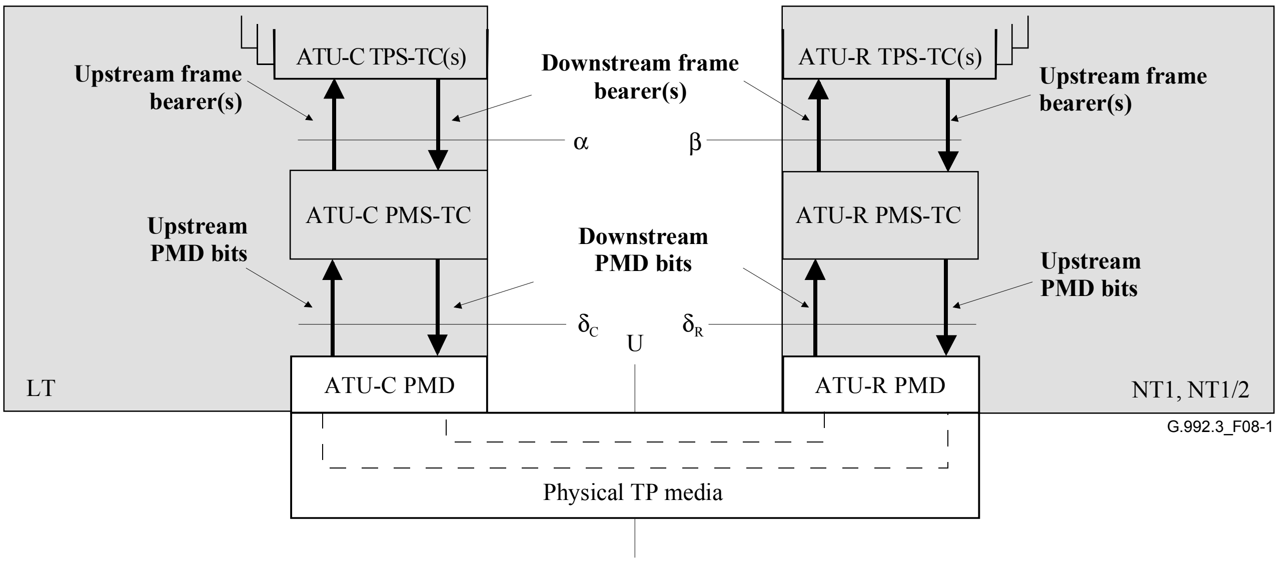



**Figure 8-1/G.992.3 – PMD transport capabilities within the data plane**

As a control plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMD function. However, the PMD function passes and receives control signals that are transported in the control plane to and from the far-end PMD using PMS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-2; e.g., for on-line reconfiguration.

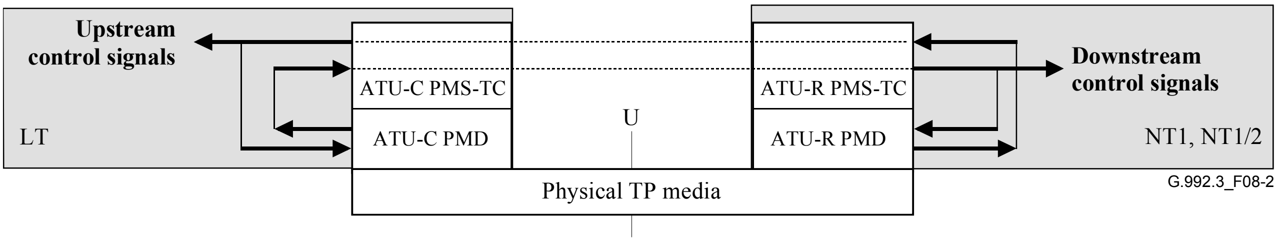



**Figure 8-2/G.992.3 – PMD transport capabilities within the control plane**

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMD function during normal operation. However, the receive PMD function provides management primitive indications to the local management entity within the ATU. Within the ATU, these management primitive indications result in control signals that are transported in the control plane using PMS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-3. During initialization, the ATU transmit PMD function provides transport of some configuration parameters from the near-end Management Entity to the far-end PMD function.

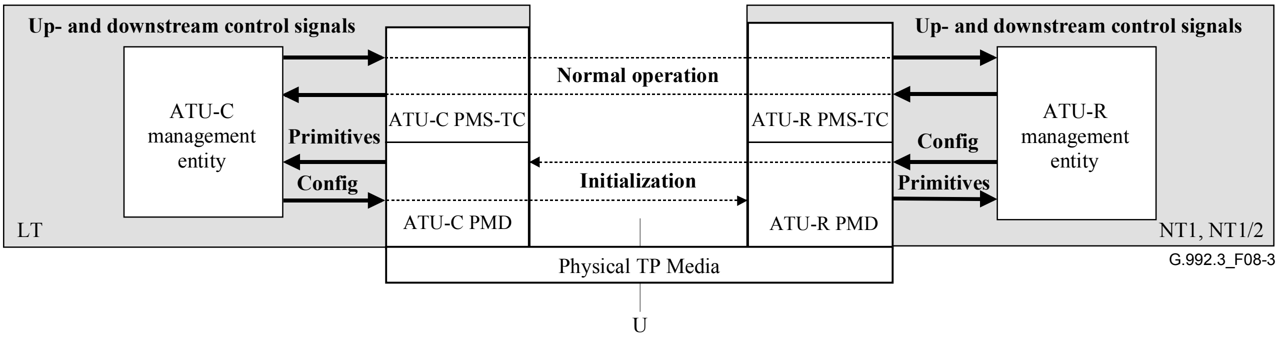



**Figure 8-3/G.992.3 – PMD transport capabilities within the management plane**

## 8.2 Additional functions

In addition to transport functionality, the PMD transmit function also provides procedures for:

- Tone ordering;
- Constellation encoder;
- Synchronization and L2 exit symbols;
- Modulation;
- Transmitter dynamic range;
- Transmitter spectral masks (including spectrum shaping);
- Conversion to analog signal for transmission over the DSL;
- On-line adaptation and reconfiguration.

These functions are configured by a number of control parameters described in 8.5. The values of the control parameters are set through the CO-MIB, during initialization or through reconfiguration of the ATU. The ATU receive PMD function reverses each of the listed procedures so that the transported information may be recovered and delivered to the receive PMS-TC function.

### 8.3 Block interface signals and primitives

The ATU PMD block has many interface signals as shown in Figure 8-4 (for both ATU-C and ATU-R). Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the Figure 8-4 legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream block and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to or from the PMS-TC function. The signals at the left and right edges convey upstream and downstream control primitives within the ATU.

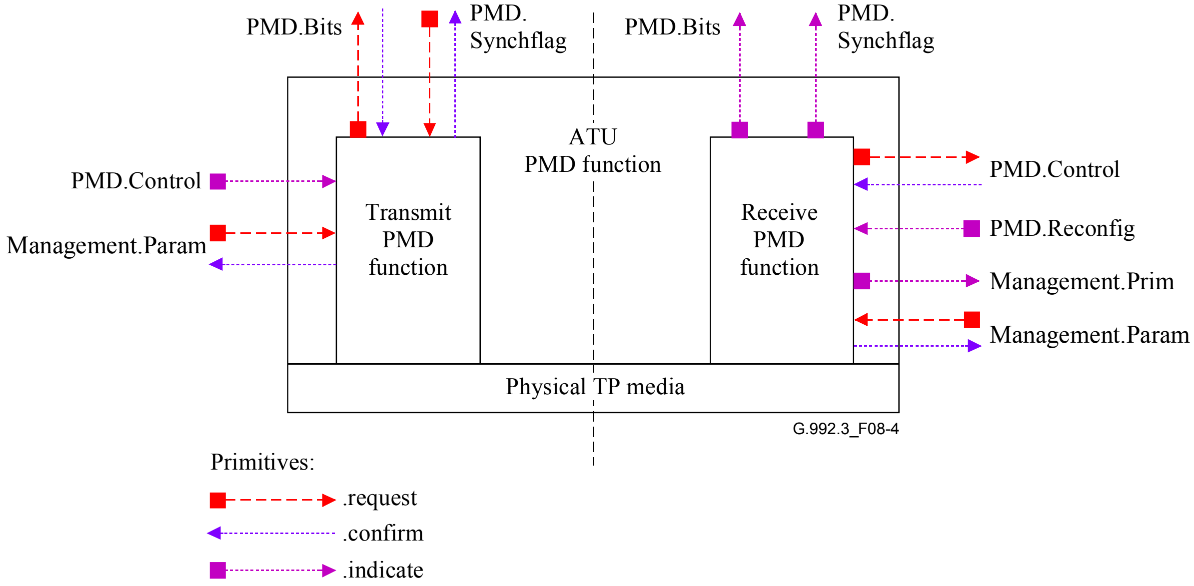



**Figure 8-4/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU PMD function**

The signals shown in Figure 8-4 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying function to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between the PMD and PMS-TC functions are described in Table 8-1. These primitives support the exchange of PMD symbol data and regulation of data flow to match PMD configuration. They also support coordinated on-line rate adaptation and reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

Primitives used to signal maintenance indication primitives to the local maintenance entity are described in Table 8-3.

**Table 8-1/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives between the PMD and PMS-TC functions**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| PMD.Bits | .request | This primitive is used by the transmit PMD function to request data from the transmit PMS-TC function. |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the PMS-TC transmit function to pass data to be transported to the transmit PMD function. By the interworking of the request and confirm primitives, the data flow is matched to the PMD configuration and synchronized to PMD data symbols. |
| | .indicate | This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to pass data to the receive PMS-TC function. |
| PMD.Synchflag | .request | This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to request the transmit PMD function to transport a PMD synchronization flag. This PMD.Synchflag primitive is used to coordinate various reconfigurations of the TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions (i.e., bitswap, DRR, SRA, L2 entry and L2 exit). |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the transmit PMD function to confirm receipt of a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the transmit PMS-TC function is notified that a synchronization flag has been transported on the U interface. In particular, any request primitives that have not yet been confirmed upon receipt of the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive are known to be transported across the U interface after the PMD synchronization flag. |
| | .indicate | This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to indicate to the PMS-TC receive function that a PMD synchronization flag has been received on the U interface. Any indication primitives already received are known to have been transported on the U interface prior to the PMD synchronization flag. All indication primitives signalled after the PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive are known to have been transported on the U interface after the PMD synchronization flag. |

**Table 8-2/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives between the PMD and the near-end ATU control functions**

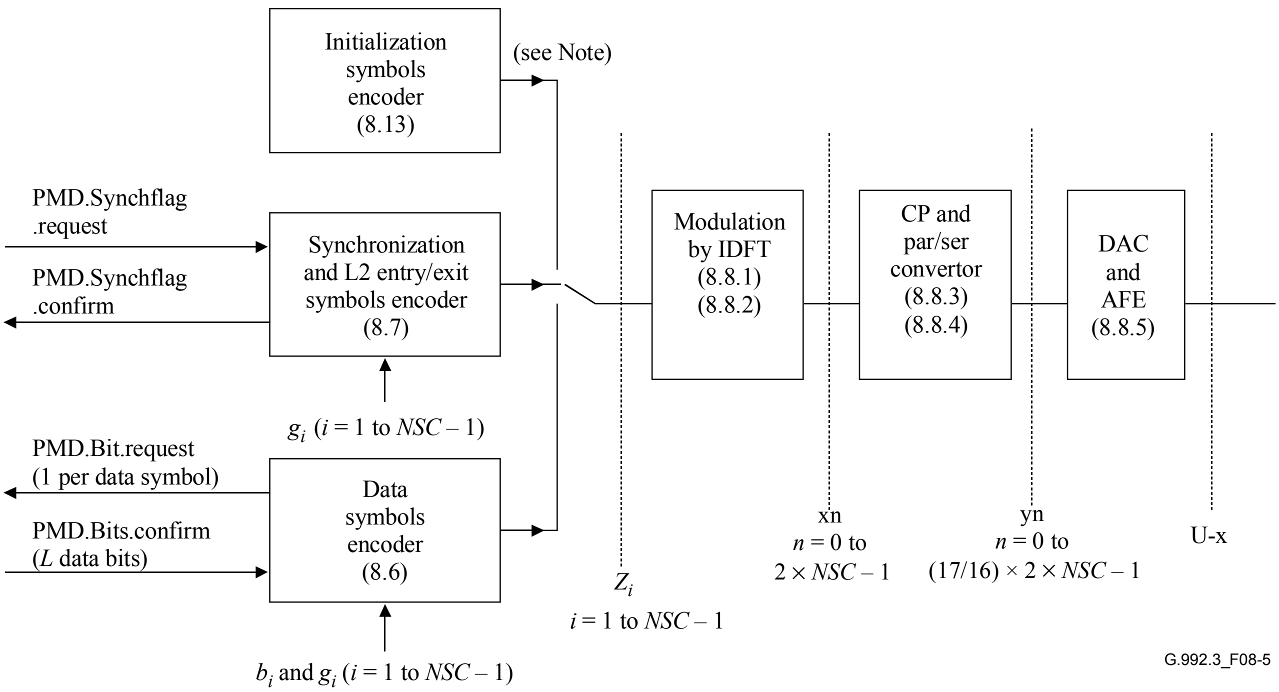
| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| PMD.Control | .request | This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to request the near-end ATU control functions for a reconfiguration of the far-end transmit PMD function control parameters. The near-end and far-end ATU control functions use control messages over the PMS-TC functions to synchronize such reconfiguration. |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the near-end ATU control functions to confirm receipt of a PMD.Control.request primitive from the receive PMD function. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the control flow is synchronized to the rate that can be accommodated by the PMS-TC functions. |
| | .indicate | This primitive is used by the near-end ATU control functions to indicate to the transmit PMD function a reconfiguration of the PMD transmit function control parameters. |
| PMD.Reconfig | .indicate | This primitive is used by the near-end ATU control or management functions to indicate to the receive PMD function that the PMD function control parameters require reconfiguration (see 8.16 and 8.17). This primitive is followed by a PMD.Control.request primitive from the receive PMD function. |

**Table 8-3/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives between the PMD and the near-end maintenance entity**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Management.Prim | .indicate | This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to signal a number of supervisory anomaly or defect primitives to the near-end management entity within the ATU. |
| Management.Param | .request | This primitive is used by the near end Management Entity to request an update of (one or more) test parameters from the transmit or receive PMD function. |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the transmit or receive PMD function, in response to a Management.Param.request primitive, to convey updated test parameter values to the near-end Management Entity. |

### 8.4 Block diagram and internal reference point signals

Figure 8-5 depicts the blocks within the transmit PMD function for support of NSC subcarriers. The primitives for interaction with the transmit PMS-TC function are shown at the leftmost edge of Figure 8-5.




NOTE – The Initialization Symbols Encoder defines $Z_i$ values for $i$ = 1 to 2 × $NSC$ – 1 (see 8.13.2.4).

**Figure 8-5/G.992.3 – Block diagram of the transmit PMD function**

The transmit PMD function shall transmit 4000 data symbols per second. For each data symbol, the transmit PMD function requests and receives a constellation encoder input data frame (containing $L$ data bits) from the transmit PMS-TC function (through the PMD.Bit.request and PMD.Bit.confirm primitives). The data frame shall then be constellation encoded as defined in 8.6. After constellation encoding, the output data frame (containing $NSC$ – 1 complex values) shall be modulated into a data symbols as defined in 8.8 to produce an analog signal for transmission across the digital subscriber line.

The one-way payload transfer delay introduced by the PMD sublayer (i.e., between the $\delta_C$ and $\delta_R$ reference points, see 5.2) shall be less than or equal to 3.75 ms.

NOTE – The one-way payload transfer delay is shared between the ATU-C and the ATU-R.

The transmit PMD function shall use the superframe structure shown in Figure 8-6. Each superframe shall be composed of 68 data frames, numbered from 0 to 67, which are encoded and modulated into 68 data symbols, followed by a synchronization symbol (see 8.7), which carries no data frame and is inserted by the modulator (see 8.8) to establish superframe boundaries. From the PMS-TC perspective, the data symbol rate shall be 4000 per second (symbol period = 250 μs), but, in order to allow for the insertion of the synchronization symbol, the transmitted data symbol rate is 69/68 × 4000 per second. The superframe duration shall therefore be 17 ms.

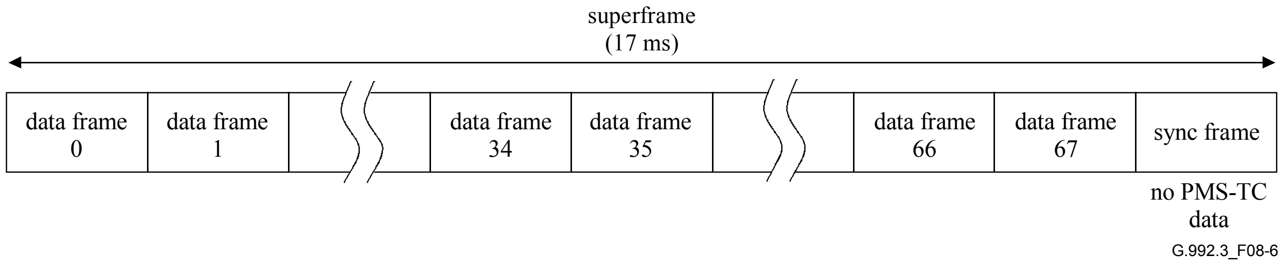



**Figure 8-6/G.992.3 – ADSL superframe structure – ATU-C transmitter**

## 8.5 Control parameters

### 8.5.1 Definition of control parameters

The configuration of the PMD function is controlled by a set of control parameters:

- The PMD transmit function control parameters are displayed in Table 8-4. The values of the control parameters in Table 8-4 are set before or during initialization and may be changed during reconfiguration of an ATU pair. The derived control parameters are listed in Table 8-5.
- The PMD receive function control parameters consist of the PMD transmit function control parameters and the additional PMD receive function control parameters displayed in Table 8-6. The values of the control parameters in Table 8-6 are set before or during initialization and are not changed during reconfiguration of an ATU pair.

The PMD receive function needs to be aware of the settings of the PMD transmit function control parameters. The PMD receive function control parameters therefore include all of the PMD transmit function control parameters.

**Table 8-4/G.992.3 – The transmit PMD function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| *NSC* | The highest subcarriers index which can be transmitted (i.e., subcarrier index corresponding to Nyquist frequency, see 8.8.1.4). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*NSCds*) and the ATU-R (*NSCus*). Its value is fixed by the Recommendation and depends upon the underlying service (i.e., POTS or ISDN). See annexes. |
| *MAXNOMPSD* | The maximum nominal transmit PSD (*MAXNOMPSD*) level during initialization and showtime. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*MAXNOMPSDds*) and the ATU-R (*MAXNOMPSDus*). Its value depends on CO-MIB element settings and near-end transmitter capabilities and is exchanged in the G.994.1 Phase. |
| *NOMPSD* | The nominal transmit PSD level (*NOMPSD*). It is defined as the transmit PSD level in the passband at the start of initialization, relative to which power cut back is applied. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*NOMPSDds*) and the ATU-R (*NOMPSDus*). Its value depends on near-end transmitter capabilities and shall be no higher than the *MAXNOMPSD* value. Its value is exchanged in the G.994.1 Phase. |
| *MAXNOMATP* | The maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATP*) level during initialization and showtime. Nominal aggregate transmit power is defined in Table 8-5. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*MAXNOMATPds*) and the ATU-R (*MAXNOMATPus*). Its value depends on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities and is exchanged in the G.994.1 Phase. |
| *PCB* | The power cutback (*PCB*) to be applied, relative to the nominal PSD. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*PCBds*) and the ATU-R (*PCBus*). Its value depends on the loop and local capabilities. *PCBds* is the maximum of *C-MIN_PCB_DS* and *R-MIN_PCB_DS*, *PCBus* is the maximum of *C-MIN_PCB_US* and *R-MIN_PCB_US*, all exchanged during the Channel Discovery Phase (see Tables 8-27 and 8-32). |
| $tss_i$ | The transmitter spectrum shaping, applied as gain scalings, relative to either the nominal PSD level or the reference PSD level, as defined in 8.13 (can be different per subcarrier, $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$). The values depends on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities and are exchanged in the G.994.1 Phase. |
| $t_i$ | The tone ordering table (can be different per subcarrier, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$). The values are determined by the receive PMD function in the Channel Analysis Phase and exchanged in the Exchange Phase (and shall not change through on-line reconfiguration, i.e., through PMD.Reconfig and PMD.Control primitive). |
| $b_i$ | The *i*-th entry in the bit allocation table b (can be different per subcarrier, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$). The values are determined by the receive PMD function in the Channel Analysis Phase and exchanged in the Exchange Phase (and may change through on-line reconfiguration, i.e., through PMD.Reconfig and PMD.Control primitive). |
| $g_i$ | The *i*-th entry in the gain table g (can be different per subcarrier, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$). The values are determined by the receive PMD function in the Channel Analysis Phase and exchanged in the Exchange Phase (and may change through on-line reconfiguration, i.e., through PMD.Reconfig and PMD.Control primitive).<br>The bits and gains table may not allocate bits to some subcarriers and may finely adjust the transmit PSD level of others in order to equalize expected error ratios on each of those subcarriers. |
| *TRELLIS* | The use of trellis coding (enable/disable setting). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*TRELLISds*) and the ATU-R (*TRELLISus*). Its value is determined by the receive PMD function during Channel Analysis Phase and exchanged during Exchange Phase. |

**Table 8-4/G.992.3 – The transmit PMD function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| *PM-STATE* | The Power Management State the ATU's are in (L0, L2 or L3). ATU-C and ATU-R are in the same power management state. Its value is configured by the near-end ATU Control Function, possibly based on configuration forced through the MIB and/or by the far-end Control Function. |
| *L0-TIME*<br>*L2-TIME*<br>*L2-ATPR* | These configuration parameters are related to the L2 low power state and exist only for the ATU-C. They are configured through the CO-MIB.<br>The *L0-TIME* represents the minimum time (in seconds) between Exit from L2 low power state and the next Entry into the L2 low power state (see 9.5.2).<br>The *L2-TIME* represents the minimum time (in seconds) between Entry into L2 low power state and the first L2 low power trim request and between two consecutive L2 power trim requests (see 9.5.2).<br>The *L2-ATPR* value represents the maximum aggregate transmit power reduction that is allowed in an L2 low power trim request (see 9.5.2). |
| Tones 1 to 32 | Applies to ISDN related service option only (see Annex B). |

**Table 8-5/G.992.3 – Derived transmit PMD function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| *L* | The number of bits received from the PMS-TC per PMD.Bits.confirm primitive.<br>The *L* value can be calculated from the *b* bit allocation table and the use of trellis coding.<br>This number of bits may change when on-line reconfiguration of the *b* table is performed. |
| *REFPSD* | The reference transmit PSD (*REFPSD*) level. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*REFPSDds*) and the ATU-R (*REFPSDus*).<br>The reference transmit PSD level is defined as the nominal transmit PSD level, lowered by the power cutback (i.e., $REFPSD = NOMPSD - PCB$). |
| *RMSGI* | The average $g_i$ value (*RMSGI*). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RMSGIds*) and the ATU-R (*RMSGIus*). The average $g_i$ value is defined as<br>$$RMSGI = 10 \times \log\left(\frac{1}{NCUSED}\sum_{i:b_i>0} g_i^2\right)$$<br>where *NCUSED* is the number of subcarriers with $b_i > 0$. |
| *NOMATP* | The nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*NOMATPds*) and the ATU-R (*NOMATPus*). The *NOMATP* shall be defined as:<br>$$NOMATP[\text{dBm}] = 36.35 + NOMPSD + 10 \times \log\left(\sum_{i \in MEDLEYset} g_i^2 \times tss_i^2\right)$$<br>where the term 36.35 represents 10 log(Δf) (see 8.8.1). |

**Table 8-6/G.992.3 – The receive PMD function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| *TARSNRM*<br>*MINSNRM*<br>*MAXSNRM* | The target, minimum, and maximum noise margin (defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*TARSNRMus*, *MINSNRMus*, *MAXSNRMus*) and the ATU-R (*TARSNRMds*, *MINSNRMds*, *MAXSNRMds*).<br>ATU-C: configured through CO-MIB.<br>ATU-R: configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase. |
| *RA-MODE* | The rate adaptation mode (defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RA-MODEds*) and the ATU-R (*RA-MODEus*).<br>ATU-C: configured through CO-MIB.<br>ATU-R: configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase.<br>The following rate adaptation modes are defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]:<br>• MANUAL: Data rate is fixed and configured through CO-MIB;<br>• RATE ADAPTIVE AT INIT: Data rate is selected at initialization, between minimum and maximum bounds configured through CO-MIB. Data rate is fizzed during showtime.<br>• DYNAMIC RATE ADAPTATION: Data rate is selected at initialization, between minimum and maximum bounds configured through CO-MIB. Data rate may change during showtime within the same bounds. This Recommendation refers to this mode as Seamless Rate Adaptation (SRA). |
| *PM-MODE* | The power management mode indicates the allowed link states. The parameter is the same for ATU-C and ATU-R, is configured through the CO-MIB and is exchanged during the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase.<br>Bit 0: indicates whether the L3 state is allowed (1) or not allowed (0).<br>Bit 1: indicates whether the L2 state is allowed (1) or not allowed (0). |
| *RA-USNRM*<br>*RA-UTIME* | The rate adaptation upshift noise margin and time interval (defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RA-USNRMus* and *RA-UTIMEus*) and the ATU-R (*RA-UTIMEds*, *RA-USNRMds*).<br>ATU-C: configured through CO-MIB.<br>ATU-R: configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase. |
| *RA-DSNRM*<br>*RA-DTIME* | The rate adaptation downshift noise margin and time interval (defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RA-DSNRMus* and *RA-DTIMEus*) and the ATU-R (*RA-DTIMEds*, *RA-DSNRMds*).<br>ATU-C: configured through CO-MIB.<br>ATU-R: configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase. |
| *BIMAX* | The maximum number of bits per subcarrier supported by the far-end transmitter. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*BIMAXds*) and the ATU-R (*BIMAXus*). Its value depends on the capabilities of the far-end transmitter and is exchanged in the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase. |

**Table 8-6/G.992.3 – The receive PMD function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| *EXTGI* | The maximum extension of the $g_i$ range supported by the far-end transmitter. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*EXTGIds*) and the ATU-R (*EXTGIus*). Its value depends on the capabilities of the far-end transmitter and on the loop characteristics identified during the Initialization Channel Discovery Phase. Its value is exchanged in the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase. |
| *MAXRXPWR* (ATU-C only) | In order to provide non-reciprocal FEXT control, the ATU-C shall request an upstream transmit power cutback in the C-MSG-PCB message, such that the power received at the ATU-C is no higher than the maximum level specified in the CO-MIB. The power received at the ATU-C shall be measured as defined in 8.13.3.1.11. |

### 8.5.2 Mandatory and optional settings of control parameters

The valid control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function are shown in Tables 8-7 and 8-9, for the ATU-C and ATU-R respectively. The mandatory control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function are shown in Tables 8-8 and 8-10, for the ATU-C and ATU-R respectively. There are no optional values for the control parameters of the ATU-C and ATU-R transmit PMD function.

**Table 8-7/G.992.3 – The valid ATU-C PMD transmit function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $b_i$ | All integer values $0 \leq b_i \leq 15$ |
| *BIMAXds* | $8 \leq BIMAXds \leq 15$ |
| $g_i$ | All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to 18 dB.<br>The gain value shall be represented with 3 bits before and 9 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/512 in linear scale. |
| *EXTGIds* | $0 \leq EXTGIds \leq MAXNOMPSDds - NOMPSDds$ |
| *TRELLISds* | Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-C transmitter. |
| *MAXNOMPSDds* | All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –40 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz. |
| *NOMPSDds* | All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –40 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz. |
| *MAXNOMATPds* | All values corresponding with valid G.994.1 Spectrum bounds parameters |
| *PCBds* | All values from 0 to 40 dB, in 1 dB steps. |
| $tss_i$ | All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale), in 1/1024 steps.<br>The $tss_i$ value shall be represented with 1 bit before and 10 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/1024 in linear scale. |
| *L* | All integer values $8 \leq L \leq 15 \times (NSCds - 1)$. |

**Table 8-8/G.992.3 – The mandatory ATU-C PMD transmit function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $b_i$ | All integer values $0 \leq b_i \leq BIMAXds$, with *BIMAXds* identified during initialization |
| *BIMAXds* | 8 |
| $g_i$ | All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to *EXTGIds* + 2.5 dB, with *EXTGIds* identified during initialization. |
| *EXTGIds* | 0 |
| *TRELLISds* | Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-C transmitter. |
| *PCBds* | All values from 0 to 40 dB, in 1 dB steps. |
| $tss_i$ | All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale), in 1/1024 steps. |
| *L* | All integer values from $8 \leq L \leq BIMAXds \times (NSCds - 1)$ with *BIMAXds* and NSCds identified during initialization. |

**Table 8-9/G.992.3 – The valid ATU-R PMD transmit function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $b_i$ | All integer values $0 \leq b_i \leq 15$ |
| *BIMAXus* | $8 \leq BIMAXus \leq 15$ |
| $g_i$ | All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to 18 dB.<br>The gain value shall be represented with 3 bits before and 9 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/512 in linear scale. |
| *EXTGIus* | $0 \leq EXTGIus \leq MAXNOMPSDus - NOMPSDus$ |
| *TRELLISus* | Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-R transmitter. |
| *MAXNOMPSDus* | All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –38 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz. |
| *NOMPSDus* | All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –38 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz. |
| *MAXNOMATPus* | All values corresponding with valid G.994.1 spectrum bounds parameters |
| *PCBus* | All values from 0 to 40 dB, in 1 dB steps. |
| $tss_i$ | All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale), in 1/1024 steps.<br>The $tss_i$ value shall be represented with 1 bit before and 10 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/1024 in linear scale. |
| *L* | All integer values $8 \leq L \leq 15 \times (NSCus - 1)$. |

**Table 8-10/G.992.3 – The mandatory ATU-R PMD transmit function control parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $b_i$ | All integer values $0 \le b_i \le BIMAXus$, with *BIMAXus* identified during initialization |
| *BIMAXus* | 8 |
| $g_i$ | All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to *EXTGIus* + 2.5 dB, with *EXTGIus* identified during initialization. |
| *EXTGIus* | 0 |
| *TRELLISus* | Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-R transmitter. |
| *PCBus* | All values from 0 to 40 dB, in 1 dB steps. |
| $tss_i$ | All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale), in 1/1024 steps. |
| *L* | All integer values from $8 \le L \le BIMAXus \times (NSCus - 1)$ with *BIMAXus* and *NSCus* identified during initialization. |

### 8.5.3 Setting control parameters during initialization

#### 8.5.3.1 During the G.994.1 phase

The control parameters to be exchanged during the G.994.1 phase are listed in 8.13.2.

#### 8.5.3.2 During the channel analysis phase

The format of the PMD function control parameters involved in the MSG1 messages shall be as shown in Table 8-11.

**Table 8-11/G.992.3 – Format of PMD function control parameters included in MSG1**

| Parameter | Format |
|---|---|
| *TARSNRM* | Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps). |
| *MINSNRM* | Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps). |
| *MAXSNRM* | Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps). The value 511 is a special value, indicating that excess margin relative to *MAXSNRM* need not to be minimized (see 8.6.4), i.e., that the *MAXSNRM* value is effectively infinite. |
| *RA-MODE* | Unsigned 2-bit integer, values 1 to 3. |
| *PM-MODE* | Binary 2-bit indication, each set to 0 or 1. |
| *RA-USNRM* | Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps). |
| *RA-UTIME* | Unsigned 14-bit integer, 0 to 16383 (in seconds). |
| *RA-DSNRM* | Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps). |
| *RA-DTIME* | Unsigned 14-bit integer, 0 to 16383 (in seconds). |
| *BIMAX* | Unsigned 4 bit integer, 8 to 15. |
| *EXTGI* | Unsigned 8-bit integer, 0 to 255 (0 to 25.5 dB in 0.1 dB steps). |
| *CA-MEDLEY* | Unsigned 6-bit integer, 0 to 63 (times 512 symbols). |

The value *CA-MEDLEY* represents the minimum duration (in multiples of 512 symbols) of the MEDLEY state during the Initialization Channel Analysis Phase. It can be different for the ATU-C (*CA-MEDLEYus* indicates the minimum length of the R-MEDLEY state) and the ATU-R (*CA-MEDLEYds* indicates the minimum length of the C-MEDLEY state). See 8.13.5.1.4 and 8.13.5.2.4.

The PMD function control parameters exchanged in the C-MSG1 message are listed in Table 8-12.

**Table 8-12/G.992.3 – PMD function control parameters included in C-MSG1**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Parameter** | **PMD format** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | *TARSNRMds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 1 | *TARSNRMds* (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 8 |
| 2 | *MINSNRMds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | *MINSNRMds* (MSB) | [ 0000 000x ], bit 8 |
| 4 | *MAXSNRMds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | *MAXSNRMds* (MSB) | [ 0000 000x ], bit 8 |
| 6 | *RA-MODEds* | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 1 to 0 |
| 7 | *PM-MODE* | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 1 to 0 |
| 8 | *RA-USNRMds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 9 | *RA-USNRMds* (MSB) | [ 0000 000x ], bit 8 |
| 10 | *RA-UTIMEds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 11 | *RA-UTIMEds* (MSB) | [ 00xx xxxx ], bit 13 to 8 |
| 12 | *RA-DSNRMds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 13 | *RA-DSNRMds* (MSB) | [ 0000 000x ], bit 8 |
| 14 | *RA-DTIMEds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 15 | *RA-DTIMEds* (MSB) | [ 00xx xxxx ], bit 13 to 8 |
| 16 | *BIMAXds* | [ 0000 xxxx ], bit 3 to 0 |
| 17 | *EXTGIds* | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 18 | *CA-MEDLEYus* | [ 00xx xxxx ], bit 5 to 0 |
| 19 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |

The PMD function control parameters exchanged in the R-MSG1 message are listed in Table 8-13.

**Table 8-13/G.992.3 – PMD function control parameters included in R-MSG1**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Parameter** | **PMD format** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | *BIMAXus* | [ 0000 xxxx ], bit 3 to 0 |
| 1 | *EXTGIus* | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 2 | *CA-MEDLEYds* | [ 00xx xxxx ], bit 5 to 0 |
| 3 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |

The value *EXTGI* shall be in the [0 .. (*MAXNOMPSD* – *NOMPSD*)] range. The value may or may not depend on the transmit PMD function's capabilities and the line characteristics identified during Channel Discovery Phase. The receive PMD function shall use $g_i$ values in the [–14.5 .. (+2.5 + *EXTGI*)] range. Depending on its capabilities and the line characteristics identified during Channel Discovery Phase, the receive PMD function may or may not use $g_i$ values up to the allowed maximum value.

The ATU-C shall set the REFPSDds, the downstream $tss_i$ and the EXTGIds values such that the downstream transmit PSD Mask is not violated at any of the subcarriers in the downstream MEDLEYset, even if the $g_i$ value requested by the ATU-R is as high as (2.5 + EXTGI) dB for one or more of those subcarriers.

NOTE – An extended range for $g_i$ values can only be used if the transmit PSD function chooses to use a nominal transmit PSD level that is below the maximum transmit PSD level allowed by the CO-MIB and can only be used within the transmit PSD mask limitations set by the CO-MIB.

### 8.5.3.3 During the exchange phase

The format of the PMD function control and test parameters involved in the PARAMS messages shall be as shown in Table 8-14.

**Table 8-14/G.992.3 – Format of PMD function control parameters included in PARAMS**

| Parameter | Format |
|---|---|
| *LATN* | Test parameter, see 8.12.3. |
| *SATN* | Test parameter, see 8.12.3. |
| *SNRM* | Test parameter, see 8.12.3. |
| *ATTNDR* | Test parameter, see 8.12.3. |
| *ACTATP* | Test parameter, see 8.12.3. |
| *TRELLIS* | Binary indication, set to 0 or 1. |
| Bits and Gains table | Bits and gains table is represented by *NSC* – 1 entries or 2 × (*NSC* – 1) octets.<br>Each entry is a 16-bit unsigned integer.<br>Bits in 4 LSB, Gain in 12 MSB, linear scale.<br>The gain value shall be represented with 3 bits before and 9 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/512 in linear scale. |
| Tone ordering table | Tone ordering is represented by *NSC* – 1 entries.<br>Each entry is an 8-bit unsigned integer, representing a subcarrier index. |

The test parameters are mapped into messages using an integer number of octets per parameter value. In case the parameter value, as defined in 8.12.3, is represented with a number of bits that is not an integer number of octets, the parameter value shall be mapped into the least significant bits of the message octets. Unused more significant bits shall be set to 0 for unsigned parameter values and shall be set to the sign bit for signed parameter values.

The PMD function control parameters and test parameters exchanged in the C-PARAMS message are listed in Table 8-15.

**Table 8-15/G.992.3 – PMD function control parameters included in C-PARAMS**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Parameter** | **PMD format** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | *LATNus* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 1 | *LATNus* (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 2 | *SATNus* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | *SATNus* (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 4 | *SNRMus* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | *SNRMus* (MSB) | [ ssss sxxx ], bit 10 to 8 |
| 6 | *ATTNDRus* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 7 | *ATTNDRus* | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 8 | *ATTNDRus* | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 23 to 16 |
| 9 | *ATTNDRus* (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 31 to 24 |
| 10 | *ACTATPus* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 11 | *ACTATPus* (MSB) | [ ssss ssxx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 12 | *TRELLISus* | [ 0000 000x], bit 0 |
| 13 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 14 | Upstream Bits and Gains<br>For subcarrier 1 (LSB) | [ gggg bbbb ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 15 | Upstream Bits and Gains<br>For subcarrier 1 (MSB) | [ gggg gggg ], bit 15 to 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 10 + 2 × *NSCus* | Upstream Bits and Gains<br>Subcarrier *NSCus* – 1 (LSB) | [ gggg bbbb ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 11 + 2 × *NSCus* | Upstream Bits and Gains<br>Subcarrier *NSCus* – 1 (MSB) | [ gggg gggg ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 12 + 2 × *NSCus* | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 13 + 2 × *NSCus* | Upstream Tone ordering<br>First subcarrier to map | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 11 + 3 × *NSCus* | Upstream Tone ordering<br>Last subcarrier to map | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |

The PMD function control parameters exchanged in the R-PARAMS message are listed in Table 8-16.

**Table 8-16/G.992.3 – PMD function control parameters included in R-PARAMS**

| Octet Nr [i] | Parameter | PMD format bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | *LATNds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 1 | *LATNds* (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 2 | *SATNds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | *SATNds* (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 4 | *SNRMds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | *SNRMds* (MSB) | [ ssss sxxx ], bit 10 to 8 |
| 6 | *ATTNDRds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 7 | *ATTNDRds* | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 8 | *ATTNDRds* | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 23 to 16 |
| 9 | *ATTNDRds* (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 31 to 24 |
| 10 | *ACTATPds* (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 11 | *ACTATPds* (MSB) | [ ssss ssxx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 12 | *TRELLISds* | [ 0000 000x ], bit 0 |
| 13 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 14 | Downstream Bits and Gains For subcarrier 1 (LSB) | [ gggg bbbb ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 15 | Downstream Bits and Gains For subcarrier 1 (MSB) | [ gggg gggg ], bit 15 to 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 10 + 2 × *NSCds* | Downstream Bits and Gains Subcarrier *NSCds* – 1 (LSB) | [ gggg bbbb ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 11 + 2 × *NSCds* | Downstream Bits and Gains Subcarrier *NSCds* – 1 (MSB) | [ gggg gggg ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 12 + 2 × *NSCds* | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 13 + 2 × *NSCds* | Downstream Tone ordering First subcarrier to map | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 11 + 3 × *NSCds* | Downstream Tone ordering Last subcarrier to map | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |

## 8.6 Constellation encoder for data symbols

The constellation encoder for data symbols is shown as part of the transmit PMD function in Figure 8-5. The constellation encoder for data symbols consists of the following functions:

- Tone ordering;
- Trellis coder;
- Constellation mapper;
- Gain scaling.

This clause specifies each of these functions, based on the applicable transmit PMD function configuration parameters defined in 8.5. The constellation encoder input data frame (from the transmit PMS-TC function) consists of $L$ data bits. The output data frame (to the modulator) consists of $NSC - 1$ complex values ($Z_i$, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$).

### 8.6.1 Tone ordering

During initialization, the receive PMD function shall calculate the numbers of bits and the relative gains to be used for every subcarrier, as well as the order in which subcarriers are assigned bits (i.e., the tone ordering). The calculated bits and gains and the tone ordering shall be sent back to the transmit PMD function during a later stage of initialization (see 8.5.3.3).

The pairs of bits and relative gains are defined, in ascending order of frequency or subcarrier index $i$, as a bit allocation table $b$ and gain table $g$ (i.e., $b_i$ and $g_i$, for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$, with $b_1$ bits to be allocated to subcarrier 1 and $b_{NSC-1}$ bits to be allocated to subcarrier $NSC - 1$). If trellis coding is used, the receive PMD function shall include an even number of 1-bit subcarriers in the bit allocation table $b$.

The tone ordering table $t$ is defined as the sequence in which subcarriers are assigned bits from the input bitstream (i.e., $t_i$ for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$, with constellation mapping beginning on subcarrier $t_1$ and ending on subcarrier $t_{NSC-1}$). The tone ordering table $t$ shall remain static for the duration of the session.

Following receipt of the tables $b$, $g$ and $t$, the transmit PMD function shall calculate a reordered bit table $b'$ and a reordered tone table $t'$ from the original tables $b$ and $t$. Constellation mapping shall occur in sequence according to the re-ordered tone table $t'$, with the number of bits per tone as defined by the original bit table $b$. Trellis coding shall occur according to the re-ordered bit table $b'$.

If trellis coding is not used, $b' = b$ and $t' = t$.

If trellis coding is used, the reordering of table $t$ shall be performed by the transmit PMD function. The reordered tone table $t'$ shall be generated according to the following rules:

- Indices of all subcarriers supporting 0 bits or 2 or more bits appear first in $t'$, in the same order as in table $t$.
- Indices of all subcarriers supporting 1 bit appear last in table $t'$, in the same order as in table $t$.

If the bit allocation does not include any 1-bit subcarriers, the reordered tone table $t'$ is identical to the original tone table $t$.

The (even number of) 1-bit subcarriers shall be paired to form 2-dimensional constellation points as input to the trellis encoder. The pairing shall be determined by the order in which the 1-bit subcarriers appear in the original tone ordering table $t$.

The table $b'$ is generated by scanning the reordered tone table $t'$ and reordering the entries of table $b$ according to the following rules (with $NCONEBIT$ representing the number of 1-bit subcarriers in the bit allocation table $b$):

- The first $NCONEBIT/2$ entries of $b'$ shall be 0, where $NCONEBIT$ is the (by definition, even) number of subcarriers supporting 1 bit.
- The next entries of $b'$ shall be 0, corresponding to the subcarriers that support 0 bits.
- The next entries of $b'$ shall be non-zero, corresponding to the subcarriers that support 2 or more bits. The entries shall be determined using the new tone table $t'$ in conjunction with the original bit table $b$.
- The last $NCONEBIT/2$ entries of $b'$ correspond to the paired 1-bit constellations (i.e., 2 bits per entry).

The table $b'$ is compatible with the G.992.1 trellis encoder.

The tables *b*' and *t*' shall be calculated from the original tables *b* and *t* as shown in the tone pairing and bit re-ordering processes below.

```
/* TONE RE-ORDERING PROCESS */
t_index=1; /* tone order index t_index is index of array t */
t'_index=1; /* tone paired index t'_index is index of array t' */
while (t_index<NSC) {
 tone=t[t_index++]; bits=b[tone];
 if (bits==0) { t'[t'_index++]=tone; }
 if (bits==1) { }
 if (bits≥2) { t'[t'_index++]=tone; }
 }
while (t'_index<NSC) t'[t'_index++]=1;

/* BIT RE-ORDERING PROCESS */
NC1=0; /* NCONEBIT is the number of tones with 1 bit */
NCL=0; /* NCUSED is the number of used tones (at least 1 bit) */
for (i=1; i<NSC; i++) { if (b[i]>0) NCL++; if (b[i]==1) NC1++; }
b'_index=1; while (b'_index<(NSC-(NCUSED-NCONEBIT/2))) b'[b'_index]=0;
t'_index=1; while (t'_index<NSC) {
 tone=t'[t'_index++]; bits=b[tone];
 if (bits==0) { }
 if (bits==1) { b'[b'_index++]=2; t'_index++; }
 if (bits≥2) { b'[b'_index++]=bits; }
}
```

Figure 8-7 presents an example to illustrate the tone reordering and bit reordering procedures, and the pairing of 1-bit subcarriers for trellis encoding.

**Tone ordering table *t* (as determined by the receive PMD function, NSC=24)**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 14 | 21 | 4 | 11 | 18 | 1 | 8 | 15 | 22 | 5 | 12 | 19 | 2 | 9 | 16 | 23 | 6 | 13 | 20 | 3 | 10 | 17 |

**Bit ordering table *b* (as determined by the receive PMD function, 37 bit/symbol)**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 3 | 2 |

**Tone reordered table *t*' (moving 1-bit tones to the end of the table)**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 21 | 4 | 11 | 18 | 1 | 15 | 22 | 5 | 12 | 9 | 16 | 23 | 20 | 3 | 10 | 17 | 14 | 8 | 19 | 2 | 6 | 13 |

**Bit reordered table *b*' (moving 0-bit tones to begin of the table)**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 1+1 | 1+1 | 1+1 |

**Trellis pairs (encoding 25 data bits into 37 trellis bits) and bit mapping to tones**

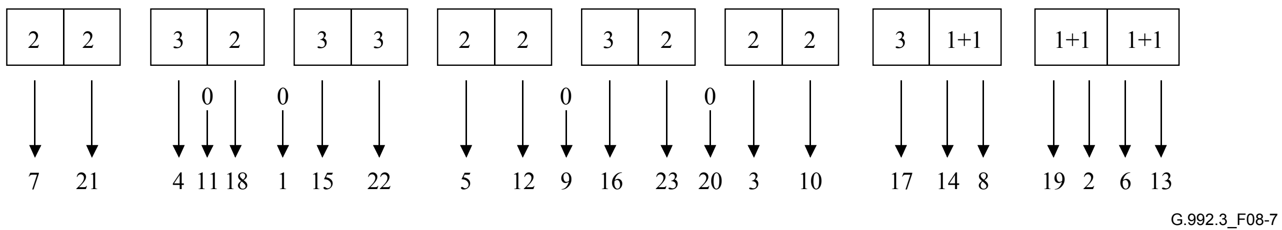



**Figure 8-7/G.992.3 – Example of frequency ordering and pairing of one-bit carriers**

If on-line reconfiguration changes the number or indices of 0-bit subcarriers or 1-bit subcarriers, then tables *t*' and *b*' shall be recalculated from the updated table *b* and the original table *t*.

The constellation encoder takes *L* bits per symbol from the PMS-TC layer. If trellis coding is used, the *L* bits shall be encoded into a number of bits *L*' matching the bit allocation table *b* and the reordered bit table *b*', i.e., into a number of bits equal to $L' = \sum b_i' = \sum b_i$. See 8.6.2. The value of *L* and *L*' relate as:

$$L' = \sum b_i' = \sum b_i = L + \left\lceil \frac{NCUSED - \frac{NCONEBIT}{2}}{2} \right\rceil + 4$$

with the $\lceil x \rceil$ notation representing rounding to the higher integer. The above relationship shows that using the 1-bit subcarrier pairing method, on average, one trellis overhead bit is added per set of four 1-bit subcarriers, i.e., one trellis overhead bit per 4-dimensional constellation. In case trellis coding is not used, the value of *L* shall match the bit allocation table, i.e., $L = \sum b_i$.

A complementary procedure should be performed in the receive PMD function. It is not necessary, however, to send the re-ordered bit table *b*' and the re-ordered tone table *t*' to the receive PMD function because they are generated in a deterministic way from the bit allocation table and tone ordering tables originally generated in the receive PMD function, and therefore the receive PMD function has all the information necessary to perform the constellation demapping and trellis decoding (if used).

### 8.6.2 Trellis coder

Block processing of Wei's 16-state 4-dimensional trellis code shall be supported to improve system performance. An algorithmic constellation encoder shall be used to construct constellations with a maximum number of bits equal to *BIMAXds*.

#### 8.6.2.1 Bit extraction

Data bits from the data frame buffer shall be extracted according to the bit allocation table $b_i'$, least significant bit first. Because of the 4-dimensional nature of the code, the extraction is based on pairs of consecutive $b_i'$, rather than on individual ones, as in the non-trellis-coded case. Furthermore, due to the constellation expansion associated with coding, the bit allocation table, $b_i'$, specifies the number of coded bits per subcarrier, which can be any integer from 2 to 15.

Trellis coding shall be performed on pairs of consecutive *b*' values, ($x = b_{2\times i}'$, $y = b_{2\times i+1}'$), in the order $i = 0$ to $(NSC/2) - 1$. The value $b_0'$ is prepended to the reordered bit table b' to make an integer number of pairs and shall be set to 0.

Given a pair $(x, y)$, $x + y - 1$ bits (reflecting a constellation expansion of 1 bit per 4 dimensions, or one half bit per subcarrier) are extracted from the data frame buffer. These $z = x + y - 1$ bits ($t_z$, $t_{z-1}$, ... , $t_1$) are used to form the binary word *u* as shown in Table 8-17. Refer to 8.6.2.2 for the reason behind the special form of the word *u* for the case $x = 0$, $y > 1$.

**Table 8-17/G.992.3 – Forming the binary word *u***

| Condition | Binary word/comment |
|---|---|
| $x > 1, y > 1$ | $u = (t_z, t_{z-1}, \dots, t_1)$ |
| $x = 1, y \geq 1$ | Condition not allowed |
| $x = 0, y > 1$ | $u = (t_z, t_{z-1}, \dots, t_2, 0, t_1, 0)$ |
| $x = 0, y = 0$ | Bit extraction not necessary, no message bits being sent |
| $x = 0, y = 1$ | Condition not allowed |
| NOTE – $t_1$ is the first bit extracted from the data frame buffer. | |

The last two 4-dimensional symbols in the DMT symbol shall be chosen to force the convolutional encoder state to the zero state. For each of these symbols, the 2 LSBs of $u$ are predetermined, and only $(x + y - 3)$ bits shall be extracted from the data frame buffer and shall be allocated to $t_3, t_4, \dots, t_z$.

NOTE – The above requirements imply a minimum size of the $b_i'$ table of 4 non-zero entries. The minimum number of non-zero entries in the corresponding $b_i$ table could be higher.

### 8.6.2.2 Bit conversion

The binary word $u = (u_{z'}, u_{z'-1}, \dots, u_1)$ extracted LSB first from the data bita buffer determines two binary words $v = (v_{z'-y}, \dots, v_0)$ and $w = (w_{y-1}, \dots, w_0)$, which are inserted LSB first in the encoded bits buffer and used to look up constellation points in the constellation encoder (see Figure 8-8).

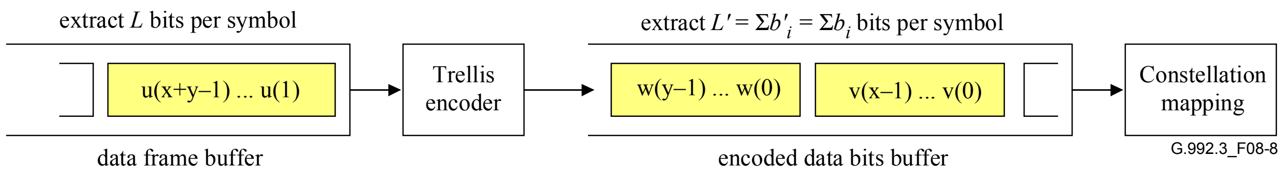



**Figure 8-8/G.992.3 – Relationship of trellis encoder and constellation mapping**

NOTE – For convenience of description, the constellation encoder identifies these $x$ and $y$ bits with a label whose binary representation is $(v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \dots, v_1, v_0)$. The same constellation encoding rules apply to both the $v$ (with $b = x$) and $w$ (with $b = y$) vector generated by the trellis encoder.

For the usual case of $x > 1$ and $y > 1$, $z' = z = x + y - 1$, and $v$ and $w$ contain $x$ and $y$ bits respectively. For the special case of $x = 0$ and $y > 1$, $z' = z + 2 = y + 1$, $v = (v_1, v_0) = 0$ and $w = (w_{y-1}, \dots, w_0)$. The bits $(u_3, u_2, u_1)$ determine $(v_1, v_0)$ and $(w_1, w_0)$ according to Figure 8-9.

The convolutional encoder shown in Figure 8-9 is a systematic encoder (i.e., $u_1$ and $u_2$ are passed through unchanged) as shown in Figure 8-10. The convolutional encoder state $(S_3, S_2, S_1, S_0)$ is used to label the states of the trellis shown in Figure 8-12. At the beginning of a DMT symbol period, the convolutional encoder state is initialized to (0, 0, 0, 0).

The remaining bits of $v$ and $w$ are obtained from the less significant and more significant parts of $(u_{z'}, u_{z'-1}, \dots, u_4)$, respectively. When $x > 1$ and $y > 1$, $v = (u_{z'-y+2}, u_{z'-y+1}, \dots, u_4, v_1, v_0)$ and $w = (u_{z'}, u_{z'-1}, \dots, u_{z'-y+3}, w_1, w_0)$. When $x = 0$, the bit extraction and conversion algorithms have been judiciously designed so that $v_1 = v_0 = 0$. The binary word $v$ is input first to the constellation encoder, and then the binary word $w$.

In order to force the final state to the zero state (0, 0, 0, 0), the 2 LSBs $u_1$ and $u_2$ of the final two 4-dimensional symbols in the DMT symbol are constrained to $u_1 = S_1 \oplus S_3$, and $u_2 = S_2$.

### 8.6.2.3 Coset partitioning and trellis diagram

In a trellis code modulation system, the expanded constellation is labelled and partitioned into subsets ("cosets") using a technique called mapping by set-partitioning. The 4-dimensional cosets in Wei's code can each be written as the union of two Cartesian products of two 2-dimensional cosets.

For example, $C_4^0 = \left(C_2^0 \times C_2^0\right) \cup \left(C_2^3 \times C_2^3\right)$. The four constituent 2-dimensional cosets, denoted by $C_2^0, C_2^1, C_2^2, C_2^3$, are shown in Figure 8-11.

The encoding algorithm ensures that the two least significant bits of a constellation point comprise the index $i$ of the 2-dimensional coset $C_2^i$ in which the constellation point lies. The bits ($v_1$, $v_0$) and ($w_1$, $w_0$) are in fact the binary representations of this index.

The three bits ($u_2$, $u_1$, $u_0$) are used to select one of the eight possible 4-dimensional cosets. The eight cosets are labelled $C_4^i$ where $i$ is the integer with binary representation ($u_2$, $u_1$, $u_0$). The additional bit $u_3$ (see Figure 8-9) determines which one of the two Cartesian products of 2-dimensional cosets in the 4-dimensional coset is chosen. The relationship is shown in Table 8-18. The bits ($v_1$, $v_0$) and ($w_1$, $w_0$) are computed from ($u_3$, $u_2$, $u_1$, $u_0$) using the linear equations given in Figure 8-9.

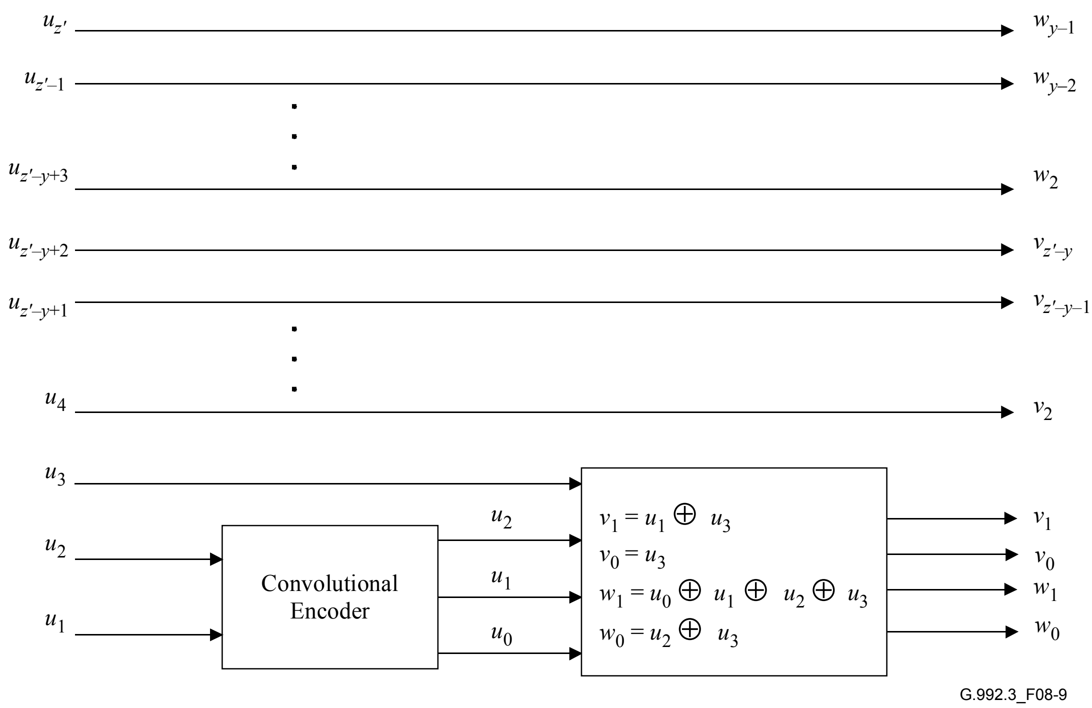



**Figure 8-9/G.992.3 – Conversion of *u* to *v* and *w***

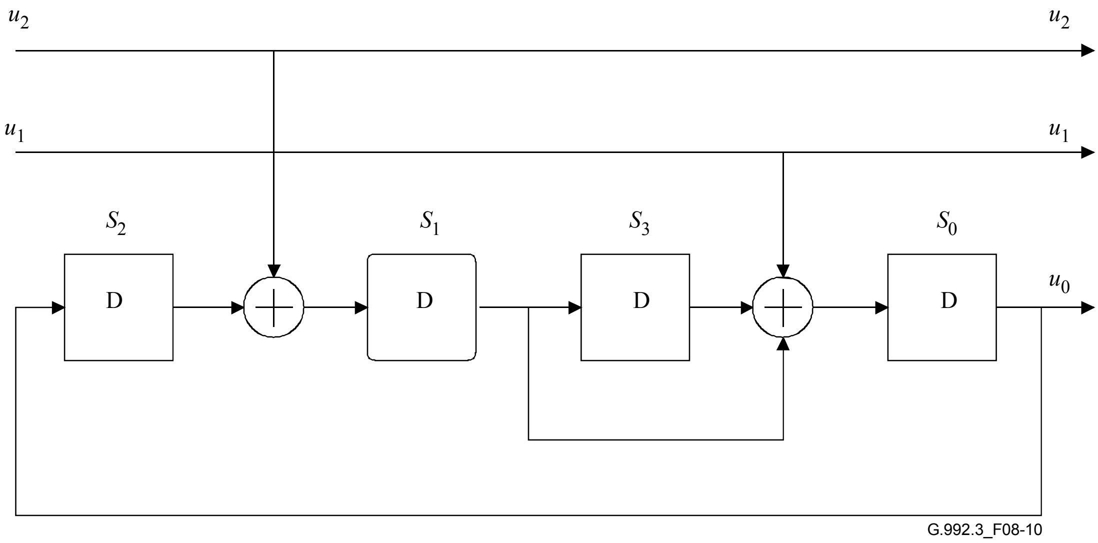



**Figure 8-10/G.992.3 – Finite state machine for Wei's encoder**

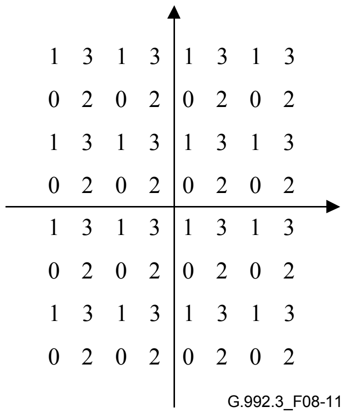



**Figure 8-11/G.992.3 – Convolutional encoder**

**Table 8-18/G.992.3 – Relation between 4-dimensional and 2-dimensional cosets**

| 4-D coset | $u_3$ | $u_2$ | $u_1$ | $u_0$ | $v_1$ | $v_0$ | $w_1$ | $w_0$ | 2-D cosets |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $C_4^0$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | $C_2^0 \times C_2^0$ |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | $C_2^3 \times C_2^3$ |
| $C_4^4$ | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | $C_2^0 \times C_2^3$ |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | $C_2^3 \times C_2^0$ |
| $C_4^2$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | $C_2^2 \times C_2^2$ |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | $C_2^1 \times C_2^1$ |
| $C_4^6$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | $C_2^2 \times C_2^1$ |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | $C_2^1 \times C_2^2$ |
| $C_4^1$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | $C_2^0 \times C_2^2$ |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | $C_2^3 \times C_2^1$ |
| $C_4^5$ | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | $C_2^0 \times C_2^1$ |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | $C_2^3 \times C_2^2$ |
| $C_4^3$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | $C_2^2 \times C_2^0$ |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | $C_2^1 \times C_2^3$ |
| $C_4^7$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | $C_2^2 \times C_2^3$ |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | $C_2^1 \times C_2^0$ |

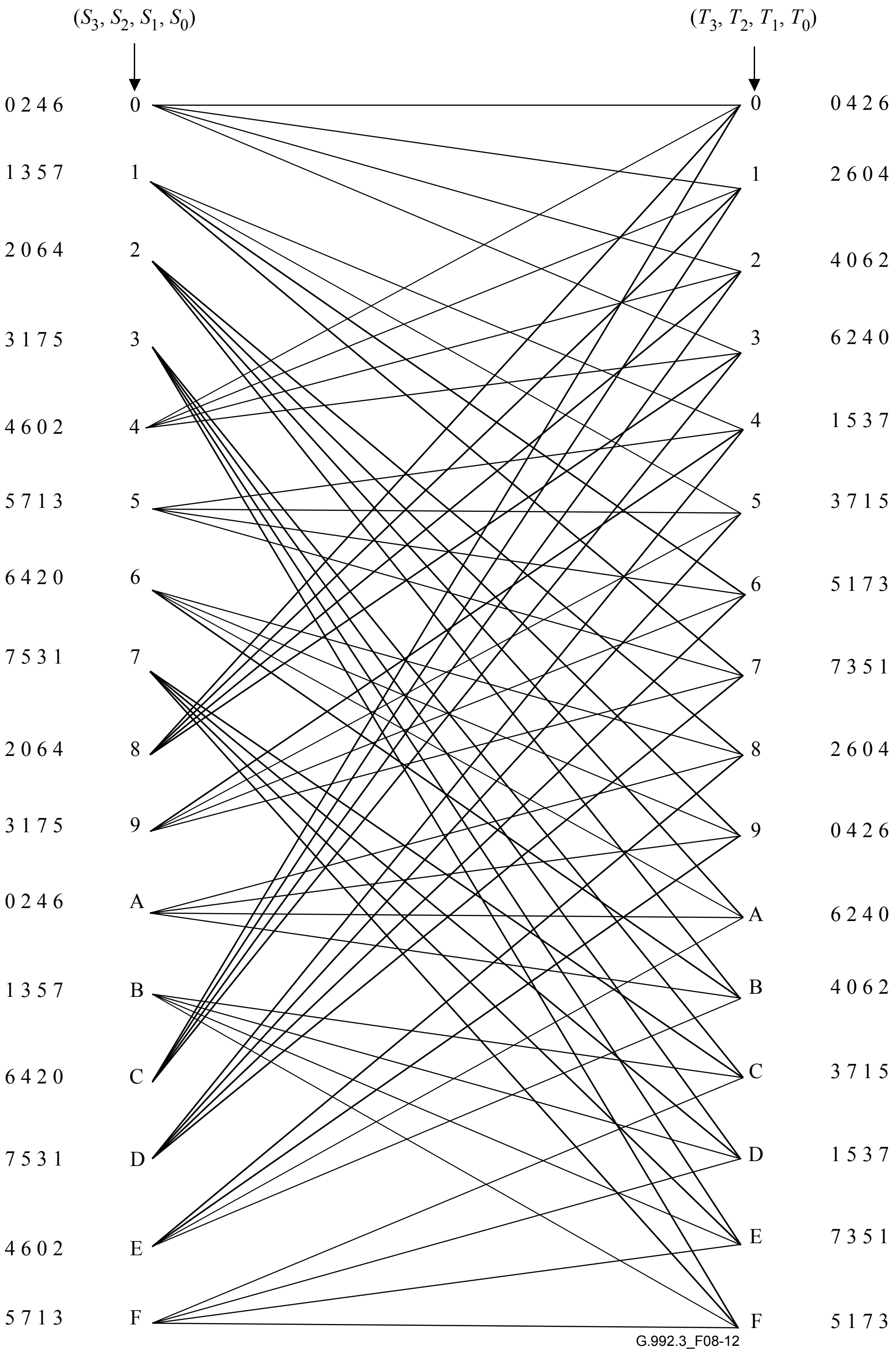



**Figure 8-12/G.992.3 – Trellis diagram**

Figure 8-12 shows the trellis diagram based on the finite state machine in Figure 8-10, and the one-to-one correspondence between ($u_2$, $u_1$, $u_0$) and the 4-dimensional cosets. In the Figure 8-12, $S = (S_3, S_2, S_1, S_0)$ represents the current state, while $T = (T_3, T_2, T_1, T_0)$ represents the next state in the finite state machine. $S$ is connected to $T$ in the constellation diagram by a branch determined by the values of $u_2$ and $u_1$. The branch is labelled with the 4-dimensional coset specified by the values of $u_2$, $u_1$ (and $u_0 = S_0$, see Figure 8-11). To make the constellation diagram more readable, the indices of the 4-dimensional coset labels are listed next to the starting and end points of the branches, rather than on the branches themselves. The leftmost label corresponds to the uppermost branch for each state. The constellation diagram is used when decoding the trellis code by the Viterbi algorithm.

### 8.6.3 Constellation mapper

An algorithmic constellation encoder shall be used to construct constellations with a maximum number of bits equal to *BIMAX*, where $8 \le BIMAX \le 15$. The data bits buffer contains $\sum b_i$ bits, which may or may not be trellis coded. Data bits from the data bits buffer and bits from a PRBS encoder shall be extracted according to the constellation mapping tone ordering table $t_i^{'}$ and the bit allocation table $b_i$ , least significant bit first (see 8.6.1). The number of bits per subcarrier, $b_i$, can take any non-negative integer values not exceeding *BIMAX*.

NOTE – The constellation encoder is described so that text applies irrespective of bits being trellis coded or not and applies irrespective of the link being in the *L*0 or *L*2 power management state.

For a given subcarrier $i$ in the MEDLEYset with $b_i > 0$, $b = b_i$ bits shall be extracted from the data bits buffer, and these bits form a binary word $\{v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \ldots , v_1, v_0\}$. The first bit extracted shall be $v_0$, the LSB. The encoder shall select an odd-integer point ($X$, $Y$) from the square-grid constellation based on the $b$ bits of $\{v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \ldots , v_1, v_0\}$. For example, for $b = 2$, the four constellation points are labelled 0, 1, 2, 3, corresponding to $(v_1, v_0) = (0, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, $(1, 0)$, $(1, 1)$, respectively.

The odd integer values of $X$ and $Y$ shown in the constellation diagrams are on a ±1, ±3, ±5, … grid. These values require appropriate scaling such that, at the output of the constellation mapper, all constellations regardless of size represent the same rms energy as a subcarrier transmitted at the reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSD*).

For a given subcarrier $i$ in the MEDLEYset with ($b_i = 0$), no bits shall be extracted from the data bits buffer. Instead, the encoder shall extract $b = 2$ bits from the PRBS generator, and these bits form the binary word $\{v_1, v_0\}$. The first bit extracted shall be $v_0$, the LSB. The encoder shall select an odd-integer point ($X$, $Y$) as defined for the case $b = 2$. In case a $g_i = 0$ is applied during gain scaling, the encoder selection is effectively ignored (see 8.6.4).

If the ATU-R has set the *FMT_C-PILOT* bit to 1 in the R-MSG-PCB initialization message (see 8.13.3.2.10), then the pilot subcarrier shall not be modulated with data bits (i.e., $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} = 0$). The encoder shall extract $b = 2$ bits from the PRBS generator for the pilot subcarrier, which shall be overwritten by the modulator (see 8.8.1.2) with a fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point (i.e., the two bits are effectively ignored).

For a given subcarrier $i$ not in the MEDLEYset with ($b_i = 0$), no bits shall be extracted from the data bits buffer and no bits shall be extracted from the PRBS generator. Instead, the constellation mapper may select a discretionary ($X$, $Y$) point (which may change from symbol to symbol and which does not necessarily coincide with a constellation point).

The bits modulated on the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset with $b_i = 0$, shall be taken from the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) defined by:

$$d_n = 1 \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } 23 \text{ and}$$
$$d_n = d_{n-18} \oplus d_{n-23} \text{ for } n > 23.$$

The PRBS sequence shall be reset at the start of showtime and at the start of the L0 power management state after each exit from the L2 to the L0 power management state. Upon reset of the PRBS, $d_1$ shall be the first bit to extract, followed by $d_2$, $d_3$, etc… For each data symbol, $2 \times (NCMEDLEY - NCUSED)$ bits shall be extracted from the PRBS generator, with *NCMEDLEY* the number of subcarriers in the MEDLEYset and *NCUSED* the number of subcarriers with $b_i > 0$. The number of bits per symbol extracted from the PRBS may be different during the L0 and L2 power management states. No bits shall be extracted from the PRBS generator during synchronization symbols and L2 exit symbols.

#### 8.6.3.1 Even values of *b*

For even values of $b$, the integer values $X$ and $Y$ of the constellation point $(X, Y)$ shall be determined from the $b$ bits $\{v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \dots, v_1, v_0\}$ as follows. $X$ and $Y$ are the odd integers with two-complement binary representations $(v_{b-1}, v_{b-3}, \dots, v_1, 1)$ and $(v_{b-2}, v_{b-4}, \dots, v_0, 1)$, respectively. The most significant bits (MSBs), $v_{b-1}$ and $v_{b-2}$, are the sign bits for $X$ and $Y$, respectively.

Figure 8-13 shows example constellations for $b = 2$ and $b = 4$.

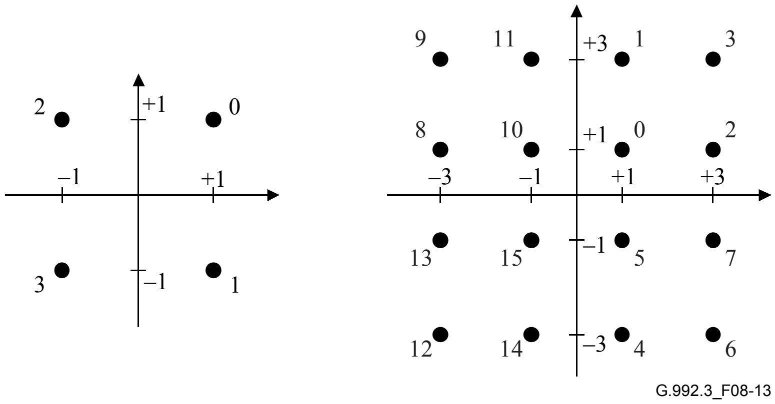



**Figure 8-13/G.992.3 – Constellation labels for *b* = 2 and *b* = 4**

The 4-bit constellation can be obtained from the 2-bit constellation by replacing each label $n$ by a $2 \times 2$ block of labels as shown in Figure 8-14.

| | |
|---|---|
| $4n + 1$ | $4n + 3$ |
| $4n$ | $4n + 2$ |

**Figure 8-14/G.992.3 – Expansion of point *n* into the next larger square constellation**

The same procedure can be used to construct the larger even-bit constellations recursively.

The constellations obtained for even values of $b$ are square in shape. The least significant bits $\{v_1, v_0\}$ represent the coset labelling of the constituent 2-dimensional cosets used in the 4-dimensional Wei trellis code.

#### 8.6.3.2 Odd values of *b*, *b* = 1

Figure 8-15 shows the constellation for the case $b = 1$.

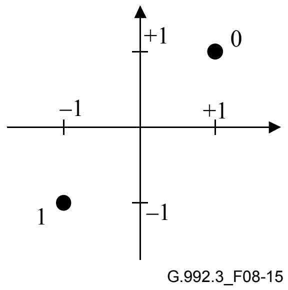



**Figure 8-15/G.992.3 – Constellation labels for *b* = 1**

In case trellis coding is used, the receiver can combine a pair of 1-bit constellations as shown in Figure 8-16 to build the 2-bit constellation generated by the trellis encoder.

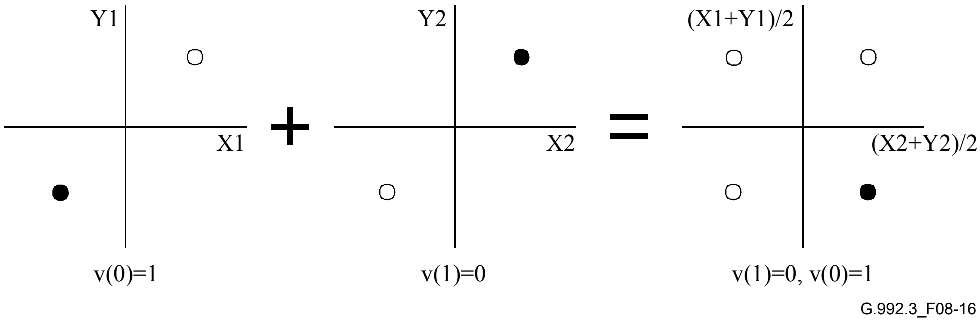



**Figure 8-16/G.992.3 – Combination of a pair of 1-bit constellations to build a 2-bit constellation**

#### 8.6.3.3 Odd values of *b*, *b* = 3

Figure 8-17 shows the constellation for the case $b = 3$.

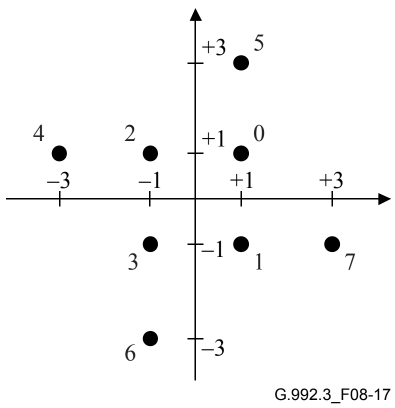



**Figure 8-17/G.992.3 – Constellation labels for *b* = 3**

### 8.6.3.4 Odd values of $b$, $b > 3$

If $b$ is odd and greater than 3, the 2 MSBs of $X$ and the 2 MSBs of $Y$ are determined by the 5 MSBs of the $b$ bits. Let $c = (b + 1)/2$, then $X$ and $Y$ have the two-complement binary representations ($X_c$, $X_{c-1}$, $v_{b-4}$, $v_{b-6}$, ... , $v_3$, $v_1$, 1) and ($Y_c$, $Y_{c-1}$, $v_{b-5}$, $v_{b-7}$, $v_{b-9}$, ... , $v_2$, $v_0$, 1), where $X_c$ and $Y_c$ are the sign bits of $X$ and $Y$ respectively. The relationship between $X_c$, $X_{c-1}$, $Y_c$, $Y_{c-1}$ and $v_{b-1}$, $v_{b-2}$, ... , $v_{b-5}$ is shown in Table 8-19.

**Table 8-19/G.992.3 – Determining the top 2 bits of $X$ and $Y$**

| $v_{b-1}$, $v_{b-2}$, ... , $v_{b-5}$ | $X_c$, $X_{c-1}$ | $Y_c$, $Y_{c-1}$ |
|---|---|---|
| 0 0 0 0 0 | 0 0 | 0 0 |
| 0 0 0 0 1 | 0 0 | 0 0 |
| 0 0 0 1 0 | 0 0 | 0 0 |
| 0 0 0 1 1 | 0 0 | 0 0 |
| 0 0 1 0 0 | 0 0 | 1 1 |
| 0 0 1 0 1 | 0 0 | 1 1 |
| 0 0 1 1 0 | 0 0 | 1 1 |
| 0 0 1 1 1 | 0 0 | 1 1 |
| 0 1 0 0 0 | 1 1 | 0 0 |
| 0 1 0 0 1 | 1 1 | 0 0 |
| 0 1 0 1 0 | 1 1 | 0 0 |
| 0 1 0 1 1 | 1 1 | 0 0 |
| 0 1 1 0 0 | 1 1 | 1 1 |
| 0 1 1 0 1 | 1 1 | 1 1 |
| 0 1 1 1 0 | 1 1 | 1 1 |
| 0 1 1 1 1 | 1 1 | 1 1 |
| 1 0 0 0 0 | 0 1 | 0 0 |
| 1 0 0 0 1 | 0 1 | 0 0 |
| 1 0 0 1 0 | 1 0 | 0 0 |
| 1 0 0 1 1 | 1 0 | 0 0 |
| 1 0 1 0 0 | 0 0 | 0 1 |
| 1 0 1 0 1 | 0 0 | 1 0 |
| 1 0 1 1 0 | 0 0 | 0 1 |
| 1 0 1 1 1 | 0 0 | 1 0 |
| 1 1 0 0 0 | 1 1 | 0 1 |
| 1 1 0 0 1 | 1 1 | 1 0 |
| 1 1 0 1 0 | 1 1 | 0 1 |
| 1 1 0 1 1 | 1 1 | 1 0 |
| 1 1 1 0 0 | 0 1 | 1 1 |
| 1 1 1 0 1 | 0 1 | 1 1 |
| 1 1 1 1 0 | 1 0 | 1 1 |
| 1 1 1 1 1 | 1 0 | 1 1 |

Figure 8-18 shows the constellation for the case $b = 5$.

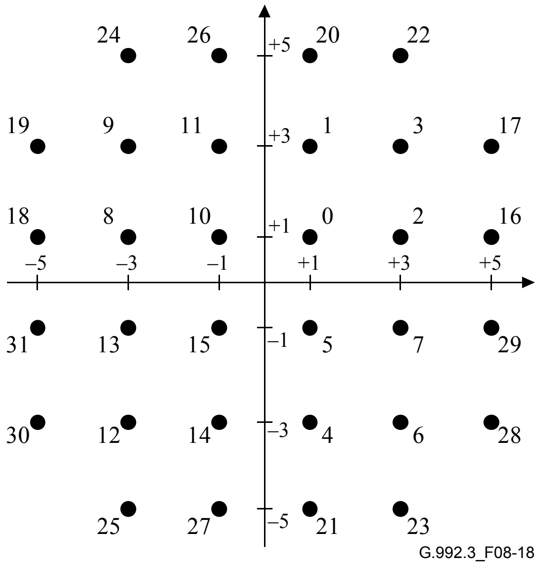



**Figure 8-18/G.992.3 – Constellation labels for $b = 5$**

The 7-bit constellation shall be obtained from the 5-bit constellation by replacing each label $n$ by the $2 \times 2$ block of labels as shown in Figure 8-14.

Again, the same procedure shall be used to construct the larger odd-bit constellations recursively. Note also that the least significant bits $\{v_1, v_0\}$ represent the coset labelling of the constituent 2-dimensional cosets used in the 4-dimensional Wei trellis code.

### 8.6.4 Gain scaling

For subcarriers in the MEDLEYset, each constellation point, $(X_i, Y_i)$, output from the constellation mapper, is scaled by a fine tune gain $g_i$ and a spectrum shaping $tss_i$ to result in a complex number $Z_i$, defined as:

$$Z_i = g_i \times tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$$

For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset, the transmit PMD function shall apply spectrum shaping as indicated by the transmit PMD function in the G.994.1 CL/CLR message (i.e., the $tss_i$ values) and gain scaling as indicated by the receive PMD function in the bits-and-gains table (i.e., $b_i$ and $g_i$ values) during initialization and possibly updated during Showtime via the on-line reconfiguration procedure. The transmit power level for each of these subcarriers shall be equal to that specified by the $g_i$ and $tss_i$ values, relative to the *REFPSD* level (e.g., $g_i = 1$ then transmit at *REFPSD* level, $g_i = 0$ then transmit no power). In the downstream direction, the $tss_i$ values shall be in the 0 to 1 range. In the upstream direction, the $tss_i$ values shall be equal to 1 (see 8.13.2.4).

The $tss_i$ values are vendor discretionary. If the transmitter chooses all $tss_i$ values equal to 1 for all subcarriers in the MEDLEYset (i.e., chooses not to apply spectrum shaping to those subcarriers) then the definition of the complex number $Z_i$, defaults to:

$$Z_i = g_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$$

For subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset, a discretionary gain scaling (which may change from symbol to symbol) may be applied, with the transmit PSD level not to exceed maximum transmit PSD level for the subcarrier. The maximum transmit PSD level is defined in 8.10.

The $b_i$ and $g_i$ values in the bits-and-gains table (as requested by the receive PMD function during initialization, or possibly updated through on-line reconfiguration) shall comply with the following requirements:

- All $b_i$ values shall be in the [0 to *MAXBI*] (bits) range, where *MAXBI* is defined in 8.5;
- If trellis coding is used, the number of 1-bit subcarriers shall be even;
- If *FMT_C-PILOT* = 0 then $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} > 0$; if *FMT_C-PILOT* = 1 then $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} = 0$ (see 8.8.1.2);
- The *RMSGI* value shall not exceed the *EXTGI* value, where *RMSGI* and *EXTGI* are defined in 8.5;
- If $b_i > 0$, then $g_i$ shall be in the [–14.5 to +2.5 + *EXTGI*] (dB) range;
- If $b_i > 0$, then $g_i$ shall be in the [*RMSGI* – 2.5 to *RMSGI* + 2.5] (dB) range;
- If $b_i = 0$, then $g_i$ shall be equal to 0 (linear) or in the [–14.5 to *RMSGI*] (dB) range;
- The Nominal Aggregate Transmit Power (*NOMATP*, see 8.5) shall not exceed the Maximum Nominal Aggregate Transmit Power (*MAXNOMATP*, see 8.5);
- The gain scalings shall be set such that the excess margin relative to the maximum noise margin (*MAXSNRM*) is minimized.

The requirements on the $b_i$ and $g_i$ values in the bits-and-gains tables are illustrated in Figure 8-19.

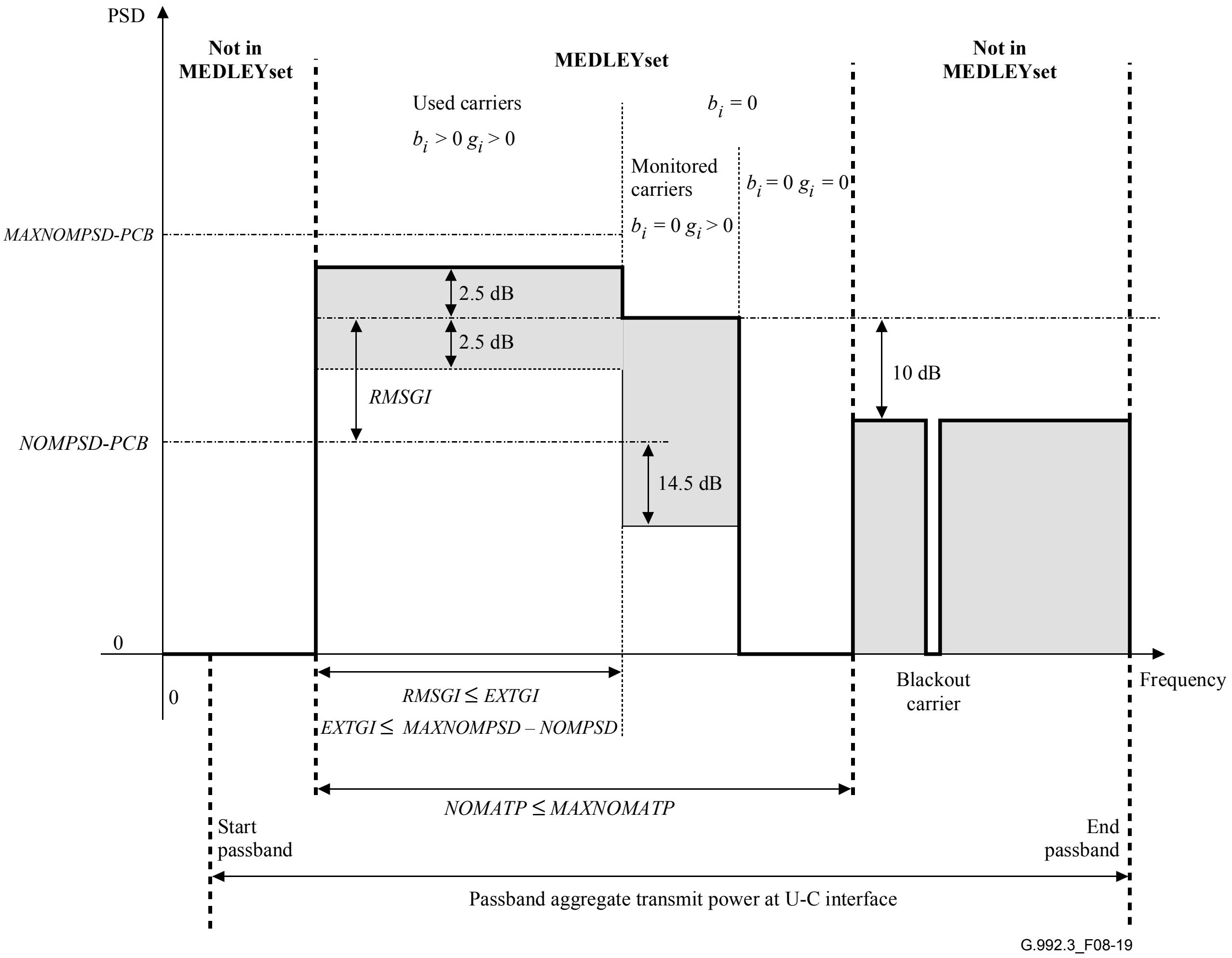



**Figure 8-19/G.992.3 – Illustration of requirements on the bits and gains tables**

The receive PMD function should not use an excessive number of monitored subcarriers (i.e., subcarriers in the MEDLEYset to which it allocates $b_i = 0$ and $g_i > 0$) to aid in the conservation of spectrum.

These requirements on the bits and gains table apply in the L0 state and at entry into the L2 state. The L2 entry grant response message indicates the gains table to be used in the L2 state (see 9.4.1.7). However, at entry into the L2 state, the excess margin may not be minimized. Power trimming during the L2 state may be used to minimize the excess margin. The L2 entry and trim grant response messages indicate the PCB value to be used in the L2 state (see 9.4.1.7). Power trimming is defined as changing the downstream power cutback (*PCBds*) level, resulting in a change of the downstream reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level. Power trimming changes the *PCBds* value used during the L2 state and does not change the gi values determined at the time of entry into the L2 state.

The $g_i$ values in dB shall be defined as the 20 log $g_i$ ($g_i$ in linear scale). A $g_i$ value of –14.5 dB corresponds to a $g_i$ of 0.1888 in linear scale. A $g_i$ value of +2.5 dB corresponds to a $g_i$ value of 1.333 in linear scale. Same relationship shall be used for the $tss_i$ values in dB and in linear scale.

NOTE – The $g_i$ define a scaling of the root mean square (rms) subcarrier power levels relative to the *REFPSD* level (see 8.13.5). They are independent of any methods that manufacturers may use to simplify implementation (e.g., constellation nesting).

### 8.7 Constellation encoder for synchronization and L2 exit symbols

The constellation encoder for the synchronization and L2 exit symbols is shown as part of the transmit PMD function in Figure 8-5. A synchronization or L2 exit symbol shall either be an SS-REVERB symbol or an SS-SEGUE symbol.

Clauses 8.7.1 and 8.7.2 shall define respectively the constellation mapper and gain scaling for an SS-REVERB symbol. An SS-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of an SS-REVERB symbol (i.e., an SS-SEGUE symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The transmit PMD function transports the following types of PMD.Synchflag.request primitives (as received from the transmit PMS-TC function) for synchronization of:

- On-line reconfiguration during the L0 state (see 8.7.3);
- Entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state (see 8.7.4);
- Exit from the L2 power management into the L0 state (see 8.7.6);
- Power trimming during the L2 state (see 8.7.5).

#### 8.7.1 Constellation mapper

For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset, the REVERB PRBS data pattern shall be mapped on the SS-REVERB symbols in the same way as it is mapped on the REVERB symbols during the REVERB1 state (see 8.13.4.1.1). Two bits are mapped on each of the subcarriers, generating a 4-QAM constellation point for each of the subcarriers, i.e., $X_i$ and $Y_i$ for index $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$.

The values of $X$ and $Y$ of the 4-QAM constellation points as shown in the constellation diagrams are on a ± 1 grid. These values require appropriate scaling such that, at the output of the constellation mapper, all constellations represent the same rms energy as a subcarrier transmitted at the reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSD*).

For the subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset, the constellation mapper may select a discretionary ($X$, $Y$) point (which may change from symbol to symbol and which does not necessarily coincide with a constellation point).

### 8.7.2 Gain scaling

In the L0 state, gain scaling shall be applied to synchronization symbols in the same way as it is applied to data symbols in the L0 state (see 8.6.4).

In the L2 state, gain scaling shall be applied to synchronization symbols in the same way as it is applied to data symbols in the L2 state (see 8.6.4).

In the L2 state, gain scaling shall be applied to L2 exit symbols, as indicated in the L2 entry or L2 trim grant response message related to the last previously transmitted PMD.Synchflag primitive (see 9.4.1.7). The L2 entry grant response message indicates whether the L0 or L2 state gain scaling table is to be used with the L2 exit symbols. The L2 entry and L2 trim grant response messages indicate the *PCBds* value to be used with the L2 exit symbols (see 9.4.1.7).

### 8.7.3 On-line reconfiguration during the L0 state

The PMD transmit function inserts a synchronization symbol every 68 data symbols, as defined in 8.4. The synchronization symbols shall be transmitted at symbolcount 68, and:

- permit the PMD receive function to recover the PMS-TC frame boundary after micro-interruptions that might otherwise force re-initialization;
- provide a time marker for the on-line reconfiguration during the L0 state.

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to on-line reconfiguration during the L0 state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the phase of the first next inserted synchronization symbol shall be inverted, and remain inverted until the next PMD.Synchflag.request primitive is to be carried. At the start of Showtime, the first synchronization symbol transmitted shall be an SS-REVERB symbol.

### 8.7.4 Entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the phase of the first next inserted synchronization symbol shall be inverted, and remain inverted until the next PMD.Synchflag.request primitive is to be carried.

Prior to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state, the ATU shall store the downstream control parameters which need to be restored at exit from the L2 into the L0 power management state.

The receive PMD function can distinguish PMD.Synchflag primitives related to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management from those related to on-line reconfiguration and those related to L2 power trimming based on previously exchanged information between the management entities.

### 8.7.5 Power trimming during the L2 state

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to power trimming during the L2 state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the phase of the first next inserted synchronization symbol shall be inverted, and remain inverted until the next PMD.Synchflag.request primitive is to be carried.

The receive PMD function can distinguish PMD.Synchflag primitives related to L2 power trimming from those related to L0 on-line reconfiguration and those related to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management based on previously exchanged information between the management entities.

#### 8.7.6 Exit from the L2 power management into the L0 state

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to entry from the L2 power management state into the L0 state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the next two symbols transmitted with symbol count in the 0 to 67 range shall be modulated as two L2 exit symbols. The first L2 exit symbol shall be an SS-REVERB symbol. The second L2 exit symbol shall be an SS-SEGUE symbol.

The SS-REVERB symbol may be transmitted at any symbolcount from 0 to 67. The PMD.Synchflag.request primitive may be adjacent to the synchronization symbol in the following cases:

- When the SS-REVERB symbol is transmitted at symbolcount 66, the SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted at symbolcount 67. The synchronization symbol following SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted with the gain scaling and power cutback values as applicable in the L0 power management state.
- When the SS-REVERB symbol is transmitted at symbolcount 67, the SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted at symbolcount 0. The synchronization symbol in between the SS-REVERB and SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted with the gain scaling and power cutback values as applicable in the L2 power management state.
- When the SS-REVERB symbol is transmitted at symbolcount 0, the SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted at symbolcount 1. The synchronization symbol preceding the SS-REVERB symbol shall be transmitted with the gain scaling and power cutback values as applicable in the L2 power management state.

The SS-REVERB symbol may be the first symbol transmitted in the L2 state. Then, the number of data symbols transmitted in the L2 state is effectively 0.

The last data symbol before and the first data symbol after the two L2 exit symbols shall carry dataframes which are consecutive in time, as received from the PMS-TC layer, i.e., no data errors shall introduced at the PMS-TC layer by the transmission of the L2 exit symbols at the PMD layer.

### 8.8 Modulation

The modulator shall modulate a constellation encoder output data frame or sync frame (containing $NSC - 1$ complex values $Z_i$, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$) into a DMT symbol. The data frame can be taken from the data symbol constellation encoder (68 per superframe) as defined in 8.6. The sync frame can be taken from the synchronization symbol constellation encoder (1 per superframe) as defined in 8.7. For (short) initialization and diagnostics mode signals, the frame is defined in 8.13, 8.14 and 8.15.

#### 8.8.1 Subcarriers

A DMT symbol consists of a set of subcarriers, with index $i = 0$ to $NSC$. The DMT subcarriers spacing Δf, shall be 4.3125 kHz, with a tolerance of ± 50 ppm. The subcarrier frequencies shall be $f_i = i \times \Delta f$, $i = 0$ to $NSC$.

##### 8.8.1.1 Data subcarriers

The channel analysis (see 8.13.5) allows for a maximum of ($NSC - 1$) data carriers to be used (i.e., $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$). The lower limit of usable $i$ depends on both the duplexing and service options selected. For example, for ADSL above POTS service option as defined in Annex A, if overlapped spectrum is used to separate downstream and upstream signals, then the lower downstream limit on $i$ is determined by the POTS splitting filters; if non-overlapped spectrum with frequency-division multiplexing (FDM) is used, the downstream lower limit on $i$ is set by the downstream-upstream separation filters.

In all cases, the cut-off frequencies of these filters are completely at the discretion of the manufacturer, and the range of usable *i* is determined during the channel estimation in transceiver training (see 8.13.4). Implementations should, however, be designed such that, when interworking with implementations of other manufacturers, the resulting range of usable *i* allows to meet the performance requirements.

#### 8.8.1.2 Pilot (only applies for downstream direction)

During initialization, the ATU-R receive PMD function selects the subcarrier index of the downstream pilot tone (see 8.13.3.2.11). The downstream pilot tone shall be at subcarrier with index *C-PILOT* (transmitted at 4.3125 × *C-PILOT* kHz).

If the ATU-R has set the *FMT_C-PILOT* bit to 0 in the R-MSG-FMT initialization message (see 8.13.3.2.10), then:

- During initialization, the pilot tone shall be transmitted as defined for each of the ATU-C initialization states in 8.13;
- During showtime (data and sync symbols), the pilot tone shall be modulated with data bits (i.e., $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} > 0$). The pilot subcarrier shall be transmitted as defined for data subcarriers.

If the ATU-R has set the *FMT_C-PILOT* bit to 1 in the R-MSG-FMT initialization message (see 8.13.3.2.10), then:

- During initialization, the pilot tone defined in 8.13, shall be overwritten with a fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point, in all the ATU-C initialization states following the C-TREF1 state, except the C-ECT and C-QUIET states. The pilot tone shall be transmitted at the ATU-C reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSDds*), including spectral shaping for that subcarrier;
- During showtime (data and sync symbols), the pilot subcarrier shall not be modulated with data bits (i.e., $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} = 0$). The pilot subcarrier defined in 8.6 and 8.7, shall be overwritten with a fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point. The pilot tone shall be transmitted at a transmit PSD level as defined for unused subcarriers, i.e., at the *REFPSDds* transmit PSD level, with gain scaling according to the $g_{C\text{-}PILOT}$ value.

Use of the pilot tone allows resolution of receive PMD function sample timing modulo ($2 \times NSC/C\text{-}PILOT$) samples. Therefore a gross timing error that is an integer multiple of this number of samples could still persist after a micro-interruption (e.g., a temporary short-circuit, open circuit or severe line hit); correction of such timing errors is made possible by the use of the synchronization symbol defined in 8.7.

#### 8.8.1.3 Sampling frequency

The sampling frequency $f_s$ shall be defined as $2 \times NSC \times \Delta f$.

#### 8.8.1.4 Nyquist frequency

The Nyquist frequency shall be defined as half of the sampling frequency $f_s$. The subcarrier at the Nyquist frequency (subcarrier index *NSC*) shall not be used to transmit the data frame and shall be real valued (i.e., $Z_{NSC}$ shall be a real value).

If the transmit PMD function uses an oversampled IFFT with zero fill (see 8.8.2), then during the Initialization Transceiver Training Phase, the $Z_{NSC}$ value shall be as defined by the Initialization Symbols Encoder (see Figure 8-5 and § 8.13.4); other possible uses are for further study.

#### 8.8.1.5 DC

The subcarrier at DC (subcarrier index 0) shall not be used, and shall contain no energy (i.e., $Z_0 = 0$).

### 8.8.2 Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform (IDFT)

The IDFT is used to modulate a constellation encoder output data frame onto the DMT subcarriers. It converts from frequency domain representation (complex values $Z_i$, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$) to time domain representation (real values $x_n$, $n = 0$ to $2N - 1$). The conversion shall be performed with a $2N$ point IDFT, with $N \geq NSC$, as:

$$x_n = \sum_{i=0}^{2N-1} \exp\left( j \cdot 2 \cdot \pi \cdot \frac{n \cdot i}{2 \cdot N} \right) \cdot Z_i \qquad \text{for } n = 0 \text{ to } 2N-1$$

In order to generate real values of $x_n$, the input values ($Z_i$, $i = 0$ to $N$) shall be augmented so that the vector $Z$ has Hermitian symmetry. That is:

$$Z_i = \text{conj}\,(Z_{2N-i}) \qquad \text{for } i = N+1 \text{ to } 2N-1$$

The modulation onto DMT subcarriers may be implemented using an oversampled IDFT, i.e., an $2N$-point IDFT with $N>NSC$ points, generating $2N$ $x_n$ values per DMT symbol. The constellation encoder generates only $NSC - 1$ complex values of $Z_i$ (for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$), with addition of a zero $Z_0$ at DC and a real value $Z_{NSC}$ at the Nyquist frequency. The additional $Z_i$ values (for $i = NSC + 1$ to $N$) are discretionary. However, different values result in different transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency. Knowledge of how the transmit PMD function defines the additional $Z_i$ values allows the receive PMD function to better estimate the channel during transceiver training in initialization. Therefore, the transmit PMD function shall indicate during the G.994.1 phase of initialization how many independent $Z_i$ values are input into the IDFT (i.e., the $N$ value) and how the additional $Z_i$ values (for $i = NSC + 1$ to $N - 1$) are defined. The following representation shall be used to define the additional $Z_i$ values (for $i = NSC + 1$ to $N - 1$) (see 8.13.2):

- 4-bit indication of $N$ value:
  - Values 1 to 15 indicate the $N$ value as $2^1$ to $2^{15}$ respectively;
  - Value 0 indicates the $N$ value is not a power of 2;
- 2-bit indication of additional $Z_i$ values definition:
  - As the complex conjugate of the baseband signal, defined as:

    $Z_i = \text{conj}\,(Z_{2\times NSC-i})$ for all $i$ with $NSC + 1 \leq i \leq 2 \times NSC - 1$;

    $Z_i = Z_{i\ MOD\ 2\times NSC}$ for all $i \geq 2 \times NSC$;
  - As zero fill, defined as (see Figure 8-5 and § 8.13.4):

    During the Initialization Transceiver Training Phase:

    $Z_i$ as generated by the Initialization Symbols Encoder for all $NSC + 1 \leq i \leq 2 \times NSC - 1$;

    $Z_i = 0$ for all $i \geq 2 \times NSC$;

    Outside the Initialization Transceiver Training Phase:

    $Z_i = 0$ for all $i \geq NSC + 1$;

  Other (none of the above).

The indication given in the G.994.1 codepoint shall apply to all initialization signals (except those during the G.994.1 phase), thus including REVERB and MEDLEY signals, as well as the SHOWTIME signal.

If a non-oversampled IDFT is used, the transmit PMD function shall indicate that $N = NSC$ and that the transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency are the complex conjugate of the baseband signal.

### 8.8.3 Cyclic prefix

With a data symbol rate of 4 kHz, a DMT subcarriers spacing of $\Delta f = 4.3125$ kHz and an IDFT size of $2 \times NSC$, a cyclic prefix of $(2 \times NSC \times 5/64)$ samples could be used. That is,

$(2 \times NSC + 2 \times NSC \times 5/64) \times 4.0 \text{ kHz} = (2 \times NSC) \times 4.3125 \text{ kHz} = f_s$ (the sample frequency)

The cyclic prefix shall, however, be shortened to $(2 \times NSC \times 4/64 = NSC/8)$ samples, and a synchronization symbol (with a length of $2 \times NSC \times 68/64$ samples) is inserted after every 68 data symbols. That is,

$$(2 \times NSC \times 4/64 + 2 \times NSC) \times 69 = (2 \times NSC \times 5/64 + 2 \times \mathrm{NSC}) \times 68$$

For symbols with cyclic prefix, the last $NSC/8$ samples of output of the IDFT ($x_n$ for $n = 2 \times NSC - NSC/8$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$) shall be prepended to the block of $2 \times NSC$ samples, to form a block of $(2 \times NSC \times 17/16)$ samples. Symbols with cyclic prefix are transmitted at a symbol rate of $4.3125 \times 16/17 \approx 4.059$ kHz.

The cyclic prefix shall be used for all symbols transmitted starting from the Channel Analysis Phase of the initialization sequence (see 8.1.3.5). Before the Channel Analysis Phase, all symbols shall be transmitted without cyclic prefix. Symbols transmitted without cyclic prefix are transmitted at a symbol rate of 4.3125 kHz.

If an oversampled IDFT is used (i.e., $N > NSC$, see 8.8.2), the number of Cyclic prefix samples shall be adapted accordingly. For symbols with cyclic prefix, the last $N/8$ samples of output of the IDFT ($x_n$ for $n = 2 \times N - N/8$ to $2 \times \mathrm{N} - 1$) shall be prepended to the block of $2 \times N$ samples, to form a block of $(2 \times N \times 17/16)$ samples.

### 8.8.4 Parallel/serial convertor

The block of $x_n$ samples ($n = 0$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$) shall be readout to the digital-to-analog convertor (DAC) in sequence.

If no cyclic prefix is used, the DAC samples $y_n$ in sequence are:

$$y_n = x_n \text{ for } n = 0 \text{ to } 2 \times NSC - 1$$

If a cyclic prefix is used, the DAC samples $y_n$ in sequence are (see Figure 8-5):

$$y_n = x_{n + (2 \times NSC - NSC/8)} \qquad \text{for } n = 0 \text{ to } NSC/8 - 1$$

$$y_n = x_{n - (NSC/8)} \qquad \text{for } n = NSC/8 \text{ to } (17/16) \times 2 \times NSC - 1$$

Filtering may be applied to the sample sequence going into the DAC.

### 8.8.5 DAC and AFE

The DAC produces an analogue signal that is passed through the analog front-end (AFE) and transmitted across the digital subscriber line (DSL).

If the transmit PMD function is configured in the L3 idle state, then a zero output voltage shall be transmitted at the U-C2 (for ATU-C) and the U-R2 (for ATU-R) reference point (see reference model in 5.4). The analog front end may include filtering.

## 8.9 Transmitter dynamic range

The transmitter includes all analogue transmitter functions: the DAC, the anti-aliasing filter, the hybrid circuitry, and the high-pass part of the POTS or ISDN splitter. The transmitted signal shall conform to the frequency requirements as described in 8.8.1 for frequency spacing.

### 8.9.1 Maximum clipping rate

The maximum output signal of the transmitter shall be such that the signal shall be clipped no more than 0.00001% of the time. The clipping requirement is specified as a percentage of time, measured

in the continuous time domain.

### 8.9.2 Noise/distortion floor

The signal-to-noise plus distortion ratio of the transmitted signal in a given subcarrier is specified as the ratio of the rms value of the tone at that subcarrier frequency to the rms sum of all the non-tone signals in the 4.3125 kHz frequency band centered on the subcarrier frequency. This ratio is measured for each subcarrier used for transmission using a MultiTone Power Ratio (MTPR) test as shown in Figure 8-20, with the comb of Δf-spaced tones at the Nominal transmit PSD level defined in the annex corresponding to the selected application option.

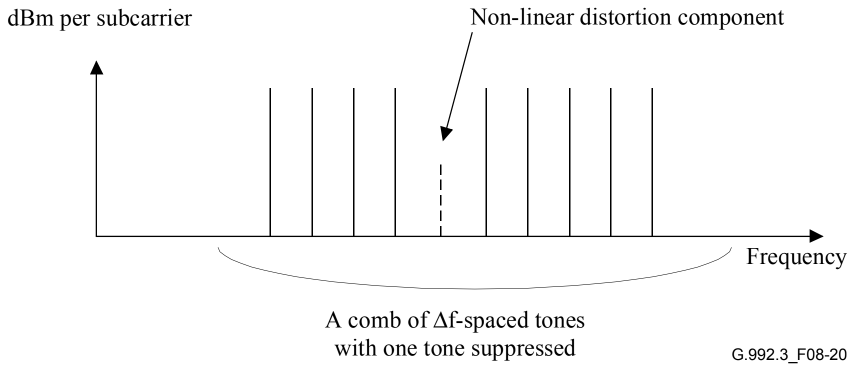



**Figure 8-20/G.992.3 – MTPR test**

Over the transmission frequency band, the MTPR of the transmitter in any subcarrier shall be no less than $(3 \times BIMAX + 20)$ dB, where *BIMAX* is defined as the maximum constellation size supported by the transmit PMD function as conveyed to the receive PMD function during initialization). The minimum transmitter MTPR shall be at least 44 dB (corresponding to a *BIMAX* of 8) for any subcarrier.

NOTE – Signals transmitted during normal initialization and data transmission cannot be used for this test because the DMT symbols have a cyclic prefix appended, and the PSD of a non-repetitive signal does not have nulls at any subcarrier frequencies. A gated FFT-based analyser could be used, but this would measure both the non-linear distortion and the linear distortion introduced by the transmit filter. Therefore this test will require that the transmitter be programmed with special software, probably to be used during development only. The subject of an MTPR test that can be applied to a production modem is for further study.

### 8.10 Transmitter spectral masks

Spectral masks for the different service options are defined in the corresponding annexes. The spectral mask defines the maximum passband PSD, maximum stopband PSD and maximum aggregate transmit power.

Annex A: ADSL system operating in the frequency band above POTS:

– A.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask overlapped spectrum operation;

– A.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;

– A.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex B: ADSL system operating in the frequency band above ISDN:

– B.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;

– B.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;

– B.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex I: All digital mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS:

– I.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask overlapped spectrum operation;
– I.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
– I.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex J: All digital mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN:

– J.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;
– J.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
– J.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

In addition to the maximum PSD and maximum aggregate transmit power over the whole passband (defined in the corresponding annexes), the following requirements on fine tuning of passband PSD and aggregate transmit power shall apply during showtime (data symbols and sync symbols). Three subcarrier sets are defined:

a) For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset with $b_i > 0$ (i.e., the used subcarriers), the ATU shall transmit at PSD levels as defined by the gain scaling (see 8.6.4. and 8.7.2). Gain scaling is performed relative to the *REFPSD* level. The aggregate transmit power on this set of subcarriers shall not exceed the aggregate power transmitted on the same set of subcarriers during MEDLEY by more than *RMSGI* dB (see gain scaling requirements in 8.6.4).

b) For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset with $b_i = 0$, the ATU shall transmit at PSD levels as defined by the gain scaling (see 8.6.4 and 8.7.2). Gain scaling is performed relative to the *REFPSD* level. The aggregate transmit power on this set of subcarriers shall not exceed the aggregate power transmitted on the same set of subcarriers during MEDLEY by more than *RMSGI* dB (see gain scaling requirements in 8.6.4).

c) For the subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset, the ATU shall transmit no power on the subcarrier (i.e., $Z_i = 0$, see 8.8.2) if the subcarrier is below the first used subcarrier index or if the subcarrier is in the SUPPORTEDset and in the BLACKOUTset. Otherwise, the ATU may transmit at a discretionary transmit PSD level on the subcarrier (which may change from symbol to symbol), not to exceed the maximum transmit PSD level for these subcarriers. The maximum transmit PSD level for each of these subcarriers shall be defined as 10 dB below the reference transmit PSD level, fine tuned by the $tss_i$ values (as applied during Transceiver Training on the subcarriers included in the SUPPORTEDset and on the subcarriers not included in the SUPPORTEDset) and fine tuned by the *RMSGI* dB (see 8.5) and limited to the transmit spectral mask.

During initialization, discretionary transmit PSD levels are allowed only when explicitly stated in 8.13.

### 8.11 Control plane procedures

As a control plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMD function. However, the PMD function passes and receives control signals that are transported in the control plane to and from the far-end PMD using TPS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-2; e.g., for on-line reconfiguration as described in 8.16 or power management transitions as described in 8.17.

### 8.12 Management plane procedures

The PMD receive function provides management primitive indications to the near-end management entity within the ATU. These management primitive indications result in control signals that are transported in the control plane using TPS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-3, and as specified in the Management Entity in clause 9.

### 8.12.1 ADSL line related primitives

The receive PMD function has five near-end ADSL Line related defects defined. These near-end defects shall be passed to the near-end management entity using the Management.Prim.indicate primitive.

**Loss-of-signal (LOS) defect**: A reference power is established by averaging the ADSL power over a 0.1 s period and over a subset of subcarriers after the start of steady state data transmission (i.e., after each transition to the L0 or L2 power management state), and a threshold shall be set at 6 dB below this. A LOS defect occurs when the level of the received ADSL power, averaged over a 0.1 s period and over the same subset of subcarriers, is lower than the threshold, and terminates when measured in the same way it is at or above the threshold. The subset of subcarriers, over which the ADSL power is averaged, is implementation discretionary and may be restricted at the ATU-R to only the downstream pilot tone.

**Severely errored frame (SEF) defect**: An SEF defect occurs when the content of two consecutively received ADSL synchronization symbols does not correlate with the expected content over a subset of the subcarriers. An SEF defect terminates when the content of two consecutively received ADSL synchronization symbols correlates with the expected content over the same subset of the subcarriers. The correlation method, the selected subset of subcarriers, and the threshold for declaring these defect conditions are implementation discretionary.

**Loss-of-margin (LOM) defect**: An LOM defect occurs when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM, see 8.12.3.6) observed by the near-end receiver is below the minimum signal-to-noise ratio margin (*MINSNRM*, see 8.5) and an increase of signal-to-noise ratio margin is no longer possible within the far-end maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATP*, see 8.5) and maximum nominal transmit PSD level (*MAXNOMPSD*, see 8.5). An LOM defect terminates when the signal-to-noise ratio margin is above the minimum signal-to-noise ratio noise margin.

**Rate Adaptation Upshift (RAU) anomaly**: An RAU anomaly occurs in Seamless Rate Adaptation mode when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM) observed by the near-end receiver is above the Rate Upshift Margin for a period longer than the Time Interval for UpShift Rate Adaptation. An RAU anomaly terminates when the RAU anomaly occurrence condition terminates.

**Rate Adaptation Downshift (RAD) anomaly**: An RAD anomaly occurs in Seamless Rate Adaptation mode when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM) observed by the near-end receiver is below the Rate Upshift Margin for a period longer than the Time Interval for DownShift Rate Adaptation. An RAD anomaly terminates when the RAD anomaly occurrence condition terminates.

The transmit PMD function has two far-end ADSL Line related defects defined as:

**Far-end Loss-of-Signal (LOS-FE)**: A far-end LOS defect is a LOS defect detected at the far-end and reported by the LOS indicator bit once per 15 to 20 ms (see Tables 7-8 and 7-15). The LOS indicator bit shall be coded 1 to indicate that no LOS defect is being reported and shall be coded 0 for the next 6 LOS indicator bit transmissions to indicate that a LOS defect is being reported. A far-end LOS defect occurs when 4 or more out of 6 consecutively received LOS indicator bit values are set to 0. A far-end LOS defect terminates when 4 or more out of 6 consecutively received LOS indicator bit values are set to 1.

**Remote Defect Indication (RDI)**: An RDI defect is an SEF defect detected at the far-end and is reported by the RDI indicator bit once per 15 to 20 ms (see Tables 7-8 and 7-15). The RDI indicator bit shall be coded 1 to indicate that no SEF defect has occurred and shall be coded 0 to indicate that an SEF defect has occurred since the last previous RDI indicator bit transmission. An RDI defect occurs when a received RDI indicator bit is set to 0. An RDI defect terminates when a received RDI indicator bit is set to 1.

**Far-end Loss-of-margin (LOM-FE) defect**: A far-end LOM defect occurs when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM, see 8.12.3.6) at the far-end receiver, retrieved through test

parameter overhead messages by the near-end transmitter (see 9.4.1.10), is below the minimum signal-to-noise ratio margin (MINSNRM, see 8.5) and an increase of signal-to-noise ratio margin is no longer possible within the near-end maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (MAXNOMATP, see 8.5) and maximum nominal transmit PSD level (MAXNOMPSD, see 8.5). An LOM defect terminates when the signal-to-noise ratio margin is above the minimum signal-to-noise ratio noise margin.

NOTE – In case the near-end transmitter uses the far-end LOM defect to declare a high_BER event (see Annex D), a sufficient number of updates of the far-end SNRM need to be retrieved to determine the far-end LOM defect persistency (see Update Test Parameters command in 9.4.1.2.2).

### 8.12.2 Other primitives

One other near-end primitive is defined for the ATU-R. At the ATU-R, the LPR primitive shall be passed to the near-end management entity using the Management.Prim.indicate primitive e.g., when the electrical power has been shut off.

**Loss-of-power (LPR)**: An LPR primitive occurs when the ATU electrical supply (mains) power drops to a level equal to or below the manufacturer-determined minimum power level required to ensure proper operation of the ATU. An LPR primitive terminates when the power level exceeds the manufacturer determined minimum power level.

One other far-end primitive is defined for the ATU-C.

**Far-end Loss-of-power (LPR-FE)**: A far-end LPR primitive is an LPR primitive detected at the far-end and is reported by the LPR indicator bit. The LPR indicator bit shall be coded 1 to indicate that no LPR primitive is being reported and shall be coded 0 for the next 3 LPR indicator bit transmissions to indicate that an LPR primitive (i.e., "dying gasp") is being reported. A far-end LPR primitive occurs when 2 or more out of 3 consecutively received LPR indicator bit values are set to 0. A far-end LPR primitive terminates when for a period of 0.5 s the received LPR indicator bit is set to 1 and no near-end LOS defect is present.

### 8.12.3 Test parameters

The test parameters are measured by the PMD transmit or receive function and shall be reported on request to the near-end management entity using the Management.Defect.indicate primitive. Test parameters allow to debug possible issues with the physical loop and to check for adequate physical media performance margin at acceptance and after repair verification, or at any other time following the execution of initialization and training sequence of the ADSL system.

The following test parameters shall be passed on request from the receive PMD transmit function to the near-end management entity:

- Channel Characteristics Function H(f) per subcarrier (CCF-ps);
- Quiet Line Noise PSD QLN(f) per subcarrier (QLN-ps);
- Signal-to-Noise Ratio SNR(f) per subcarrier (SNR-ps);
- Line Attenuation (LATN);
- Signal Attenuation (SATN);
- Signal-to-Noise Margin (SNRM);
- Attainable Net Data Rate (ATTNDR);
- Far-end Actual Aggregate Transmit Power (ACTATP).

The following test parameters shall be passed on request from the transmit PMD transmit function to the near-end management entity:

- Near-End Actual Aggregate Transmit Power (ACTATP).

The purposes of making the above information available are:

a) H(f) can be used for analyzing the physical copper loop condition;

b) QLN(f) can be used for analyzing the crosstalk;

c) SNR(f) can be used for analyzing time dependent changes in crosstalk levels and line attenuation (such as due to moisture and temperature variations);

d) The combination of H(f), QLN(f) and SNR(f) can be used for trouble shooting why the data rate cannot reach the maximum data rate of a given loop.

This enhances the ADSL service maintenance and diagnostics defined in ITU-T Rec. G.992.1 by making diagnostic information available from both ends of the loop during active operation of the service. The most detailed diagnostic information H(f) and QLN(f) would be useful during showtime, however, requesting this would place an undo computational burden on the ADSL modems. Thus, the combination of complete information on the channel (H(f) and QLN(f)) during initialization combined with initialization and showtime SNR(f) is provided as a reasonable compromise. This combination of data will allow greater analysis of the line conditions than traditional methods and will reduce interruptions of both the ADSL and the underlying service that traditional diagnostic methods require.

#### 8.12.3.1 Channel Characteristics Function per subcarrier (CCF-ps)

The channel characteristics function H(f) is a quantity that is related to the values of the (complex) source and load impedance. A simplified definition is used in which source and load are the same and equal to a real value $R_N$. The channel characteristics function H(f) is associated with a two-port network, normalized to a chosen reference resistance $R_N$, shall be defined as a complex value, equal to the U2/U1 voltage ratio (see Figures 8-21 and 8-22).

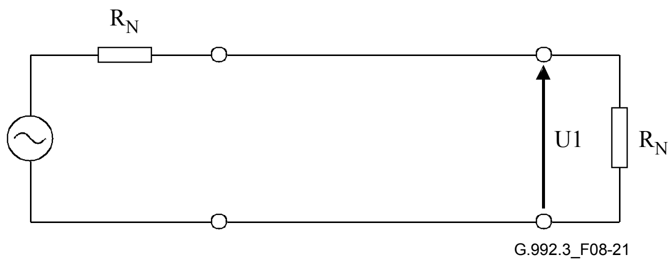



**Figure 8-21/G.992.3 – Voltage across the load**

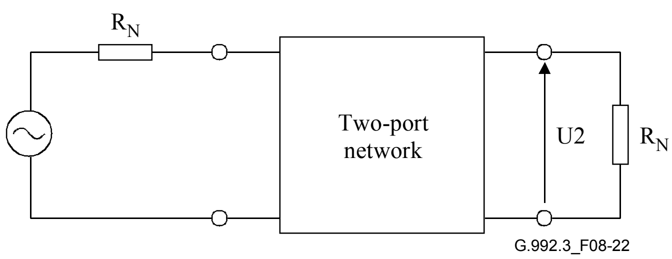



**Figure 8-22/G.992.3 – Voltage across the load with a two-port network inserted**

The channel characteristics function is the result of the cascade of three functions:

- the transmitter filter characteristics function;
- the channel characteristics function;
- the receiver filter characteristics function.

NOTE – The channel characteristics function corresponds with the $H_{channel}(f)$ function used in the definition of the far-end crosstalk (see 7.4.1/G.996.1).

The objective is to provide means by which the channel characteristics can be accurately identified. Therefore, it is necessary for the receive PMD function to report an estimate of the channel characteristics. This task may prove to be a difficult one given the fact that the receive PMD function only observes the cascade of all three elements of the channel. The passband part of the reported H(f), which is most essential to debug possible issues with the physical loop, is not expected to significantly depend upon the receiver filter characteristics (not including receiver AGC). The receive PMD function shall therefore undo the gain (AGC) it has applied to the received signal and do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end receiver filter characteristics. The result is then a best estimate of how the receiver views the passband channel characteristics plus the transmitter filter characteristics. Because the in-band portion of the spectrum is also expected not to significantly depend upon the transmitter filter characteristics, this result is considered a sufficient estimate of the channel characteristics for desired loop conditioning applications.

If the channel characteristics are reported to the CO-MIB, the ATU-C shall do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end transmit filter characteristics from the channel characteristics measured at the ATU-R. If the channel characteristics are reported to the RT-MIB, the ATU-R shall do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end transmit filter characteristics from the channel characteristics measured at the ATU-C.

Two formats for the channel characteristics are defined:

- Hlin(f): a format providing complex values in linear scale;
- Hlog(f): a format providing magnitude values in a logarithmic scale.

The Hlin(f) shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode in a REVERB transmitter state. The Hlin(f) shall be sent to the far-end management entity during diagnostics mode and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity during diagnostics mode.

The Hlog(f) shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement shall not be updated during showtime. The Hlog(f) shall be sent to the far-end management entity during diagnostics mode and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the Hlog(f) to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

In diagnostics mode, both Hlin(f) and Hlog(f) shall be measured, because there may be a difference in up to what extent the receiver and/or transmitter filter characteristics can be undone in Hlin(f) versus Hlog(f).

The PMD receive function shall measure Hlin(f) and Hlog(f) with the PMD transmit function in a REVERB state. The Hlin(f) and Hlog(f) shall be measured over a 1 second time period in diagnostics mode. The ATU shall do a best effort attempt to optimize Hlog(f) measurement time in initialization, however, measuring over at least 256 symbols, with indication of the measurement period to the far-end Management Entity (in symbols, represented as 16-bit unsigned value), see 9.4.1.10).

The channel characteristics function $Hlin(i \times \Delta f)$, shall be represented in linear format by a ***scale*** factor and a normalized complex number $\boldsymbol{a(i)} + \boldsymbol{j} \times \boldsymbol{b(i)}$, where $\boldsymbol{i}$ is the subcarrier index $\boldsymbol{i} = 0$ to $NSC - 1$. The scale factor shall be coded as a 16-bit unsigned integer. Both ***a(i)*** and ***b(i)*** shall be

coded as a 16-bit 2's complement signed integer. The value of Hlin(i × Δf) shall be defined as Hlin(i × Δf) = (***scale***/$2^{15}$) × (***a(i)*** + ***j*** × ***b(i)***)/$2^{15}$. In order to maximize precision, the ***scale*** factor shall be chosen such that ***max(|a(i)|, |b(i)|)*** over all ***i*** is equal to $2^{15} - 1$.

This data format supports an Hlin(f) granularity of $2^{-15}$ and an Hlin(f) dynamic range of approximately +6 dB to –90 dB. The portion of the scale factor range above 0 dB is necessary to accommodate that short loops, due to manufacturing variations in signal path gains and filter responses, may appear to have a gain rather than a loss.

An Hlin(i × Δf) value indicated as ***a(i)*** = ***b(i)*** = $-2^{15}$ is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) or that the attenuation is out of range to be represented.

The channel characteristics function Hlog(f) shall be represented in logarithmic format by an integer number ***m(i)***, where ***i*** is the subcarrier index ***i*** = 0 to *NSC* – 1. The ***m(i)*** shall be coded as a 10-bit unsigned integer. The value of Hlog(i × Δf) shall be defined as Hlog(i × Δf) = 6 – (***m(i)***/10).

This data format supports an Hlog(f) granularity of 0.1 dB and an Hlog(f) dynamic range of approximately +6 dB to –96 dB.

An Hlog(i × Δf) value indicated as ***m(i)*** = $2^{10} - 1$ is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) or that the attenuation is out of range to be represented.

#### 8.12.3.2 Quiet Line Noise PSD per subcarrier (QLN-ps)

The quiet line noise PSD QLN(f) for a particular subcarrier is the rms level of the noise present on the line, when no ADSL signals are present on the line.

The quiet line PSD QLN(f) per subchannel shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement shall not (i.e., cannot) be updated during showtime. The QLN(f) shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during diagnostics mode (see 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the QLN(f) to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

The objective is to provide means by which the quiet line PSD can be accurately identified. Therefore, it would be necessary for the receive PMD function to report an estimate of the quiet line PSD. This task may prove to be a difficult one given the fact that the receive PMD function observes the noise through the receiver filter. The passband part of the reported QLN-ps, which is most essential to debug possible issues with the physical loop, is not expected to significantly depend upon the receiver filter characteristics (not including receiver AGC). The receive PMD function shall therefore undo the gain (AGC) it has applied to the received signal and do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end receiver filter characteristics. The result is then a best estimate of how the receiver views the passband quiet line PSD. This result is considered a sufficient estimate of the quiet line PSD for desired loop conditioning applications.

The receive PMD function shall measure the QLN(f) in a time interval where no ADSL signals are present on the line (i.e., near-end and far-end transmitter inactive). The quiet line PSD QLN(i × Δf) shall be measured over a 1 second time interval in diagnostics mode. In initialization, the ATU shall do a best effort attempt to optimize QLN(f) measurement time, however measuring over at least 256 symbols, with indication of the measurement period to the far-end Management Entity (in symbols, represented as 16-bit unsigned value, see 9.4.1.10).

The quiet line PSD QLN(i × Δf) shall be represented as an 8-bit unsigned integer ***n(i)***, where ***i*** is the subcarrier index ***i*** = 0 to *NSC* – 1. The value of QLN(i × Δf) shall be defined as QLN(i × Δf) = –23 – (***n(i)***/2) dBm/Hz. This data format supports a QLN(f) granularity of 0.5 dB and an QLN(f)

dynamic range of –150 to –23 dBm/Hz.

An QLN($i \times \Delta f$) value indicated as ***n(i)*** = 255 is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) or that the noise PSD is out of range to be represented.

### 8.12.3.3 Signal-to-Noise Ratio per subcarrier (SNR-ps)

The signal-to-noise ratio SNR(f) for a particular subcarrier is a real value which shall represent the ratio between the received signal power and the received noise power for that subcarrier.

The signal-to-noise ratio SNR(f) per subchannel shall be measured by the receive PMD function in diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The SNR(f) shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during diagnostics mode (see 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the SNR(f) to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

The receive PMD function shall measure the signal-to-noise ratio SNR(f) with the transmit PMD function in a MEDLEY or showtime state. The signal-to-noise ratio SNR(f) shall be measured over a 1 second time interval in diagnostics mode. In initialization and showtime, the ATU shall do a best effort attempt to optimize SNR(f) measurement time, however measuring over at least 256 symbols, with indication of the measurement period to the far-end Management Entity (in symbols, represented as 16-bit unsigned value, see 9.4.1.10).

The signal-to-noise ratio SNR($i \times \Delta f$) shall be represented as an 8-bit unsigned integer ***snr(i)***, where ***i*** is the subcarrier index ***i*** = 0 to $NSC - 1$. The value of SNR($i \times \Delta f$) shall be defined as SNR($i \times \Delta f$) = $-32 + ($***snr(i)***$/2)$ dB. This data format supports an SNR($i \times \Delta f$) granularity of 0.5 dB and an SNR($i \times \Delta f$) dynamic range of –32 to 95 dB.

An SNR($i \times \Delta f$) value indicated as ***snr(i)*** = 255 is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see Annexes) or that the signal-to-noise ratio is out of range to be represented.

### 8.12.3.4 Loop Attenuation (*LATN*)

The loop attenuation (*LATN*) is the difference in dB between the power received at the near-end and that transmitted from the far-end over all subcarriers, i.e., the channel characteristics function H(f) (as defined in 8.12.3.1) averaged over all subcarriers. *LATN* shall be defined as:

$$LATN[dB] = 10 \times \log \frac{\sum_{i=0}^{NSC-1} \left| H(i \times \Delta f) \right|^2}{NSC}$$

with *NSC* the number of subcarriers (see 8.5) and H(f) represented by Hlin(f) in diagnostics mode and Hlog(f) in initialization (with conversion of log to linear values for use in the above equation).

If one or more H(f) values could not be measured because they are out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) (see 8.12.3.1), then the *LATN* shall be calculated as an average of H(f) values over a number of subcarriers that is less than *NSC*.

The loop attenuation shall be calculated by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization. The calculation shall not be updated during showtime. The loop attenuation shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the *LATN* to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

The loop attenuation *LATN* shall be represented as an 10-bit unsigned integer ***latn***, with the value of *LATN* defined as *LATN* = ***latn***/10 dB. This data format supports an *LATN* granularity of 0.1 dB and an *LATN* dynamic range of 0 to 102.2 dB.

An *LATN* value indicated as ***latn*** = 1023 is a special value. It indicates that the loop attenuation is out of range to be represented.

#### 8.12.3.5 Signal Attenuation (*SATN*)

The signal attenuation *SATN* is defined as the difference in dB between the power received at the near-end and that transmitted from the far-end.

Received signal power in dBm shall be defined as the received subcarrier power, summed over the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset. During initialization and diagnostics mode, the transmit PSD for subcarriers in the MEDLEYset is at the *REFPSD* level. Therefore, the received signal power shall be finetuned with the $g_i$ values for each subcarrier in the MEDLEYset to estimate the signal power that will be received during showtime. During diagnostics mode, the fine tuning shall be restricted to using $g_i$ values 0 (for subcarriers to which no bits can be allocated) and 1 (for subcarrier to which at least one bit can be allocated).

Transmitted signal power shall be defined as the nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*), lowered by the power cutback (PCB, see 8.5). During diagnostics mode, only $g_i$ values 0 (for subcarriers to which no bits can be allocated) and 1 (for subcarrier to which at least one bit can be allocated) shall be used.

The signal attenuation shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization (i.e., estimate the signal attenuation at the start of showtime with the negociated control parameter settings). The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The signal attenuation shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the *SATN* to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

The attenuation *SATN* shall be represented as a 10-bit unsigned integer ***satn***, with the value of *SATN* defined as *SATN* = ***satn***/10 dB. This data format supports an *SATN* granularity of 0.1 dB and an *SATN* dynamic range of 0 to 102.2 dB.

An *SATN* value indicated as ***satn*** = 1023 is a special value. It indicates that the signal attenuation is out of range to be represented.

#### 8.12.3.6 Signal-to-Noise Ratio Margin (*SNRM*)

The signal-to-noise ratio margin is the maximum increase (in dB) of the received noise power, such that the ATU can still meet all the target BERs over all the frame bearers.

The signal-to-noise ratio margin shall be measured by the receive PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode. The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The signal-to-noise ratio margin shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the *SNRM* to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

To determine the signal-to-noise ratio margin (*SNRM*), the receive PMD function must be able to first determine the bits and gains table. During diagnostics mode, the receive PMD function may measure the *SNRM* value, or alternatively, may use the special value to indicate that the *SNRM* value was not measured.

The signal-to-noise ratio margin shall be represented as an 10-bit 2's complement signed integer ***snrm***, with the value of *SNRM* defined as *SNRM* = ***snrm***/10 dB. This data format supports an *SNRM*

granularity of 0.1 dB and an *SNRM* dynamic range of –51.1 to +51.1 dB.

An *SNRM* value indicated as ***snrm*** = –512 is a special value. It indicates that the signal-to-noise ratio margin is out of range to be represented. During diagnostics mode, the special value may also be used to indicate that the *SNRM* value was not measured.

### 8.12.3.7 Attainable net data rate (*ATTNDR*)

The attainable net data rate is the maximum net data rate that the receive PMS-TC and PMD functions are designed to support, under the following conditions:

- Single frame bearer and single latency operation;
- Signal-to-Noise Ratio Margin (*SNRM*) to equal or be above the *SNR* Target Margin;
- BER not to exceed the highest BER configured for one (or more) of the latency paths;
- Latency not to exceed the highest latency configured for one (or more) of the latency paths;
- Accounting for all coding gains available (e.g., trellis coding, RS FEC) within latency bound;
- Accounting for the loop characteristics at the instant of measurement.

To accurately determine the attainable net data rate (*ATTNDR*), the receive PMD function must be able to first determine the bits and gains table. Therefore, during diagnostics mode, the *ATTNDR* value shall be defined as an estimate of the line rate (without coding), calculated as:

$$ATTNDR = \left( \sum_{i=0}^{NSC-1} \log_2 \left[ 1 + 10^{\left[ SNR(i) - snrgap - TARSNRM \right]/10} \right] \right) \times 4\,\text{kbit/s}$$

with $SNR(i \times \Delta f)$ in dB as defined in 8.12.3.3, *snrgap* = 9.75 dB (see Note). The function [x] is equal to 0 for $x < 0$, is equal to *BIMAX* for $x > BIMAX$ and rounding to the nearest integer for $0 \le x \le BIMAX$. The values of *BIMAX* and *TARSNRM* are defined in Table 8-48.

NOTE – The *snrgap* value is defined for a $10^{-7}$ bit error ratio on 4-QAM, in accordance with [B11].

The attainable net data rate shall be calculated by the receive PMS-TC and PMD functions during diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The attainable net data rate shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the *ATTNDR* to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

The attainable net data rate shall be represented as a 32-bit unsigned integer ***attndr***, with the value of *ATTNDR* defined as *ATTNDR* = ***attndr*** bit/second. This data format supports an *ATTNDR* granularity of 1 bit/s.

No special value is defined.

### 8.12.3.8 Actual Aggregate Transmit Power (*ACTATP*)

The actual aggregate transmit power (*ACTATP*) is the total amount of output power delivered by the transmit PMD function to the U reference point at tip-and-ring (in dB), at the instant of measurement. Therefore, it would be necessary for the transmit PMD function to take into account the transmit filter function. This task may prove to be a difficult task. Because the actual aggregate transmit power is expected not to significantly depend upon the transmit filter characteristics, the transmit PMD function shall take the nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*, see 8.5), lowered by the power cutback (*PCB*, see 8.5), as a best estimate of the near-end actual aggregate transmit power and do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end transmitter filter characteristics. The *ACTATP* should also include discretionary transmit power possibly applied during showtime to some subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset (see 8.10).

The receive PMD function is not aware of the far-end transmit filter characteristics, nor of the far-end discretionary power levels. Therefore, the receive PMD function shall take the nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*, see 8.5), lowered by the power cutback (*PCB*, see 8.5), as a best estimate of the far-end actual aggregate transmit power.

The near-end and far-end actual aggregate transmit power shall be calculated by the PMD function during initialization (i.e., the estimated aggregate transmit power at the start of showtime with the negociated control parameter settings). The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The near-end and far-end actual aggregate transmit power shall be sent on request to the near-end Management Entity. The near-end Management Entity shall send the near-end and far-end *ACTATP* to the far-end Management Entity on request during showtime (see 9.4.1.10).

To determine the near-end actual aggregate transmit power (*ACTATP*), the transmit PMD function must first receive the bits and gains table from the receive PMD function. Therefore, during initialization and diagnostics mode, only the far-end actual aggregate transmit power is exchanged.

The actual aggregate transmit power shall be represented as an 10-bit 2's complement signed integer ***actatp***, with the value of *ACTATP* defined as *ACTATP* = ***actatp***/10 dBm. This data format supports an *ACTATP* granularity of 0.1 dB, with an ACTATP dynamic range of –31 to + 31 dBm.

An *ACTATP* value indicated as ***actatp*** = –512 is a special value. It indicates that the actual aggregate transmit power is out of range to be represented.

### 8.12.4 Diagnostics mode

It is important to have the ability to exchange the diagnostic information during training because the transceivers may not be capable of reaching SHOWTIME (due to poor channel conditions). In this case, the ADSL system needs to be capable of transitioning from normal initialization into a diagnostic mode where the measured diagnostic information can be exchanged reliably even in poor channel conditions.

This can be accomplished as follows:

1) In the G.994.1 phase of initialization, either the ATU-C or the ATU-R, requests entry into diagnostic mode by setting the Diagnostics Mode codepoint.
2) The transceivers proceed through the Diagnostics initialization sequence with Channel Discovery, and Transceiver Training. After SNR measurement in the Channel Analysis Phase, the transceivers enter into a Diagnostic Exchange mode.
3) In the Diagnostic Exchange mode, one bit per eight symbols (REVERB/SEGUE) messaging is used to communicate the Diagnostic information from one ATU to the other.

The diagnostics mode is defined in 8.15.

## 8.13 Initialization procedures

### 8.13.1 Overview

#### 8.13.1.1 Basic functions of initialization

ADSL transceiver initialization is required in order for a physically connected ATU-R and ATU-C pair to establish a communications link. The procedures for initiating a connection are specified in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2]. This clause specifies which parameters are exchanged during the G.994.1 phase (and how they are used thereafter) and the transceiver initialization and training procedures to follow after the G.994.1 phase.

In order to maximize the throughput and reliability of this link, ADSL transceivers shall determine certain relevant attributes of the connecting channel and establish transmission and processing characteristics suitable to that channel. The time line of Figure 8-23 provides an overview of this

process. In Figure 8-23, each receiver can determine the relevant attributes of the channel through the transceiver training and channel analysis procedures. Certain processing and transmission characteristics can also be established at each receiver during this time. During the exchange process, each receiver shares with its corresponding far-end transmitter certain transmission settings that it expects to see. Specifically, each receiver communicates to its far-end transmitter the number of bits and relative power levels to be used on each DMT subcarrier, as well as any messages and final data rates information. For highest performance, these settings should be based on the results obtained through the transceiver training and channel analysis procedures.

ATU-C

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Handshake procedures (8.13.2.1 and G.994.1) | Channel discovery (8.13.3.1) | Transceiver training (8.13.4.1) | Channel analysis (8.13.5.1) | Exchange (8.13.6.1) |

ATU-R

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Handshake procedures (8.13.2.2 and G.994.1) | Channel discovery (8.13.3.2) | Transceiver training (8.13.4.2) | Channel analysis (8.13.5.2) | Exchange (8.13.6.2) |

Time →

**Figure 8-23/G.992.3 – Overview of initialization**

Determination of channel attribute values and establishment of transmission characteristics requires that each transceiver produce, and appropriately respond to, a specific set of precisely-timed signals. This clause describes these initialization signals, along with the rules that determine the proper starting and ending time for each signal. This description is made through the definition of initialization states in which each transceiver will reside, and the definition of initialization signals that each transceiver will generate in each of those states. A state, and the signal generated while in that state have the same name which may sometimes, for clarity, be prefixed by "state" or "signal".

The sequence of generated downstream and upstream states/signals for a successful initialization procedure is shown by the time lines shown in Figures 8-26 and 8-27. The arrows indicate that the change of state in the ATU at the head of the arrow is caused by a state/signal transition of the far-end ATU as shown at the base of the arrow. For example, the ATU-C shall stay in state C-QUIET4 until the ATU-R transitions from the R-MSG-PCB to the R-REVERB1 state. Within a maximum delay from that transition, the ATU-C shall transition to C-REVERB1.

NOTE – Figures 8-26 and 8-27 show the sequence of events in a successful initialization.

An overall state diagram is specified in Annex D, including the handling of failures to detect signals, timeouts, etc.

The description of a state/signal will consist of three parts:

- The first is a statement of the required duration, expressed in DMT symbol periods, of the state. This state duration may be a constant or may depend upon the detected state of the far-end transceiver. The duration of a single DMT symbol period depends on whether the cyclic prefix is being used; some initialization signals contain a cyclic prefix, and some do not. ATU signals up to and including Transceiver Training are transmitted without a cyclic prefix; those from Channel Analysis onwards are transmitted with a prefix. The duration of any signal in seconds is therefore the defined number of DMT symbol periods times the duration of the DMT symbol being used.
- The second part is a description of the voltage waveform that the transmitter shall produce at its output when in the corresponding state. The output voltage waveform of a given initialization signal is described using the DMT transmitter reference models shown in Figure 8-5, with constellation mapping and gain scaling for each subcarrier.
- The third part of a state's description is a statement of the rule specifying the next state.

#### 8.13.1.2 Transparency to methods for separating upstream and downstream signals

Manufacturers may choose to implement this Recommendation using either frequency-division-multiplexing (FDM) or echo cancelling (EC) to separate upstream and downstream signals. The initialization procedure described here ensures compatibility between these different implementations by specifying all upstream and downstream control signals to be in the appropriate, but narrower, frequency bands that would be used by an FDM transceiver, and by defining a time period during which an echo cancelled transceiver can train its echo canceller.

#### 8.13.1.3 Implementation of service options for ADSL

The initialization procedure described here is applicable to different service options. The subcarrier frequencies used for some signals vary depending upon whether the ADSL service is offered over a POTS or an ISDN service (as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.961 [1], Appendices I, II, or III) or as all-digital mode without underlying service. These subcarrier frequencies are therefore defined over a wide enough frequency band, such that the receiver can identify the transmitter state/signal, irrespective of the service option chosen.

#### 8.13.1.4 Resetting during initialization and data transmission

Resetting may occur if errors or malfunctions are detected, or timeout limits are exceeded at various points in the initialization sequence and SHOWTIME. An ATU executes a reset by transitioning to G.994.1 procedures. An ATU-R detecting an error condition shall transition to R-SILENT0 (see ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2]). An ATU-C detecting an error condition shall transition to C-SILENT1 (see ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2]).

Annex D specifies the state transitions that shall occur if errors or malfunctions are detected or timeout limits are exceeded at various points in the initialization sequence. Annex D also specifies conditions for which retraining may be required during data transmission (i.e., after a successful initialization).

The initialization procedure may be used for the link state transition from the L3 state to the L0 state (see 9.5.3). Error recovery (during the L0 or L2 link state) is through the initialization procedure. At the start of the initialization procedure, the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state. When the ATU reaches the Showtime state through the initialization procedure, the ADSL link shall be in the L0 state (see Figure 9-5).

### 8.13.2 G.994.1 phase

The definition, structure and usage of the G.994.1 parameter blocks is included in this clause. However, this clause only lists the parameters exchanged in the G.994.1 phase to configure the transmit and receive PMD functions. Parameters applicable to the TPS-TC and PMS-TC layers are defined in clauses 6 and 7 respectively.

#### 8.13.2.1 Handshake – ATU-C

The detailed procedures for handshake at the ATU-C are defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2]. An ATU-C, after power-up or on conditions shown in Figure D.1, shall enter the initial C-SILENT1 state (waiting for the G.994.1 R-TONES-REQ signal). The ATU-C may transition to C-INIT/HS state (to send G.994.1 C-TONES signal) under instruction from the network. From either state, operation shall proceed according to the procedures defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2].

If G.994.1 procedures select this Recommendation as the mode of operation, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-QUIET1 state (see Figure 8-26) at the conclusion of G.994.1 operation. All subsequent signals shall be transmitted using PSD levels as defined in the remainder of this clause.

#### 8.13.2.1.1 CL messages

An ATU-C wishing to indicate G.992.3 capabilities in a G.994.1 CL message shall do so by setting to ONE at least one of the Standard Information Field {SPar(1)} G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2/G.994.1. For each G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see 9.4/G.994.1). The G.994.1 CL message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bits are defined in Table 8-20.

**Table 8-20/G.992.3 – ATU-C CL message Par(2) PMD bit definitions**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | Applies to ISDN related service options only (see annexes). |
| Diagnostics Mode | When set to 1, indicates the ATU-C wants to enter diagnostics mode (see 8.15).<br>When set to 0, indicates the ATU-C wants to enter initialization (see 8.13). |
| Short Initialization | When set to 1, indicates the ATU-C supports the Short Initialization (see 8.14).<br>When set to 0, indicates the ATU-C does not support the Short Initialization. |
| **SPar(2) bit** | **Definition of related Npar(3) bits** |
| Spectrum bounds upstream | A parameter block indicating the Nominal transmit PSD level, the Maximum transmit PSD level and the Maximum aggregate transmit power. The parameter block length shall be 6 octets. Codepoints shall be structured as:<br>• Nominal transmit PSD level (*NOMPSD*) shall be represented as a 9-bit 2's complement signed value in 0.1 dB steps, –25.6 to +25.5 dB, relative to the value defined in the applicable annex for the selected service option and shall be coded in bits 3 down to 1 in octet 1, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 2;<br>• Maximum nominal transmit PSD level (*MAXNOMPSD*) shall be represented as a 9-bit 2's complement signed value in 0.1 dB steps, –25.6 to +25.5 dB, relative to the value defined in the applicable annex for the selected service option and shall be coded in bits 3 down to 1 in octet 3, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 4;<br>• Maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATP*) shall be represented as a 9-bit 2'complement signed value in 0.1 dB steps, –25.6 to 25.5 dB, relative to the value defined for the applicable annex for the selected service option and shall be coded in bits 3 down to 1 in octet 5, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 6. |
| Spectrum shaping upstream | A parameter block of pairs of a subcarrier index and the spectrum shaping log_$tss_i$ value at that subcarrier. Pairs shall be transmitted in ascending subcarrier index order. Each pair shall be represented as 4 octets. The parameter block length shall be a multiple of 4 octets. Codepoints shall be structured as:<br>• The subcarrier index shall be a 9-bit unsigned value, indicating subcarrier index 1 to 2 × *NSCus* – 1, coded in bits 3 and 1 in octet 1, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 2;<br>• The indication whether the subcarrier is included in the SUPPORTEDset (indication set to 1) or not included in the SUPPORTEDset (indication set to 0). This indication is coded in bit 6 of octet 3;<br>• The spectrum shaping $log\_tss_i$ values shall be represented in logarithmic scale as a 7-bit unsigned value in –0.5 dB steps, ranging from 0 dB (value 0) to –62.5 dB (value 125), coded in bit 1 of octet 3 and bits 6 down to 1 in octet 4. Value 127 is a special value, indicating the subcarrier is not transmitted (i.e., $tss_i = 0$ in linear scale). Value 126 is a special value indicating that the $log\_tss_i$ value on this subcarrier shall be interpolated according to 8.13.2.4;<br>At least one pair (of a subcarrier index and the spectrum shaping $log\_tss_i$ value at that subcarrier) indicated as included in the SUPPORTEDset, shall have the $log\_tss_i$ value set to 0 dB. |

**Table 8-20/G.992.3 – ATU-C CL message Par(2) PMD bit definitions**

| | |
|---|---|
| Spectrum bounds downstream | Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum bounds upstream. |
| Spectrum shaping downstream | Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum shaping upstream (with breakpoint frequencies indicating subcarrier index 1 to 2 × *NSCds* – 1). |
| Transmit Signal Images above the Nyquist frequency | A parameter block indicating the type of the transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency. The parameter block shall consist of a single octet. Codepoints shall be structured as bits 6 to 3 indicating the *N* value and bits 2 and 1 indicating the definition of the transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency (see 8.8.2). The coding shall be as follows:<br>• $(b_6b_5b_4b_3) = n$, with $1 \le n \le 15$ indicates that $N = 2^n$;<br>• $(b_6b_5b_4b_3) = 0$ indicates that *N* is not a power of 2;<br>• $(b_2b_1 = 01)$: complex conjugate of the base-band signal;<br>• $(b_2b_1 = 10)$: zero filled;<br>• $(b_2b_1 = 00)$: other (none of the above);<br>• $(b_2b_1 = 11)$: reserved. |

#### 8.13.2.1.2 MS messages

An ATU-C selecting a G.992.3 mode of operation in a G.994.1 MS message shall do so by setting to ONE the appropriate Standard Information Field {SPar(1)} G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2/G.994.1. For the G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see 9.4/G.994.1). The G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bit are defined in Table 8-21.

**Table 8-21/G.992.3 – ATU-C MS message Par(2) PMD bit definitions**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | Applies to ISDN related service options only (see annexes). |
| Diagnostics Mode | Set to 1 if the CL or the CLR message have this bit set to 1.<br>When set to 1, indicates both ATUs shall enter diagnostics mode (see 8.15).<br>When set to 0, indicates both ATUs shall enter initialization (see 8.13). |
| Short Initialization | Set to 1 if and only if this bit was set to 1 in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message.<br>When set to 1, indicates the ATUs may use the Short Initialization (see 8.14).<br>When set to 0, indicates the ATUs shall not use the Short Initialization . |

The Spar(2) bits shall be set to 0. No Npar(3) parameters shall be included in the MS message.

### 8.13.2.2 Handshake – ATU-R

The detailed procedures for handshake at the ATU-R are defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2]. An ATU-R, after power-up or on conditions shown in Figure D.2, shall enter the initial G.994.1 state R-SILENT0. Upon command from the host controller, the ATU-R shall initiate handshaking by transitioning from the R-SILENT0 state to the G.994.1 R-TONES-REQ state. Operation shall then proceed according to the procedures defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2].

If G.994.1 procedures select this Recommendation as the mode of operation, the ATU-R shall transition to state R-QUIET1 (see Figure 8-26) at the conclusion of G.994.1 operation. All subsequent signals shall be transmitted using PSD levels as defined in the remainder of this clause.

#### 8.13.2.2.1 CLR messages

An ATU-R wishing to indicate G.992.3 capabilities in a G.994.1 CLR message shall do so by setting to ONE at least one of the Standard Information Field {SPar(1)} G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2/G.994.1. For each G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see 9.4/G.994.1). The G.994.1 CLR message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bits are defined in Table 8-22.

**Table 8-22/G.992.3 – ATU-R CLR message Par(2) PMD bit definitions**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | Applies to ISDN related service options only (see annexes). |
| Diagnostics Mode | When set to 1, indicates the ATU-R wants to enter diagnostics mode (see 8.15).<br>When set to 0, indicates the ATU-R wants to enter initialization (see 8.13). |
| Short Initialization | When set to 1, indicates the ATU-R supports the Short Initialization (see 8.14).<br>When set to 0, indicates the ATU-R does not support the Short Initialization. |
| **SPar(2) bit** | **Definition of related Npar(3) bits** |
| Spectrum bounds upstream | Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum bounds upstream parameter block in CL message. |
| Spectrum shaping upstream | Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum shaping upstream parameter block in CL message. |
| Spectrum bounds downstream | Parameter block shall not be included. This SPar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Spectrum shaping downstream | Parameter block shall not be included. This SPar(2) bit shall be set to 0. |
| Transmit Signal Images above the Nyquist frequency | Parameter block with same definition and structure as Transmit Signal Images above the Nyquist frequency parameter block in CL message. |

#### 8.13.2.2.2 MS messages

An ATU-R selecting a G.992.3 mode of operation in a G.994.1 MS message shall do so by setting to ONE the appropriate Standard Information Field {SPar(1)} G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2/G.994.1. For the G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see 9.4/G.994.1). The G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bit are defined in Table 8-23.

If the ATU-R transmits an MP message (as defined in 7.5/G.994.1) , the format of the MP message shall be the same as the format of the MS message defined in Table 8-23.

**Table 8-23/G.992.3 – ATU-R MS message Par(2) PMD bit definitions**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | Applies to ISDN related service options only (see annexes). |
| Diagnostics Mode | Set to 1 if the CL or the CLR message have this bit set to 1.<br>When set to 1, indicates both ATUs shall enter diagnostics mode (see 8.15).<br>When set to 0, indicates both ATUs shall enter initialization (see 8.13). |
| Short Initialization | Set to 1 if, and only if, this bit was set to 1 in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message.<br>When set to 1, indicates the ATUs may use the Short Initialization (see 8.14).<br>When set to 0, indicates the ATUs shall not use the Short Initialization. |

The Spar(2) bits shall be set to 0. No Npar(3) parameters shall be included in the MS message.

### 8.13.2.3 G.994.1 transmit PSD levels

When the ATU's transition to G.994.1 procedures is invoked outside of this Recommendation, or in order to change modes of operation, the transmit PSD levels shall be as specified in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 [2]. When the G.994.1 procedures are invoked from the procedures described in this Recommendation, the transmit PSD levels shall be applied as specified in Table 8-24.

**Table 8-24/G.992.3 – G.994.1 transmit PSD levels**

| Prior G.992.3 state | Transmit PSD level |
|---|---|
| None (G.994.1 invoked from outside this Recommendation) | See G.994.1. |
| All states in this Recommendation | At or below the Nominal Transmit PSD level defined in applicable annex for the chosen service option (i.e., at or below the *NOMPSD* level, as indicated in G.994.1, or explicitly, or implicitly through the default value, see 8.13.2.4). |

The transmit PSD level at which the G.994.1 signals are transmitted, may be indicated in the G.994.1 CL, CLR or MS message Identification Field (see Table 9.0.1/G.994.1).

### 8.13.2.4 Spectral bounds and shaping parameters

The CLR message may include an upstream spectrum bounds parameter block and shall not include a downstream spectrum bounds parameter block. The CL message may include a downstream spectrum bounds parameter block and may include an upstream spectrum bounds parameter block. The MS message shall not include an upstream nor a downstream spectrum bounds parameter block.

If a spectrum bounds parameter block is not included in the CL message, the downstream spectrum bounds as defined in the corresponding annex for the chosen service option shall apply.

If a spectrum bounds parameter block is not included in the CLR message, the upstream spectrum bounds as defined in the corresponding annex for the chosen service option shall apply.

If a spectrum bounds parameter block is included in the CL or CLR message, the *NOMPSD* level shall be no higher than the *MAXNOMPSD* level.

The CLR message may include an upstream spectrum shaping parameter block and shall not include a downstream spectrum shaping parameter block. The CL message may include a downstream spectrum shaping parameter block and may include an upstream spectrum shaping parameter block. The MS message shall not include an upstream nor a downstream spectrum shaping parameter block.

If a spectrum shaping parameter block is not included in the CL or CLR message, no spectral shaping shall be applied. In this case, $tss_i$ values shall be equal to 1 for all subcarriers, index 1 to $2 \times NSC - 1$ and the SUPPORTEDset shall contain all subcarriers with index $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$.

If no CLR/CL exchange transaction is included in the G.994.1 session, the spectrum shaping indicated in the last previous CLR/CL exchange shall apply (i.e., the downstream $tss_i$ values contained in the last previous CL message and the upstream $tss_i$ values contained in the last previous CLR message shall be applied).

The spectral shaping for each subcarrier $i$ ($tss_i$) shall be defined in function of the frequency breakpoints associated to spectral shaping values different from the reserved values 126, exchanged during the G.994.1 phase for all subcarriers, index 1 to $2 \times NSC - 1$, as:

- The spectral shaping ($log\_tss_i$, dB value) of the lowest breakpoint frequency with a spectral shaping value different from 126 if the subcarrier is below this breakpoint frequency (i.e., flat extension to lower frequencies);
- The spectral shaping ($log\_tss_i$, dB value) of the highest breakpoint frequency with a spectral shaping value different from 126 if the subcarrier is above this breakpoint frequency (i.e., flat extension to higher frequencies);
- Otherwise interpolated between spectral shaping of the lower and higher breakpoint frequency associated to shaping value different from 126 with linear relationship between the spectral shaping ($log\_tss_i$, dB value) and linear frequencies (Hz) (i.e., interpolation with constant dB/Hz slope). If the spectral shaping value of the lower or higher breakpoint frequency is 127, the interpolated $tss_i$ is 0 for this subcarrier.

NOTE 1 – The special $log\_tss_i$ value of 126 is used to indicate that the breakpoint is only used for the definition of the SUPPORTEDset, and not for the definition of the $log\_tss_i$ values.

The indication (logical 0 or 1) for each subcarrier *i* whether the subcarrier is in the SUPPORTEDset or not, shall be defined in function of the indications exchanged during the G.994.1 phase, for all subcarriers, index 1 to $NSC - 1$, as:

- The indication of the lowest breakpoint frequency if the subcarrier is at or below the lowest breakpoint frequency;
- The indication of the highest breakpoint frequency if the subcarrier is at or above the highest breakpoint frequency;
- Otherwise, the logical AND of the indications of the lower and higher breakpoint frequency.

Subcarriers with index in the range $NSC$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$ shall not be included in the SUPPORTEDset. The above definition of $log\_tss_i$ and SUPPORTEDset indication for subcarriers not included in the G.994.1, is illustrated in the Figure 8-24.

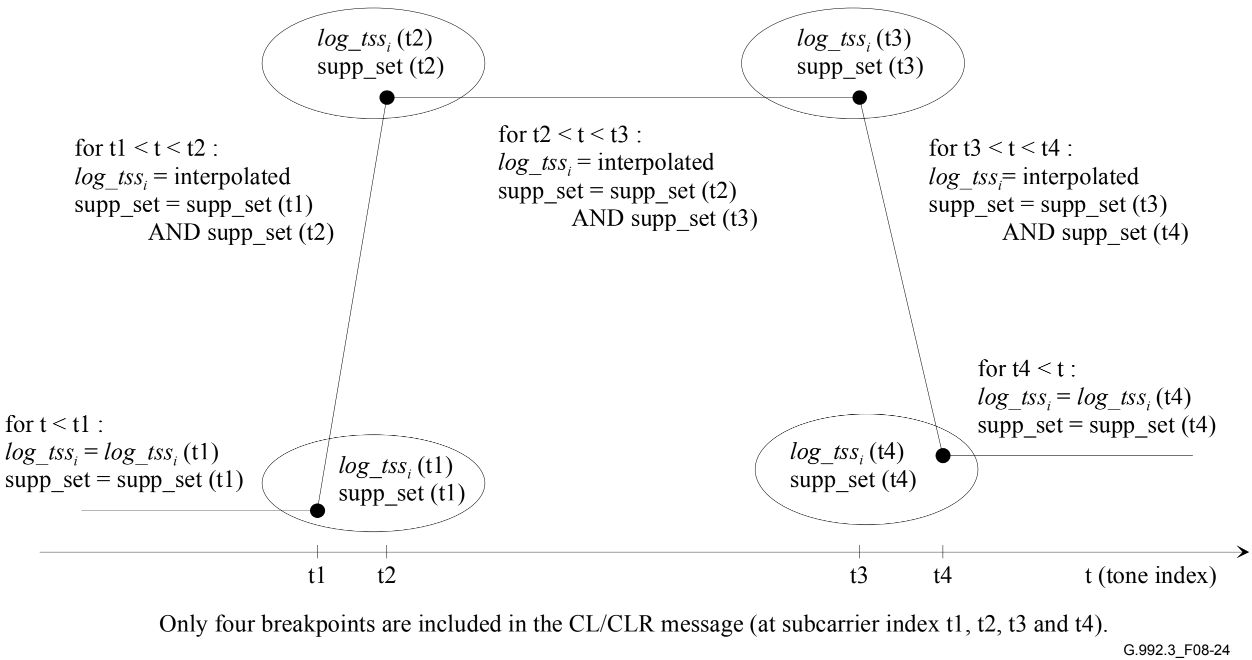



**Figure 8-24/G.992.3 – Illustration of the interpolation of *log_tss_i* and SUPPORTEDset indications**

The spectral shaping values shall be converted from logarithmic scale (log_$tss_i$, dB values) to linear $tss_i$ values according to:

$$tss_i = \frac{\text{Round}\left(1024 \times 10^{\frac{log\_tss_i}{20}}\right)}{1024}$$

The combined accuracy of process of the linear interpolation of $log\_tss_i$ values and the process of conversion to linear $tss_i$ values shall be strictly less than one half LSB of the 10 bits after the decimal point format of the linear $tss_i$ values. No error shall be introduced when $log\_tss_i$ equals 0 dB or is interpolated between $log\_tss_i$ values which equal 0 dB.

NOTE 2 – This ensures that the maximum deviation between $tss_i$ values used by transmitter and receiver is one LSB.

NOTE 3 – It should be remarked that the accuracy is specified as strictly < 1/2 LSB. An accuracy of = 1/2 LSB, will lead to inaccurate results.

The information represented in the spectrum shaping block shall be defined as follows:

- The CLR upstream spectrum shaping parameter block shall represent the spectrum shaping $tss_i$ values for each upstream subcarrier. The format of the upstream spectrum shaping parameter block is defined in Table 8-22. The spectrum shaping $tss_i$ values shall be used for all initialization signals as defined in Table 8-25. The upstream SUPPORTEDset is defined as the set of subcarriers with index $1 \le i \le NSCus - 1$, which the ATU-R intends to transmit during Channel Analysis. The ATU-R shall indicate in the CLR message which subcarriers are included in the SUPPORTEDset, as defined in Table 8-22. For the subcarriers in the upstream SUPPORTEDset, $tss_i$ values shall be equal to 1 ($log\_tss_i = 0$ dB, i.e., no spectrum shaping). For the subcarriers not in the upstream SUPPORTEDset, $tss_i$ values shall be less than or equal to 1 ($log\_tss_i \le 0$ dB) and equal to or higher than the minimum values derived from Equation (8-1). The ATU-R may reduce the number of subcarriers it intends to transmit during Channel Analysis, to aid in the conservation of spectrum.
- The CL downstream spectrum shaping parameter block shall represent the spectrum shaping $tss_i$ values for each downstream sub-carrier. The format of the downstream spectrum shaping parameter block is defined in Table 8-20. The spectrum shaping $tss_i$ values shall be used for all initialization signals as defined in Table 8-25. The downstream SUPPORTEDset is defined as the set of subcarriers with index $1 \le i \le NSCds - 1$, which the ATU-C intends to transmit during Channel Analysis. The ATU-C shall indicate in the CL message which subcarriers are included in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, as defined in Table 8-20. For the subcarriers in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, $tss_i$ values shall be in the 0 to 1 range (i.e., spectrum shaping allowed). For the subcarriers not in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, $tss_i$ values shall be less than or equal to 1 ($log\_tss_i \le 0$ dB) and equal to or higher than the minimum values derived from Equation (8-1). The ATU-C may reduce the number of subcarriers it intends to transmit during Channel Analysis, to aid in the conservation of spectrum.
- The CL upstream spectrum shaping parameter block shall represent which subcarriers the ATU-R may include in the upstream SUPPORTEDset (SUPPORTEDset indication set to 1 and $tss_i$ value equal to 1 in linear scale) and which subcarriers the ATU-R shall not include in the upstream SUPPORTEDset (SUPPORTEDset indication set to 0 and $tss_i$ value equal to 0 in linear scale). The format of the upstream spectrum shaping parameter block is defined in Table 8-20 (see Note 2).

$$S(i \cdot \Delta f) \le tss_i^2 \le 1, \text{ for } 1 \le i \le 2 \times NSC - 1 \qquad (8\text{-}1)$$

where

$$S(f) = \sum_n S_b\left( f - n \cdot \left( \frac{N}{NSC} \right) \cdot f_s \right),$$

$$S_b(f) = \sum_{k \in SUPPORTEDset} tss_k^2 \times \left( W^2(f - k \cdot \Delta f) + W^2(f + k \cdot \Delta f) \right)$$

($N/NSC$) is the IDFT oversampling factor, with $N$ and $NSC$ as defined in 8.8.2,

$\Delta f$ is the subcarrier frequency spacing, i.e., = 4.3125 kHz (see 8.8.1),

$f_s$ is the sampling frequency, i.e., 2 × $NSC$ × $\Delta f$ (see 8.8.13),

$W^2(f)$ is the Fourier transform of the autocorrelation function of a rectangular window, defined as:

$$W^2(f) \;=\; \frac{17}{16} \times \text{sinc}^2\left( \frac{f}{(16/17) \cdot \Delta f} \right).$$

NOTE 4 – The scale factor applied in $W^2(f)$ is to make the integral of $W^2(f)$ equal unity.

The Figure 8-25 shows an example of the downstream $tss_i$ values as a function of the subcarrier index $i$, for the case that the SUPPORTEDset contains the subcarriers with index $i = 40$ to 200 and $N = 2 \times NSC = 512$ (oversampled IDFT). At frequencies $i \times \Delta f$, with $40 \le i \le 200$ and $\Delta f = 4.3125$ kHz, the $tss_i$ value equals 1 (0 dB).

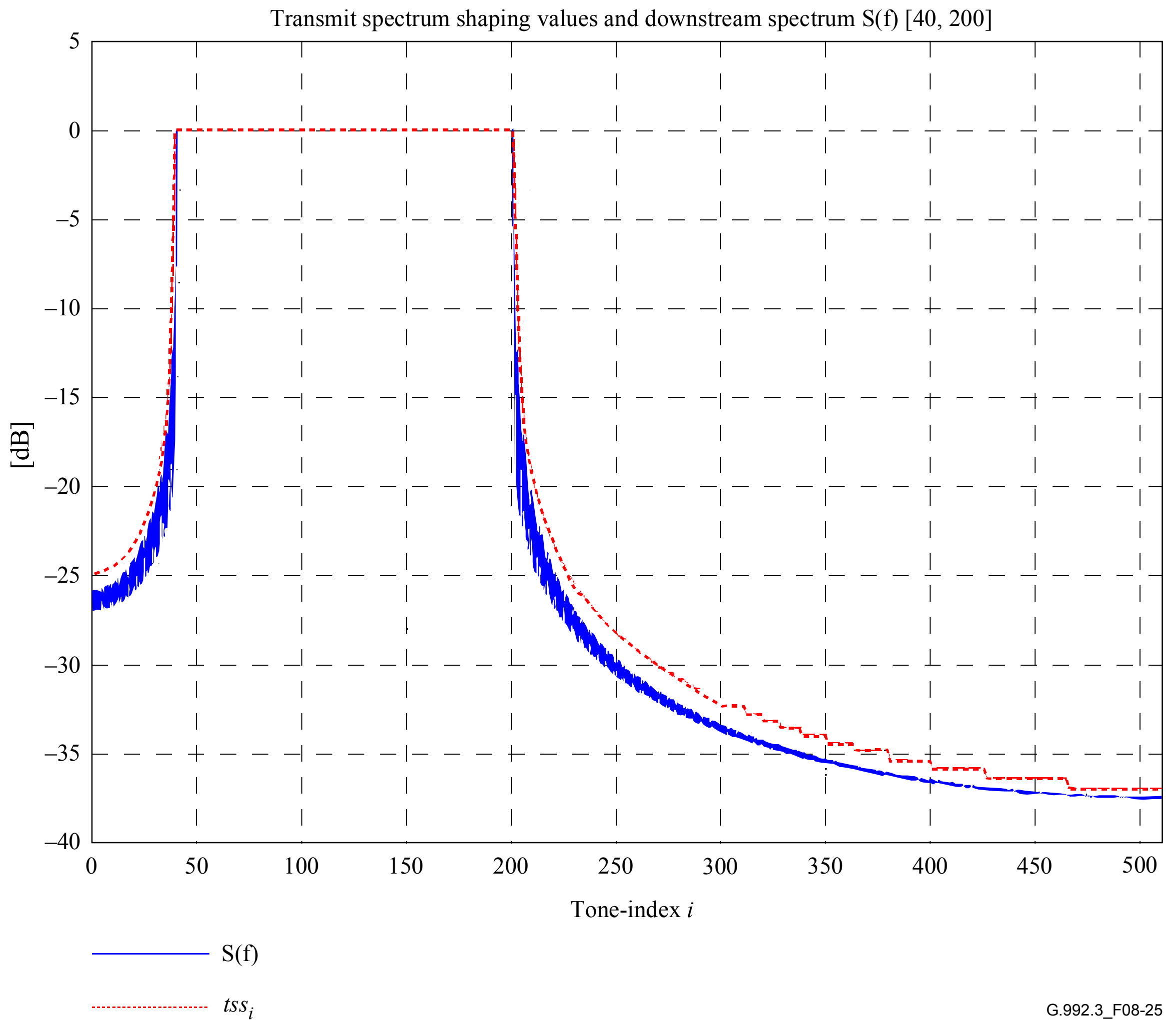



**Figure 8-25/G.992.3 – Example of the downstream *log_tss*$_i$ values (in dB) as a function of the subcarrier index**

The CLR message is sent before the CL message. Therefore, at the time the ATU-R sends the CLR message, the ATU-R is not aware of restrictions contained in the CO-MIB applying to the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameter blocks. These restrictions are contained in the CL message, which the ATU-C sends in response to the CLR message. Therefore, after the ATU-R sends the ACK message to terminate the CLR/CL exchange transaction, the ATU-R shall verify consistency of CL and CLR messages as follows:

- The *NOMPSDus*, *MAXNOMPSDus* and *MAXNOMATPus* levels in the CLR message shall be no higher than the corresponding levels in the CL message;
- All subcarriers indicated in the CLR message as being included in the upstream SUPPORTEDset, shall be indicated in the CL message as subcarriers which the ATU-R may include in the upstream SUPPORTEDset.

If the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters contained in the CLR and CL message are found to be consistent, the ATU-R shall apply spectrum bounds and shaping as contained in the CLR message. Otherwise, if the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters contained in the CLR and CL message are found to be inconsistent, then the ATU-R shall do either of the following:

- The ATU-R sends an MS message indicating that it is not prepared to select a mode at this time (according to 10.1.1/G.994.1). After termination of the G.994.1 session, the ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters offline, taking into

account the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters specified by the ATU-C in the CL message of previous G.994.1 session. In a subsequent G.994.1 session, the ATU-R sends a CLR message including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters;

- The ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters online, taking into account the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters specified by the ATU-C in the CL message of previous G.994.1 session. In the same G.994.1 session, the ATU-R repeats the CLR/CL exchange transaction with a CLR message including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters.

NOTE 1 – For the downstream direction, the CO-MIB contains a per subcarrier indication whether the subcarrier is or is not allowed to be sent starting from the initialization Channel Analysis Phase. From this information and taking into account its own capabilities, the ATU-C selects the downstream SUPPORTEDset of subcarriers and computes the CL downstream spectrum shaping parameter block information.

NOTE 2 – For the upstream direction, the CO-MIB contains a per subcarrier indication whether the subcarrier is or is not allowed to be sent starting from the initialization Channel Analysis Phase. This information is conveyed to the ATU-R in the CL upstream spectrum shaping parameter block (through SUPPORTEDset indications and only using $tss_i$ values 0 and 1 in linear scale). From this information and taking into account its own capabilities, the ATU-R selects the upstream SUPPORTEDset of subcarriers and computes the CLR upstream spectrum shaping parameter block information.

NOTE 3 – With the $tss_i$ values contained in the different spectrum shaping blocks, the ATU indicates which subcarriers the ATU intends to transmit (subcarriers in the SUPPORTEDset) and which ones the ATU does not intend to transmit (subcarriers not in the SUPPORTEDset) during Channel Analysis for both the upstream and downstream directions. This is needed to make sure the ATU-R can select a C-TREF pilot tone which will be transmitted starting from the Channel Analysis Phase. This also facilitates the selection by the PMD receive function of unused subcarriers for SNR monitoring and the selection of subcarriers to modulate the PARAMS messages.

During the Channel Discovery Phase, the receive PMD function may include the *BLACKOUT* bits (i.e., $BLACKOUT_i$ for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$) in the MSG-PCB message. These contain a per subcarrier indication of whether the subcarrier may ($BLACKOUT_i = 0$) and which subcarriers shall not ($BLACKOUT_i = 1$) be transmitted by the transmit PMD function during initialization, starting from the Transceiver Training phase (see Table 8-25). The downstream *BLACKOUT*set is defined as the set of downstream subcarriers the ATU-R has indicated for blackout. The upstream *BLACKOUT*set is defined as the set of upstream subcarriers the ATU-C has indicated for blackout.

If the *BLACKOUT* bits are not included in the MSG-PCB message and the initialization contains a G.994.1 phase, the transmit PMD function shall assume all *BLACKOUT* bits are set to 0. If the *BLACKOUT* bits are not included in the MSG-PCB message and the initialization does not contains a G.994.1 phase, the transmit PMD function shall assume the *BLACKOUT* bits conveyed in the last previous MSG-PCB message are still valid.

Disabling of subchannels during initialization and *SHOWTIME* allows the receive PMD function to estimate the characteristics of the RFI ingress signals. Based on these estimates, a receive PMD function can perform adaptive signal processing algorithms for RFI ingress cancellation and/or mitigation with the goal of providing improved performance in the presence of RFI ingress.

The downstream MEDLEYset is defined as the set of subcarriers contained in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, with removal of the subcarriers contained in the downstream *BLACKOUT*set. The upstream MEDLEYset is defined as the set of subcarriers contained in the upstream SUPPORTEDset, with removal of the subcarriers contained in the upstream *BLACKOUT*set.

The Initialization Symbols Encoder is the concatenation of first the constellation mapping and second, the spectral shaping and subcarrier blackout for symbols transmitted during the Initialization Phase. The constellation mapping defines the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ values for the Channel

Discovery, Transceiver Training, Channel Analysis and Exchange Phases of initialization (see 8.13.3, 8.13.4, 8.13.5 and 8.13.6 respectively) for subcarriers $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$.

The spectrum shaping and subcarrier blackout shall be applied to all subcarriers in the various initialization phases as defined in Table 8-25.

The values $Z_i$ (for $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$) are input to the modulation function (see Figure 8-5). The $Z_i$ values for subcarrier index $i \geq \mathrm{MIN}(N, 2 \times NSC)$ are effectively ignored. The $Z_i$ values for subcarrier index $i = NSC$ to $\mathrm{MIN}(N, 2 \times NSC) - 1$ are used by the modulation function only during Transceiver Training and only if an oversampled IDFT is used with zero fill (see 8.8.2). Otherwise, these values are effectively ignored.

**Table 8-25/G.992.3 – Application of spectrum shaping and subcarrier blackout during initialization.**

| Initialization phase | Spectrum shaping and subcarrier blackout application |
|---|---|
| G.994.1<br>(8.13.2) | No spectrum shaping and no blackout applied |
| Channel Discovery<br>(8.13.3) | $Z_i = tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$<br>No blackout applied<br>Nonzero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *NOMPSD* level |
| Transceiver Training (8.13.4) | $Z_i = tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$ if $BLACKOUT_i = 0$<br>$Z_i = 0$ if $BLACKOUT_i = 1$<br>Nonzero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *REFPSD* level |
| Channel Analysis<br>(8.13.5) | $Z_i = tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$ if subcarrier in MEDLEYset<br>$Z_i = 0$ if subcarrier not in MEDLEYset<br>Nonzero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *REFPSD* level |
| Exchange<br>(8.13.6) | $Z_i = tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$ if subcarrier in MEDLEYset<br>$Z_i = 0$ if subcarrier not in MEDLEYset<br>Nonzero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *REFPSD* level |

In the downstream direction, the $tss_i$ values applied to the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset during the Channel Analysis and Exchange Phase, shall be in the 0 to 1 range. In the upstream direction, these $tss_i$ values shall be equal to 1.

### 8.13.3 Channel discovery phase

The ATU-x may perform a coarse timing recovery, channel probing, and power cutback in this phase. The ATU-x may perform a line probe to determine a cutback based on hook status. The ATU-R can also identify a subcarrier suitable for timing reference during transceiver training.

#### 8.13.3.1 ATU-C channel discovery

The reference clock of the ATU-C transmit PMD function shall not change during and after the Channel Discovery Phase. However, the reference clock used during the Channel Discovery Phase may be different from the reference clock used during the G.994.1 Phase.

In the Channel Discovery Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the nominal transmit PSD (NOMPSDds) level including spectral shaping.

##### 8.13.3.1.1 C-QUIET1

Upon the ATU-C terminating the G.994.1 session (see 11.3/G.994.1), the ATU-C shall transition to the C-QUIET1 state.

The C-QUIET1 state is of variable length. In the C-QUIET1 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 512 and a maximum of 4204 C-QUIET symbols. The minimum duration of the C-QUIET1 state allows for quiet line noise PSD measurement period of at least 512 symbols (see 8.12.3.2).

A C-QUIET symbol shall be defined as a zero output voltage at the U-C 2 reference point (see reference model in 5.4). All subcarriers in the C-QUIET symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The ATU-C may transition to the C-QUIET1 state before or after the ATU-R transitions to the R-QUIET1 state. If the ATU-C transitions first, the ATU-C shall remain in the C-QUIET1 state until after the ATU-R transitions to the R-QUIET1 state. Within 512 to 2048 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET1 state or the ATU-R transitioning to the R-QUIET1 state (whichever occurs last in time), the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-QUIET1 state shall be followed by the C-COMB1 state.

NOTE – The maximum duration of the C-QUIET1 state corresponds to 500 ms difference between the ATU-C and the ATU-R terminating the G.994.1 Phase (4312/2 symbols) plus 2048 symbols for ATU-C transition from the G.994.1 to the Channel Discovery Phase.

#### 8.13.3.1.2 C-COMB1

The duration of the C-COMB1 state is of fixed length. In the C-COMB1 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 128 C-COMB symbols.

During this state, the ATU-R performs timing recovery and measures some characteristics of the downstream channel for C-TREF pilot tone selection and for the estimation of the required ATU-R minimum Upstream Power Cut Back and ATU-R minimum Downstream Power Cut Back. These functions can be continued during C-COMB2.

The C-COMB symbol shall be defined as a wideband multi-tone symbol containing the 16 subcarriers with index 11, 23, 35, 47, 59, 64, 71, 83, 95, 107, 119, 143, 179, 203, 227 and 251. The subcarrier spacing has been selected to minimize audible interference into the POTS band prior to applying cutbacks that may be required in the presence of an off-Hook POTS terminal and to limit aggregate transmit power to 8.4 dBm (i.e., the 12 dB power cutback level).

The subcarriers contained in the C-COMB symbol shall modulate the same data bits that are used for the C-REVERB symbols, in such a way that same subcarrier indexes modulate the same data bits with the same 4-QAM constellation, as defined in 8.13.4.1.1. The subcarriers not contained in the C-COMB symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The C-COMB1 state shall be followed by the C-QUIET2 state.

#### 8.13.3.1.3 C-QUIET2

The C-QUIET2 state is of fixed duration. During the C-QUIET2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 256 C-QUIET symbols.

The C-QUIET2 state shall be followed by the C-COMB2 state.

#### 8.13.3.1.4 C-COMB2

The C-COMB2 state is of fixed length. During the C-COMB2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-COMB2* C-COMB symbols. Whenever the initialization is invoked from Showtime as a fast error recovery procedure (see 8.14), the value *LEN_C-COMB2* shall be set to 1024 symbols. The value *LEN_C-COMB2* shall be set to either 1024 or 3872 symbols otherwise.

During C-COMB2, the ATU-R performs timing recovery and measures some characteristics of the downstream channel for C-TREF pilot tone selection and for the estimation of the required ATU-R minimum Upstream Power Cut Back and ATU-R minimum Downstream Power Cut Back.

The C-COMB2 state shall be followed by the C-ICOMB1 state if the ATU-C desires to use the C-LINEPROBE state. Otherwise the C-COMB2 state shall be followed by the C-QUIET3 state.

#### 8.13.3.1.5 C-ICOMB1

The C-ICOMB1 state is of fixed length. In the C-ICOMB1 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 10 C-ICOMB symbols.

A C-ICOMB symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of a C-COMB symbol (i.e., a C-ICOMB symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The C-ICOMB1 state shall be followed by the C-LINEPROBE state.

#### 8.13.3.1.6 C-LINEPROBE

The C-LINEPROBE state is of fixed length. In the C-LINEPROBE state, the ATU-C shall transmit a vendor discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

The C-LINEPROBE state shall be followed by the C-QUIET3 state.

#### 8.13.3.1.7 C-QUIET3

The C-QUIET3 state is of variable length. In the C-QUIET3 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 256 and a maximum of 906 C-QUIET symbols. The ATU-C may do an upstream channel attenuation measurement during this state (while the ATU-R is in the R-COMB2 state).

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-QUIET3 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-QUIET3 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-QUIET3 state shall be followed by the C-COMB3 state.

#### 8.13.3.1.8 C-COMB3

The C-COMB3 state is of fixed length. In the C-COMB3 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-COMB symbols.

The C-COMB3 state shall be followed by the C-ICOMB2 state. The transition to the C-ICOMB2 state provides a time marker for the C-MSG-FMT state.

#### 8.13.3.1.9 C-ICOMB2

The C-ICOMB2 state is of fixed length. In the C-ICOMB2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 10 C-ICOMB symbols.

The C-ICOMB2 state shall be followed by the C-MSG-FMT state.

#### 8.13.3.1.10 C-MSG-FMT

The C-MSG-FMT state is of fixed length. In the C-MSG-FMT state, the ATU-C shall transmit 96 symbols of C-COMB or C-ICOMB to modulate the C-MSG-FMT message and CRC. The C-MSG-FMT message conveys information about the presence, format and length of subsequent ATU-C and ATU-R messages.

The C-MSG-FMT message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

Bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-26.

**Table 8-26/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the C-MSG-FMT message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | FMT_R-REVERB1 (value 0 or 1) | Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-C requests an extended duration of the R-REVERB1 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not. |
| 1 | | Reserved, set to 0. |
| 2 | FMT_C-REVERB4 (value 0 or 1) | Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-C requests an extended duration of the C-REVERB4 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not. |
| 7…3 | FMT_R-QUIET4 (value 0 to 31) | The (0 to 31) value mapped in these bits indicates the duration of the R-QUIET4 state. The MSB shall be mapped on the higher message bit index. |
| 8 | FMT_C-MSG-PCB | Set to 1 indicates that the C-MSG-PCB message shall include the C-BLACKOUT bits. Set to 0 indicates it shall not. |
| 15…9 | | Reserved, set to 0. |

The 16 bits $m_0$-$m_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{15}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-ICOMB symbols.

After the C-MSG-FMT message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the 16 message $m$ bits using the equation:

$$c(D) = a(D)D^{16} \text{modulo } g(D)$$

where:

$$a(D) = m_0 D^{15} + m_1 D^{14} ... + m_{15}$$

is the message polynomial formed from the 16 bits of the C-MSG-FMT message, with $m_0$ the least significant bit of the first octet of the C-MSG-FMT message;

$$g(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1$$

is the CRC generator polynomial, and

$$c(D) = c_0 D^{15} + c_1 D^{14} ..... + c_{14} D + c_{15}$$

is the CRC check polynomial.

The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message $m$.

The C-MSG-FMT state shall be followed by the C-MSG-PCB state.

#### 8.13.3.1.11 C-MSG-PCB

In each direction, the transmit power will be reduced by a power cutback which is the highest of the power cutback values determined by the ATU-R and the ATU-C. The ATU-C can consider its receiver dynamic range as determined by observing R-COMB2, the local line conditions determined by the optional C-LINEPROBE, and policy matters such as spectral limits when determining its cutback levels.

In order to provide non-reciprocal FEXT control, the ATU-C shall request an upstream transmit power cutback in the C-MSG-PCB message, such that the power received at the ATU-C is no higher than the maximum level indicated by MAXRXPWR as specified in the CO-MIB (see 8.5.1). The power received at the ATU-C shall be measured over three subcarriers: subcarriers 12, 18 and 24 for Annex A and Annex I and subcarriers 36, 42 and 48 for Annex B and Annex J.

NOTE 1 – The ATU-C should take into account the spectrum shaping on these subcarriers when determining the required upstream power cutback (PCBus) value.

The C-MSG-PCB state is of fixed length. In the C-MSG-PCB state, the ATU-C shall transmit 96 or $96 + 3 \times NSCus$ symbols of C-COMB or C-ICOMB to modulate the C-MSG-PCB message and CRC, depending on whether the C-BLACKOUT bits are included or not. The C-MSG-PCB message conveys the ATU-C determined power cutback levels for both the upstream and downstream directions, the hook status as known by the ATU-C and the upstream BLACKOUT bits.

The ATU-C shall indicate in the C-MSG-FMT message whether the C-MSG-PCB message includes the C-BLACKOUT bits or not. If the C-MSG-PCB does not include the C-BLACKOUT bits, the C-MSG-PCB message, *m*, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

If the C-MSG-PCB includes the C-BLACKOUT bits, the C-MSG-PCB message, *m*, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15} + NSCus, \ldots, m_0\}$$

Bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-27.

**Table 8-27/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the C-MSG-PCB message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 5…0 | C-MIN_PCB_DS | ATU-C Minimum Downstream Power Cutback<br>(6 bit value with MSB in bit 5 and LSB in bit 0) |
| 11…6 | C-MIN_PCB_US | ATU-C Minimum Upstream Power Cutback<br>(6 bit value with MSB in bit 11 and LSB in bit 6) |
| 13…12 | HOOK_STATUS | Hook Status<br>(2 bit value with MSB in bit 13 and LSB in bit 12) |
| 15…14 | | Reserved, set to 0. |
| 15 + *NSCus*…16 | C-BLACKOUT | Blackout indication per subcarrier (subcarrier *NSCus* – 1 in bit 15 + *NSCus*, subcarrier 0 in bit 16). Bit 16 shall be set to 0 (i.e., no blackout of DC subcarrier). |

The ATU-C Minimum Downstream Power Cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-28.

**Table 8-28/G.992.3 – ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback**

| Value (6 bits) | ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback (dB) |
|---|---|
| 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 |
| … | … |
| 40 | 40 |
| 41 – 63 | Reserved |

The ATU-C Minimum Upstream Power Cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-29.

**Table 8-29/G.992.3 – ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback**

| Value (6 bits) | ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback (dB) |
|---|---|
| 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 |
| … | … |
| 40 | 40 |
| 41 – 63 | Reserved |

The POTS hook status shall be coded as defined in Table 30. The hook state "Unknown" is intended to be indicated by a device that normally indicates the on- or off-hook state. The state "Not capable to detect" is intended to be indicated by a device that never indicates the on- or off-hook state (e.g., is not capable or disabled to detect the hook state).

**Table 8-30/G.992.3 – Hook status**

| Value (2 bits) | Hook status |
|---|---|
| 0 | Unknown |
| 1 | On-hook |
| 2 | Off-hook |
| 3 | Not capable to detect |

The POTS Hook Status shall be coded as Unknown when operating without underlying service (i.e., Annexes I and J).

NOTE 2 – The POTS Hook Status may be indicated when operating with underlying service (i.e., Annexes A and B). In the case of Annex B, the ADSL signal allows for an underlying ISDN service, however, it may actually be operated with an underlying POTS service.

The C-BLACKOUT bits shall contain the C-BLACKOUT bit settings for each of the subcarriers 1 to *NSCus* – 1. The C-BLACKOUT bit set to 0 for a particular subcarrier indicates that the ATU-R shall transmit that subcarrier at the ATU-R reference transmit PSD level (*REFPDSus*) level, and including spectral shaping, for the remainder of initialization, starting from the Transceiver Training Phase. The C-BLACKOUT bit be set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R shall transmit no power ("blackout") on that subcarrier, for the remainder of initialization, starting from the Transceiver Training Phase.

A C-MSG-PCB message containing 16 bits $m_{15}$-$m_0$ shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{15}$ last). A C-MSG-PCB message containing 16 + *NSCus* bits $m_{15+NSCus} - m_0$ shall be transmitted in 48 + 3 × *NSCus* symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{15+NSCus}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-ICOMB symbols.

After the C-MSG-PCB message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed in the same way as for the C-MSG-FMT message.

The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message $m$.

The C-MSG-PCB state shall be followed by the C-QUIET4 state.

**8.13.3.1.12 C-QUIET4**

The C-QUIET4 state is of variable length. In the C-QUIET4 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 314 and a maximum of 474 + 3 × *NSCds* C-QUIET symbols.

The ATU-C shall receive and decode the content of the messages R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PBC during this state.

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB1 state. Within 80 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB1 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-QUIET4 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB1 state.

### 8.13.3.2 ATU-R channel discovery

In the Channel Discovery Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the nominal transmit PSD (*NOMPSDus*) level including spectral shaping.

#### 8.13.3.2.1 R-QUIET1

Upon the ATU-R terminating the G.994.1 session (see 11.3/G.994.1), the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET1 state.

The R-QUIET1 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 640 and a maximum of 4396 R-QUIET symbols. The minimum duration of the R-QUIET1 state allows for quiet line noise PSD measurement period of at least 512 symbols (see 8.12.3.2). During this state, the ATU-R may do timing recovery and downstream channel measurements (while the ATU-C is in the C-COMB1 state).

An R-QUIET symbol shall be defined as a zero output voltage at the U-R 2 reference point (see reference model in 5.4). All subcarriers in the R-QUIET symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET2 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET2 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-QUIET1 state shall be followed by the R-COMB1 state.

NOTE – The maximum duration of the R-QUIET1 state corresponds to 500 ms difference between the ATU-C and the ATU-R terminating the G.994.1 Phase (4312/2 symbols) plus 2048 symbols allowing for ATU-R transition from the G.994.1 to the Channel Discovery Phase plus 128 symbols to receive C-COMB1 plus 64 symbols to transition to R-COMB1.

#### 8.13.3.2.2 R-COMB1

The R-COMB1 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB1 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 128 R-COMB symbols.

The R-COMB symbol shall be defined as a wideband multi-tone symbol containing all subcarriers with index being a multiple of 6 and in the 1 to *NSCus* – 1 range. The spacing has been selected to minimize audible interference into the POTS band prior to applying cutbacks that may be required in the presence of an off-Hook POTS terminal.

The subcarriers contained in the R-COMB symbol shall modulate the same data bits that are used for the R-REVERB symbols, in such a way that same subcarrier indexes modulate the same data bits with the same 4-QAM constellation, as defined in 8.13.4.2.1. The subcarriers not contained in the R-COMB symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The R-COMB1 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET2 state.

#### 8.13.3.2.3 R-QUIET2

The R-QUIET2 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of (64 + *LEN_C-COMB2*) and a maximum of (714 + *LEN_C-COMB2*) R-QUIET symbols. The value *LEN_C-COMB2* is defined in 8.13.3.1.4.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET3 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET3 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The ATU-R terminates the transmission of R-QUIET symbols under either of the two following conditions:

- The ATU-C makes a transition from the C-COMB2 to the C-QUIET3 state. In this case, within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to C-QUIET3, the ATU-R transitions to the next state.
- The ATU-C makes a transition from the C-COMB2 to the C-ICOMB1 and C-LINEPROBE state. In this case, the ATU-R ignores the C-LINEPROBE signal and within 522 to 586 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to C-ICOMB1, the ATU-R transitions to the next state.

The R-QUIET2 state shall be followed by the R-COMB2 state.

#### 8.13.3.2.4 R-COMB2

Before entering the R-COMB2 state, the ATU-R shall perform timing recovery. The clock frequency at the ATU-R transmitter at the beginning of the R-COMB2 state shall be within a 5 ppm accuracy from the clock frequency at the ATU-C transmitter. This is necessary as, while the ATU-R is in the R-COMB2 state, the ATU-C needs to perform an upstream channel estimation in order to properly detect the R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PCB state. This estimate may not be accurate enough when performed in presence of a coarse timing at the ATU-R transmitter.

The R-COMB2 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 256 R-COMB symbols. During this state, the ATU-C may measure some characteristics of the upstream channel as attenuation and noise power to be used to estimate the required ATU-C minimum Upstream Power Cut Back and ATU-C minimum Downstream Power Cut Back.

The R-COMB2 state shall be followed by the R-ICOMB1 state if the ATU-R desires to use the R-LINEPROBE state. Otherwise the R-COMB2 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET3 state.

#### 8.13.3.2.5 R-ICOMB1

The R-ICOMB1 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB1 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 10 R-ICOMB symbols.

The R-ICOMB symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of an R-COMB symbol (i.e., an R-ICOMB symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The R-ICOMB1 state shall be followed by the R-LINEPROBE state.

#### 8.13.3.2.6 R-LINEPROBE

The R-LINEPROBE state is of fixed length. In the R-LINEPROBE state, the ATU-R shall transmit a vendor discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

The R-LINEPROBE state shall be followed by the R-COMB3 state.

#### 8.13.3.2.7 R-QUIET3

The R-QUIET3 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET3 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 266 and a maximum of $410 + 3 \times NSCus$ R-QUIET symbols.

The ATU-R shall receive and decode the content of the messages C-MSG-FMT and C-MSG-PBC during this state.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to C-QUIET4. Within 80 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to C-QUIET4, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-QUIET3 state shall be followed by the R-COMB3 state.

#### 8.13.3.2.8 R-COMB3

The R-COMB3 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB3 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-COMB symbols.

The R-COMB3 state shall be followed by the R-ICOMB2 state. The transition to the R-ICOMB2 state provides a time marker for the R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PCB state.

#### 8.13.3.2.9 R-ICOMB2

The R-ICOMB2 state is of fixed length. In the R-ICOMB2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 10 R-ICOMB symbols.

The R-ICOMB2 state shall be followed by the R-MSG-FMT state.

#### 8.13.3.2.10 R-MSG-FMT

The R-MSG-FMT state is of fixed length. In the R-MSG-FMT state, the ATU-R shall transmit 96 symbols of R-COMB or R-ICOMB to modulate the R-MSG-FMT message and CRC. The R-MSG-FMT message conveys information about the presence, format and length of subsequent ATU-C and ATU-R messages.

The R-MSG-FMT message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15}, \dots, m_0\}$$

Bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-31.

**Table 8-31/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-FMT message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | FMT-R-REVERB1 (value 0 or 1) | Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R requests an extended duration of the R-REVERB1 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not. |
| 1 | | Reserved, set to 0. |
| 2 | FMT-C-REVERB4 (value 0 or 1) | Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R requests an extended duration of the C-REVERB4 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not. |
| 6…3 | FMT-C-TREF1 (value 1 to 15) | The value mapped in these bits indicates the minimum duration of the C-TREF1 state. The MSB shall be mapped on the higher message bit index. |
| 7 | FMT-R-MSG-PCB (value 0 or 1) | Set to 1 indicates that the R-MSG-PCB message shall include the R-BLACKOUT bits. Set to 0 indicates it shall not. |
| 8 | FMT-C-TREF2 (value 0 or 1) | Indicates that the ATU-R requests the ATU-C to transmit C-TREF symbols (if set to 1) or C-QUIET symbols (if set to 0) during R-ECT. |
| 9 | FMT-C-PILOT (value 0 or 1) | Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R requests the ATU-C to transmit a fixed 4-QAM constellation point on the C-TREF pilot tone. Set to 0 indicates it does not. |
| 15…10 | | Reserved, set to 0. |

The 16 bits $m_0$-$m_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{15}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-ICOMB symbols.

After the R-MSG-FMT message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed in the same way as for the C-MSG-FMT message. The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message $m$.

The R-MSG-FMT state shall be followed by the R-MSG-PCB state.

#### 8.13.3.2.11 R-MSG-PCB

In each direction, the transmit power will be reduced by a power cutback which is the highest of the power cutback values determined by the ATU-R and the ATU-C. The ATU-R can consider its receiver dynamic range as determined by observing C-COMB1, and the local line conditions determined by the optional R-LINEPROBE when determining its cutback levels.

The R-MSG-PCB state is of fixed length. In the R-MSG-PCB state, the ATU-R shall transmit 144 or $144 + 3 \times NSCds$ symbols of R-COMB or R-ICOMB to modulate the R-MSG-PCB message and CRC, depending on whether the R-BLACKOUT bits are included or not. The R-MSG-PCB message conveys the ATU-R determined power cutback levels for both the upstream and downstream directions, the hook status as known by the ATU-R, the signal used for timing recovery during different states and the downstream BLACKOUT bits.

The ATU-R shall indicate in the R-MSG-FMT message whether the R-MSG-PCB message includes the R-BLACKOUT bits or not. If the R-MSG-PCB does not include the R-BLACKOUT bits, the R-MSG-PCB message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{31}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

If the R-MSG-PCB includes the R-BLACKOUT bits, the R-MSG-PCB message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{31+NSCds}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

Bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-32.

**Table 8-32/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-PCB message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 5…0 | R-MIN_PCB_DS | ATU-R Minimum Downstream Power Cutback<br>(6 bit value with MSB in bit 5 and LSB in bit 0) |
| 11…6 | R-MIN_PCB_US | ATU-R Minimum Upstream Power Cutback<br>(6 bit value with MSB in bit 11 and LSB in bit 6) |
| 13…12 | HOOK_STATUS | Hook Status<br>(2 bit value with MSB in bit 13 and LSB in bit 12) |
| 15…14 | | Reserved, set to 0 |
| 23…16 | C-PILOT | Subcarrier index of downstream pilot tone<br>(8 bit value with MSB in bit 23 and LSB in bit 16) |
| 31…24 | | Reserved, set to 0 |
| 31 + *NSCds*…32 | R-BLACKOUT | Blackout indication per subcarrier (subcarrier *NSCds* – 1 in bit 31 + *NSCds*, subcarrier 0 in bit 32). Bit 32 shall be set to 0 (i.e., no blackout of DC subcarrier). |

The ATU-R Minimum Downstream Power Cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-33.

**Table 8-33/G.992.3 – ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback**

| Value (6 bit) | ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback (dB) |
|---|---|
| 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 |
| … | … |
| 40 | 40 |
| 41-63 | Reserved |

The ATU-R Minimum Upstream Power Cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-34.

**Table 8-34/G.992.3 – ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback**

| Value (6 bit) | ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback (dB) |
|---|---|
| 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 |
| … | … |
| 40 | 40 |
| 41-63 | Reserved |

The hook status shall be coded as defined in Table 8-35. The hook state "Unknown" is intended to be indicated by a device that normally indicates the on- or off-hook state. The state "Not capable to detect" is intended to be indicated by a device that never sets the on- or on-hook state (e.g., is not capable or disabled to detect the hook state).

**Table 8-35/G.992.3 – Hook status**

| Value (2 bit) | Hook status |
|---|---|
| 0 | Unknown |
| 1 | On-hook |
| 2 | Off-hook |
| 3 | Not capable to detect |

The C-PILOT value shall indicate the index of the C-TREF pilot subcarrier to be used by the ATU-C for the C-TREF timing reference and to be used by the ATU-R during C-TREF1/C-TREF2 for timing recovery. The spectral shaping information exchanged during the G.994.1 phase and the BLACKOUT information exchanged in R-MSG-PCB allows the ATU-R to determine the set of subcarriers the ATU-C will transmit in and after the Channel Analysis Phase (i.e., to determine the MEDLEYset, see 8.13.2.4). The ATU-R shall select a C-TREF pilot subcarrier from the MEDLEYset.

The R-BLACKOUT bits shall contain the R-BLACKOUT bit settings for each of the subcarriers 1 to *NSCds* – 1. The R-BLACKOUT bit set to 0 for a particular subcarrier indicates that the ATU-C shall transmit that subcarrier at the ATU-C reference transmit PSD level (*REFPDSds*) level, and including spectral shaping, for the remainder of initialization, starting from the Transceiver Training Phase. The R-BLACKOUT bit be set to 1 indicates that the ATU-C shall transmit no power

("blackout") on that subcarrier, for the remainder of initialization, starting from the Transceiver Training Phase.

An R-MSG-PCB message containing 32 bits $m_{31}$-$m_0$ shall be transmitted in 96 symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{31}$ last). An R-MSG-PCB message containing 32 + *NSCds* bits $m_{31+NSCds}$ -$m_0$ shall be transmitted in 96 + 3 × *NSCds* symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{31+NSCds}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-ICOMB symbols.

After the R-MSG-PCB message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the 32 or 32 + *NSCds* message *m* bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message *m*.

The R-MSG-PCB state shall be followed by the R-REVERB1 state.

### 8.13.4 Transceiver training phase

#### 8.13.4.1 ATU-C transceiver training

In the Transceiver Training Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier BLACKOUT. The subcarriers with downstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

##### 8.13.4.1.1 C-REVERB1

The C-REVERB1 state is of fixed length. During the C-REVERB1 state the ATU-C shall transmit (*LEN_R-REVERB1* + *LEN_R-QUIET4* – 80) C-REVERB symbols. The values *LEN_R-REVERB1* and *LEN_R-QUIET4* are defined in 8.13.4.2.1 and 8.13.4.2.2 respectively.

This state allows the ATU-C and ATU-R receiver to adjust its automatic gain control (AGC) to an appropriate level.

The data pattern modulated on a C-REVERB symbol shall be the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS), $d_n$ for $n$ = 1 to 4 × *NSCds*, defined as follows:

$$d_n \begin{cases} = 1 & \text{for } n = 1 \text{ to } 9; \\ = d_{n-4} \oplus d_{n-9} & \text{for } n = 10 \text{ to } 2 \times NSCds; \\ = d_{n-2\times NSCds} & \text{for } n = 2\times NSCds + 1 \text{ to } 2\times NSCds + 2; \\ = d_{4\times NSCds+2n} & \text{for } n = 2\times NSCds + 3 \text{ to } 4\times NSCds \ (n \text{ odd}); \\ = 1 \oplus d_{4\times NSCds+4-n} & \text{for } n = 2\times NSCds + 3 \text{ to } 4\times NSCds \ (n \text{ even}). \end{cases}$$

The bits shall be used as follows: the first pair of bits ($d_1$ and $d_2$) is used for the DC subcarrier(so the bits are effectively ignored); then the first and second bits of subsequent pairs are used to define the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ for $i$ = 1 to 2 × *NSCds* – 1 as defined in Table 8-36. At the Nyquist subcarrier ($i$ = *NSCds*), the $X_i$ value shall be overwritten with the value $\sqrt{X_i^2 + Y_i^2}$ and the $Y_i$ value shall be overwritten with the value 0 (to make a real valued $X_i + jY_i$, see 8.8.1.4).

NOTE – The PRBS sequence is constructed such that the $X_i + jY_i$ values above the Nyquist subcarrier are the mirrored complex conjugate of the values below the Nyquist subcarrier.

**Table 8-36/G.992.3 – Mapping of two data bits into a 4-QAM constellation**

| $d_{2i+1}$ | $d_{2i+2}$ | $X_i$ $Y_i$ |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | + + |
| 0 | 1 | + – |
| 1 | 0 | – + |
| 1 | 1 | – – |

During this state, the ATU-C may fine-tune its AGC (while the ATU-R is in the R-REVERB1 state) and do adaptive AFE algorithms.

The C-REVERB1 state shall be followed by the C-TREF1 state.

#### 8.13.4.1.2 C-TREF1

The C-TREF1 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of *LEN_C-TREF1* and a maximum of 15872 C-TREF symbols. The value *LEN_C-TREF1* shall be defined as 512 times the *FMT_C-TREF1* value (1 to 15) indicated by the ATU-R in the R-MSG-FMT message. The number of symbols transmitted in the C-TREF1 state shall be a multiple of 512 symbols.

A C-TREF symbol shall be defined as a single tone symbol. Only the subcarrier specified by the ATU-R in the R-MSG-PCB message (i.e., the C-TREF pilot tone) shall be transmitted at the ATU-C reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSDds*). The C-TREF pilot tone shall modulate the 4-QAM {0,0} constellation point. No power shall be transmitted on the other subcarriers (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

During this state, the ATU-R may perform downstream timing recovery and other adaptive AFE algorithms. At the ATU-R, downstream timing recovery and other adaptive AFE algorithms shall be performed from symbolcount 0 to *LEN_C-TREF1* – 513 of the C-TREF1 state. The ATU-C may perform an upstream channel estimate starting from symbolcount *LEN_C-TREF1* – 512 of the C-TREF1 state. The ATU-C ends the C-TREF1 state, e.g., when the ATU-C has completed the channel estimation. The first symbol transmitted in the C-TREF1 state shall have a symbol count equal to zero. For the case where *LEN_C-TREF1* equals the maximum value of 7680, this means that 7168 C-TREF1 symbols are available to the ATU-R for timing recovery and up to 8704 R-REVERB symbols are available to the ATU-C to perform an upstream channel estimation.

The C-TREF1 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB2 state.

If the ATU-R has set the FMT_C-PILOT bit to 1 in the R-MSG-FMT message (see 8.13.3.2.10), the ATU-C shall modulate the 4-QAM {0,0} constellation point on the C-TREF subcarrier, in all the ATU-C initialization states following the C-TREF1 state, except C-ECT and C-QUIET states. This is logically modelled by the modulation function overwriting the pilot subcarrier modulation defined in the Initialization Procedures (see 8.8.1.2).

#### 8.13.4.1.3 C-REVERB2

The C-REVERB2 state is of fixed length. During the C-REVERB2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-REVERB symbols.

It is used to signal that the ATU-C has completed its U/S channel estimate and also provides a time marker for the C-ECT state.

The C-REVERB2 state shall be followed by the C-ECT state.

#### 8.13.4.1.4 C-ECT

The C-ECT state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit a vendor discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

During this state, the ATU-C may train its echo canceller, if one is present.

The C-ECT state shall be followed by the C-REVERB3 state.

#### 8.13.4.1.5 C-REVERB3

The C-REVERB3 state is of variable length. In the C-REVERB3 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 448 and a maximum of 15936 C-REVERB symbols.

The ATU-R may perform a downstream channel estimation during C-REVERB3.

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB3 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB3 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

In case the ATU-R has indicated in the R-MSG-FMT message that it requires the ATU-C to transmit C-TREF symbols during the R-ECT state, the C-REVERB3 state shall be followed by the C-TREF2 state. In case the ATU-R has indicated that it requires the ATU-C to transmit C-QUIET symbols during the R-ECT state, the C-REVERB1 state shall be followed by the C-QUIET5 state.

#### 8.13.4.1.6 C-TREF2

The C-TREF2 state is of fixed length. In the C-TREF2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 576 C-TREF symbols.

During this state, the ATU-R may perform timing recovery. The ATU-C shall ignore the signal transmitted by the ATU-R during the R-ECT state.

The C-TREF1 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB4 state.

#### 8.13.4.1.7 C-QUIET5

The C-QUIET5 state is of fixed length. In the C-QUIET5 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 576 C-QUIET symbols.

The C-QUIET5 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB4 state.

#### 8.13.4.1.8 C-REVERB4

The C-REVERB4 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-REVERB4* C-REVERB symbols. The value *LEN_C-REVERB4* shall be equal to 1024 if the ATU-C or the ATU-R (or both) have set *FMT_C-REVERB4* to 1 in the C-MSG-FMT or R-MSG-FMT message respectively. The value *LEN_C-REVERB4* shall be equal to 256 otherwise.

The C-REVERB4 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE1 state. The transition from the C-REVERB4 state to the C-SEGUE1 state is a time marker for the C-MSG1 and for the introduction of the cyclic prefix.

#### 8.13.4.1.9 C-SEGUE1

The C-SEGUE1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit 10 C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of a C-REVERB symbol (i.e., a C-SEGUE symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The C-SEGUE1 state shall be followed by the C-MSG1 state.

#### 8.13.4.2 ATU-R transceiver training

In the Transceiver Training Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDus*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier BLACKOUT. The subcarriers with upstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

##### 8.13.4.2.1 R-REVERB1

The R-REVERB1 state is of fixed length. In the R-REVERB1 state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-REVERB1* R-REVERB symbols. The value *LEN_R-REVERB1* shall be equal to 592 if the ATU-C or the ATU-R (or both) have set *FMT_R-REVERB1* to 1 in the C-MSG-FMT or R-MSG-FMT message respectively. The value *LEN_R-REVERB1* shall be equal to 272 otherwise.

The data pattern modulated on an R-REVERB symbol shall be the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS), $d_n$ for $n = 1$ to $4 \times NSCus$, defined as follows:

$$
d_n \begin{array}{ll}
= 1 & \text{for } n = 1 \text{ to } 6; \\
= d_{n-5} \oplus d_{n-6} & \text{for } n = 7 \text{ to } 2 \times NSCus \\
= d_{n-2\times NSCus} & \text{for } n = 2 \times NSCus + 1 \text{ to } 2 \times NSCus + 2; \\
= d_{4\times NSCus+2n} & \text{for } n = 2 \times NSCus + 3 \text{ to } 4 \times NSCus \ (n \text{ odd}); \\
= 1 \oplus d_{4\times NSCus+4-n} & \text{for } n = 2 \times NSCus + 3 \text{ to } 4 \times NSCus \ (n \text{ even}).
\end{array}
$$

The bits shall be used as follows: the first pair of bits ($d_1$ and $d_2$) is used for the DC subcarrier (so the bits are effectively ignored); then the first and second bits of subsequent pairs are used to define the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ for $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSCus - 1$ as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols. At the Nyquist subcarrier ($i = NSCus$), the $X_i$ value shall be overwritten with the value $\sqrt{X_i^2 + Y_i^2}$ and the $Y_i$ value shall be overwritten with the value 0 (to make a real valued $X_i + jY_i$, see 8.8.1.4).

NOTE – The PRBS sequence is constructed such that the $X_i + jY_i$ values above the Nyquist subcarrier are the mirrored complex conjugate of the values below the Nyquist subcarrier.

During this state, the ATU-R may fine-tune its AGC (while the ATU-C is in the C-REVERB1 state), do timing recovery and other adaptive AFE algorithms.

The R-REVERB1 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET4 state.

##### 8.13.4.2.2 R-QUIET4

The R-QUIET4 state is of fixed length. In the R-QUIET4 state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-QUIET4* R-QUIET symbols. The value *LEN_R-QUIET4* shall be defined as 512 times the *FMT_R-QUIET4* value (0 to 31) indicated by the ATU-C in the C-MSG-FMT message, resulting in a length of the R-QUIET4 state between 0 and 15872 symbols. In case *LEN_R-QUIET4* is 0, then the ATU-R effectively transitions from the R-REVERB1 to the R-REVERB2 state.

The R-QUIET4 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB2 state.

##### 8.13.4.2.3 R-REVERB2

The R-REVERB2 state is of variable length. In the R-REVERB2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 432 and a maximum of 15888 R-REVERB symbols.

During this state, the ATU-R shall do timing recovery and loop timing and may do other adaptive AFE algorithms. Loop timing is defined as the combination of the slaving of the ATU-R ADC clock to the received signal (i.e., to the ATU-C DAC clock), and tying the ATU-R DAC and ADC

clocks together. Loop timing shall be acquired before symbol count *LEN_C-TREF1* – 512 of the C-TREF1 state. The ATU-C may perform a channel estimate during the last 512 symbols of the C-TREF1 state. Such channel estimation requires sufficient sampling clock stability at the ATU-R transmitter. Loop timing shall be maintained in all subsequent states, except for R-ECT when the ATU-R requested C-QUIET5. In the latter case, loop timing shall be reacquired in R-REVERB4.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB2 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB2 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-REVERB2 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET5 state.

#### 8.13.4.2.4 R-QUIET5

The R-QUIET5 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET5 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 1024 and a maximum of 16384 R-QUIET symbols. The number of symbols transmitted in the R-QUIET5 state shall be a multiple of 512 symbols. However, the last R-QUIET symbol transmitted in the R-QUIET5 state may be shortened by any integer number of samples (at the sample clock frequency $f_s$, as defined in 8.8.1) to accommodate transmitter-to-receiver frame alignment.

During this state, the ATU-R shall ignore the signal transmitted by the ATU-C during the C-ECT state. The ATU-R may perform timing recovery, measure the downstream channel frequency response and train its equalizer (while the ATU-C is in the C-REVERB3 state). The ATU-R transitions to the next state when it has completed its receive signal processing algorithms.

The R-QUIET5 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB3 state.

#### 8.13.4.2.5 R-REVERB3

The R-REVERB3 state is of fixed length. In the R-REVERB3 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-REVERB symbols.

This state indicates that the ATU-R has completed its training. It also provides a time marker for the R-ECT state.

The R-REVERB3 state shall be followed by the R-ECT state.

#### 8.13.4.2.6 R-ECT

The R-ECT state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit a vendor discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

During this state, the ATU-R may train its echo canceller, if one is present.

The R-ECT state shall be followed by the R-REVERB4 state.

#### 8.13.4.2.7 R-REVERB4

The R-REVERB4 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of *LEN_C-REVERB4* and a maximum of *LEN_C-REVERB4* + 80 R-REVERB symbols, where LEN_C-REVERB4 is defined in 8.13.4.1.8.

The length of the R-REVERB4 state may be determined in such a manner that the ends of C-SEGUE1 and R-SEGUE1 coincide at the ATU-R.

If the ATU-R requested the ATU-C to transmit C-QUIET symbols during R-ECT (i.e., set the FMT-C-TREF2 bit to 0 in the R-MSG-FMT message), then the ATU-R shall request an extended duration of the C-REVERB4 state (i.e., set the FMT-C-REVERB4 bit to 1 in the R-MSG-FMT message) and the ATU-R shall reacquire loop timing within 512 symbols from the start of the C-REVERB4 state.

The R-REVERB4 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE1 state. The transition from the R-REVERB4 state to the R-SEGUE1 state is a time marker for the R-MSGS1 and for the introduction of the cyclic prefix.

#### 8.13.4.2.8 R-SEGUE1

The R-SEGUE1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit 10 R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of an R-REVERB symbol (i.e., an R-SEGUE symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The R-SEGUE1 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB5 state.

### 8.13.5 Channel analysis phase

In this phase, the ATU-C and ATU-R may perform further training and SNR estimation. Based on the requirements exchanged in the C/R-MSGS1 states, transmitter configurations on either side are decided upon.

#### 8.13.5.1 ATU-C channel analysis

In the Channel Analysis Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier BLACKOUT. The subcarriers with spectral shaping $tss_i$ value less than 1 or downstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

Starting from the Channel Analysis Phase (and continuing in the Exchange Phase and in Showtime), the ATU-C shall transmit the cyclic prefix, as defined in 8.8.3.

#### 8.13.5.1.1 C-MSG1

The C-MSG1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-MSG1* C-REVERB or C-SEGUE symbols to modulate the C-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC. The C-MSGS1 state shall be the first state in which the ATU-C transmits the cyclic prefix.

The C-MSG1 prefix, $p$, is defined by:

$$p = \{p_{31}, \ldots, p_0\} = \{\ 01010101\ 01010101\ 01010101\ 01010101\ \}$$

The 32 bits $p_0$ to $p_{31}$ shall be transmitted in 32 symbol periods ($p_0$ first and $p_{31}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as a C-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as a C-SEGUE symbol.

The value *LEN_C-MSG1* shall be defined as the length of the C-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC in bits. Table 8-37 lists the length of the C-MSG1 message summed over TPC-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

**Table 8-37/G.992.3 – C-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC length**

| Part of message | Length (bits or symbols) |
|---|---|
| Prefix | 32 |
| Npmd | 160 |
| Npms | 32 |
| Ntps | 0 |
| Nmsg | 192 |
| CRC | 16 |
| *LEN_C-MSG1* (symbols) | 240 |

The C-MSG1 message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{\mathrm{tps}_{Ntps-1}, \ldots, \mathrm{tps}_0, \mathrm{pms}_{Npms-1}, \ldots, \mathrm{pms}_0, \mathrm{pmd}_{Nmd-1}, \ldots, \mathrm{pmd}_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg-1}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

The C-MSG1 message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $\mathrm{tps}_{\mathrm{Ntps}-1}$ to $\mathrm{tps}_0$ and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $\mathrm{pms}_{Npms-1}$ to $\mathrm{pms}_0$ and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits $\mathrm{pmd}_{Npmd-1}$ to $\mathrm{pmd}_0$ and are defined in clause 8.

The Nmsg bits $m_0$-$m_{Nmsg-1}$ shall be transmitted in Nmsg symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{Nmsg-1}$ last), immediately following the prefix, and using the same modulation as used to transmit the prefix $p$.

After the C-MSG1 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the Nmsg message $m$ bits (thus not including the prefix) in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-PCB message.

The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message $m$.

The C-MSG1 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB5 state.

#### 8.13.5.1.2 C-REVERB5

The C-REVERB5 state is of variable length. In the C-REVERB5 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 10 and a maximum of (218 + *LEN_R-MSG1*) C-REVERB symbols.

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-MEDLEY state. Within 80 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-MEDLEY state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-REVERB5 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE2 state. The transition from the C-REVERB5 to the C-SEGUE2 state provides a time marker for the start of the C-MEDLEY state.

#### 8.13.5.1.3 C-SEGUE2

The C-SEGUE2 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit 10 C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase inverted C-REVERB symbol.

The C-SEGUE2 state shall be followed by the C-MEDLEY state.

#### 8.13.5.1.4 C-MEDLEY

The C-MEDLEY state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_MEDLEY* symbols. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be the maximum of the CA-MEDLEYus and CA-MEDLEYds values indicated by the ATU-C and the ATU-R in the C-MSG1 and R-MSG1 messages respectively. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be a multiple of 512 and shall be less than or equal to 32256. The number of symbols transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state shall be equal to the number of symbols transmitted by the ATU-R in the R-MEDLEY state.

A C-MEDLEY symbol shall be defined depending on its symbolcount within the C-MEDLEY state. The first symbol transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state shall have symbolcount equal to zero. For each symbol transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state, the symbolcount shall be incremented.

The data pattern modulated onto each C-MEDLEY symbol shall be taken from the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) defined by:

$$d_n = 1 \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } 9 \text{ and}$$

$$d_n = d_{n-4} \oplus d_{n-9} \text{ for } n > 9.$$

The C-MEDLEY symbol with symbol count $i$ shall modulate the 512 bits $d_{512\times i+1}$ to $d_{512\times(i+1)}$.

Bits shall be extracted from the PRBS in pairs. For each symbol transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state, 256 pairs (512 bits) shall be extracted from the PRBS generator. The first extracted pair shall be modulated onto subcarrier 0 (so the bits are effectively ignored). The subsequent pairs are used to define the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ components for the subcarriers $i = 1$ to $NSCds - 1$, as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols. For the subcarriers $i = NSCds$ to $2 \times NSCds - 1$, the $X_i = Y_i = 0$.

NOTE – 256 bit pairs per symbol are extracted from the PRBS. If *NSCds* is less than 256 (as in G.992.4), then the last (256 – *NSCds*) bit pairs are effectively ignored.

While the ATU-C is in the C-MEDLEY state, the ATU-C and ATU-R may perform further training and SNR estimation.

The C-MEDLEY state shall be followed by the C-EXCHMARKER state.

#### 8.13.5.1.5 C-EXCHMARKER

The C-EXCHMARKER state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-REVERB symbols or 64 C-SEGUE symbols. If the initialization contains a G.994.1 Phase, the ATU-C shall transmit C-REVERB symbols. If the initialization does not contain a G.994.1 Phase, the ATU-C may transmit C-SEGUE symbols.

By transmitting C-REVERB symbols, the ATU-C indicates that the states C-REVERB6, C-SEGUE3 and C-PARAMS will be included. By transmitting C-SEGUE symbols, the ATU-C indicates that the states C-REVERB6, C-SEGUE3 and C-PARAMS will be skipped.

In case the C-PARAMS message is skipped during the Initialization Exchange Phase, the last previous L0 state trellis setting, bits and gains table (possibly updated through on-line reconfiguration since the last previous C-PARAMS message exchange) and tone ordering table (see Tables 8-14 and 8-15) shall be used to enter the Showtime state (see 8.14).

The C-EXCHMARKER state shall be followed by the C-MSG2 state.

### 8.13.5.2 ATU-R channel analysis

In the Channel Analysis Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDus*) level including spectral shaping. The subcarriers with spectral shaping $tss_i$ value less than 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

Starting from the Channel Analysis Phase (and continuing in the Exchange Phase and in Showtime), the ATU-R shall transmit the cyclic prefix, as defined in 8.8.3.

#### 8.13.5.2.1 R-REVERB5

The R-REVERB5 state is of variable length. In the R-REVERB5 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 10 and a maximum (192 + *LEN_C-MSG1*) R-REVERB symbols. The R-REVERB5 state shall be the first state in which the ATU-R transmits the cyclic prefix.

During this state the ATU-R shall decode the information contained in the C-MSG1 state.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB5 state. Within 128 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB5 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-REVERB5 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE2 state.

#### 8.13.5.2.2 R-SEGUE2

The R-SEGUE2 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit 10 R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase inverted R-REVERB symbol.

The R-SEGUE2 state shall be followed by the R-MSG1 state.

#### 8.13.5.2.3 R-MSGS1

The R-MSG1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-MSG1* R-REVERB or R-SEGUE symbols to modulate the R-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC.

The R-MSG1 prefix, $p$, is defined by:

$$p = \{p31, \dots, p0\} = \{\ 01010101\ 01010101\ 01010101\ 01010101\ \}$$

The 32 bits $p_0$ to $p_{31}$ shall be transmitted in 32 symbol periods ($p_0$ first and $p_{31}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as an R-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as an R-SEGUE symbol.

The value *LEN_R-MSG*1 shall be defined as the length of the R-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC in bits. The length of the R-MSG1 message depends on selections made during the G.994.1 Phase (i.e., the Annex and TPS-TC type). Table 8-38 lists the possible lengths of the R-MSG1 message summed over TPC-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

**Table 8-38/G.992.3 – R-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC length**

| Part of message | Length (bits or symbols) |
|---|---|
| Prefix | 32 |
| Npmd | 32 |
| Npms | 0 |
| Ntps | 0 |
| Nmsg | 32 |
| CRC | 16 |
| LEN_R-MSG1 (symbols) | 80 |

The R-MSG1 message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{\mathrm{tps}_{Ntps-1}, \dots, \mathrm{tps}_0, \mathrm{pms}_{Npms-1}, \dots, \mathrm{pms}_0, \mathrm{pmd}_{Npmd-1}, \dots, \mathrm{pmd}_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg-1}, \dots, m_0\}$$

The R-MSG1 message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $\mathrm{tps}_{Ntps-1}$ to $\mathrm{tps}_0$ and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $\mathrm{pms}_{Npms-1}$ to $\mathrm{pms}_0$ and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits $\mathrm{pmd}_{Npmd-1}$ to $\mathrm{pmd}_0$ and are defined in clause 8.

The Nmsg bits $m_0$-$m_{Nmsg-1}$ shall be transmitted in Nmsg symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{Nmsg-1}$ last), immediately following the prefix, and using the same modulation as used to transmit the prefix $p$.

After the R-MSG1 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the Nmsg message $m$ bits (thus not including the prefix) in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-PCB message.

The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message $m$.

The R-MSG1 state shall be followed by the R-MEDLEY state.

#### 8.13.5.2.4 R-MEDLEY

The R-MEDLEY state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_MEDLEY* symbols. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be the maximum of the CA-MEDLEYus and CA-MEDLEYds values indicated by the ATU-C and the ATU-R in the C-MSG1 and R-MSG1 messages respectively. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be a multiple of 512 and shall be less than or

equal to 32256. The number of symbols transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state shall be equal to the number of symbols transmitted by the ATU-C in the C-MEDLEY state.

An R-MEDLEY symbol shall be defined depending on its symbol count within the R-MEDLEY state. The first symbol transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state shall have symbol count equal to zero. For each symbol transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state, the symbol count shall be incremented.

The data pattern modulated onto each R-MEDLEY symbol shall be taken from the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) defined by:

$$d_n = 1 \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } 23 \text{ and}$$
$$d_n = d_{n-18} \oplus d_{n-23} \text{ for } n > 23.$$

The R-MEDLEY symbol with symbol count $i$ shall modulate the bits $d_{2\times NSCus\times i+1}$ to $d_{2\times NSCus\times(i+1)}$. The value of *NSC* (the number of upstream subcarriers) is defined in the annexes.

Bits shall be extracted from the PRBS in pairs. For each symbol transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state, *NSCus* pairs ($2 \times NSCus$ bits) shall be extracted from the PRBS generator. The first extracted pair shall be modulated onto subcarrier 0 (so the bits are effectively ignored). The subsequent pairs are used to define the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ components for the subcarriers $i = 1$ to $NSCus - 1$, as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols. For the subcarriers $i = NSCus$ to $2 \times NSCus - 1$, $X_i = 0$ and $Y_i = 0$.

While the ATU-R is in the R-MEDLEY state, the ATU-C and ATU-R may perform further training and SNR estimation.

The R-MEDLEY state shall be followed by the R-EXCHMARKER state.

#### 8.13.5.2.5 R-EXCHMARKER

The R-EXCHMARKER state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-REVERB symbols or 64 R-SEGUE symbols. If the initialization contains a G.994.1 Phase, the ATU-R shall transmit C-REVERB symbols. If the initialization does not contain a G.994.1 Phase, the ATU-R may transmit R-SEGUE symbols.

By transmitting R-REVERB symbols, the ATU-R indicates that the states R-REVERB6, R-SEGUE3 and R-PARAMS will be included. By transmitting R-SEGUE symbols, the ATU-R indicates that the states R-REVERB6, R-SEGUE3 and R-PARAMS will be skipped.

In case the R-PARAMS message is skipped during the Initialization Exchange Phase, the last previous L0 state trellis setting, bits and gains table (possibly updated through on-line reconfiguration since the last previous R-PARAMS message exchange) and tone ordering table (see Tables 8-14 and 8-15) shall be used to enter the Showtime state (see 8.14).

The R-EXCHMARKER state shall be followed by the R-MSG2 state.

### 8.13.6 Exchange phase

#### 8.13.6.1 ATU-C exchange

In the Exchange Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier *BLACKOUT*. The subcarriers with spectral shaping $tss_i$ value less than 1 or downstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

#### 8.13.6.1.1 C-MSG2

The C-MSG2 state is of fixed length. In the C-MSG2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit ($NSCus + 16$) C-REVERB or C-SEGUE symbols to modulate the C-MSG2 message and CRC.

The C-MSG2 message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{NSCus-1}, \dots, m_0\}$$

The bit $m_i$ shall be set to 1 to indicate that the ATU-R shall use subcarrier index $i$ to modulate the R-PARAMS message. The bit $m_i$ shall be set to 0 to indicate that the ATU-R shall not use subcarrier index $i$ to modulate the R-PARAM message. At least 4 subcarriers shall be used for modulation of the R-PARAMS message. The R-PARAM message will be transmitted at about 8 kbit/s times the number of subcarriers used for modulation of the message.

The bits $m_0$-$m_{NSCus-1}$ shall be transmitted in *NSC* symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{NSCus-1}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as a C-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as a C-SEGUE symbol.

After the C-MSG2 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the *NSCus* message *m* bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message *m*.

If the ATU-C has transmitted C-REVERB symbols during the C-EXCHMARKER state, the C-MSG2 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB6 state. If the ATU-C has transmitted C-SEGUE symbols during the C-EXCHMARKER state, the C-MSG2 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB7 state.

#### 8.13.6.1.2 C-REVERB6

The C-REVERB6 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of (246 – *NSCus*) and a maximum of (2246 – *NSCus*) C-REVERB symbols.

This state is a filler state to allow the ATU-C to receive (and decode) the complete R-MSG2 message.

If the ATU-R has transmitted R-REVERB symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB6 state. Within 80 to 2000 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB6 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

If the ATU-R has transmitted R-SEGUE symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB7 state. Within 80 to 2000 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB7 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-REVERB6 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE3 state.

#### 8.13.6.1.3 C-SEGUE3

The C-SEGUE3 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit 10 C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase inverted C-REVERB symbol.

The C-SEGUE3 state shall be followed by the C-PARAMS state.

#### 8.13.6.1.4 C-PARAMS

The C-PARAMS state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-PARAMS* C-PARAMS symbols to modulate the C-PARAMS message and CRC at (2 × *NSC_C-PARAMS*) bits per symbol. The value *NSC_C-PARAMS* shall be defined as the number of subcarriers to be used for modulation of the C-PARAMS message as indicated by the ATU-R in the R-MSG2 message. The value *LEN_C-PARAMS* shall be defined as (length of the C-PARAMS message and

CRC in bits) divided by (2 × *NSC_C-PARAMS*) and rounded to the higher integer.

Table 8-39 lists the length of the C-PARAM message summed over TPC-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

**Table 8-39/G.992.3 – C-PARAMS message and CRC length**

| Part of message | Length (bits or symbols) |
|---|---|
| Npmd | $96 + 24 \times NSCus$ |
| Npms | 224 |
| Ntps | 0 |
| Nmsg | $320 + 24 \times NSCus$ |
| CRC | 16 |
| *LEN_C-PARAMS* (state length in symbols) | $\left\lceil \frac{336 + 24 \times NSCus}{2 \times NSC\_C\text{-}PARAMS} \right\rceil$ |
| NOTE – $\lceil x \rceil$ denotes rounding to the higher integer. | |

The C-PARAMS message, *m*, is defined by:

$$m = \{tps_{Ntps-1}, \dots, tps_0, pms_{Npms-1}, \dots, pms_0, pmd_{Npmd-1}, \dots, pmd_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg-1}, \dots, m_0\}$$

The C-PARAMS message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $tps_{Ntps-1}$ to $tps_0$ and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $pms_{Npms-1}$ to $pms_0$ and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits $pmd_{Npmd-1}$ to $pmd_0$ and are defined in clause 8.

PMS-TC parameters include the framer configuration parameters. PMD parameters include the bits and gains table for the upstream subcarriers.

A CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the Nmsg message *m* bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

If the number of message and CRC bits to be transmitted is not an integer multiple of the number of bits per symbol (i.e., not a multiple of 2 × *NSC_C-PARAM*), then the message and CRC bits shall be further padded with zero bits such that the overall number of bits to be transmitted is equal to (2 × *NSC_C-PARAM* × *LEN_C-PARAM*).

The C-PARAMS message bits (along with the CRC bits and the padding bits) shall be scrambled using the following equation:

$$d'_n = d_n \oplus d'_{n-18} \oplus d'_{n-23}$$

where $d_n$ is the *n*-th input to the scrambler (first input is $d_1$);

and $d'_n$ is the *n*-th output from the scrambler (first output is $d'_1$);

and the scrambler is initialized to $d'_n = 1$ for $n < 1$.

The bits to be transmitted shall be input into the scrambler equation least significant bit first ($m_0$ first and $m_{Nmsg-1}$ last, followed by $c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last, followed by padding bits, if present). By construction of the scrambler, the scrambler output bits $d'_n$ to $d'_{18}$ are equal to $m_0$ to $m_{17}$ respectively.

The output of the scrambler shall be transmitted at (2 × *NSC_C-PARAM*) bits per C-PARAMS symbol (the first bit output of the scrambler is transmitted first, and so on). Bit pairs shall be mapped onto subcarriers in ascending order of subcarrier index and using the same 4-QAM

modulation as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols.

The C-PARAMS symbol shall contain only the *NSC_C-PARAM* subcarriers (carrying the message bits) and the C-TREF pilot tone. The other subcarriers shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The C-TREF pilot may be part of the set of *NSC-PARAMS* subcarriers (carrying the message bits). In this case, the C-TREF pilot shall be modulated with message bits. Otherwise, it shall be modulated with the fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point.

The C-PARAMS state shall be followed by the C-REVERB7 state.

#### 8.13.6.1.5 C-REVERB7

The C-REVERB7 state is of variable length.

The ATU-C may transition to C-REVERB7 before or after the ATU-R transitions to R-REVERB7 (depending on the presence and length of the PARAMS and REVERB6 states).

If the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state before the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state. The ATU-C shall transition to the next state within 128 to 2048 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB7 state.

If the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state after the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 128 and a maximum of 2048 C-REVERB symbols in the C-REVERB7 state.

The C-REVERB7 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE4 state. The transition from the C-REVERB7 state to the C-SEGUE4 state provides a time marker for the transition to the C-SHOWTIME state.

#### 8.13.6.1.6 C-SEGUE4

The C-SEGUE4 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit 10 C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE4 state shall be followed by the C-SHOWTIME state.

### 8.13.6.2 ATU-R exchange

In the Exchange Phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with $X_i$ and $Y_i$ nonzero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDus*) level including spectral shaping. The subcarriers with spectral shaping $tss_i$ value less than 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the $X_i$ and $Y_i$ defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

#### 8.13.6.2.1 R-MSGS2

The R-MSG2 state is of fixed length. In the R-MSG2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 272 R-REVERB or R-SEGUE symbols to modulate the R-MSG2 message and CRC.

The R-MSG2 message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{225}, \dots , m_0\}$$

The bit $m_i$ shall be set to 1 to indicate that the ATU-C shall use subcarrier index $i$ to modulate the C-PARAMS message. The bit $m_i$ shall be set to 0 to indicate that the ATU-C shall not use subcarrier index $i$ to modulate the C-PARAMS message. At least 4 subcarriers shall be used for modulation of the C-PARAMS message. The C-PARAM message will be transmitted at about 8 kbit/s times the number of subcarriers used for modulation of the message.

NOTE – The R-MSG2 message length is 256 bits (1 bit per subcarrier). If *NSCds* is less than 256 (as in G.992.4), then the last (256 – *NSCds*) bits m255 to *mNSCds* are set to 0.

If the ATU-R has set the R-MSG-FMT message bit FMT-C-PILOT to 1, then the ATU-C modulates the C-TREF pilot tone with a fixed constellation point. In this case, the ATU-R shall not use the C-TREF pilot tone for modulation of the C-PARAMS message.

The bits $m_0$-$m_{255}$ shall be transmitted in 256 symbol periods ($m_0$ first and $m_{255}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as an R-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as an R-SEGUE symbol.

After the R-MSG2 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the 256 message $m$ bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-PCB message.

The 16 bits $c_0$-$c_{15}$ shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods ($c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message $m$.

If the ATU-R has transmitted R-REVERB symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the R-MSG2 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB6 state. If the ATU-R has transmitted R-SEGUE symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the R-MSG2 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB7 state.

#### 8.13.6.2.2 R-REVERB6

The R-REVERB6 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 80 and a maximum of 2000 R-REVERB symbols.

This state is a filler state to allow the ATU-R to receive (and decode) the complete C-MSG2 message.

The R-REVERB6 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE3 state.

#### 8.13.6.2.3 R-SEGUE3

The R-SEGUE3 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit 10 R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase inverted R-REVERB symbol.

The R-SEGUE3 state shall be followed by the R-PARAMS state.

#### 8.13.6.2.4 R-PARAMS

The R-PARAMS state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-PARAMS* symbols to modulate the R-PARAMS message and CRC at (2 × *NSC_R-PARAMS*) bits per symbol.

The value *NSC_R-PARAMS* shall be defined as the number of subcarriers to be used for modulation of the R-PARAMS message as indicated by the ATU-C in the C-MSG2 message. The value *LEN_R-PARAMS* shall be defined as (length of the R-PARAMS message and CRC in bits) divided by (2 × *NSC_R-PARAMS*) and rounded to the higher integer.

Table 8-40 lists the length of the R-PARAM message summed over TPC-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

**Table 8-40/G.992.3 – R-PARAMS message and CRC length**

| Part of message | Length in bits |
|---|---|
| Npmd | $96 + 24 \times NSCds$ |
| Npms | 224 |
| Ntps | 0 |
| Nmsg | $320 + 24 \times NSCds$ |
| CRC | 16 |
| *LEN_R-PARAMS* (state length in symbols) | $\left\lceil \frac{336 + 24 \times NSCds}{2 \times NSC\_R\text{-}PARAMS} \right\rceil$ |
| NOTE – $\lceil x \rceil$ denotes rounding to the higher integer. | |

The R-PARAMS message, $m$, is defined by:

$$m = \{\text{tps}_{Ntps-1}, \ldots, \text{tps}_0, \text{pms}_{Npms-1}, \ldots, \text{pms}_0, \text{pmd}_{Npmd-1}, \ldots, \text{pmd}_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

The R-PARAMS message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $\text{tps}_{Ntps-1}$ to $\text{tps}_0$ and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits $\text{pms}_{Npms-1}$ to $\text{pms}_0$ and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits $\text{pmd}_{Npmd-1}$ to $\text{pmd}_0$ and are defined in clause 8.

PMS-TC parameters include the framer configuration parameters. PMD parameters include the bits and gains table for the downstream subcarriers.

A CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the Nmsg message $m$ bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

If the number of message and CRC bits to be transmitted is not an integer multiple of the number of bits per symbol (i.e., not a multiple of $2 \times NSC\_R\text{-}PARAM$), then the message and CRC bits shall be further padded with zero bits such that the overall number of bits to be transmitted is equal to $(2 \times NSC\_R\text{-}PARAM \times LEN\_R\text{-}PARAM)$.

The R-PARAMS message bits (along with the CRC bits and the padding bits) shall be scrambled in the same way as defined for the C-PARAMS message. The bits to be transmitted shall be input into the scrambler equation least significant bit first ($m_0$ first and $m_{Nmsg-1}$ last, followed by $c_0$ first and $c_{15}$ last, followed by padding bits, if present).

The output of the scrambler shall be transmitted at $(2 \times NSC\_R\text{-}PARAM)$ bits per R-PARAMS symbol (the first bit output of the scrambler is transmitted first, and so on). Bit pairs shall be mapped onto subcarriers in ascending order of subcarrier index and using the same 4-QAM modulation as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols.

The R-PARAMS symbol shall contain only the *NSC_R-PARAM* subcarriers (carrying the message bits). The other subcarriers shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The R-PARAMS state shall be followed by the R-REVERB7 state.

### 8.13.6.2.5 R-REVERB7

The R-REVERB7 state is of variable length.

The ATU-R may transition to R-REVERB7 before or after the ATU-C transitions to C-REVERB7 (depending on the presence and length of the PARAMS and REVERB6 states).

If the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state before the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state. The ATU-R shall transition to the next state within 128 to 2048 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB7 state.

If the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state after the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 128 and a maximum of 2048 R-REVERB symbols in the R-REVERB7 state.

The R-REVERB7 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE4 state. The transition from the R-REVERB7 state to the R-SEGUE4 state provides a time marker for the transition to the R-SHOWTIME state.

#### 8.13.6.2.6 R-SEGUE4

The R-SEGUE4 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit 10 R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE4 state shall be followed by the C-SHOWTIME state.

### 8.13.7 Timing diagram of the initialization procedures

The Figure 8-26 show the timing diagram of the first part of the Initialization Procedures, from the G.994.1 phase up to the start of the Channel Analysis phase. The Figures 8-27 to 8-30 show the second part of the Initialization procedures, from the end of the Channel Analysis Phase up to Showtime. These four timing diagrams represent the four cases resulting from whether the C-PARAMS and/or R-PARAMS states are included or not.

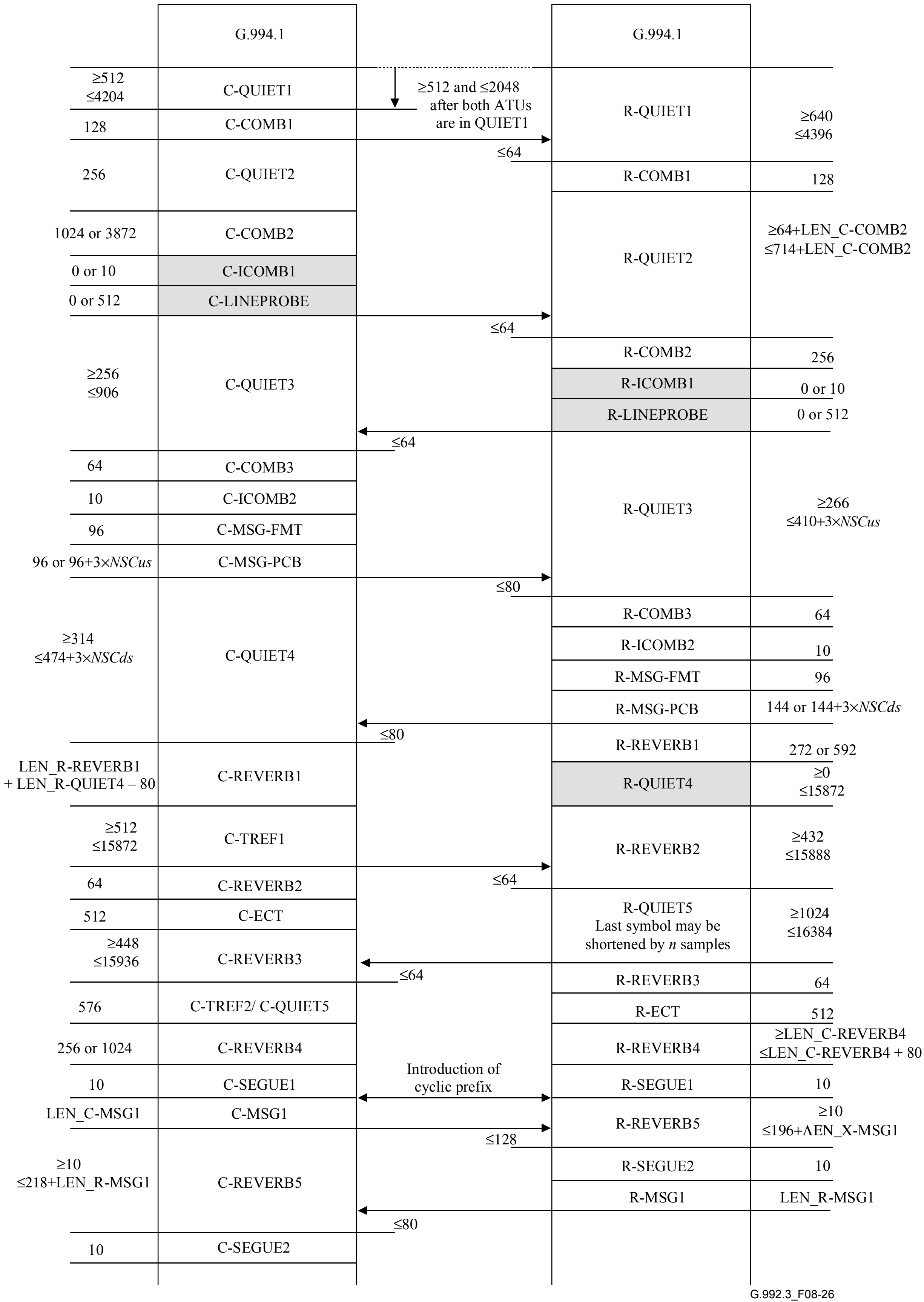



**Figure 8-26/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 1)**

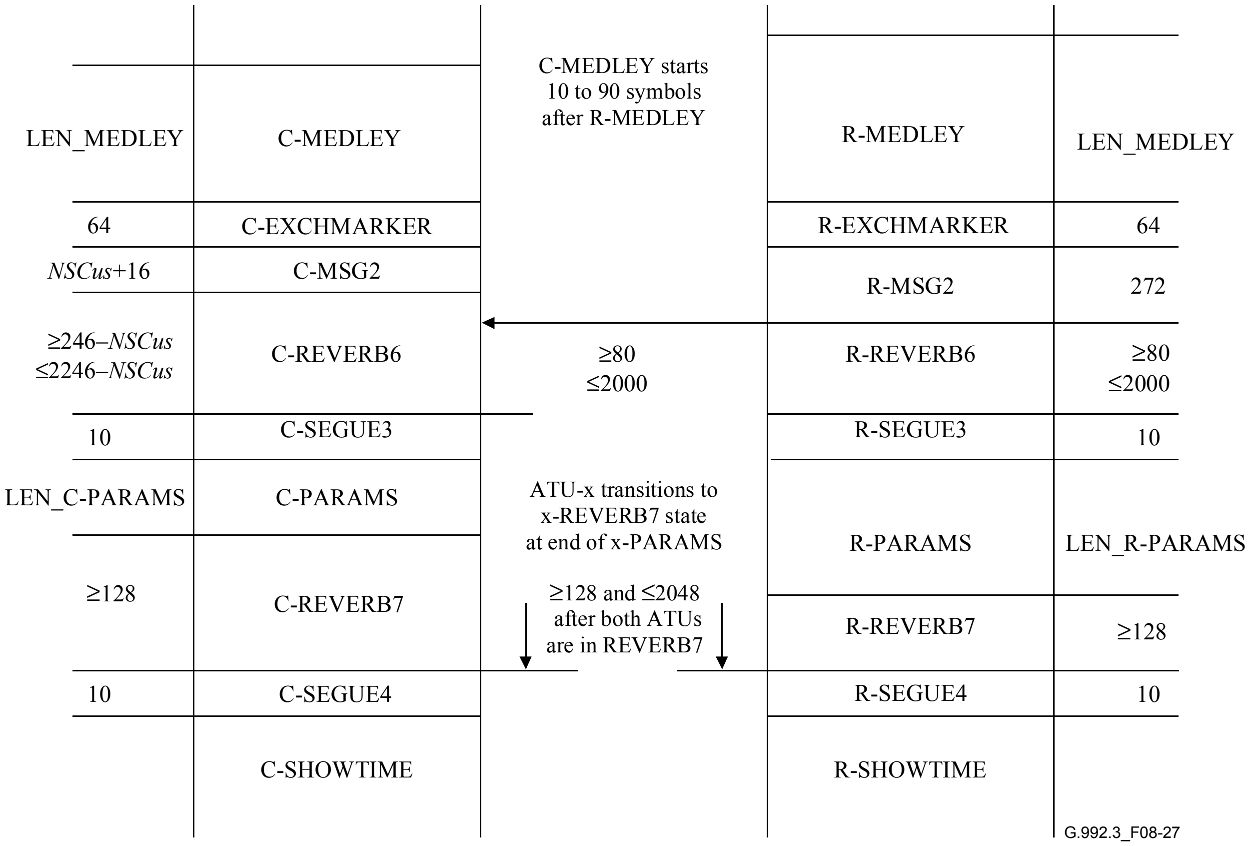



**Figure 8-27/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) with C-PARAMS and with R-PARAMS states**

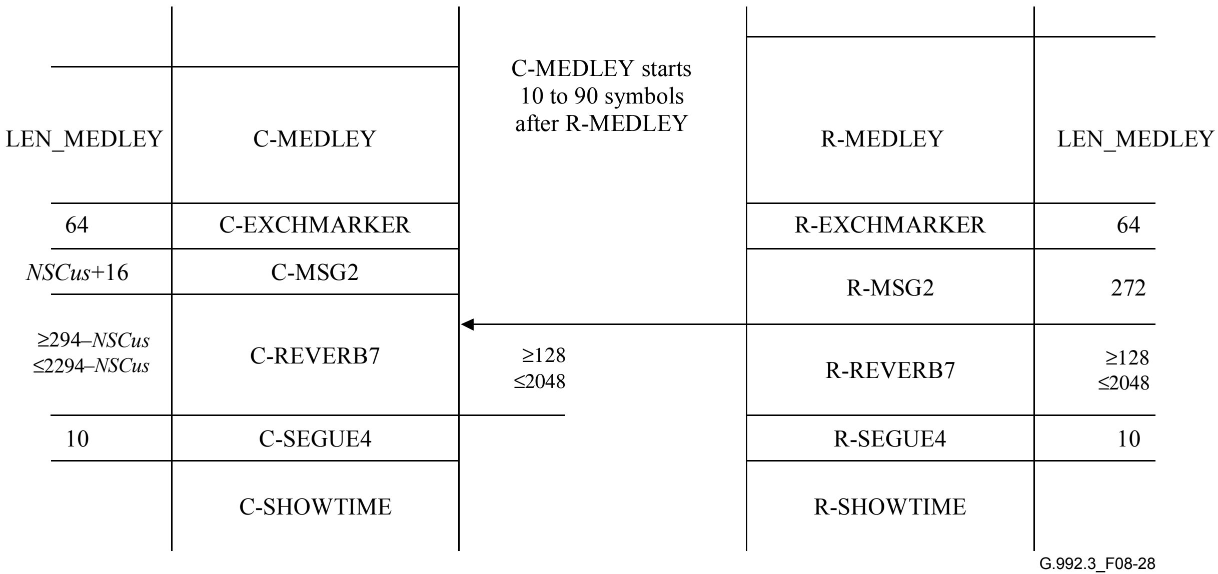



**Figure 8-28/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) without C-PARAMS and without R-PARAMS states**

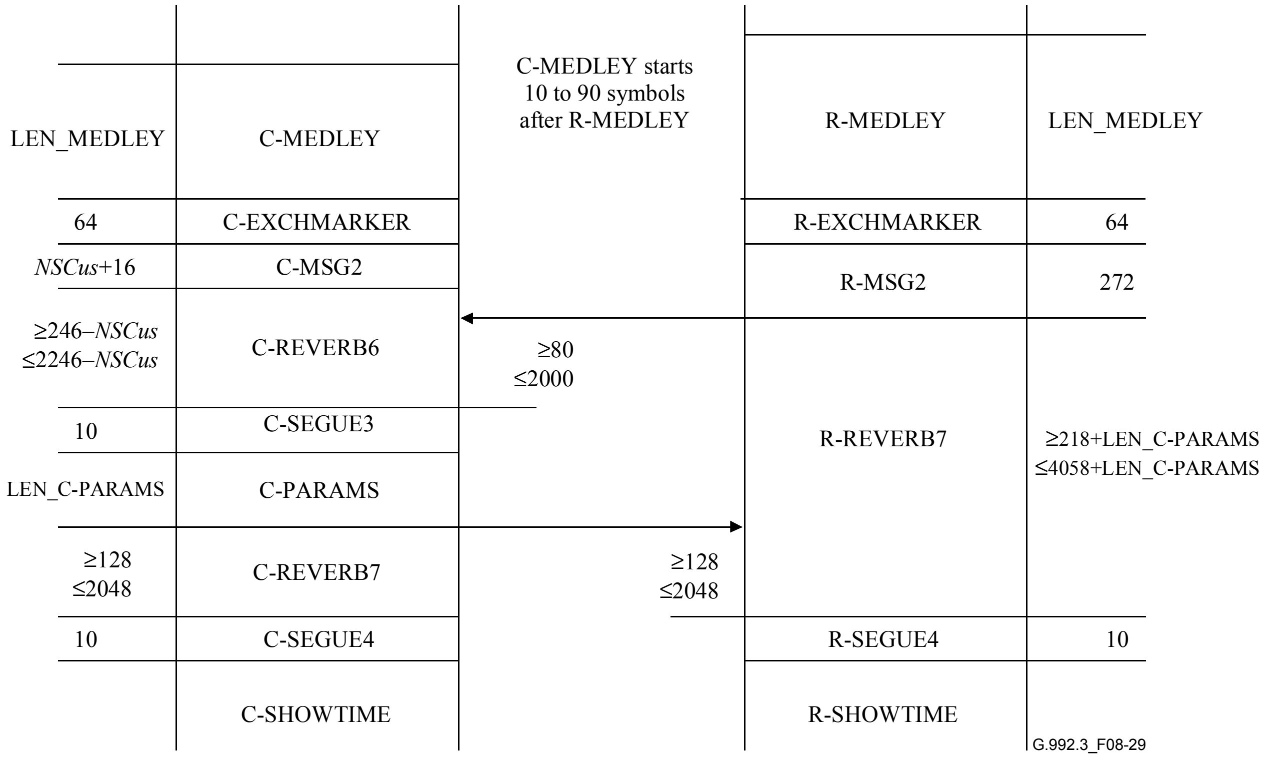



**Figure 8-29/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) with C-PARAMS and without R-PARAMS states**

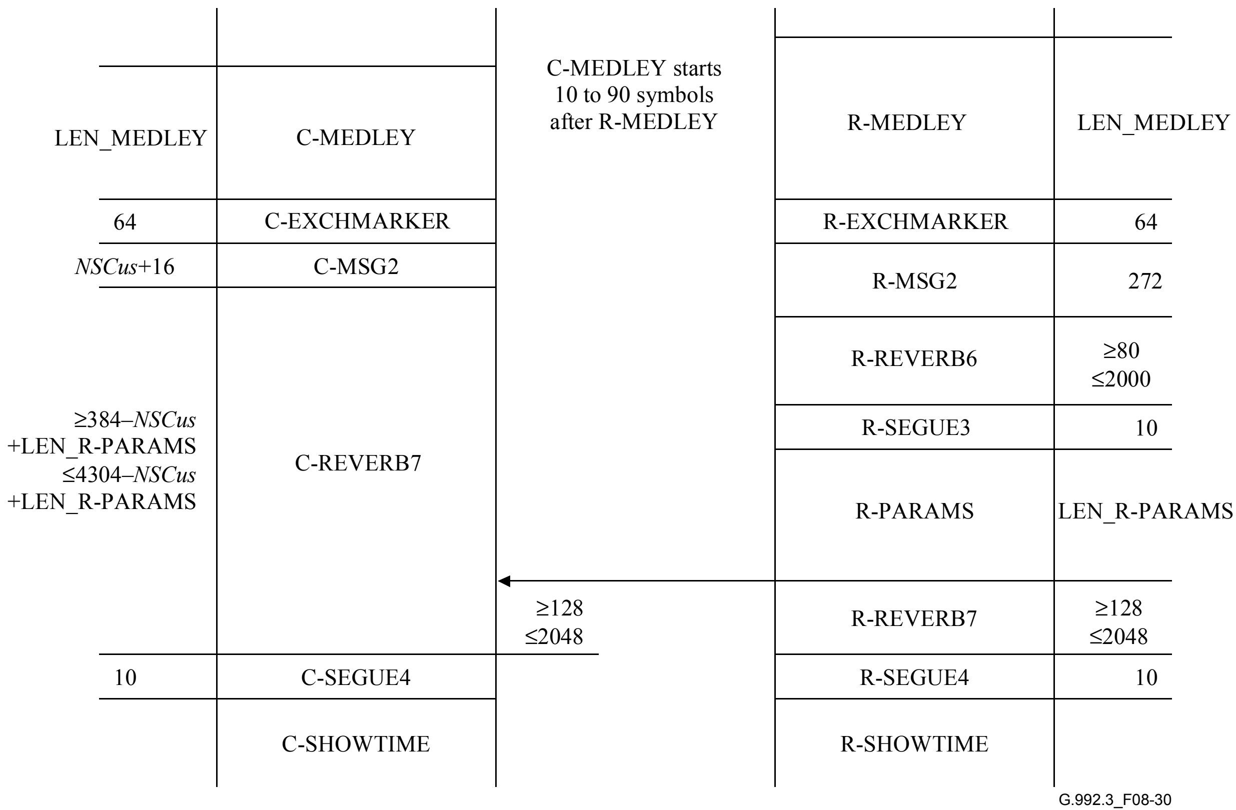



**Figure 8-30/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) without C-PARAMS and with R-PARAMS states**

### 8.14 Short initialization procedures

A short initialization sequence is defined to allow the ATUs to quickly enter Showtime from a L3 power management state or as a fast recovery procedure from changing of line conditions during Showtime. The Short Initialization Sequence shall be optional for both ATU-C and ATU-R (with indication in G.994.1, see 8.13.2). If the Short Initialization Sequence is supported, the ATU should also support unbalanced bitswap (i.e., type 3 On-Line Reconfiguration with restriction to change $b_i$, $g_i$ and $L_p$ only, see 9.4.1.1).

The state diagram of the short sequence shall be the same as the one shown in Figure 8-26 to Figure 8-30, with the exception of the entry procedures which shall be as depicted in Figures 8-31 and 8-32. Figure 8-31 shows the entry procedure for an ATU-C initiated short initialization. The ATU-C shall keep transmitting 128 symbols of C-COMB1 followed by 256 symbols of silence (C-QUIET2) until either the ATU-R responds with R-COMB1 during one of the C-QUIET2 states or a vendor discretionary timeout C-T1 is reached. If the short initialization is used as a fast recovery procedure from showtime, the ATU-R should reply to the first transmission of the C-COMB initialization signal.

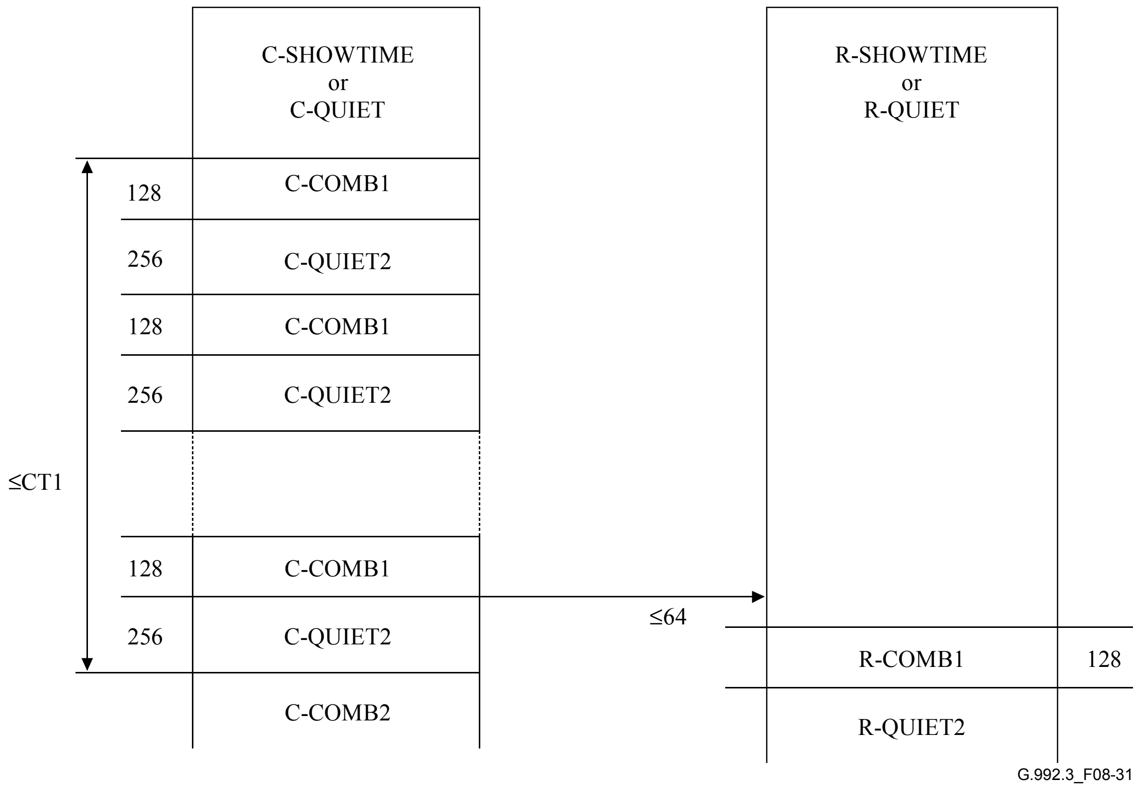



**Figure 8-31/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the entry into the short initialization procedure, ATU-C initiated**

Figure 8-32 shows the entry procedure for an ATU-R initiated short initialization. The ATU-R shall keep transmitting 128 symbols of R-COMB1 followed by 256 symbols of silence (R-QUIET2) until either the ATU-C responds with C-COMB2 during one of the R-QUIET2 states or a vendor discretionary timeout R-T1 is reached. If the short initialization is used as a fast recovery procedure from showtime, the ATU-C should reply to the first transmission of the R-COMB initialization signal.

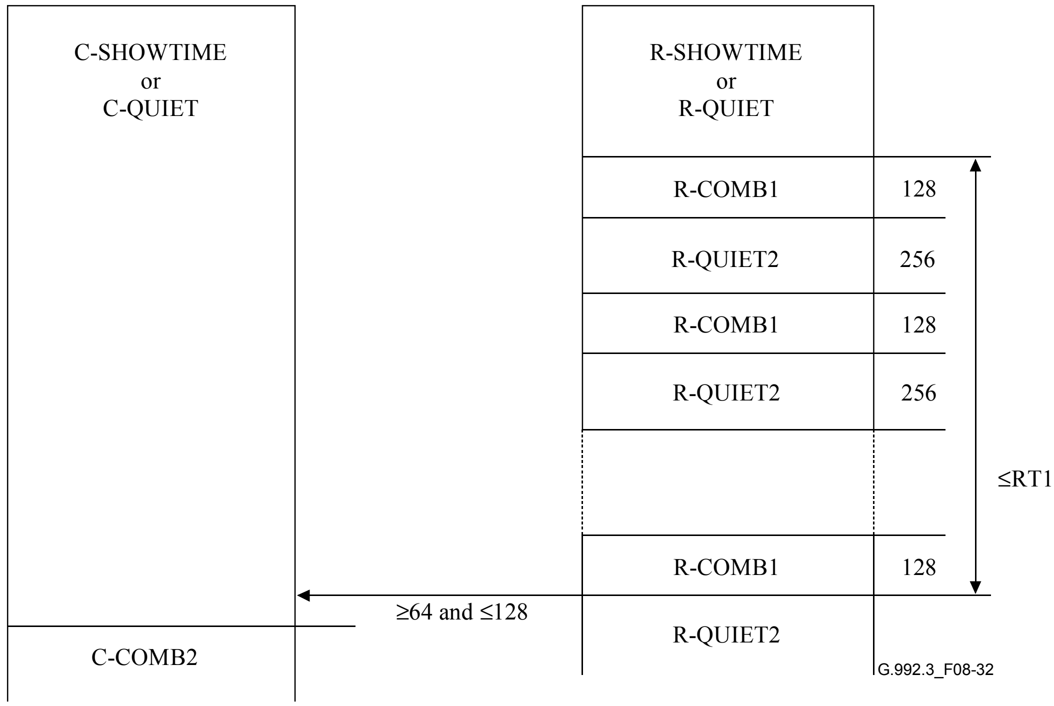



**Figure 8-32/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the entry into the short initialization procedure, ATU-R initiated**

The short initialization procedure may be used for the link state transition from the L3 state to the L0 state (see 9.5.3). Fast error recovery (during the L0 or L2 link state) is through the short initialization procedure. At the start of the short initialization procedure, the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state. When the ATU reaches the Showtime state through the short initialization procedure, the ADSL link shall be in the L0 state (see Figure 9-5).

The short initialization procedure should be completed within 3 s. However, to meet this requirement, proper time budget balancing between ATU-C and ATU-R is required. Table 8-41 lists recommended time budgets for the variable portions of each ATU initialization sequence. The Figures 8-33 and 8-34 show the recommended timing diagram for the short initialization procedure.

**Table 8-41/G.992.3 – Recommended duration for variable portions of the initialization sequence**

| ATU state | Recommended duration (symbols) | Note |
|---|---|---|
| C-MSG-PCB | = 96 | No C-BLACKOUT bits included<br>(last previous exchanged BLACKOUT bits remain valid). |
| R-MSG-PCB | = 144 | No R-BLACKOUT bits included<br>(last previous exchanged BLACKOUT bits remain valid). |
| R-REVERB1 | = 272 | |
| R-QUIET4 | = 0 | ATU-C hybrid fine tuning state is skipped. |
| C-TREF1 | ≤ 1024 | Faster upstream channel estimation, less precise timing and no ATU-R hybrid fine tuning. |
| R-QUIET5 | = 1024 | |
| C-REVERB3 | = 512 ± 64 | Faster downstream channel estimation and equalizer training. |
| C-REVERB4 | = 256 | |
| C-MEDLEY | ≤ 1024 | Less accurate SNR estimation. |
| R-MEDLEY | ≤ 1024 | Less accurate SNR estimation. |
| C-REVERB6 | ≤ 120 | Limit through faster and simpler bit allocation algorithm. |
| R-REVERB6 | ≤ 120 | Limit through faster and simpler bit allocation algorithm. |

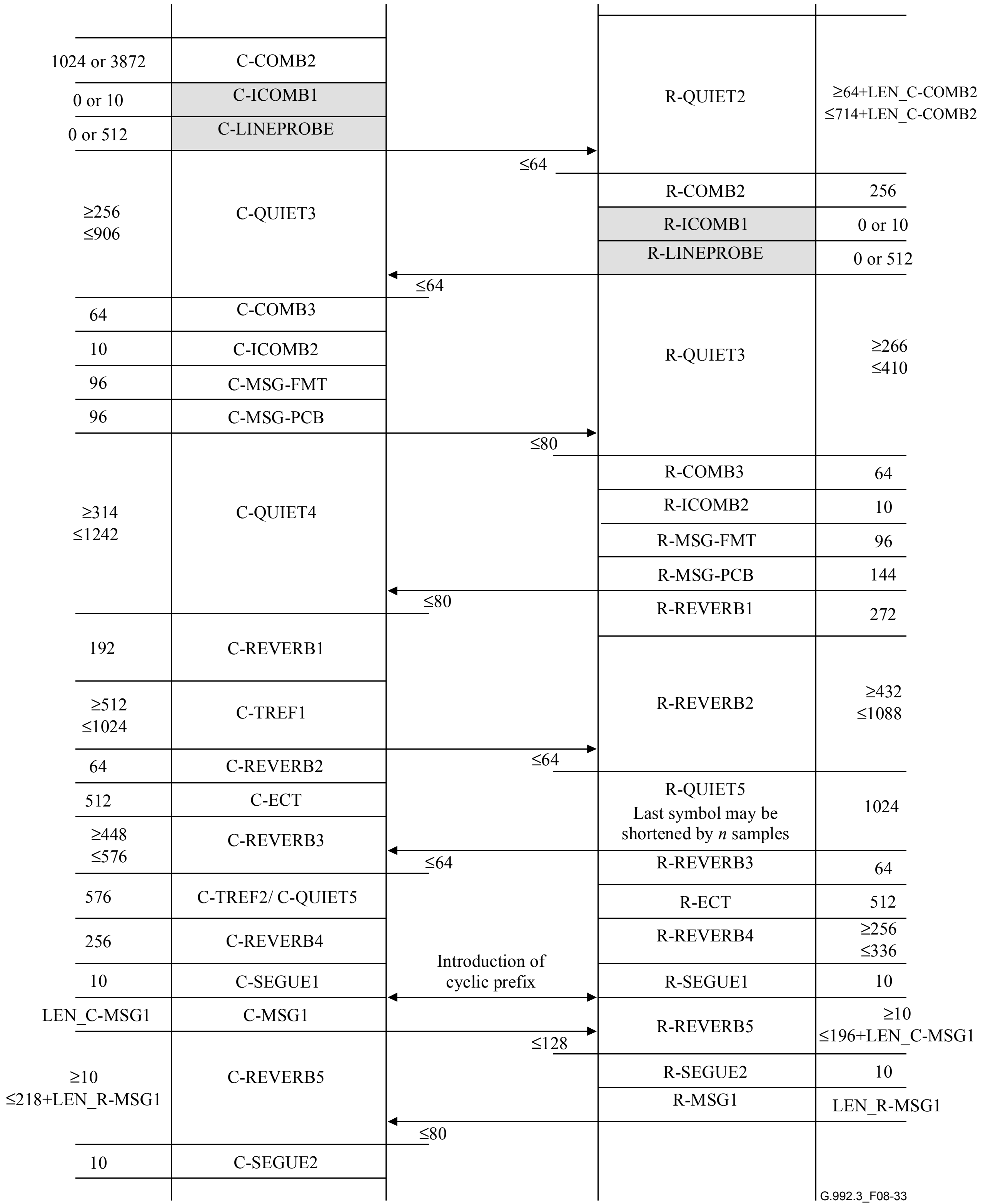



**Figure 8-33/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the short initialization procedure (part 1)**

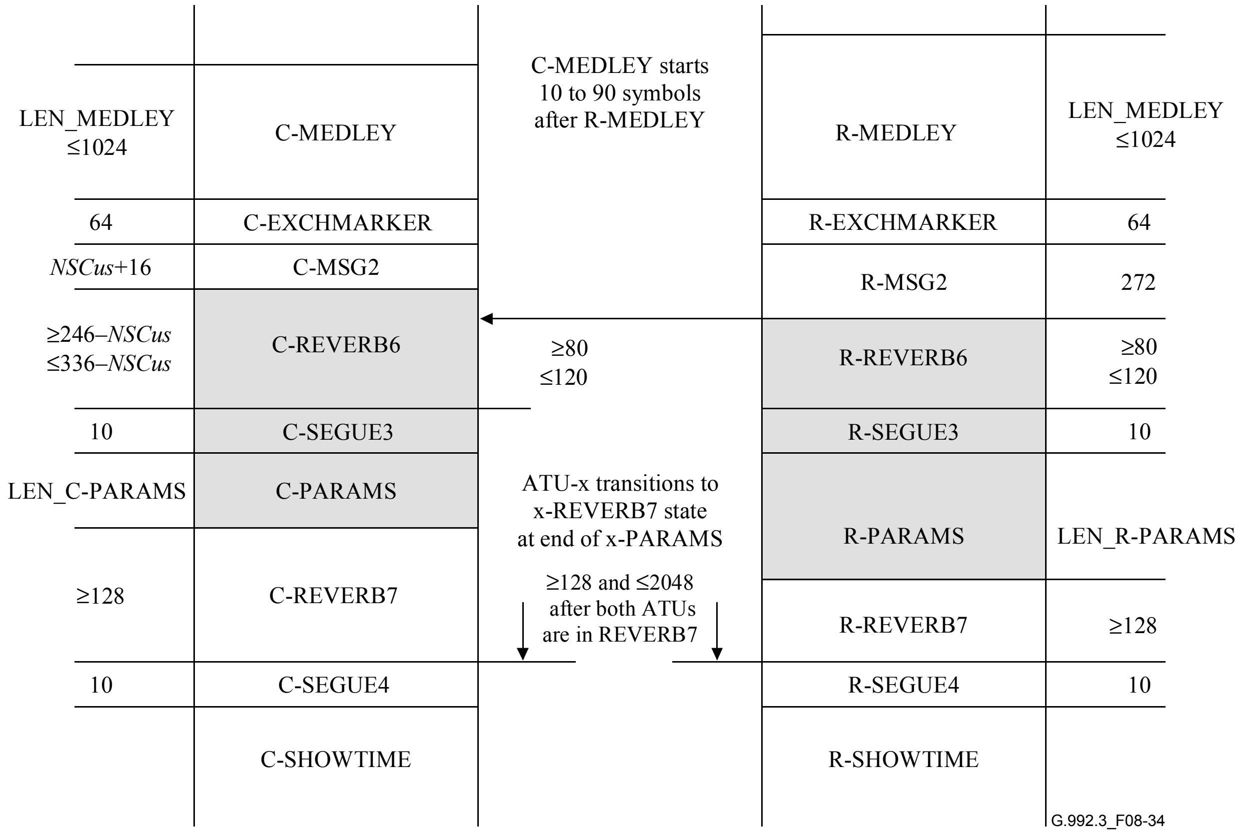



**Figure 8-34/G.992.3 – Timing diagram of the short initialization procedure (part 2)**

## 8.15 Loop diagnostics mode procedures

### 8.15.1 Overview

The built-in loop diagnostic function defined in this clause enables the immediate measurement of line conditions at both ends of the line without dispatching maintenance technicians to attach test equipment to the line. The resulting information helps to isolate the location (inside the premises, near the customer end of the line, or near the network end of the line) and the sources (crosstalk, radio frequency interference, and bridged tap) of impairments.

The Loop Diagnostics Mode (defined in 8.15) shall be entered from the G.994.1 Initialization Phase, when the Loop Diagnostic Mode codepoint in the MS message is set (see 8.13.2). Either ATU may request to enter Loop Diagnostics Mode. Both ATU-C and ATU-R shall support the Loop Diagnostics Mode.

The sequence of states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13), up to the MEDLEY state. Each variable length state of the Initialization sequence shall have fixed duration in Loop Diagnostics Mode, equal to the maximum duration of the state, with the exception of R-QUIET1.

After the C-EXCHMARKER and R-EXCHMARKER states, the ATUs shall enter a Loop Diagnostic Mode specific sequence of states. During these states, some channel information that has been gathered during the previous Initialization states, is exchanged. Specifically, the test parameters listed in Table 8-42 and defined in 8.12.3, are exchanged.

**Table 8-42/G.992.3 – Test parameters exchanged in line diagnostics mode**

| Abbreviation | Name |
|---|---|
| Hlin(i × Δf) | Channel Characteristics per subcarrier, linear |
| Hlog(i × Δf) | Channel Characteristics per subcarrier, log |
| QLN(i × Δf) | Quiet Line Noise per subcarrier |
| SNR(i × Δf) | Signal-to-Noise Ration per subcarrier |
| LATN | Loop Attenuation |
| SATN | Signal Attenuation |
| SNRM | Signal-to-Noise Ratio Margin |
| ATTNDR | Attainable Net Data Rate |
| ACTATP | Actual Aggregate transmit power (far-end) |

The test parameters are mapped into messages using an integer number of octets per parameter value. In case the parameter value as defined in 8.12.3, is represented with a number of bits that is not an integer number of octets, the parameter value shall be mapped into the least significant bits of the message octets. Unused more significant bits shall be set to 0 for unsigned parameter values and shall be set to the sign bit for signed parameter values.

After the exchange of the test parameters listed in Table 8-42, the ATUs shall transition to the L3 state.

### 8.15.2 Channel discovery phase

#### 8.15.2.1 ATU-C channel discovery phase

The sequence of states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.3.1). Each state shall have fixed duration in Loop Diagnostics Mode, as shown in the Loop Diagnostics Mode timing diagram in Figure 8-35.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.3.1).

The states C-ICOMB1, C-LINEPROBE and the C-BLACKOUT bits shall be included during an Initialization in Loop Diagnostic Mode.

The C-MSG-FMT message shall be as defined in Table 8-43.

**Table 8-43/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the C-MSG-FMT message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 15…0 | | Reserved, set to 0 |

The C-MSG-PCB message shall be as defined in Table 8-44.

**Table 8-44/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the C-MSG-PCB message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 5…0 | C-MIN_PCB_DS | See Table 8-27 |
| 11…6 | C-MIN_PCB_US | See Table 8-27 |
| 13…12 | HOOK_STATUS | See Table 8-27 |
| 15…14 | | Reserved, set to 0 |
| *NSCus* + 15….16 | C_BLACKOUT | See Table 8-27 |
| *NSCus* + 23…*NSCus* + 16 | Pass/Fail | Success or Failure Cause indication of last previous initialization |
| *NSCus* + 31…*NSCus* + 24 | Last_TX_State | Last transmitted state of last previous initialization |

The Pass/Fail bits shall contain a Success or Failure Cause indication. The possible indications and their coding shall be as defined in Table 8-45. If the initialization in loop diagnostics mode is immediately following the ATU-C power up, information about the last previous initialization may not be available. In that case, a successful last previous initialization shall be indicated.

**Table 8-45/G.992.3 – Success and failure cause indications**

| Value (higher bit index left) | Definition |
|---|---|
| 1111 1111 | Successful |
| 0001 0001 | Failed – Insufficient Capacity |
| 0010 0010 | Failed – CRC error in one of the received messages |
| 0100 0100 | Failed – Time out exceeded |
| 1000 1000 | Failed – Unexpected received message content |
| 0000 0000 | Failed – Cause unknown |
| Other | Reserved |

The Last_TX_State bits shall contain the index of the last ATU-C state that was successfully transmitted during the last previous initialization. The index of the ATU-C state shall be represented by an 8-bit integer value from 0 (G.994.1 phase) and 1 (C-QUIET1) to 31 (C-SEGUE4) and 32 (C-SHOWTIME). The states shall be numbered in the order transmitted in time, as shown in the timing diagrams in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. The states that can be optionally omitted shall also be counted when calculating the index of a state. For example, the index of C-QUIET3 shall always be 7 regardless of whether the C-ICOMB1 and C-LINE-PROBE states are included or not. In case the first octet of C-MSG-PCB indicates a successful initialization, this second octet shall encode the index of the last state, i.e., the index of C-SHOWTIME.

An addition of a CRC and the bit transmission order for the C-MSG-FMT and C-MSG-PCB messages shall be as defined for the Initialization sequence in 8.13.3.1. However, the message and CRC bits shall be transmitted with 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive C-COMB symbols, and a one bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive C-ICOMB symbols. This will make the transmission more robust against misdetection of the time marker transitions that precede these messages.

#### 8.15.2.2 ATU-R channel discovery phase

The sequence of states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.3.2). Each state shall have fixed duration in Loop Diagnostics Mode, as shown in the Loop Diagnostics Mode timing diagram in Figure 8-35.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.3.2).

The states R-ICOMB1 and R-LINEPROBE states and the R-BLACKOUT bits shall be included during an Initialization in Loop Diagnostic Mode.

The R-MSG-FMT message shall be as defined in Table 8-46.

**Table 8-46/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-FMT message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 7…0 | | Reserved, set to 0 |
| 8 | FMT-C-TREF2 | See Table 8-31 |
| 9 | FMT-C-PILOT | See Table 8-31 |
| 15…10 | | Reserved, set to 0 |

The R-MSG-PCB message shall be as defined in Table 8-47.

**Table 8-47/G.992.3 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-PCB message**

| Bit index | Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 5…0 | R-MIN_PCB_DS | See Table 8-32 |
| 11…6 | R-MIN_PCB_US | See Table 8-32 |
| 13…12 | HOOK_STATUS | See Table 8-32 |
| 15…14 | | Reserved, set to 0 |
| 23…16 | C-PILOT | See Table 8-32 |
| 31…24 | | Reserved, set to 0 |
| 31 + *NSCds*…32 | R-BLACKOUT | See Table 8-32 |
| 287…32 + *NSCds* | | Reserved, set to 0 (see Note) |
| 295…288 | Pass/Fail | Success or Failure Cause indication of last previous initialization |
| 303…296 | Last_TX_State | Last transmitted state of last previous initialization |
| NOTE – These reserved bits are present only if *NSCds* < 256 (as in ITU-T Rec. G.992.4). | | |

The Pass/Fail bits shall contain a Success or Failure Cause indication. The possible indications and their coding shall be as defined for the ATU-C in Table 8-45. If the initialization in loop diagnostics mode is immediately following the ATU-R power up or self test, information about the last previous initialization may not be available. In that case, a successful last previous initialization shall be indicated.

The Last_TX_State bits shall contain the index of the last ATU-R state that was successfully transmitted during the last previous initialization. The index of the ATU-R state shall be represented by an 8-bit integer value from 0 (G.994.1 phase) and 1 (R-QUIET1) to 30 (R-SEGUE4) and 31 (R-SHOWTIME). The states shall be numbered in the order transmitted in time, as shown in the timing diagrams in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. The states that can be optionally omitted shall also be counted when calculating the index of a state. For example, the index of R-QUIET3 shall always be 7 regardless of whether the R-ICOMB1 and R-LINE-PROBE states are included or not. In case the first octet of the C-MSG-PCB message indicates a successful initialization, this second octet shall encode the index of the last state, i.e., the index of R-SHOWTIME.

The addition of a 16 bit CRC and the bit transmission order for the R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PCB messages shall be as defined for the Initialization sequence in 8.13.3.2. However, the bits shall be transmitted with 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive R-COMB symbols, and a one bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive R-ICOMB symbols. This will make the transmission more robust against misdetection of the time marker transitions that precede these messages.

### 8.15.3 Transceiver training phase

The sequence of states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.4). Each state shall have fixed duration in Loop Diagnostics Mode, as shown in the Loop Diagnostics Mode timing diagram in Figure 8-35.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.4).

The ATU-R shall include the R-QUIET4 state.

### 8.15.4 Channel analysis phase

The sequence of states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.5). Each state shall have fixed duration in Loop Diagnostics Mode, as shown in the Loop Diagnostics Mode timing diagram in Figures 8-35 and 8-36.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be the same as for the Initialization sequence (defined in 8.13.5).

The ATU-C shall not transmit the C-MSG1 message.

The ATU-R shall not transmit the R-MSG1 message.

The PMD control parameters exchanged in the MSG1 messages during initialization (see 8.5.1 and 8.5.3.2), shall take the default values defined in Table 8-48, for use during diagnostics mode.

**Table 8-48/G.992.3 – Default values for PMD control parameters**

| PMD Control Parameter | Default value |
|---|---|
| TARSNRM | 6 dB |
| MAXSNRM | infinite |
| EXTGI | *MAXNOMPSD – NOMPSD* |
| BIMAX | 15 |

During the EXCHMARKER state, the ATU shall transmit REVERB symbols.

During the Loop Diagnostic Mode, the symbol counter that was initialized at the start of the R-MEDLEY state is kept counting throughout the remainder of the initialization in Loop Diagnostics Mode. Any state transition after the R-MEDLEY state shall occur at multiples of 64 as per this counter value.

### 8.15.5 Exchange phase

#### 8.15.5.1 ATU-C exchange phase

The sequence of states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be as shown in the Loop Diagnostics Mode timing diagram in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. Every time the ATU-C successfully receives a message from the ATU-R, the ATU-C passes through the C-ACK-LD state to send an acknowledgement to the ATU-R. Every time the ATU-C passes through the C-MSGx-LD state, one message containing loop diagnostics information is sent to the ATU-R.

The C-SEGUE-LD state shall consist of 64 C-SEGUE symbols and shall precede each message as a time marker.

In the C-ACK-LD, C-SEGUE-LD and C-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-C transmits C-REVERB or C-SEGUE symbols. When not in the C-ACK-LD, C-SEGUE-LD or C-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-C shall send a filler signal which shall consist of C-TREF symbols. The C-REVERB, C-SEGUE and C-TREF symbols shall be defined as for the Initialization sequence in 8.13.

#### 8.15.5.1.1 Channel information bearing messages

In the loop diagnostics mode, the ATU-C shall send five messages to the ATU-R: C-MSG1-LD to C-MSG5-LD. These messages contain the upstream test parameters defined in 8.15.1.

The information fields of the different messages shall be as shown in Tables 8-49 to 8-53.

**Table 8-49/G.992.3 – Format of the C-MSG1-LD message**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Information** | **Format message** bits [$8 \times i + 7$ to $8 \times i + 0$] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0001 0001 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlin Scale (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlin Scale (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 | LATN (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | LATN (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 6 | SATN (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 7 | SATN (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 8 | SNRM (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 9 | SNRM (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 10 | ATTNDR (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 11 | ATTNDR | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 12 | ATTNDR | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 23 to 16 |
| 13 | ATTNDR (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 31 to 24 |
| 14 | Far-end ACTATP (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 15 | Far-end ACTATP (MSB) | [ ssss ssxx ], bit 9 and 8 |

**Table 8-50/G.992.3 – Format of the C-MSG2-LD message**

| Octet Nr [i] | Information | Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0010 0010 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlin(0) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlin(0) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 | Hlin(0) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | Hlin(0) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 4 × *NSCus* – 2 | Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 4 × *NSCus* – 1 | Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 × *NSCus* | Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 4 × *NSCus* + 1 | Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |

**Table 8-51/G.992.3 – Format of the C-MSG3-LD message**

| Octet Nr [i] | Information | Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0011 0011 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlog(0) (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlog(0) (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 2 × *NSCus* | Hlog(*NSCus* – 1) (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 2 × *NSCus* + 1 | Hlog(*NSCus* – 1) (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |

**Table 8-52/G.992.3 – Format of the C-MSG4-LD message**

| Octet Nr [i] | Information | Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0100 0100 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | QLN(0) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| *NSCus* + 1 | QLN(*NSCus* – 1) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |

**Table 8-53/G.992.3 – Format of the C-MSG5-LD message**

| Octet Nr [i] | Information | Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0101 0101 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | SNR(0) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| *NSCus* + 1 | SNR(*NSCus* – 1) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |

The value *NSCus* represents the number of upstream subcarriers used and is defined in the annex corresponding to the chosen application option.

The messages shall be transmitted in order of ascending octet number (i.e., the sequence number shall be transmitted first) and each octet shall be transmitted LSB first.

The addition of a 16 bit CRC and the bit transmission order for the C-MSGx-LD messages shall be as defined for the Initialization sequence in 8.13. However, the message and CRC bits shall be transmitted with an 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive C-REVERB symbols and a one bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive C-SEGUE symbols. The resulting state duration (needed to transmit the message and CRC) is shown in Table 8-54.

**Table 8-54/G.992.3 – ATU-C loop diagnostics state durations**

| State | Duration (symbols) | *NSCus* = 32 | *NSCus* = 64 |
|---|---|---|---|
| C-MSG1-LD | 1152 | 1152 | 1152 |
| C-MSG2-LD | 256 + 256 × *NSCus* | 8448 | 16640 |
| C-MSG3-LD | 256 + 128 × *NSCus* | 4352 | 8448 |
| C-MSG4-LD | 256 + 64 × *NSCus* | 2304 | 4352 |
| C-MSG5-LD | 256 + 64 × *NSCus* | 2304 | 4352 |

#### 8.15.5.1.2 Message flow, acknowledgement and retransmission

At the start of the Exchange Phase, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-TREF1-LD state (in which C-TREF symbols shall be transmitted until the first R-MSGx-LD message is received).

If the ATU-C receives an R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-ACK or C-NACK state within 128 symbols from the end of the R-MSGx-LD state. If the R-MSGx-LD message is successfully received, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-ACK state (in which a positive acknowledgment C-ACK message shall be transmitted). Instead, if a decoding error occurs (i.e., the CRC locally computed at the ATU-C does not correspond to the CRC transmitted by the ATU-R), the ATU-C shall transition to the C-NACK state.

The C-ACK message shall be represented by the "01010101" octet and shall be transmitted over 64 symbol periods using the same modulation technique as the loop diagnostics information bearing messages. No CRC shall be added to the C-ACK message. In the C-NACK state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-TREF symbols. Note that from the ATU-R's perspective, this is equivalent to the ATU-C not responding to the R-MSGx-LD message.

At the end of the C-ACK or C-NACK state, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-TREF2-LD state (in which 256 C-TREF symbols shall be transmitted). During the C-TREF2-LD state, the ATU-R transitions to the R-QUIET2-LD state (because the R-ACK message is successfully received and no more R-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted) or the ATU-R transitions to the R-SEGUE-LD state (because no, or a corrupted C-ACK message is received or more R-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). At the end of the C-TREF2-LD state, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-SEGUE-LD state (if the ATU-R has transitioned to the R-QUIET2-LD state) or shall return to the C-TREF1-LD state (if the ATU-R has returned to the R-SEGUE-LD state).

Note that, as a result of a corrupted C-ACK message, the ATU-C could successfully receive the same message twice. In this case, the ATU-C shall ignore the second identical (same Sequence Number) message.

The C-SEGUE-LD state (in which 64 C-SEGUE symbols shall be transmitted) shall be followed by the first C-MSGx-LD state (in which the first R-MSGx-LD message shall be transmitted).

After transmitting a C-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-TREF3-LD state (in which 256 C-TREF symbols shall be transmitted). During the C-TREF3-LD state, the ATU-C may or may not receive an R-ACK message. At the end of the C-TREF3-LD state, the ATU-C shall return to the C-SEGUE-LD state to resend the last previously transmitted C-MSGx-LD message (if no or a corrupted R-ACK message was received) or to transmit the next C-MSGx-LD message (if an R-ACK message was successfully received and more C-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). The number of times a message is resent before the ATU-C invokes the Initialization reset procedure, is vendor discretionary.

At the end of the C-TREF3-LD state, after successfully receiving the last R-ACK message in response to the last R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-IDLE state (see Annex D) and the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state.

The L3 state is defined in 9.5.1.3.

#### 8.15.5.2 ATU-R exchange phase

The sequence of states in the Loop Diagnostics Mode shall be as shown in the Loop Diagnostics Mode timing diagram in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. Every time the ATU-R successfully receives a message from the ATU-C, the ATU-R passes through the R-ACK-LD state to send an acknowledgement to the ATU-C. Every time the ATU-R passes through the R-MSGx-LD state, one message containing loop diagnostics information is sent to the ATU-C.

The R-SEGUE-LD state shall consist of 64 R-SEGUE symbols and shall precede each message as a time marker.

In the R-ACK-LD, R-SEGUE-LD and R-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-R transmits R-REVERB or R-SEGUE symbols. When not in the R-ACK-LD, R-SEGUE-LD or R-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-R shall send a filler signal, which shall consist of R-QUIET symbols. The R-REVERB, R-SEGUE and R-QUIET symbols shall be defined as for the Initialization sequence in 8.13.

##### 8.15.5.2.1 Channel information bearing messages

In the loop diagnostics mode, the ATU-R shall send nine messages to the ATU-C: R-MSG1-LD to R-MSG9-LD. These messages contain the downstream test parameters defined in 8.15.1.

The information fields of the different messages shall be as shown in Tables 8-55 to 8-63.

**Table 8-55/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG1-LD message**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Information** | **Format message** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0001 0001 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlin Scale (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlin Scale (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 | LATN (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | LATN (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 6 | SATN (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 7 | SATN (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 8 | SNRM (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 9 | SNRM (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| 10 | ATTNDR (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 11 | ATTNDR | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 12 | ATTNDR | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 23 to 16 |
| 13 | ATTNDR (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 31 to 24 |
| 14 | Far-end ACTATP (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 15 | Far-end ACTATP (MSB) | [ ssss ssxx ], bit 9 and 8 |

**Table 8-56/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG2-LD message**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Information** | **Format message** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0010 0010 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlin(0) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlin(0) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 | Hlin(0) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | Hlin(0) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 254 | Hlin(63) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 255 | Hlin(63) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 256 | Hlin(63) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 257 | Hlin(63) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |

**Table 8-57/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG3-LD message**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Information** | **Format message** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0011 0011 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlin(64) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlin(64) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 | Hlin(64) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | Hlin(64) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 254 | Hlin(127) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 255 | Hlin(127) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 256 | Hlin(127) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 257 | Hlin(127) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |

**Table 8-58/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG4-LD message**

| **Octet Nr** [i] | **Information** | **Format message** bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0100 0100 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlin(128) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlin(128) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 | Hlin(128) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | Hlin(128) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 254 | Hlin(191) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 255 | Hlin(191) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 256 | Hlin(191) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 257 | Hlin(191) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |

**Table 8-59/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG5-LD message**

| Octet Nr [i] | Information | Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0101 0101 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlin(192) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlin(192) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 4 | Hlin(192) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 5 | Hlin(192) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 254 | Hlin(255) real (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 255 | Hlin(255) real (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |
| 256 | Hlin(255) imag (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 257 | Hlin(255) imag (MSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 15 to 8 |

**Table 8-60/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG6-LD message**

| Octet Nr [i] | Information | Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0110 0110 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlog(0) (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlog(0) (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 256 | Hlog(127) (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 257 | Hlog(127) (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |

**Table 8-61/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG7-LD message**

| Octet Nr [i] | Information | Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 0111 0111 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | Hlog(128) (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 3 | Hlog(128) (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 256 | Hlog(255) (LSB) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| 257 | Hlog(255) (MSB) | [ 0000 00xx ], bit 9 and 8 |

**Table 8-62/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG8-LD message**

| **Octet Nr**<br>[i] | **Information** | **Format message**<br>bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 1000 1000 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | QLN(0) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 257 | QLN(255) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |

**Table 8-63/G.992.3 – Format of the R-MSG9-LD message**

| **Octet Nr**<br>[i] | **Information** | **Format message**<br>bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0] |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Sequence number | [ 1001 1001 ] |
| 1 | Reserved | [ 0000 0000 ] |
| 2 | SNR(0) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| ….. | ….. | ….. |
| 257 | SNR(255) | [ xxxx xxxx ], bit 7 to 0 |
| NOTE – In case the *NSCds* < 256 (as in ITU-T Rec. G.992.4), all line diagnostics messages are transmitted. However, in the messages carrying per subcarrier information, the special value defined in 8.12.3 may be used to indicate that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband. | | |

The messages shall be transmitted in order of ascending octet number (i.e., the sequence number shall be transmitted first) and each octet shall be transmitted LSB first.

The addition of a 16 bit CRC and the bit transmission order for the R-MSGx-LD messages shall be as defined for the Initialization sequence in 8.13. However, the message and CRC bits shall be transmitted with an 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive R-REVERB symbols and a one bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive R-SEGUE symbols. The resulting state duration (needed to transmit the message and CRC) is shown in Table 8-64.

**Table 8-64/G.992.3 –ATU-R loop diagnostics state durations**

| **State** | **Duration (symbols)** |
|---|---|
| R-MSG1-LD | 1152 |
| R-MSG2-LD | 16640 |
| R-MSG3-LD | 16640 |
| R-MSG4-LD | 16640 |
| R-MSG5-LD | 16640 |
| R-MSG6-LD | 16640 |
| R-MSG7-LD | 16640 |
| R-MSG8-LD | 16640 |
| R-MSG9-LD | 16640 |

The resulting number of symbols needed to transmit each of the messages and CRC is shown in the Loop Diagnostics timing diagrams in Figures 8-35 and 8-36.

#### 8.15.5.2.2 Message flow, acknowledgement and retransmission

At the start of the Exchange Phase, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-SEGUE-LD state (in which 64 R-SEGUE symbols shall be transmitted), followed by the first R-MSGx-LD state (in which the first R-MSGx-LD message shall be transmitted).

After transmitting an R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET1-LD state (in which 256 R-QUIET symbols shall be transmitted). During the R-QUIET1-LD state, the ATU-R may or may not receive a C-ACK message. At the end of the R-QUIET1-LD state, the ATU-R shall return to the R-SEGUE-LD state to resend the last previously transmitted R-MSGx-LD message (if no or a corrupted C-ACK message was received) or to transmit the next R-MSGx-LD message (if a C-ACK message was successfully received and more R-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). The number of times a message is resent before the ATU-R invokes the Initialization reset procedure, is vendor discretionary.

At the end of the R-QUIET1-LD state, after successfully receiving the last C-ACK message in response to the last R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET2-LD state (in which R-QUIET symbols shall be transmitted until the first C-MSGx-LD message is received).

If the ATU-R receives a C-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-ACK or R-NACK state within 128 symbols from the end of the C-MSGx-LD state. If the C-MSGx-LD message is successfully received, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-ACK state (in which a positive acknowledgment R-ACK message shall be transmitted). Instead, if a decoding error occurs (i.e., the CRC locally computed at the ATU-R does not correspond to the CRC transmitted by the ATU-C), the ATU-R shall transition to the R-NACK state.

The R-ACK message shall be represented by the "01010101" octet and shall be transmitted over 64 symbol periods using the same modulation technique as the loop diagnostics information bearing messages. No CRC shall be added to the R-ACK message. In the R-NACK state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-QUIET symbols. Note that from the ATU-C's perspective, this is equivalent to the ATU-R not responding to the C-MSGx-LD message.

At the end of the R-ACK or R-NACK state, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET3-LD state (in which 256 R-QUIET symbols shall be transmitted). During the R-QUIET3-LD state, the ATU-C transitions to the C-IDLE state (because the R-ACK message is successfully received and no more C-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted) or the ATU-C transitions to the C-SEGUE-LD state (because no or a corrupted R-ACK message is received or more C-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). At the end of the R-QUIET3-LD state, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-IDLE state (if the ATU-C has transitioned to the C-IDLE state) or shall return to the R-QUIET2-LD state (if the ATU-C has returned to the C-SEGUE-LD state). When the ATU-R transitions to the R-IDLE state (see Annex D), the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state.

Note that, as a result of a corrupted R-ACK message, the ATU-R could successfully receive the same message twice. In this case, the ATU-R shall ignore the second identical (same Sequence Number) message.

The L3 state is defined in 9.5.1.3.

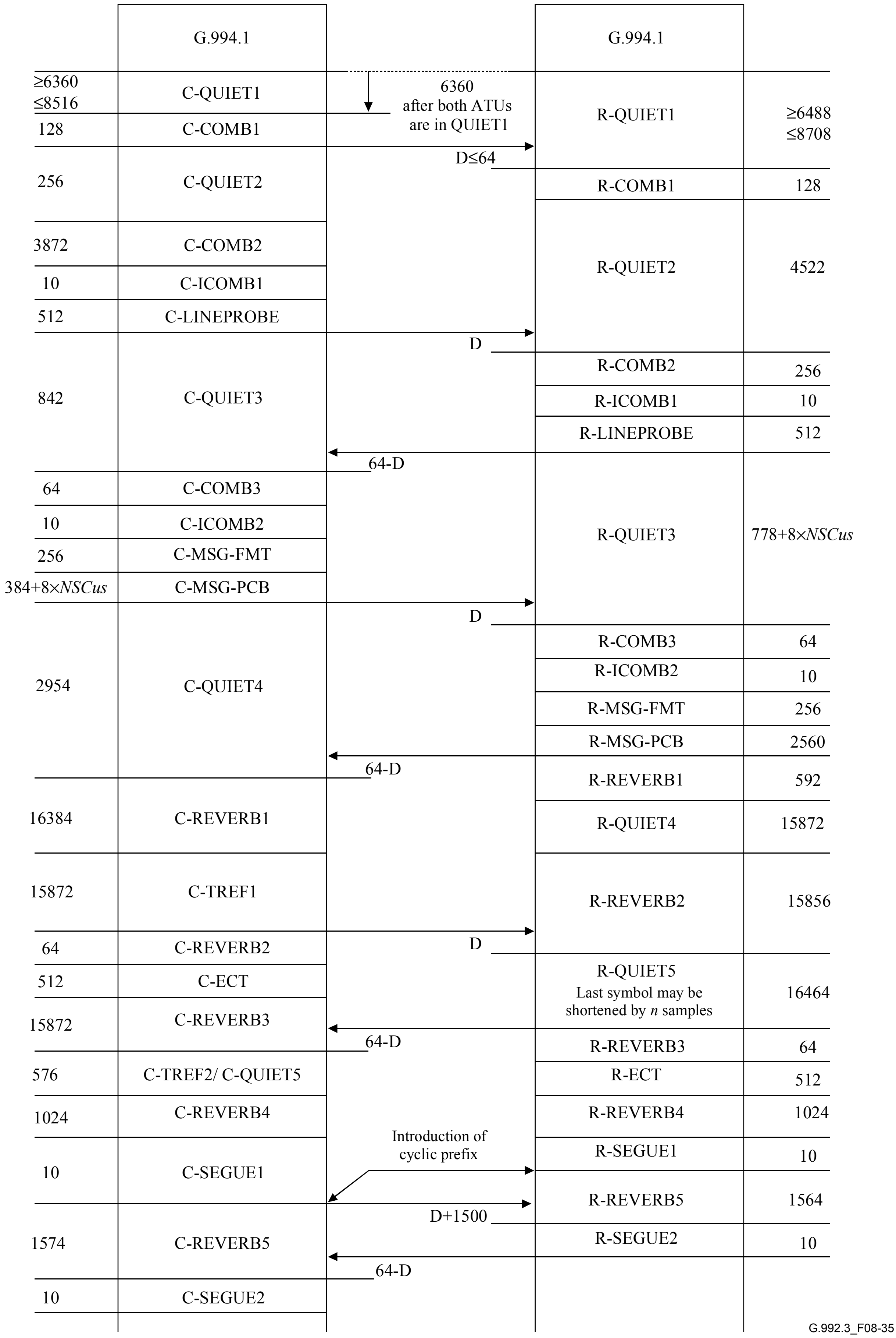



**Figure 8-35/G.992.3 – Loop diagnostics timing diagram (part 1)**

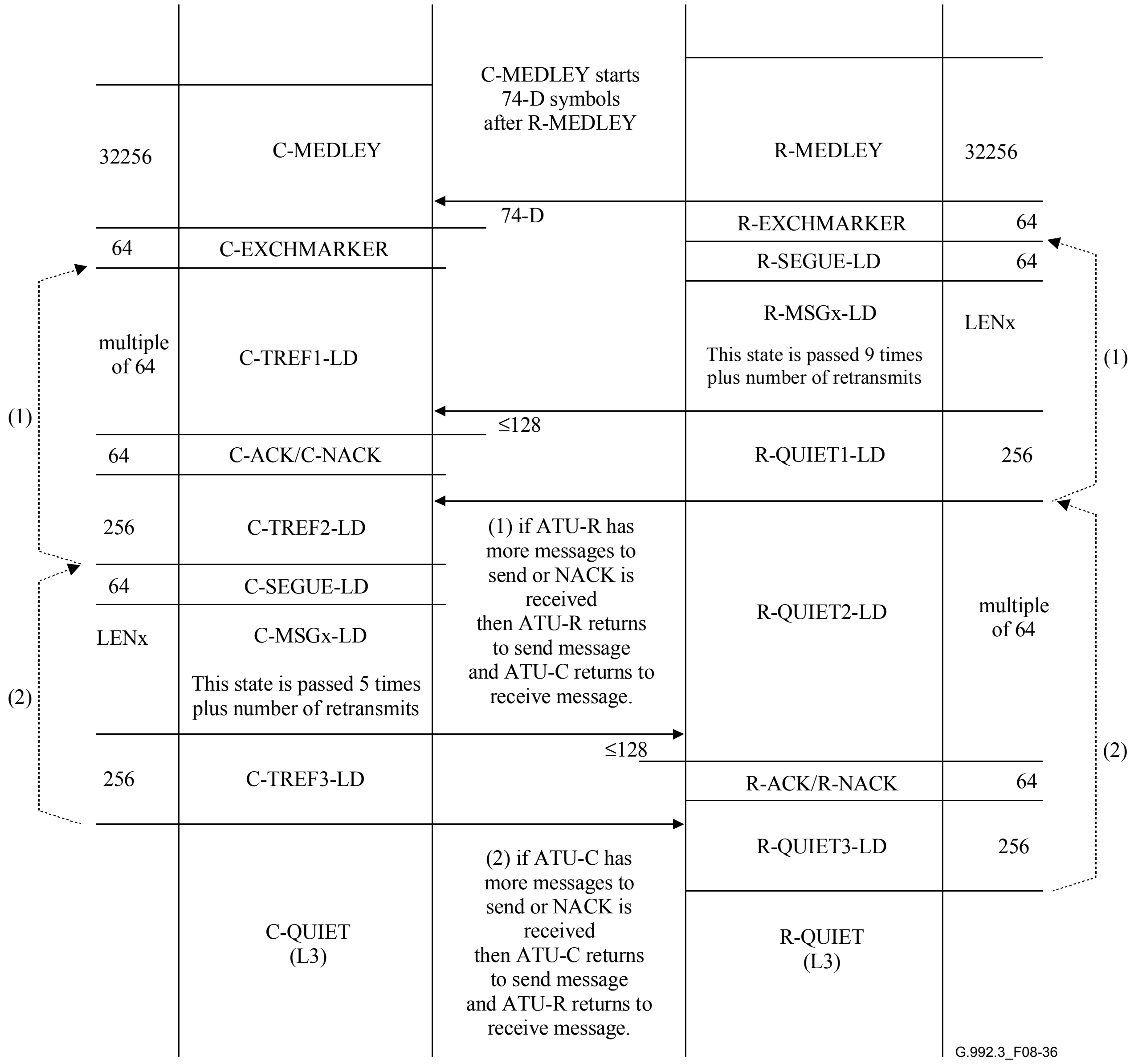



**Figure 8-36/G.992.3 – Loop diagnostics timing diagram (part 2)**

## 8.16 On-line reconfiguration of the PMD function

On-line reconfiguration of the PMD function is intended to allow changes in the control parameters without interruption of service and without errors (i.e., bitswap, dynamic rate repartitioning and seamless rate adaptation).

The procedures for on-line reconfiguration of the PMD function support:

- transparency to PMS-TC, TPS-TC and higher layers by providing means for configuration parameter changes that introduce no transport errors, no latency change, and no interruption of service,
- changing parameters to adapt to slowly varying line conditions, and
- changing parameters to dynamically change the data rate.

### 8.16.1 Control parameters

On-line reconfiguration of the PMD function is accomplished by a coordinated change to one or more of the control parameters defined in 8.5. The control parameters displayed in Table 8-65 may be changed through on-line reconfiguration within the limits described.

**Table 8-65/G.992.3 – Reconfigurable control parameters of the PMD function**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $b_i$ | The number of bits per subcarrier may be increased or decreased in the [0 … *BIMAX*] range. A change of the $b_i$ values may be performed with a constant $L$ value (i.e., bitswap) or with a change of the $L$ value (i.e., seamless rate adaptation). |
| $g_i$ | The subcarrier gain scaling may be increase or decreased in the [–14.5 … +2.5 + *EXTGI*] range. |
| $L$ | The number of bits contained in a data frame (parameter derived from the $b_i$ values). |

The updated bits and gains table shall comply to the bits and gains table requirements listed in 8.6.4.

### 8.16.2 Timing of changes in subcarrier configuration

A change in the $b_i$ and $g_i$ values of one or more subcarriers is implemented by changing the corresponding PMD control parameter (see Table 8-4).

In the downstream direction, the reconfiguration of the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the second symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbol count 68, as defined in 8.7.3. Therefore, the downstream reconfiguration of the PMD function shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbol count 1. The PMD function shall signal a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the downstream receive PMS-TC function after the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbol count 0 and before the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbol count 1.

In the upstream direction, the reconfiguration of the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the fifth symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbol count 68, as defined in 8.7.3. Therefore, the upstream reconfiguration of the PMD function shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbol count 4. The PMD function shall signal a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the upstream receive PMS-TC function after the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbol count 3 and before the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbol count 4.

### 8.16.3 Receiver initiated procedure

An ATU may initiate a reconfiguration of its receive PMD function. This includes the ATU changing the receive PMD function's bits and gains table with or without changing the $L$ value. This reconfiguration may be:

- autonomously requested by the receive PMD function (to change only the bits and gains table, without changing the $L$ value, i.e., bitswaps);
- requested by the receiving ATU's control function as part of a reconfiguration of the receive TPS-TC and/or receive PMS-TC functions, e.g., to meet changing higher layer application requirements or to make power management state transitions;
- requested by the receiving ATU's management entity, e.g., to meet DSL link performance requirements as monitored by the management entity.

The bitswapping reconfigurations involve changes of only the PMD sublayer configuration parameters. They do not change the TPS-TC and PMS-TC sublayer configuration parameters. The transmit PMD function shall support bitswaps requested by the receive PMD function.

### 8.16.4 Transmitter initiated procedure

An ATU may initiate a reconfiguration of its transmit PMD function. However, this reconfiguration shall be initiated by the transmitting ATU's control function, as part of a reconfiguration of the

TPS-TC functions (see clause 6) and/or PMS-TC (see clause 7) functions, e.g., to meet changing higher layer application requirements or to make power management state transitions. Reconfiguration of the transmit PMD function shall not be autonomously requested by the transmit PMD function (i.e., no transmit PMD function initiated bitswaps).

### 8.17 Power management in the PMD function

Power Management transitions in the PMD function are intended to allow changes in the downstream control parameters without errors (i.e., seamless).

The procedures for power management in the PMD function support:

- changing parameters to minimize the aggregate transmit power
- changing parameters to dynamically change the data rate.

#### 8.17.1 Control parameters

Power management is accomplished by a coordinated change to the value or more of the control parameters defined in 8.5. The downstream control parameters displayed in Table 8-66 may be changed through power management transitions within the limits described.

**Table 8-66/G.992.3 – Power management control parameters of the PMD function**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| $b_i$ | The number of bits per subcarrier may be increased or decreased in the [0 … *BIMAXds*] range. |
| $g_i$ | The subcarrier gain scaling may be increase or decreased in the [–14.5 … +2.5 + *EXTGIds*] range. |
| $L$ | The number of bits contained in a downstream data frame (parameter derived from the $b_i$ values). |

The updated downstream bits and gains table shall comply to the bits and gains table requirements listed in 8.6.4.

These requirements on the downstream bits and gains table apply in the L0 state and at entry into the L2 state. However, at entry into the L2 state, the excess margin may not be minimized. Power trimming during the L2 state may be used to minimize the excess margin. Power trimming is defined as a lowering of the reference transmit PSD level (through a higher downstream power cutback level). Power trimming changes the PCBds value used during the L2 state and does not change the $g_i$ values determined at the time of entry into the L2 state.

#### 8.17.2 Timing of changes in subcarrier configuration

A change in the $b_i$ and $g_i$ values of one or more subcarriers is implemented by changing the corresponding PMD control parameter (see Table 8-4).

##### 8.17.2.1 Power management entry from the L0 into the L2 state

In the downstream direction, the power management transition in the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the second symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbol count 68, as defined in 8.7.4. Therefore, the downstream power management transition shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbol count 1.

In the upstream direction, no power management transitions shall take place.

#### 8.17.2.2 Power management exit from the L2 into the L0 state

In the downstream direction, the power management transition in the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the first symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in two L2 exit symbols, as defined in 8.7.6. Therefore, the downstream power management transition shall take effect starting with the first symbol following the second L2 exit symbol.

#### 8.17.2.3 Power trimming in the L2 state

In the downstream direction, the power management transition in the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the second symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbol count 68, as defined in 8.7.5. Therefore, the downstream power management transition shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbol count 1.

In the upstream direction, no power management transitions shall take place.

### 8.17.3 Receiver initiated procedure

An ATU-R may initiate a power management transition in its receive PMD function to exit from L2 to L0. This includes the ATU-R changing the receive PMD function's bits and gains table. This power management transition may be:

- autonomously requested by the ATU-R receive PMD function;
- requested by the ATU-R management entity, e.g., to meet DSL link performance requirements as monitored by the ATU-R management entity.

The ATU-C transmit PMD function shall support exit from L2 to L0 requested by the ATU-R.

### 8.17.4 Transmitter initiated procedure

An ATU-C may initiate a power management transition in its transmit PMD function to enter from L0 into L2, to trim power in L2 or to exit from L2 into L0. This includes the ATU-C changing the transmit PMD function's bits and gains table. This power management transition may be:

- autonomously requested by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- requested by the ATU-C management entity, e.g., to meet DSL link performance requirements as monitored by the ATU-C management entity.

The ATU-R receive PMD function shall support entry into L2 from L0 requested by the ATU-C.

The ATU-R receive PMD function shall support exit from L2 into L0 requested by the ATU-C.

The L2 Low Power Trim involves changes of only the PMD sublayer configuration parameters. They do not change the TPS-TC and PMS-TC sublayer configuration parameters. The ATU-R receive PMD function shall support L2 low power trims requested by the ATU-C transmit PMD function.

## 9 Management Protocol Specific Transmission Convergence (MPS-TC) functions

The ATU-R and ATU-C provide procedures to facilitate the management of the ATUs. The MPS-TC functions communicate with the G.997.1 functions in the management plane that are described in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. In particular, clear eoc messages are defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4] to allow management of the ATU. ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4] also specifies the counting and processing of various ATU management defects and anomalies. All ATU management defects and anomalies are therefore provided to the functions of ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4] by the MPS-TC functions.

Additionally, several management command procedures are defined for use by the G.997.1 functions in this clause, specifically, several reading and testing functions.

Finally, a management indication is defined by this clause to provide warning to the G.997.1 management functions that the ATU-R is undergoing a removal of local power.

## 9.1 Transport functions

As a management plane element, the MPS-TC provides transport of the clear eoc and command messages and ATU-R management defects and anomalies. Management defects and anomalies originate within the TPS-TC, PMS-TC, and PMD functions. Clear eoc and command messages and management primitives are transported by converting them to control signals for transport by the PMS-TC functions as depicted in Figures 9-1 and 9-2. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the clear eoc and read messages.

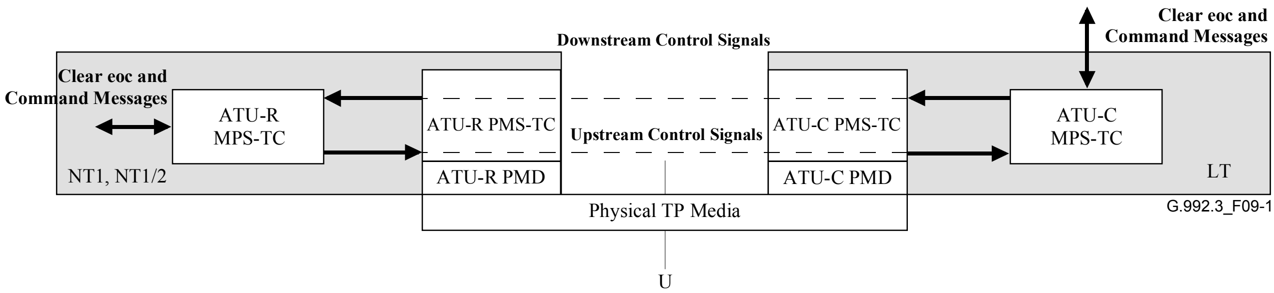



**Figure 9-1/G.992.3 – MPS-TC clear eoc transport capabilities within the management plane**

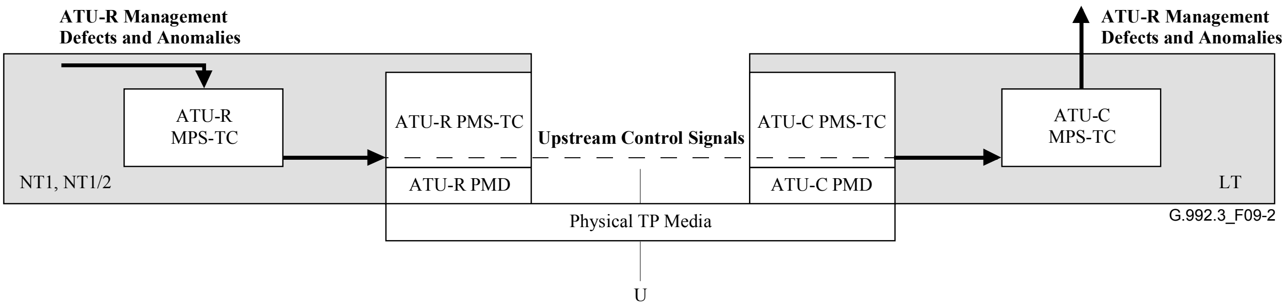



**Figure 9-2/G.992.3 – MPS-TC defect and anomaly transport capabilities within the management plane**

## 9.2 Additional functions

In addition to transport functions, the MPS-TC functions provides procedures for:

- Dying gasp message at the ATU-R;
- Power Management State Transitions.

## 9.3 Block interface signals and primitives

The ATU-C MPS-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure 9-3. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the those of the upstream direction. The signals shown at the top and right edge convey primitives to management functions of ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey

primitives to the PMS-TC function. The in-service performance monitoring process is shown in Figure 10/G.997.1. ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 specifies the parameters for fault and performance monitoring. The defect and anomaly primitives related to the physical layer are specified in this Recommendation (see 8.12).

The ATU-R MPS-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure 9-4. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from the previous figure.

The flow of primitives, as shown in Figures 9-3 and 9-4, corresponds with the retrieval of management information from the ATU-C, and passing of that information to the G.997.1 function at the central office end. A similar flow of primitives exists with the retrieval of management information from the ATU-R, and passing of that information to the G.997.1 function at the remote terminal end (see Figure 5-3).

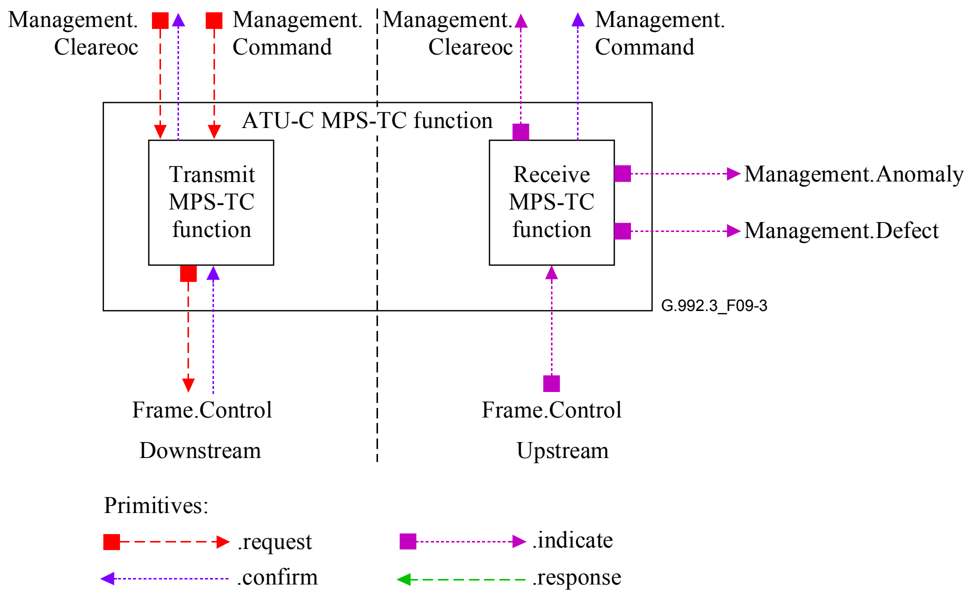



**Figure 9-3/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-C MPS-TC function**

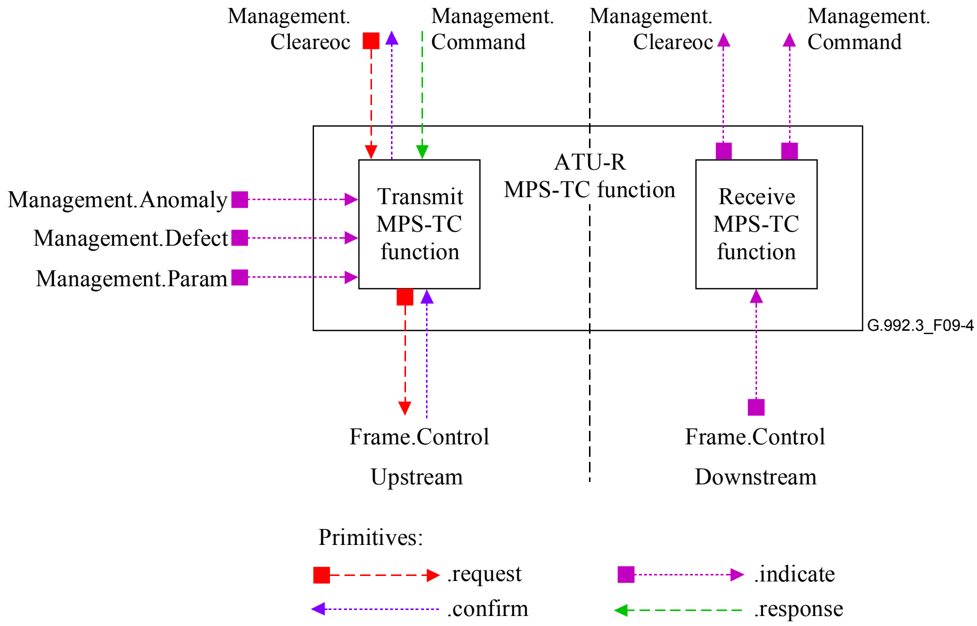



**Figure 9-4/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-R MPS-TC function**

The signals shown in Figures 9-3 and 9-4 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between a G.997.1 function and an MPS-TC function are described in Figure 9-1. These primitives support the exchange of clear eoc and command messages.

The primitives that are used between the MPS-TC and PMS-TC functions are defined in 6.2. The primitives that are used between the MPS-TC and the PMD functions are defined in clause 8.

The primitives used to signal maintenance indication primitives to the local maintenance entity are described in respective clauses for TPS-TC, PMS-TC, and PMD functions, (clauses 6, 7 and 8).

**Table 9-1/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives between G.997.1 functions and the MPS-TC function**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Management. Cleareoc | .request | The transmit G.997.1 function passes clear eoc messages to the MPS-TC function to be transported with this primitive. |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the transmit MPS-TC function to confirm receipt of a Management.Cleareoc.request primitive. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the PMS-TC configuration. |
| | .indicate | The receive MPS-TC function passes clear eoc messages to the receive G.997.1 function that has been transported with this primitive. |
| Management. Command | .request | The transmit G.997.1 function at the ATU-C passes a command to the ATU-C transmit MPS-TC function to be transported with this primitive. |
| | .confirm | This primitive is used by the ATU-C receive MPS-TC function to convey the response of the ATU-R to a command. By the interworking of the request and confirm, data may be read from locations. |
| | .indicate | The receive ATU-R MPS-TC function passes a command to the local ATU-R that has been transported with this primitive. |
| | .response | This primitive is used by the local ATU-R to convey the response to a command for transport. |

## 9.4 Management plane procedures

### 9.4.1 Commands

Commands provide for a generalized command, parameters followed by a response. This provides the necessary flexibility to transport clear eoc messages and G.997.1 MIB elements, to set and query ATU registers, and to invoke management procedures at the far end ATU with and without return values.

All commands are categorized into three priority levels, used to determine the order of transport of messages available to the PMS-TC function. The commands are displayed in Tables 9-2, 9-3 and 9-4 in decreasing level of PMS-TC transport priority.

All ATUs should be able to transmit overhead commands and shall respond to all overhead commands as required during operation in the management plane procedures.

All commands received from Tables 9-2, 9-3 and 9-4 shall have a response, noting that the PMS-TC function will discard improperly framed or formatted messages. The responder shall respond within the timeout period displayed in Table 7-17 (dependent on the overhead command priority) less than 50 ms to prevent protocol glare interaction between the ATUs. Shorter responses are allowed and may be required in some application specific situations outside the scope of this Recommendation.

**Table 9-2/G.992.3 – Highest priority overhead messages**

| Message and designator | Direction | Command content | Response content |
|---|---|---|---|
| On-line Reconfiguration (OLR) Command 0000 $0001_b$ | From a receiver to the transmitter | New configuration including all necessary PMS-TC and PMD control values. | Followed by either a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive (not a OLR command) or an OLR command for defer or reject. |

**Table 9-3/G.992.3 – Normal priority overhead messages**

| Message and designator | Direction | Command content | Response content |
|---|---|---|---|
| EOC Command 0100 $0001_b$ | From ATU-C to ATU-R | Self test,<br>update test parameters,<br>start and stop TX corrupt CRC,<br>start and stop receipt of corrupt CRC. | Followed by an eoc command for acknowledge. |
| | From ATU-R to ATU-C | Update test parameters. | Followed by an eoc command for acknowledge. |
| Time Command 0100 $0010_b$ | From ATU-C to ATU-R | Set or read time. | Followed by a set time command for acknowledge or the time response. |
| Inventory Command 0100 $0011_b$ | From either ATU to the other | Identification request, Self test request, auxiliary inventory information request, PMD capabilities request, PMS-TC capabilities request, TPS-TC capabilities request. | Followed by an inventory command response that includes ATU equipment ID, auxiliary inventory information, set test results, and capabilities information. |
| Control Parameter Read Command 0000 $0100_b$ | From either ATU to the other | PMD settings read, PMS-TC settings read, or TPS-TC settings read. | Followed by a control parameter read command response that includes all control variables. |
| Management Counter Read Command 0000 $0101_b$ | From either ATU to the other | Null. | Followed by a management counter read response that includes all counter values. |

**Table 9-3/G.992.3 – Normal priority overhead messages**

| Message and designator | Direction | Command content | Response content |
|---|---|---|---|
| Power Management Command $0000\ 0111_b$ | From one ATU to the other | Proposed new power state. | Followed by either a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive (not a power management command) or a power management command for either reject or grant. |
| Clear eoc Command $0000\ 1000_b$ | From one ATU to the other | Clear eoc message as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 or other. | Followed by a clear eoc command for acknowledge. |
| Non-Standard Facility Command $0011\ 1111_b$ | From one ATU to the other | Non-standard identification field followed by message content. | Followed by a non-standard facility command for either acknowledge or negative acknowledge to indicate whether the non-standard identification field is recognized or not. |

**Table 9-4/G.992.3 – Low priority overhead messages**

| Message and designator | Direction | Comment content | Response content |
|---|---|---|---|
| PMD Test Parameter Read Command $1000\ 0001_b$ | From either ATU to the other | Parameter number for single read, parameter number and subcarrier id for multiple read, null for next multiple read. | Followed by a PMD test parameter read command response including the requested test parameters or a negative acknowledge. |
| Non-Standard Facility Low Priority Command $1011\ 1111_b$ | From one ATU to the other | Non-standard identification field followed by message content. | Followed by a non-standard facility command for either acknowledge or negative acknowledge to indicate if the non-standard identification field is recognized. |

In the subclauses of 9.4.1 that follow, the format, protocol, and function of each command is specified. For each command, a table is provided that specifies the format of the command and any associated data. To avoid repetition, the command table does not contain the full HDLC frame structure. Commands shall be mapped into the HDLC structure specified in 7.8.2.3, such that Message length P is the number of octets as shown in the first column of the command table. Octet values shall be mapped such that the least significant bit is mapped into the LSB of the HDLC structure. Values spanning more than one octet shall be mapped with higher order octets preceding lower order octets. A vector of value shall be mapped in order of the index, from the lowest index value to highest. Arrays with two indices shall be mapped by decomposing them into a series of vectors using the first index, from the lowest index to the highest. The following example is intended to clarify the mapping from the command table to the HDLC frame structure specified in 7.8.2.3.

The example selected is that of a receiver sending an OLR command repartition the data rate without modification of the underlying PMD function. For this example, the configuration before and after the OLR command is shown in Table 9-5. The HDLC frame content for this message is shown in Table 9-6 and is based on the command format information in Table 9-7.

**Table 9-5/G.992.3 – OLR example configuration**

| Parameter | Current configuration | Proposed configuration |
|---|---|---|
| Number of enabled frame bearers | $N_{BC} = 2$ | $N_{BC} = 2$ |
| Number of enabled latency path functions | $N_{LP} = 2$ | $N_{LP} = 2$ |
| Bits from each latency path function per PMD primitive | $L_0 = 408$ | $L_0 = 312$ |
| | $L_1 = 8$ | $L_1 = 104$ |
| Frame bearer octets per mux data frame in each latency paths | $B_{00} = 48$, $B_{01} = 0$ | $B_{00} = 36$, $B_{01} = 0$ |
| | $B_{10} = 0$, $B_{11} = 0$ | $B_{10} = 0$, $B_{11} = 12$ |

**Table 9-6/G.992.3 – OLR example HDLC frame contents**

| Octet # | MSB LSB |
|---|---|
| | $7E_{16}$ – Opening Flag |
| 1 | Address Field |
| 2 | Control Field |
| 3 | $0000\ 0001_b$ (OLR command) |
| 4 | $0000\ 0010_b$ (Request Type 2) |
| 5 | $0000\ 0001_b$ ($L_0$ high octet) |
| 6 | $0011\ 1000_b$ ($L_0$ low octet) |
| 7 | $0000\ 0000_b$ ($L_1$ high octet) |
| 8 | $0110\ 1000_b$ ($L_1$ low octet) |
| 9 | $0010\ 0100_b$ ($B_{00}$) |
| 10 | $0000\ 1100_b$ ($B_{11}$) |
| 11 | $0000\ 0000_b$ ($N_f$) (Message length P = 9) |
| 12 | FCS high octet |
| 13 | FCS low octet |
| | $7E_{16}$ – Closing Flag |

### 9.4.1.1 On-line reconfiguration command

The on-line reconfiguration commands shall be used to control certain on-line dynamic behaviour defined in this clause. Additional information is provided on this dynamic behaviour in clause 10. On-line reconfiguration commands may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-7. However, the initiator is only provided with means to effect changes in its receiver and the corresponding transmitter. The responding ATU may use the on-line reconfiguration commands shown in Table 9-8 or may positively acknowledge the initiator's request by transmitting a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The on-line reconfiguration commands shall consist of multiple octets. The first octet shall be the on-line reconfiguration command designator shown in Table 9-2. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Tables 9-7, 9-8 and 9-9. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-7/G.992.3 – On-line reconfiguration commands transmitted by the initiating receiver**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| $3 + 3 \times N_f$ | $01_{16}$ Request Type 1 followed by:<br>1 octet for the number of subcarriers $N_f$<br>$3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier |
| $3 + 2 \times N_{LP} + N_{BC} + 3 \times N_f$ | $02_{16}$ Request Type 2 followed by:<br>$2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing new $L_p$ values for the $N_{LP}$ enabled latency paths,<br>$N_{BC}$ octets containing new $B_{p.n}$ values for the $N_{BC}$ enabled frame bearers,<br>1 octet for the number of carriers $N_f$<br>$3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier |
| $3 + 2 \times N_{LP} + N_{BC} + 3 \times N_f$ | $03_{16}$ Request Type 3 followed by:<br>$2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing new $L_p$ values for the $N_{LP}$ enabled latency paths,<br>$N_{BC}$ octets containing new $B_{p.n}$ values for the $N_{BC}$ enabled frame bearers,<br>1 octet for the number of carriers $N_f$<br>$3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-8/G.992.3 – On-line reconfiguration commands transmitted by the responding transmitter**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 3 | $81_{16}$ Defer Type 1 Request followed by:<br>1 octet for reason code |
| 3 | $82_{16}$ Reject Type 2 Request followed by:<br>1 octet for reason code |
| 3 | $83_{16}$ Reject Type 3 Request followed by:<br>1 octet for reason code |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T |

An ATU may request only changes in its receiver operation. Changes may be requested concurrently by both ATUs; each transaction shall follow the procedures described in this clause. An ATU-R shall not initiate an OLR command if it has transmitted an L2 Grant command and is awaiting a response.

A subcarrier parameter field contains 3 octets formatted as [cccc cccc gggg gggg gggg bbbb]. The carrier index $i$ (8-bits), the $g_i$ (12 bits) and the $b_i$ (4 bits). The carrier index shall be the first octet of the subcarrier field. The $g_i$ shall be contained in the second octet and the four most significant bits of the third octet. The least significant bits of $g_i$ shall be contained in the third octet. The $b_i$ shall be the least significant 4 bits of the third octet.

Type 1 and Type 2 shall be sent such that the PMD parameter $L$ is unchanged. If an ATU implements the optional short PMD initialization sequence, then the ATU should also implement Type 3 OLR operations changing $b_i$, *gi* and $L_p$.

Reason codes associated with the OLR commands are shown in Table 9-9.

**Table 9-9/G.992.3 – Reason codes for OLR commands**

| Reason | Octet value | Applicable to defer type 1 | Applicable to reject type 2 | Applicable to reject type 3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Busy | $01_{16}$ | X | X | X |
| Invalid parameters | $02_{16}$ | X | X | X |
| Not enabled | $03_{16}$ | | X | X |
| Not supported | $04_{16}$ | | X | X |

Upon transmitting an on-line reconfiguration command, the initiator shall await a response to the command, either an on-line reconfiguration command for defer or reject or the line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive. If the response is not received within the timeout of the high priority overhead messages displayed in Table 7-17, the initiator shall abandon the current on-line reconfiguration command. A new command may be initiated immediately, including an identical request.

Upon receipt of an on-line reconfiguration command, the responder shall respond with either an on-line reconfiguration command for defer or reject, or the line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive. In the case of sending the line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive, the ATU shall reconfigure the effected PMD, PMS-TC, and TPS-TC functions as described in the reconfiguration clauses describing those functions. In the case of defer or reject, the receiver shall supply a reason code from the following: $01_{16}$ for busy, $02_{16}$ for invalid parameters, $03_{16}$ for not enabled, and $04_{16}$ for not supported. The reason code $01_{16}$ and $02_{16}$ shall be the only codes used in an on-line reconfiguration command for defer type 1 request.

Upon receipt of a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive, the initiator shall reconfigure the effected PMD, PMS-TC, and TPS-TC functions as described in the reconfiguration clauses describing those functions. If an on-line reconfiguration command for defer or reject is received, the initiator shall abandon the current on-line reconfiguration command. A new command may be initiated immediately, including an identical request.

### 9.4.1.2 eoc Commands

The eoc commands shall be used to control certain in-use diagnostic capabilities defined in this clause. Most eoc commands may be initiated by the ATU-C as shown in Table 9-10. The ATU-R may only initiate the eoc commands shown in Table 9-11. The eoc command shall consist of 2 octets. The first octet shall be the eoc command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be as shown in Tables 9-10 and 9-11. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-10/G.992.3 – eoc Commands transmitted by the ATU-C**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $01_{16}$ Perform Self Test |
| 2 | $02_{16}$ Update Test Parameters |
| 2 | $03_{16}$ Start TX Corrupt CRC |
| 2 | $04_{16}$ End TX Corrupt CRC |
| 2 | $05_{16}$ Start RX Corrupt CRC |
| 2 | $06_{16}$ End RX Corrupt CRC |
| 2 | $80_{16}$ ACK |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-11/G.992.3 – eoc Commands transmitted by the ATU-R**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $02_{16}$ Update Test Parameters |
| 3 | $01_{16}$ Self Test Acknowledge followed by a single octet that indicates the minimum time in seconds to wait before requested the self test result |
| 2 | $80_{16}$ ACK |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

The eoc command may be transmitted anytime during the on-line state, including immediately following the end of the initialization procedures.

In all cases, the receipt of the eoc command is acknowledged to the transmitter by an eoc command acknowledge (ACK) message. The receiver shall not send a negative acknowledge (NACK) eoc command.

#### 9.4.1.2.1 Self test

Upon receipt of the eoc command for perform set test, the receiving ATU shall transmit the eoc command for self test acknowledge, including the minimum amount of time to wait until requesting the results of the self-test. The receiving ATU shall then perform a self test procedure and generate a self test result. The duration and specific procedure of the self test are vendor discretionary but they shall not interfere with the functions of the ATU and the status of connections. Therefore, the self test procedure performed upon receipt of this command may differ from those performed in the SELFTEST state shown in Figures D.1 and D.2. The result of the self test shall be stored within the indicated number of seconds of transmitting the ACK message. The indicated amount of time shall be between 1 and 255 s.

The most significant octet of the self test result shall be $00_{16}$ if the self test passed and $01_{16}$ if it failed. The meaning of "failure" is vendor discretionary. The length of the self test result is 4 octets, and the syntax of all other octets is vendor discretionary.

The result of self test may be accessed using the inventory command defined in 9.4.1.4.

#### 9.4.1.2.2 Update test parameters

Upon receipt of the eoc command for update test parameters, the receiving ATU shall transmit the eoc command ACK message and update the test parameter set as defined in 9.4.1.10. Test parameters shall be updated and stored within 10 s after the request is received. Upon receipt of the eoc command ACK message, the transmitting ATU shall wait at least 10 s after arrival of the eco command ACK message before starting the overhead commands defined in 9.4.1.10 to access the test parameter values.

Upon receipt of this command, the test parameter values relating to the most recent initialization procedure shall be no longer accessible through the overhead commands defined in 9.4.1.10 within 10 s. They may be discarded by the receiving ATU immediately upon receipt of the eoc command for update test parameters.

#### 9.4.1.2.3 Start/End transmit corrupt CRC

Upon receipt of the eoc command for start transmit corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU PMS-TC function shall transmit the eoc command ACK message and transmit a corrupted CRC value in all latency paths until cancelled by the eoc command for end transmit corrupt CRC. A corrupt CRC is any one that does not correspond to the CRC procedure in 7.7.1.2. Only the CRC value is affected by this eoc command. This command may be used conjunction with the eoc command for receive

corrupt CRC (either previously or subsequently) so that both the transmit and receive CRC values are corrupted. The PMS-TC function of the transmitting ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

Upon receipt of the eoc command for end transmit corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU PMS-TC function shall transmit the eoc command ACK message and transmit CRC bits determined by the procedure in 7.7.1.2. This command may be transmitted even if the eoc command for start transmit corrupt CRC has not been transmitted. The PMS-TC function of the transmitting ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

#### 9.4.1.2.4 Start/End receive corrupt CRC

Upon receipt of the eoc command for start receive corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU shall send the eoc command ACK message. Upon receipt of that eoc command ACK message, the transmitting ATU PMS-TC function shall begin transmitting corrupt CRC bits in all latency paths until cancelled by the eoc command for end receive corrupt CRC. A corrupt CRC is any one that does not correspond to the CRC procedure in 7.7.1.2. This command may be used conjunction with the eoc command for transmit corrupt CRC (either previously or subsequently) so that both the transmit and receive CRC values are corrupted. The PMS-TC function of the receiving ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

Upon receipt of the eoc command for end receive corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU shall transmit the eoc command ACK message. Upon receipt of the eoc command ACK message, the transmitting ATU PMS-TC function shall transmit CRC bits determined by the procedure in 7.7.1.2. This command may be transmitted even if the eoc command for start receive corrupt CRC has not been transmitted. The PMS-TC function of the receiving ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

### 9.4.1.3 Time commands

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall each contain timers that are utilized to maintain performance monitoring counters as described in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. It is common practice to correlate the counters on each of the DSL line. To facilitate this, it is necessary to synchronize the timers on each end of the line. The set time and read time commands are provided for this purpose. The counters defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4] should be updated each time the time counter contains a time value that is an integer multiple of 15 minutes (e.g., 1:00:00, 3:15:00, 15:30:00, 23:45:00).

The requirements for timer accuracy and drift are under study.

The time commands shall be used to synchronize clocks in the ATU as defined in this clause. The time command may be initiated by the ATU-C as shown in Table 9-12. The ATU-R may only reply using the commands shown in Table 9-13. The time commands shall consist of multiple octets as shown in Tables 9-12 and 9-13. The first octet shall be the time command designator shown in Table 9-3. The following octet shall be as shown in Tables 9-12 and 9-13. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-12/G.992.3 – Time command transmitted by the ATU-C**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 10 | $01_{16}$ Set followed by 8 octets formatted as HH:MM:SS per ISO 8601 [5] |
| 2 | $02_{16}$ Read |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-13/G.992.3 – Time commands transmitted by the ATU-R**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $80_{16}$ ACK |
| 10 | $82_{16}$ Read followed by 8 octets formatted as HH:MM:SS per ISO 8601 [5] |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

Upon receipt of the set time command, the receiving ATU shall transmit the ACK response message. The receiving ATU shall then set its internal clock to the value contained in the message.

Upon receipt of the read time command, the receiving ATU shall transmit the response message that includes the current value of the time counter.

### 9.4.1.4 Inventory command

The inventory commands shall be used to determine the identification and capabilities of the far ATU as defined in this clause. The inventory commands may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-14. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-15. The inventory command shall consist of a two octets. The first octet shall be inventory command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be one of the values shown in Table 9-14. The inventory response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be inventory command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be the same as the received inventory command second octet, XOR $80_{16}$. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-15. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-14/G.992.3 – Inventory commands transmitted by the initiator**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $01_{16}$ Identification |
| 2 | $02_{16}$ Auxiliary Identification |
| 2 | $03_{16}$ Self Test Result |
| 2 | $04_{16}$ PMD Capabilities |
| 2 | $05_{16}$ PMS-TC Capabilities |
| 2 | $06_{16}$ TPS-TC Capabilities |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-15/G.992.3 – Inventory command transmitted by the responder**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 58 | $81_{16}$ followed by:<br>8 octets of vendor id<br>16 octets of version number<br>32 octets of serial number |
| variable | $82_{16}$ followed by:<br>8 octets of vendor id and<br>multiple octets of auxiliary inventory information |
| 6 | $83_{16}$ followed by:<br>4 octets of self test results |
| variable | $84_{16}$ followed by:<br>PMD capabilities information |
| variable | $85_{16}$ followed by:<br>PMS-TC capabilities information |
| variable | $86_{16}$ followed by:<br>TPS-TC capabilities information |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

Upon receipt of one of the inventory commands, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The vendor ID in the identification response shall be formatted according to the vendor id of G.994.1. The vendor ID field is used to specify the system integrator. In this context, the system integrator usually refers to the vendor of the smallest field-replaceable unit. As such, the vendor ID in this response may not be the same as the vendor ID indicated within G.994.1.

The version number, serial number, and auxiliary inventory information shall be assigned with respect to the same system integrator as contained in the vendor ID. The syntax of these fields is vendor discretionary and may be interpreted based on the vendor id presented.

The self test results shall be the results of the most recent self test procedure, initiated either at power-up or by the eoc command for self test. The results shall formatted as defined in 9.4.1.2.1.

For a receiving ATU-C, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC capabilities information shall consist of the last previously transmitted G.994.1 CL message, reduced to respectively PMD, PMS-TC, or TPS-TC codepoints only. This is followed by the (Npmd/8) PMD, (Npms/8) PMS-TC or (Ntps/8) TPS-TC octets respectively, included in the last previously transmitted C-MSG1 message (see Table 8-37). Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-20. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-18. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 6-2 and Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the CL and C-MSG1 message.

For a receiving ATU-R, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC capabilities information shall consist of the last previously transmitted G.994.1 CLR message, reduced to respectively PMD, PMS-TC, or TPS-TC codepoints only, as defined below. This is followed by the (Npmd/8) PMD, (Npms/8) PMS-TC or (Ntps/8) TPS-TC octets respectively, included in the last previously transmitted R-MSG1 message (see Table 8-38). Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-22. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-18. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 6-2 and Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the CLR and R-MSG1 message.

A CL or CLR message shall be reduced to information related to a particular sublayer only, while maintaining the G.994.1 tree structure for Par(2) block parsing by the transmitting ATU, through the following steps:

1) Take the Standard Information Field Par(2) block, under the currently selected Spar(1);
2) Set all Npar(2) and Spar(2) codepoints not related to the sublayer to zero;
3) Delete all Npar(3) blocks for which the Spar(2) bit has been set to 0;
4) Octets at the end of any Par block that contain all ZEROs except for delimiting bits may be omitted from transmission, provided that terminating bits are correctly set for the transmitted octets (see 9.2.3/G.994.1).

### 9.4.1.5 Control value read commands

The control parameter commands shall be used to determine the current values of all control parameters within the far ATU as defined in this clause. The control parameter commands may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-16. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-17. The control parameter command shall consist of two octets. The first octet shall be control parameter command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be one of the values shown in Table 9-16. The control parameter response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be control parameter command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be the same as the received control parameter command second octet, XOR $80_{16}$. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-17. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-16/G.992.3 – Control parameter commands transmitted by the initiator**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $01_{16}$ PMD Control Parameters |
| 2 | $02_{16}$ PMS-TC Control Parameters |
| 2 | $03_{16}$ TPS-TC Control Parameters |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-17/G.992.3 – Control parameter command transmitted by the responder**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| variable | $81_{16}$ followed by:<br>PMD control parameter values |
| variable | $82_{16}$ followed by:<br>PMS-TC control parameter values |
| variable | $83_{16}$ followed by:<br>TPS-TC control parameter values |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

Upon receipt of one of the control parameter commands, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The control parameter values contained within the PMD, PMS-TC, and TPS-TC responses shall be the transmit function control parameters currently in use by the receiving ATU.

For a receiving ATU-C, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC control parameter values shall consist of the last previously transmitted G.994.1 MS message, reduced to respectively PMD, PMS-TC, or TPS-TC codepoints only. Within the PMD control parameters only, this is followed by $(4 + NSCds/8)$ octets in R-MSG-PCB format (see Table 8-32, with parameters as defined below). Then follow the (Npmd/8) PMD, (Npms/8) PMS-TC or (Ntps/8) TPS-TC octets respectively, included in the last previously transmitted R-PARAMS message (see Table 8-40), and possibly updated during Showtime. Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-21. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-19. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 6-2 and Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the MS, R-MSG-PCB and R-PARAMS messages.

The ATU-C shall set the octets related to R-MSG-PCB (see Table 8-32) as follows:

- R-MIN_PCB_DS is set to PCBds;
- R-MIN_PCB_US is set to 0;
- HOOK_STATUS is set to 0;
- C-PILOT is set to the pilot subcarrier index currently used by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- R-BLACKOUT bits are set to the values currently used by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- Other bits are reserved and set to 0.

For a receiving ATU-R, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC control parameter values shall consist of the last previously transmitted G.994.1 MS message, reduced to respectively PMD, PMS-TC, or TPS-TC codepoints only. Within the PMD control parameters only, this is followed by $(2 + NSCus/8)$ octets in C-MSG-PCB format (see Table 8-27, with parameters as defined below). Then follow the (Npmd/8) PMD, (Npms/8) PMS-TC or (Ntps/8) TPS-TC octets respectively, included in the last previously transmitted C-PARAMS message (see Table 8-39), and possibly updated during Showtime. Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-23. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-19. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the MS and C-PARAMS messages.

The ATU-R shall set the octets related to C-MSG-PCB (see Table 8-27) as follows:

- C-MIN_PCB_DS is set to 0;
- C-MIN_PCB_US is set to PCBus;
- HOOK_STATUS is set to 0;
- C-BLACKOUT bits are set to the values currently used by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- Other bits are reserved and set to 0.

An MS message shall be reduced to information on a particular sublayer only, while maintaining the G.994.1 tree structure for parsing by the transmitting ATU, through the same steps as taken for reducing the CL or CLR message.

#### 9.4.1.6 Management counter read commands

The management counter read commands shall be used to access the value of certain management counters maintained by the far ATU in accordance with ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. The local counter values for completed time intervals shall be retrieved as described in this clause. The management counter read command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-18. The responses shall

be using the command shown in Table 9-19. The management counter read command shall consist of a two octets. The first octet shall be management counter read command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be one of the values shown in Table 9-18. The management counter read response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be management counter read command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be the same as the received management counter read command second octet, XOR $80_{16}$. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-19. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-18/G.992.3 – Management counter read commands transmitted by the initiator**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $01_{16}$<br>All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-19/G.992.3 – Management counter read command transmitted by the responder**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| $2 + 4 \times (2 \times N_{LP} + 5)$ for PMS-TC and variable for TPS-TC | $81_{16}$ followed by:<br>all the PMS-TC counter values, followed by all the TPS-TC counter values.<br>All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

Upon receipt of one of the management counter read command, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The management counter values shall be derived according to ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4] from locally generated defects and anomalies defined within the clauses 6, 7 and 8. The parameters are transferred in the order and format defined in Table 9-20. The TPS-TC anomaly definitions are dependent upon the TPS-TC type and are defined in the Annex K. All PMD and TPS-TC counter values are defined as 32 bit counters and are inserted in the response message most significant to least significant octet order. For latency paths and TPS-TC functions not currently enabled, no octets shall be inserted into the message.

The counters shall be reset at power-on. The counters shall not be reset with a link state transition and shall not be reset when read. The time periods when the ATU is powered but not in the Showtime state shall be counted as unavailable seconds (see 7.2.1.1.9/G.997.1).

**Table 9-20/G.992.3 – ATU management counter values**

| |
|---|
| **PMD & PMS-TC** |
| Counter of the FEC-0 anomalies |
| Counter of the FEC-1 anomalies |
| Counter of the FEC-2 anomalies |
| Counter of the FEC-3 anomalies |
| Counter of the CRC-0 anomalies |
| Counter of the CRC-1 anomalies |
| Counter of the CRC-2 anomalies |
| Counter of the CRC-3 anomalies |
| FEC errored seconds counter |
| Errored seconds counter |
| Severely errored seconds counter |
| LOS errored seconds counter |
| Unavailable errored seconds counter |
| **TPS-TC** |
| Counters for TPS-TC #0 |
| Counters for TPS-TC #1 |
| Counters for TPS-TC #3 |
| Counters for TPS-TC #4 |

### 9.4.1.7 Power management commands

The power management command shall be used to propose power management transitions from one link state to another as described in the Power management subclause 9.5. The power management command may be initiated by either ATU as prescribed in the Power management subclause 9.5 as shown in Table 9-21. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-22. The power management command is variable in length. The first octet shall be power management command designator shown in Table 9-3. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-21. The power management response commands are variable in length. The first octet shall be power management command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be as shown in Table 9-22. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-21/G.992.3 – Power management commands transmitted by the initiating ATU**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 3 | $01_{16}$ Simple Request followed by:<br>1 octet for the new proposed link state |
| $4 + 4 \times N_{LP}$ | $02_{16}$ L2 Request followed by:<br>1 octet for minimum PCBds value (dB)<br>1 octet for maximum PCBds value (dB)<br>$2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing maximum $L_p$ values for the $N_{LP}$ enabled latency paths,<br>$2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing minimum $L_p$ values for the $N_{LP}$ enabled latency paths |
| 3 | $03_{16}$ L2 Trim followed by the 1 octet for the proposed new value of PCBds (dB) |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-22/G.992.3 – Power management command transmitted by the responding ATU**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $80_{16}$ Grant |
| 3 | $81_{16}$ Reject followed by:<br>1 octet for reason code |
| $6 + 2 \times N_{LP} + 3 \times N_f$ | $82_{16}$ L2 Grant followed by:<br>$2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing new $Lp$ values for the $N_{LP}$ enabled latency paths,<br>1 octet containing the actual PCBds value<br>1 octet containing the exit symbol PCBds value,<br>1 octet containing the exit symbol $b_i/g_i$ table flag,<br>1 octet for the number of carriers $N_f$<br>$3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier |
| 3 | $83_{16}$ L2 Reject followed by:<br>1 octet for reason code |
| 3 | $84_{16}$ L2 Trim Grant followed by<br>1 octet containing the exit symbol PCBds value |
| 3 | $85_{16}$ L2 Trim Reject followed by:<br>1 octet for reason code |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

In the L2 Request, L2 Grant, and L2 Trim Request, and L2 Trim Grant messages, power cutback values shall be expressed as an absolute power cutback in the range of 0 to 40 dB in steps of 1 dB. The cutback is defined in terms of PCBds. The minimum and maximum requested values are defined in absolute terms and not relative to the current PCBds value. Values not inclusively within the range of the PCBds determined during initialization to 40 dB shall not be encoded. It is intended that up to 40 dB of absolute power cutback can be performed for the L2 link state using the PCBds control parameter and that the gain values can be used to additionally adjust the gain per carrier as required.

Reason codes associated with the power management commands are shown in Table 9-23.

**Table 9-23/G.992.3 – Reason codes for power management commands**

| Reason | Octet value | Applicable to reject | Applicable to L2 reject | Applicable to L2 trim reject |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Busy | $01_{16}$ | X | X | |
| Invalid | $02_{16}$ | X | X | X |
| State Not Desired | $03_{16}$ | X | | |
| Infeasible Parameters | $04_{16}$ | | X | X |

#### 9.4.1.7.1 Simple request by ATU-R

Upon receipt of the power management simple request command, the responding ATU-C will transmit either the Grant or Reject command. The link state shall be formatted as $00_{16}$, and $03_{16}$ for L0 and L3 link states, respectively. If any other link state is received, the response shall be the Reject response using reason code $02_{16}$. The ATU-C shall follow procedures defined in 9.5.3.5 or 9.5.3.1, depending upon the proposed power state L0 or L3, respectively. The ATU-C may also reject a request to move to link state L3 using reason code $01_{16}$ because it is temporarily too busy or

using code $03_{16}$ because it has local knowledge that the L3 state is not desired at this time. The ATUs may immediately start the protocol to request transition to the same or a different link state. The ATU-C shall not reject a request to move to link state L0.

In case the ATU-R requests exit from L2 into the L0 state, the ATU-C shall not respond with a Grant command. The ATU-C shall respond with the L2 exit sequence, as defined in 8.7.

#### 9.4.1.7.2 Simple request by ATU-C

Upon receipt of the power management Simple Request command, the responding ATU-R will transmit either the Grant or Reject command. The link state shall be formatted as $03_{16}$ for L3 link states. If any other link state is received, the response shall be the Reject response using reason code $02_{16}$. The ATU-R shall follow procedures defined in 9.5.3.1 to move to link state L3. The ATU-R may instead reject a request to move to link state L3 using reason code $01_{16}$ because it is temporarily too busy or $03_{16}$ because it has local knowledge that the L3 state is not desired at this time. The ATUs may immediately start the protocol to request transition to the same or a different link state.

#### 9.4.1.7.3 L2 request by ATU-C

When sending the L2 Request command, the ATU-C shall specify parameters describing the minimum and maximum average power cutback, defined in terms of the PMD control parameter PCBds. The ATU-C shall also specify the minimum and maximum $L_p$ value for each configured PMS-TC latency path function. Values larger than the current $L_p$ values shall not be encoded.

Upon receipt of the L2 Request command, the ATU-R shall evaluate the parameters found in the L2 Request message and the current operating conditions of the downstream receiver. If the parameters are invalid (i.e., not within the allowed encoding ranges), the ATU-R shall send a L2 Reject command using reason code $02_{16}$. If the parameters are valid but describe an operating condition that cannot be currently satisfied (e.g., because the current line and noise conditions cannot support the configuration), the ATU-R shall send a L2 Reject command using reason code $04_{16}$. If the parameters can be met, the ATU-R shall send an L2 Grant command and follow procedures defined in 9.5.3.3. The L2 Grant command shall contain the actual value of PCBds necessary modifications to the bits and gain tables to be used by the ATUs in the downstream direction. Additionally, the grant command shall describe the PCBds and the $b_i/g_i$ flag value that the ATU-C shall use to transmit a L2 exit sequence as described in 8.7. These should be selected by the receiver to best assure reliable detection of the L2 exit sequence. A $b_i/g_i$ flag value of zero corresponds to the L0 link state; the value of 1 corresponds to the L2 link state. The ATU-R may instead send an L2 Reject command indicating it is temporarily busy using reason code $01_{16}$.

The ATU-R shall send a response command to an L2 request by the ATU-C within the time period defined in Table 7-17. An ATU-R shall not send an L2 Grant command if it has already sent an OLR request command and is awaiting a response.

#### 9.4.1.7.4 L2 trim request by ATU-C

When sending the L2 Trim Request command, the ATU-C shall propose a new value of the PMD control parameter PCBds.

Upon receipt of the power management L2 Trim Request command, the ATU-R shall evaluate the parameter found in the L2 Trim Request message and the current operating conditions of the downstream receiver. If the parameters are invalid (i.e., not within the allowed encoding ranges), the ATU-R shall send a L2 Trim Reject command using reason code $02_{16}$. If the parameters are valid but describe an operating condition that cannot be currently satisfied, the ATU-R shall send a L2 Reject command using reason code $04_{16}$. If the parameters can be met, the ATU-R shall send an L2 Trim Grant command and follow procedures defined in 9.5.3.6. The L2 Trim Grant command shall describe the PCBds value that the ATU-C shall use to transmit a L2 exit sequence.

### 9.4.1.8 Clear eoc messages

The clear eoc command may be used by the G.997.1 function to transfer management octets from one ATU to another (see clause 6/G.997.1). The clear eoc command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-24. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-25. The clear eoc command shall consist of multiple octets. The first octet shall be clear eoc command designator shown in Table 9-3. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-24. The clear eoc response command shall be 2 octets. The first octet shall be the clear eoc command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be as shown in Table 9-25. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-24/G.992.3 – Clear eoc commands transmitted by the initiating ATU**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| variable | $01_{16}$ followed by the entire eoc message to be delivered at the far end<br>All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-25/G.992.3 – Clear eoc command transmitted by the responding ATU**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | $80_{16}$ ACK |
| 3 | $81_{16}$ NACK followed by:<br>1 octet for reason code |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

Upon receipt of the clear eoc command, the ATU shall respond with an acknowledgement (ACK) message. The ATU shall deliver this message to the local G.997.1 management function. The message is delivered transparently. Whatever formatting was applied by the G.997.1 management function at the transmitting end is conveyed at the receiving end, e.g., block based format, variable length command format. The ATU may also reply with a NACK command with reason code Not Supported (value $04_{16}$), indicating the clear eoc message cannot be delivered because the G.997.1 function does not support transport of physical layer OAM messages through the clear eoc (see clause 6/G.997.1).

### 9.4.1.9 Non-standard facility overhead commands

The non-standard facility (NSF) overhead command may be used to transfer vendor discretionary commands from one ATU to another. The NSF overhead command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-26. The responses shall be using the command shown in Tables 9-26 and 9-27. The NSF overhead command shall consist of multiple octets. The first octet shall be NSF overhead command designator shown in Table 9-3 or Table 9-4. The command designator in Table 9-4 is for lower priority commands that should not interrupt the flow of normal priority commands in Table 9-3. The remaining octets of both standard and low priority messages shall be as shown in Table 9-26. The NSF overhead response command shall be 2 octets. The first octet shall be the NSF overhead command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be as shown in Table 9-27. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-26/G.992.3 – Non-standard Facility (NSF) overhead commands transmitted by the initiating ATU**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| variable | $01_{16}$ followed by:<br>NSF identifier field<br>NSF message field<br>All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-27/G.992.3 – Non-standard Facility (NSF) overhead transmitted by the responding ATU**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 2 | Command<br>$80_{16}$ ACK |
| 2 | $81_{16}$ NACK<br>All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

Upon receipt of the NSF overhead command, the ATU shall respond with either an acknowledgement (ACK) message or a negative acknowledgement message (NACK). The ACK is used to indicate that the NSF identifier field is recognized. The NACK is used to indicate that the NSF identifier field or NSF message field is not recognized.

The combination of the NSF identifier field and NSF message field corresponds to a non-standard information block as defined in Figure 11/G.994.1, without the non-standard information length octet. The NSF identifier field consists of 6 octets. The first 2 octets are a country code as defined by ITU-T Rec. T.35. The remaining 4 octets is a provider code as specified by the country identified in ITU-T Rec. T.35. The NSF message field consists of M octets and contains vendor-specific information. The length and syntax of the NSF message field are not specified and are dependent upon the NSF identifier.

### 9.4.1.10 Test parameter messages

The PMD test parameters read commands shall be used to access the value of certain PMD test parameters maintained by the far ATU in accordance with the description of the PMD function. The local parameter values shall be retrieved as described in this subclause. The PMD test parameter read command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-28. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-29. The PMD test parameter read command shall consist of a two octets. The first octet shall be PMD test parameter command designator shown in Table 9-4. The second octet shall be one of the values shown in Table 9-28. The PMD test parameter read response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be PMD test parameter read command designator shown in Table 9-4. The second shall correspond to received management counter read command. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-29. The octets shall be sent using the format described in 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in 7.8.2.4.

**Table 9-28/G.992.3 – PMD test parameter read commands transmitted by the initiator**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| 3 | $01_{16}$ Single Read followed by:<br>1 octet describing the test parameter id |
| 3 | $02_{16}$ Multiple Read Block followed by:<br>1 octet describing the subcarrier index |
| 2 | $03_{16}$ Next Multiple Read: |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |

**Table 9-29/G.992.3 – PMD test parameter read command transmitted by the responder**

| Message length (Octets) | Element name (Command) |
|---|---|
| variable (see Note) | $81_{16}$ followed by octets for the test parameter arranged for the single read format |
| 12 | $82_{16}$ followed by octets for the test parameters arranged for the multiple read format |
| 2 | $80_{16}$ NACK |
| | All other octet values are reserved by the ITU-T. |
| NOTE – Variable length equals 2 plus length shown in Table 9-30. | |

Upon receipt of one of the PMD test parameter read commands, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. If an unrecognised test parameter is requested, the response shall be a PMD test parameter command for NACK. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The PMD test parameters are all derived according to the procedures in the PMD function sub-clause of this Recommendation. Following initialization, the PMD shall maintain training test parameters until the overhead command for update test parameters is received.

The parameters are transferred in the order and format defined in Table 9-30. During a test parameter read command for single read, all information for the test parameter is transferred. If the test parameter is an aggregate parameter, only one value is transferred. If the test parameter has a value per subcarrier, then all values are transferred from subcarrier index #0 to subcarrier index #$NSC$ – 1 in a single message. The format of the octets is as described in PMD subclause. Values that are formatted as multiple octets shall be inserted in the response message most significant to least significant octet order.

During a test parameter read command for multiple read or next, information for all test parameters associated with a particular subcarrier as are transferred. Aggregate test parameters are not transferred with the PMD test parameter read command for multiple read or next. The subcarrier used for a PMD test parameter read command for multiple read shall be the subcarrier contained within the command. This subcarrier index shall be saved. Each subsequent PMD test parameter command for next shall increment and use the saved subcarrier index. If the subcarrier index reaches $NSC$, the response shall be a PMD test parameter command for NACK. The per subcarrier values are inserted into the message according to the numeric order of the octets designators show in Table 9-30. The format of the octets is as described in PMD subclause of this Recommendation. Values that are formatted as multiple octets shall be inserted in the response message most significant to least significant octet order.

**Table 9-30/G.992.3 – PMD test parameter ID values**

| Test parameter ID | Test parameter name | Length for single read | Length for multiple read |
|---|---|---|---|
| $01_{16}$ | Channel Transfer Function *Hlog(f)* per subcarrier | 2 + *NSC* × 2 octets | 4 octets |
| $02_{16}$ | Reserved by ITU-T | | |
| $03_{16}$ | Quiet Line Noise PSD *QLN(f)* per subcarrier | 2 + *NSC* octets | 3 octets |
| $04_{16}$ | Signal to noise ratio *SNR(f)* per subcarrier | 2 + *NSC* octets | 3 octets |
| $05_{16}$ | Reserved by ITU-T | | |
| $21_{16}$ | Line Attenuation *LATN* | 2 octets | N/a |
| $22_{16}$ | Signal Attenuation *SATN* | 2 octets | N/a |
| $23_{16}$ | Signal-to-Noise Margin *SNRM* | 2 octets | N/a |
| $24_{16}$ | Attainable Net Data Rate *ATTNDR* | 4 octets | N/a |
| $25_{16}$ | Near-end Actual Aggregate Transmit Power *ACTATP* | 2 octets | N/a |
| $26_{16}$ | Far-end Actual Aggregate Transmit Power *ACTATP* | 2 octets | N/a |

In transferring the value of the channel transfer function *Hlog(f)*, the measurement time shall be inserted into the message, followed by the value *m* (see 8.12.3.1). The measurement time is included only once in a PMD test parameter response for single read. The measurement time is included in each response for multiple read or next multiple read.

In transferring the value of the quiet line noise *QLN(f),* the measurement time shall be inserted into the message, followed by the *n* value (see 8.12.3.2). The measurement time is included only once in a PMD test parameter response for single read. The measurement time is included in each response for multiple read or next multiple read.

In transferring the value of the signal-to-noise ration *SNR(f)*, the measurement time shall be inserted into the message, followed by the *snr* value (see 8.12.3.3). The measurement time is included only once in a PMD test parameter response for single read. The measurement time is included in each response for multiple read or next multiple read.

The values for test parameters defined with fewer bits than shown in Table 9-30, shall be inserted into the message using the least significant bits of the two octets. Unused more significant bits shall be set to 0 for unsigned quantities and to the value of the sign bit for signed quantities.

#### 9.4.1.10.1 Single read command

Aggregate test parameters shall be retrieved using a single read and response procedure. Per subcarrier test parameters may be exchanged in a similar manner with a single read and response exchanged used to exchange all values for a test parameter, starting from subcarrier 0 to *NSC*.

#### 9.4.1.10.2 Multiple read protocol with next

Per subcarrier exchange parameters may also be exchanged using shorter messages. The first command retrieves each test parameter for a requested subcarrier. A subsequent command retrieves all subcarrier test parameters for the next subcarrier. An invalid response is used to indicate a subcarrier index out of range or when the end of the subcarrier list has been reached.

### 9.5 Power management

The MPS-TC function defines a set of power management states for the ADSL link and the use of the overhead messages to coordinate power management between the ATUs. Power reduction can be achieved by minimizing the energy transmitted by the ATU onto the U-C and U-R reference points as well as by reducing the power consumed by the ATU (e.g., reducing clock speed, turning off drivers). This paragraph defines a set of stable ADSL link states between the ATU-R and ATU-C by specifying the signals that are active on the link in each state. In addition, link transition events and procedures are defined in this paragraph. The details of the ATU coordination with system power management functions are outside the scope of this Recommendation.

The need for transitions in link power state may be determined by receiving primitive indications from the local PMS-TC and PMD functions, as well as receiving messages from the remote MPS-TC unit. Transitions are effected by setting control variables for the local TPS-TC, PMS-TC, and PMD functions as well as sending messages to the remote MPS-TC unit.

#### 9.5.1 ADSL link states

An ATU shall support the ADSL link states shown as mandatory in Table 9-31. These states are stable states and are generally not expected to be transitory.

**Table 9-31/G.992.3 – Power management states**

| State | Name | Support | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| L0 | Full On | Mandatory | The ADSL link is fully functional. |
| L2 | Low Power | Mandatory | The ADSL link is active but a low power signal conveying background data is sent from the ATU-C to the ATU-R. A normal data carrying signal is transmitted from the ATU-R to the ATU-C. |
| L3 | Idle | Mandatory | There is no signal transmitted at the U-C and U-R reference points. The ATU may be powered or unpowered in L3. |

States L1 and L4 to L127 are reserved for use by ITU-T. States L128 to L255 are reserved for vendor specific implementation.

##### 9.5.1.1 Full on L0 state

During the L0 link state, the ATUs shall operate according to the Power Management subclauses of clauses 6, 7 and 8. In the L0 link state, the MPS-TC shall function using all procedures described in 9.4.

During the L0 link state, error recovery is through the initialization procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. At the start of these procedures, the ADSL link state is changed to L3.

##### 9.5.1.2 Low power L2 state

During the L2 link state, the ATUs shall operate according to the Power Management subclauses of clauses 6, 7 and 8. In the L2 link state, the MPS-TC shall function using all procedures described in 9.4 except 9.4.1.1. Messages described in 9.4.1.1 shall not be transmitted.

During link state L2, if the ATU-R determines that a bitswapping would be needed, the ATU-R shall cause a transition back to link state L0 using the procedure described in 9.5.3.5. Likewise, if the ATU-C determines that a bitswapping would be needed, the ATU-C shall cause a transition back to L0 using the procedure described in 9.5.3.4.

In the link state L2, the ATU-C may initiate a power trim procedure described in 9.5.3.6. The ATU-C should monitor ATU-R test parameters through overhead messages described in 9.4.1.10 to know when use of the trim procedure is appropriate.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C shall monitor the TPS-TC and PMS-TC interfaces for the arrival of primitives that indicate data rates larger than the reduced data rates that must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the low power exit procedure described in 9.5.3.4.

Error recovery is through the initialization procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. At the start of these procedures, the ADSL link state is changed for L3.

#### 9.5.1.3 Idle L3 state

Upon the ATU completing the SELFTEST procedures, as shown in Figures D.1 and D.2, the link state is set to the Idle L3 state (not upon receipt of the self test command). During the L3 link state, the ATUs shall operate according to the Power Management subclauses of clauses 6, 7 and 8. In the L3 link state, the MPS-TC has no specified function.

In the L3 link state, an ATU may determine to use the initialization procedure. An ATU that receives a higher layer signal to activate shall use the initialization procedure defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. An ATU that detects the signals of the initialization procedure at the U reference point, if enabled, shall respond by using the initialization procedure. If disabled, the ATU shall remain in L3 link state.

NOTE – The Idle L3 state is a link state. The Idle L3 link state should not be confused with the ATU states C-IDLE or R-IDLE as shown in Figures D.1 and D.2 respectively.

### 9.5.2 Stationarity control mechanism

ATU-C PMD control parameters provide means to configure the minimum duration within link state L0 (before transition to a different link state) and the minimum duration within link state L2 before using the power trim procedure. This L2 minimum does not restrict the use of the fast exit power procedures. The minimum link state durations may depend on the amount of power cutback to be applied.

ATU-C PMD control parameters also provide means to configure the maximum aggregate transmit power reduction that is allowed in any single L2 low power trim request.

### 9.5.3 Link state transitions

Link state transitions can be initiated by various primitives received within the MPS-TC. Primitives may arise from MPS-TC, TPS-TC, PMS, and PMD functions specified in this Recommendation and from events outside this Recommendation's scope. Transitions may be grouped into several categories that potentially lead to link transitions:

- Local conditions – One or more primitives are received from local TPS-TC, PMS-TC, or PMD function and satisfy conditions that can cause a state transition. Upon successful execution of the transition procedure, the link state is changed. Unsuccessful procedure does not result in a link state change.
- Local command – A local command from higher layer functions is received by the MPS-TC and results in an unconditional request to change states. The reason for requesting a change state is outside the scope of the Recommendation.
- Remote command – A command from remote MPS-TC function is received and can cause a state transition. The reason for requesting the state change may be remote conditions or a remote command.

The allowed state transitions are listed in Table 9-32, and each is assigned a label string. The labeled power management transitions are shown in Figure 9-5.

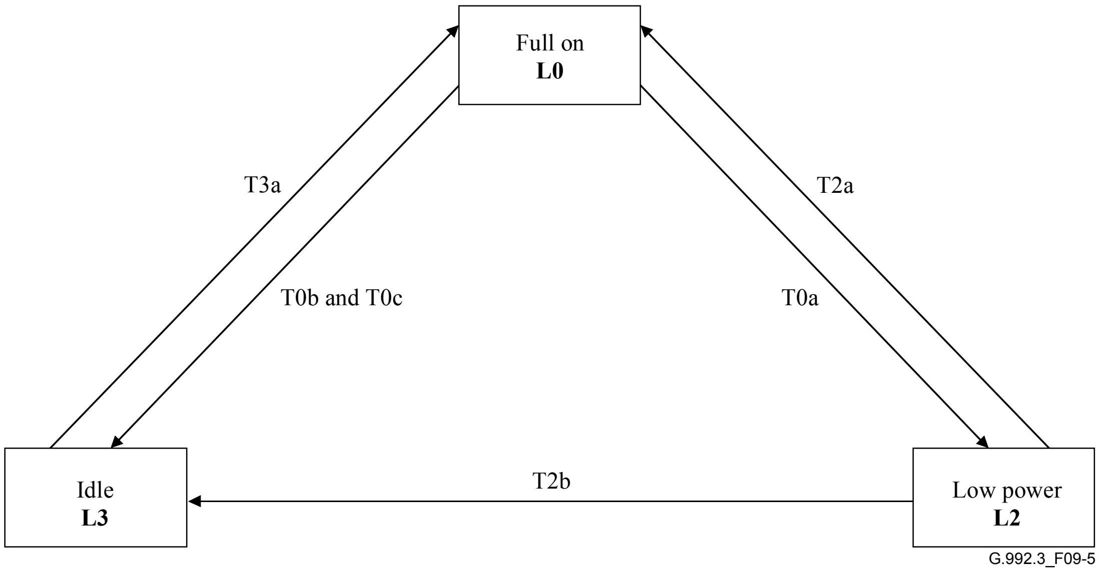



**Figure 9-5/G.992.3 – ADSL link power management states and transitions**

**Table 9-32/G.992.3 – Power management states and transitions**

| Label | Starting state | Resulting state | Event | Procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| T0a | L0 | L2 | Local command to ATU-C | Following this event, the ATUs shall use the procedure for entering low power state in 9.5.3.3. |
| T0b | L0 | L3 | Local command to either the ATU-C or ATU-R | Following this event, the ATUs shall use the orderly shutdown procedure in 9.5.3.1. |
| T0c | L0 | L3 | ATU-R PMD asserts lpr primitive | Following the lpr primitive at the ATU-R, the ATUs shall use the disorderly shutdown procedure in 9.5.3.2. |
| T2a | L2 | L0 | Local primitives at ATU-C or ATU-R | Following these local primitives, the ATUs shall use the low power exit procedure in 9.5.3.4. |
| T2b | L2 | L3 | ATU-R PMD asserts lpr primitive | Following the lpr primitive at the ATU-R, the ATUs shall use the disorderly shutdown procedure in 9.5.3.2. |
| T3a | L3 | L0 | Local ATU command | The ATUs shall use the initialization procedures as defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. |

#### 9.5.3.1 Orderly shutdown procedure

A higher layer entity at the ATU-C or ATU-R may initiate the transition to L3 labeled T0b by providing a command to the MPS-TC function. This transition should be used for orderly power down procedure.

When initiated by the ATU-C, the following steps occur:

1) The ATU-C sends a Power Management request command message containing the proposed new link state L3.
2) The ATU-R responds with either a grant message or a reject message (including a reason code).
3) If the ATU-C receives the grant message, the ATU-C shall coordinate the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

4) When the ATU-R observes the stopped transmission corresponding to the link state L3, it also shall coordinate the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

When initiated by the ATU-R, the following steps occur:

1) The ATU-R sends a Power Management request command message containing the proposed new link state L3.
2) The ATU-C responds with either a grant message or a reject message.
3) If the ATU-R receives the grant message, the ATU-R stops transmitting.
4) When the ATU-R observes the stopped transmission, it also stops transmitting.

#### 9.5.3.2 Disorderly shutdown procedure

The ATU-R may initiate the transitions to L3 labeled T0c and T2b. These transitions should only be used if power is unexpectedly removed from the ATU-R.

Upon detection of the near-end loss of power (lpr) primitive by the ATU-R, it shall send the lpr indicator bit at least 3 consecutive times prior to coordinating the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. Upon detection of the far-end lpr primitive followed by the near-end loss of signal (LOS) defect, the ATU-C shall coordinate the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

#### 9.5.3.3 Low power entry procedure

A higher layer entity at the ATU-C may initiate the transition to L2 labeled T2a by providing a command to the MPS-TC function.

The following steps occur to successfully signal entry into the L2 link state:

1) The ATU-C sends a power management L2 request command message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-21.
2) The ATU-R shall respond with an L2 grant message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-22. The ATU-R may also respond with a L2 reject message by supplying a reason code defined in Table 9-23 (see 9.4.1.7.3).
3) If the ATU-C receives the L2 grant message, the ATUs shall coordinate the entry into the L2 link state using procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

#### 9.5.3.4 ATU-C initiated low power fast exit procedure

During the L2 link state, the ATU-C can use the low power exit procedure to signal the return to the L0 link state. For this purpose, a PMD L2 exit sequence is defined in 8.7.

The following steps occur to successfully signal return to the link state L0:

1) The ATU-C shall transmit a PMD L2 exit sequence as defined in 8.7.
2) After transmitting the PMD L2 exit sequence, the ATU-C shall coordinate the exit from the L2 into the L0 link state using procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.
3) Upon detection of the L2 exit sequence, the ATU-R shall coordinate the exit from the L2 into the L0 link state using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

#### 9.5.3.5 ATU-R initiated low power exit procedure

During the L2 link state, the ATU-R can use the low power exit procedure to change to the L0 link state. For this purpose, an overhead power management request command is defined.

The following steps occur to successfully signal return to the link state L0:

1) The ATU-R sends an overhead power management request message containing the request to transition to link state L0.

2) The ATU-C shall grant the request using the exit mechanism described in the ATU-C initiated low power exit procedure in 9.5.3.4.

#### 9.5.3.6 Low power trim procedure

During the L2 link state, the ATU-C can use the low power trim procedure to reduce downstream power of all bins constant power reduction value.

The following steps occur:

1) The ATU-C sends a power management L2 trim command message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-21.
2) The ATU-R shall respond with an L2 trim grant message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-22. The ATU-R may also send the L2 trim reject command by supplying a reason code defined in Table 9-23 (see 9.4.1.7.4).
3) If the ATU-C receives the L2 trim grant message, the ATUs shall coordinate the change to the L2 link state using procedures defined in 8.7.

The ATUs shall not modify the stored L0 control parameters during this procedure.

If the ATU-C needs to use the ATU-C initiated low power exit procedure, the ATU-C shall not send the Synchflag in response to trim grant message after an L2 exit sequence is initiated (i.e., after the first L2 exit symbol is transmitted, see 8.7.6).

If an L2 exit sequence immediately follows the completion of the low power trim procedure, the L2 exit sequence shall be transmitted using the L0 or new L2 control values of the PMD (depending on the $b_i/g_i$ flag defined in 8.7.2 and 9.4.1.7.3).

## 10 Dynamic behaviour

The ATUs contain several dynamic behaviours, including initialization, on-line reconfigurations and power management transitions. The control of dynamic behaviour of G.992.3 transceivers is not easily seen from the block diagrams of the TPS-TC, PMS-TC, and PMD functions (shown in Figure 5-1). However, the control flows are provided by the Recommendation to enable the following types of dynamic behaviours.

### 10.1 Initialization

Initialization is a special case of a power management transition and is used to enter the L0 state. The allowed procedures for moving into the L0 link state are described in 9.5.3. Initialization is also used as an error recovery procedure in all link states.

Transceiver initialization may be caused by higher layer functions external to the ATUs or by error condition internal to the modems. From the perspective of the local ATU, high layer signals or commands will cause the modem to start the initialization sequence. In addition, the local ATU may start the initialization procedure in response to detection of U reference point signals.

### 10.2 On-line Reconfiguration (OLR)

On-line reconfiguration is a powerful feature of this Recommendation. It is provided so the ATUs can autonomously maintain operation within limits set by control parameters during times when line or environment conditions are slowly changing. When the control parameters cannot be maintained through autonomous on-line reconfiguration, an error condition occurs.

On-line reconfiguration is also used to optimise ATU settings following initialization, especially when using the fast initialization sequence that requires making faster estimates during training.

In addition, higher layer data, management, and control functions can make use of on-line reconfiguration. In these cases, the on-line reconfiguration is associated with various application

options of ADSL.

### 10.2.1 Types of on-line reconfiguration

Reconfiguration takes three forms, although the designation of these forms is primarily for convenience of description. The forms of on-line reconfiguration are: Bit Swapping (BS), Dynamic Rate Repartitioning (DRR) and Seamless Rate Adaptation (SRA).

Bit Swapping (BS) reallocates data and power (i.e., margin) among the allowed subcarriers without modification of the higher layer features of the physical layer. Bit Swapping reconfigures the bits and fine gain ($b_i$, $g_i$) parameters without changing any other PMD or PMS-TC control parameters. After a Bit Swapping reconfiguration the total data rate ($\Sigma L_p$) is unchanged and that data rate on each latency path ($L_p$) is unchanged. Because bit swapping is used for autonomous changes to maintain the operating conditions for the modem during changing environment conditions, BS is a mandatory feature. The procedure for BS is defined in the OLR message command subclause in 9.4.1.1 and shall be implemented using Type 1 OLR messages.

Dynamic Rate Repartitioning (DRR) is used to reconfigure the data rate allocation between multiple latency paths by modifying the frame multiplexor control parameters ($L_p$). DRR can also include modifications to the bits and fine gain ($b_i$, $g_i$) parameters, reallocating bits among the subcarriers. DRR does not modify the total data rate ($\Sigma L_p$) but does modify the individual latency path data rates ($L_p$). DRR can include a change in the number of octets from frame bearer #*n* per Mux Data Frame on latency path #*p*, i.e., in $B_{p.n}$ Because DRR is used in response to higher layer commands, DRR is an application option. The ability to support DRR is identified during the initialization procedure. The procedure for DRR is defined in the OLR message command subclause in 9.4.1.1 and shall be implemented using Type 2 OLR messages.

Seamless Rate Adaptation (SRA) is used to reconfigure the total data rate ($\Sigma L_p$) by modifying the frame multiplexor control parameters ($L_p$) and modifications to the bits and fine gains ($b_i$, $g_i$) parameters. Since the total data rate is modified, at least one latency path (or more) will have a new data rate ($L_p$) after the SRA. The number of frame bearer octets per Mux Data Frame can also be modified in SRA transactions. Because SRA is used in response to higher layer commands, SRA is an application option. The ability to support SRA is identified during the initialization procedure. Any ATU that implements the optional PMD short initialization procedure should implement SRA operations. The procedure for SRA is defined in the OLR message command subclause in 9.4.1.1 and shall be implemented using Type 3 OLR messages.

### 10.2.2 On-line reconfiguration procedures

The procedure for reconfiguration of the PMD functions is begun by the transport of control messages between the ATU control entities, over the upstream and/or downstream PMS-TC control signals. The control messages that shall be used for each of these PMD parameter reconfiguration types is defined in 9.4.1.1. The messages describe the requested changes to the upstream or downstream TPS-TC, PMS-TC or PMD functions. After the control messages have been sent, the transmit PMS-TC function generates a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive, resulting in the transmit PMD function transporting the Synchflag over the U interface as a time marker for when the on-line reconfiguration takes effect. Following the reconfiguration, each PMD function notifies the PMS-TC function of the reconfiguration with a PMD.Synchflag primitive; the transmit PMD function uses a .confirm primitive and the receive PMD function uses a .indicate primitive.

#### 10.2.2.1 Receiver initiated procedure

A successful receiver initiated reconfiguration has the following steps (see Figure 10-1):

1) If the reconfiguration procedure is initiated by the ATU's control or management function, a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive is used to trigger a reconfiguration of the receive PMD function to the new *L* value. The receiving ATU's control or management function uses

similar primitives to pass new control parameter values to the receive TPS-TC and PMS-TC functions, if these functions are involved in the reconfiguration.

2) The receive PMD function sends a PMD.Control.request primitive to the receiving ATU's control function, carrying the new values of the far-end transmit PMD function's control parameters. This primitive may be sent autonomously (with unchanged *L* value, i.e., receiver initiated bitswap) or in response to a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive (with change of *L* value, i.e., receiver initiated rate adaptation).

3) The receiving ATU's control function sends the necessary control messages describing the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters to the transmitting ATU's control function. These messages may also include reconfiguration of TPS-TC and PMS-TC function control parameters.

4) The receiving ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.confirm primitive to the receive PMD function, which then waits for a PMD.Synchflag to be received from the transmit PMD function.

5) When the control messages have been successfully received by the transmitting ATU's control function, the transmitting ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.indicate primitive to the transmit PMD function, carrying the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters. The transmitting ATU's control function uses similar primitives to pass new control parameters values to the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions, if these functions are involved in the reconfiguration.

6) The transmit TPS-TC sends a Frame.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function, which sends a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMD function as an indication that the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are ready to be reconfigured.

7) The transmit PMD function transmits the PMD.Synchflag primitive on the line as defined in 8.7, as a time marker for the instant where the reconfiguration will take place. The PMD.Synchflag primitive is received by the receive PMD function. This primitive may be sent autonomously by the transmit PMD function if the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are not involved in the reconfiguration.

8) At the instant the reconfiguration takes place (see 8.16.2), the transmit PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function, which sends a Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the reconfiguration takes place. For the transmit PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames received from the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.confirm primitive) changes.

9) At the instant the reconfiguration takes place (see 8.16.2), the receive PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive PMS-TC function, which sends a Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the reconfiguration takes place. For the receive PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames delivered to the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.indicate primitive) changes.

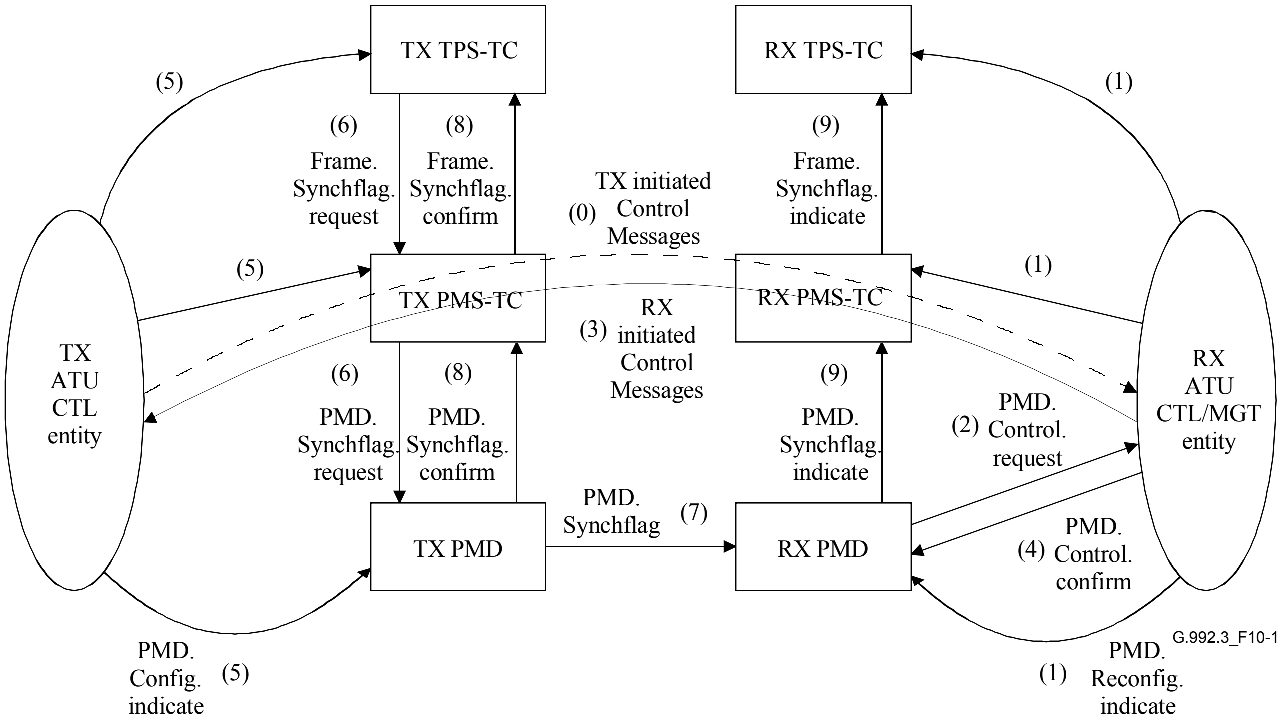



**Figure 10-1/G.992.3 – Steps involved in the receiver initiated on-line reconfiguration**

#### 10.2.2.2 Transmitter initiated procedure

A successful transmitter initiated reconfiguration has the following steps (see Figure 10-1):

1) The transmitting ATU's control or management function sends all necessary control messages describing the new boundary conditions for the TPS-TC and/or PMS-TC function control parameters to the receiving ATU's control function (shown as step 0 in Figure 10-1).

2) The reconfiguration is initiated from the receiving ATU's control function (shown as steps 1 to 9 in Figure 10-1).

This Recommendation supports receiver initiated OLR only. It does not provide for overhead messages to accomplish step 1. Other Recommendations may provide a mechanism to convey the necessary control information from the transmitter to the receiver to accomplish step 1, which then may be followed by step 2 according to procedures defined in this Recommendation.

### 10.3 Power management

Power management includes several dynamic behaviours. All of the transitions for power management are defined in 9.5. Many of the behaviours are caused by local or remove higher layer signals and commands. A few of the transitions are caused by local conditions and can occur autonomously without intervention of higher layers.

#### 10.3.1 Types of power management transitions

The 9.5 identifies power management link state transitions:

- Entry into Low Power State L2 from L0 State, which changes the $b_i$ and/or $g_i$ values and the $L$ value;
- Exit from Low Power State L2 into L0 State, which changes the $b_i$ and/or $g_i$ values and the $L$ value;
- L2 Low Power Trim (while in Low Power L2 State), which changes the PCBds value, without changing the $b_i$ value and the $L$ value.

### 10.3.2 Power management procedures

The procedure for a power management transition is begun by the transport of control messages between the ATU control entities, over the upstream and/or downstream PMS-TC control signals. The control messages that shall be used for a power management transition are defined in 9.4.1.7. The messages describe the requested changes to the downstream TPS-TC, PMS-TC or PMD functions. After the control messages have been sent, the transmit PMS-TC function generates a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive, resulting in the transmit PMD function transporting the synchflag over the U interface as a time marker for when the power management transition takes effect (see 8.17.2). Following the power management transition in the PMD sublayer, each PMD function notifies the PMS-TC function of the power management transition with a PMD.Synchflag primitive; the transmit PMD function uses a .confirm primitive and the receive PMD function uses a .indicate primitive.

#### 10.3.2.1 Receiver initiated procedure

A successful receiver initiated power management transition has the following steps (see Figure 10-2):

1) If the procedure for a power management transition is initiated by the ATU's control or management function, a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive is used to trigger a power management transition of the receive PMD function. The receiving ATU's control or management function uses similar primitives to pass new control parameters values to the receive TPS-TC and PMS-TC functions, if these functions are involved in the power management transition.
2) The receive PMD function sends a PMD.Control.request primitive to the receiving ATU's control function, carrying the new values of the far-end transmit PMD function's control parameters. This primitive may be sent autonomously (L2 exit to allow for subsequent receiver initiated bitswap) or in response to a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive (L2 exit to allow for subsequent receiver initiated rate adaptation or L2 entry or L2 trim).
3) The receiving ATU's control function sends the necessary control messages describing the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters to the transmitting ATU's control function. These messages may also include reconfiguration of TPS-TC and PMS-TC function control parameters.
4) The receiving ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.confirm primitive to the receive PMD function, which then waits for a PMD.Synchflag to be received from the transmit PMD function.
5) When the control messages have been successfully received by the transmitting ATU's control function, the transmitting ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.indicate primitive to the transmit PMD function, carrying the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters. The transmitting ATU's control function uses similar primitives to pass new control parameters values to the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions, if these functions are involved in the power management transition.
6) The transmit TPS-TC sends a Frame.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function, which sends a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMD function as an indication that the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are ready to be reconfigured.
7) The transmit PMD function transmits the PMD.Synchflag primitive on the line as defined in 8.7, as a time marker for the instant where the power management transition will take place. The PMD.Synchflag primitive is received by the receive PMD function. This primitive may be sent autonomously by the transmit PMD function if the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are not involved in the power management transition.

8) At the instant the power management transition takes place (see 8.17.2), the transmit PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function, which sends a Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the power management transition takes place. For the transmit PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames received from the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.confirm primitive) changes.

9) At the instant the power management transition takes place (see 8.17.2), the receive PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive PMS-TC function, which sends a Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the power management transition takes place. For the receive PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames delivered to the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.indicate primitive) changes.

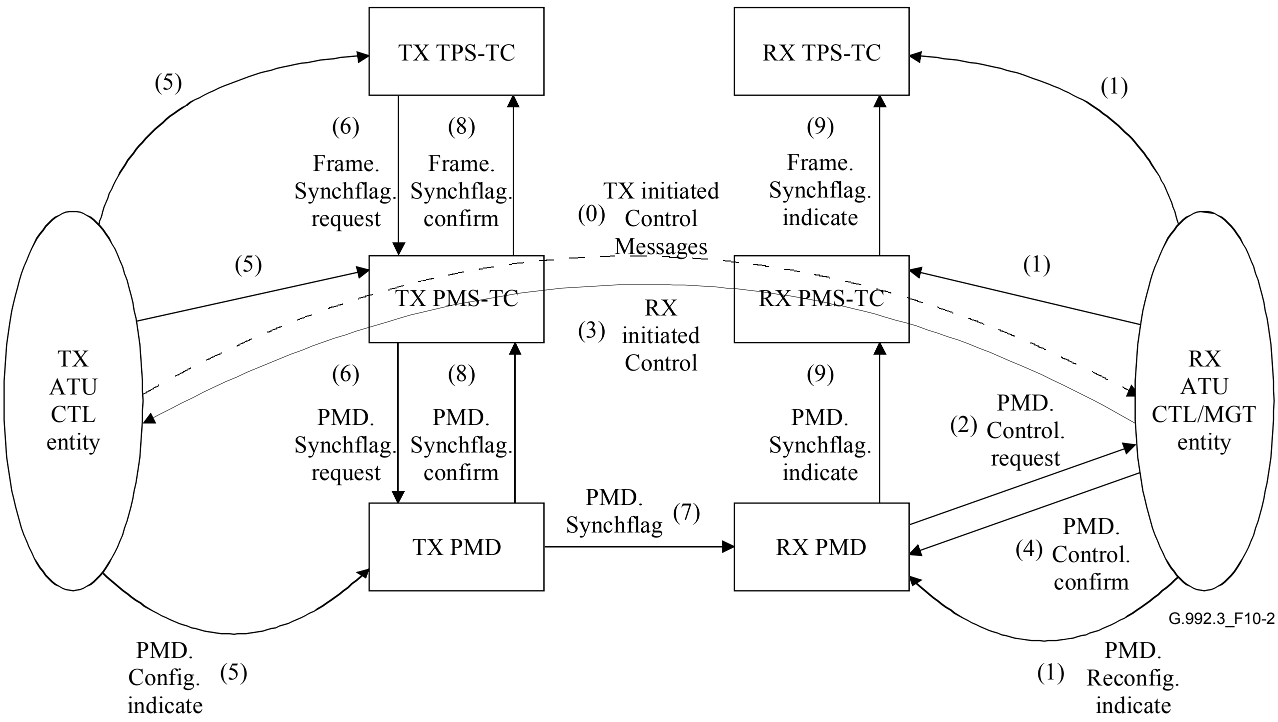



**Figure 10-2/G.992.3 – Steps involved in the receiver initiated power management transition**

### 10.3.2.2 Transmitter initiated procedure

A successful transmitter initiated power management transition has the following steps:

1) The transmitting ATU's control or management function sends all necessary control messages describing the new boundary conditions for the PMS-TC and/or PMD function control parameters to the receiving ATU's control function (shown as step 0 in Figure 10-2).

2) The power management transition is initiated from the receiving ATU's control function (shown as steps 1 to 9 in Figure 10-2).

When entering the L2 state, the ATU-C and ATU-R shall store the L0 state control parameter values. An ATU-C initiated Exit from L2 into L0 involves only the steps 5 to 9 shown in Figure 10-2.

# Annex A

## Specific requirements for an ADSL system operating in the frequency band above POTS

This annex defines those parameters of the ADSL system that have been left undefined in the body of this Recommendation because they are unique to an ADSL service that is frequency-division duplexed with POTS.

### A.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

#### A.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table A.1. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

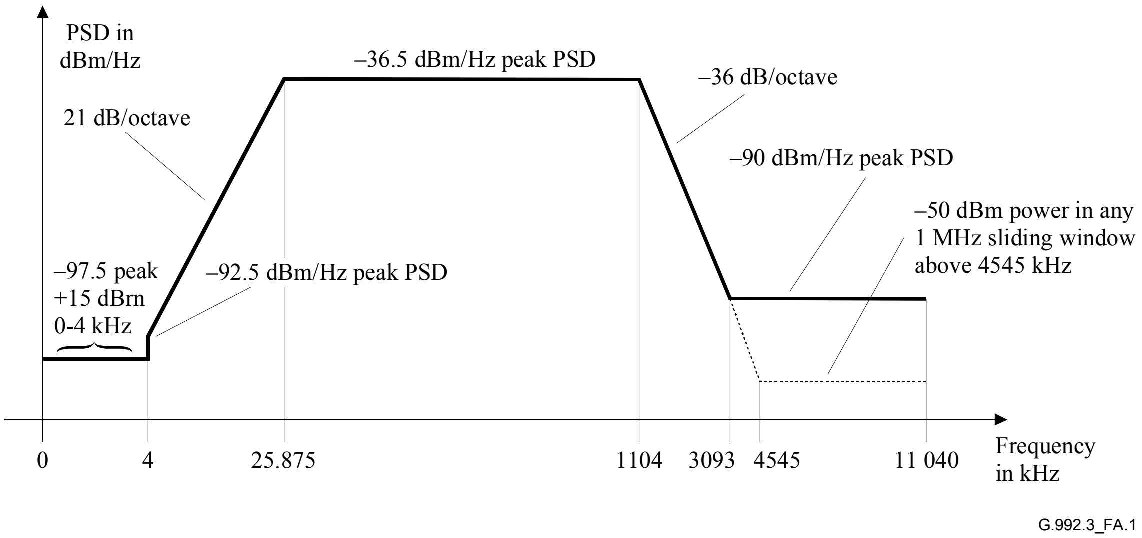
**Table A.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C control parameter settings**

| Parameter | Default setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCds* | 256 | |
| *NOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPds* | 20.4 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |

#### A.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., for ADSL over POTS implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure A.1 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz and includes the POTS band, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.




| Frequency band $f$ (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \leq 4$ | –97.5, with max power in the in 0-4 kHz band of + 15 dBrn |
| $4 < f \leq 25.875$ | $-92.5 + 21 \times \log_2 (f/4)$ |
| $25.875 < f \leq 1104$ | –36.5 |
| $1104 < f \leq 3093$ | $-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2 (f/1104)$ |
| $3093 < f \leq 4545$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2 (f/1104) + 60)$ dBm |
| $4545 < f \leq 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm |

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.
NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.
NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.
NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.
NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect V.90 performance. Originally, the PSD mask continued the 21 dB/octave slope below 4 kHz hitting a floor of –97.5 dBm/Hz at 3400 Hz. It was recognized that this might impact V.90 performance, and so the floor was extended to 4 kHz.
NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

**Figure A.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for overlapped spectrum operation**

### A.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDds* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the Channel Discovery Phase;
- *REFPSDds* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the Transceiver Training Phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDds* – *PCBds* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum passband transmit PSD level allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is –40 dBm/Hz.

#### A.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see A.1.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power in the voiceband, measured at the U-C interface, and that is delivered to the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) interface shall not exceed +15 dBrn (see ITU-T Rec. G.996.1 [3] for method of measurement);
- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds* – *PCBds*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 20.9 dBm.
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds* – *PCBds*) by more than 0.9 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stop bands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

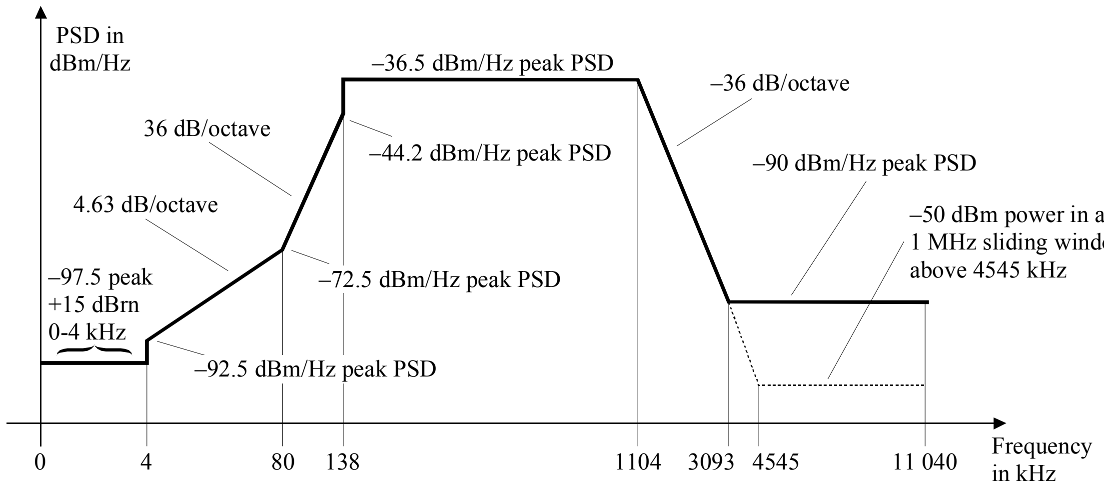
For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 20.4 dBm.

### A.1.3 ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

Figure A.2 defines the spectral mask for the ATU-C transmitted signal, which results in reduced NEXT into the ADSL upstream band, relative to the mask in A.1.2. Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in A.1.2 only in the band from 4 kHz to 138 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 138 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 138 kHz and includes the POTS band, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.




| Frequency band *f* (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \leq 4$ | –97.5, with max power in the in 0-4 kHz band of + 15 dBrn |
| $4 < f \leq 80$ | $-92.5 + 4.63 \times \log_2 (f/4)$ |
| $80 < f \leq 138$ | $-72.5 + 36 \times \log_2 (f/80)$ |
| $138 < f \leq 1104$ | –36.5 |
| $1104 < f \leq 3093$ | $-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$ |
| $3093 < f \leq 4545$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm |
| $4545 < f \leq 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm |

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.

NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.

NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.

NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.

NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect V.90 performance. Originally, the PSD mask continued the 21 dB/octave slope below 4 kHz hitting a floor of –97.5 dBm/Hz at 3400 Hz. It was recognized that this might impact V.90 performance, and so the floor was extended to 4 kHz.

NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

**Figure A.2/G.992.3 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation**

#### A.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See A.1.2.1.

#### A.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See A.1.2.2. In addition, for non-overlapped spectrum operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 20.4 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 19.9 dBm.

### A.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

#### A.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table A.2. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

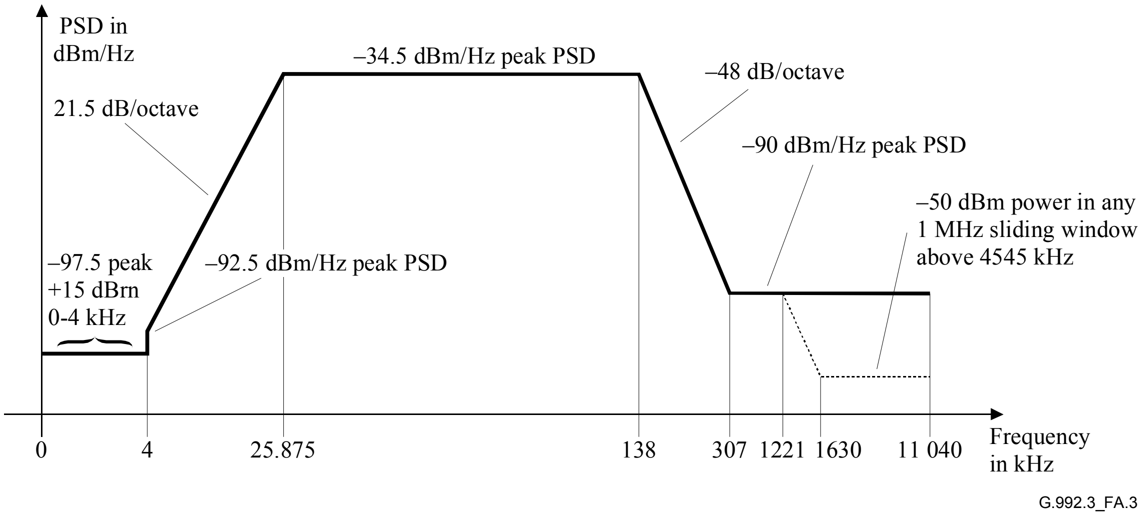
**Table A.2/G.992.3 – ATU-R control parameter settings**

| Parameter | Default Setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCus* | 32 | |
| *NOMPSDus* | –38 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDus* | –38 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPus* | 12.5 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |

### A.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 138 kHz and is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

Figure A.3 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz and includes the POTS band (see also Figure A.1), the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 138 kHz.




| Frequency band *f* (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \leq 4$ | –97.5, with max power in the in 0-4 kHz band of + 15 dBrn |
| $4 < f \leq 25.875$ | $-92.5 + 21.5 \times \log_2(f/4)$ |
| $25.875 < f \leq 138$ | –34.5 |
| $138 < f \leq 307$ | $-34.5 - 48 \times \log_2(f/138)$ |
| $307 < f \leq 1221$ | –90 |
| $1221 < f \leq 1630$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-90 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1221) + 60)$ dBm |
| $1630 < f \leq 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm |

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.

NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.

NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.

NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.

NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect V.90 performance. Originally, the PSD mask continued the 21.5 dB/octave slope below 4 kHz hitting a floor of –97.5 dBm/Hz at 3400 Hz. It was recognized that this might impact V.90 performance, and so the floor was extended to 4 kHz.

NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

**Figure A.3/G.992.3 – ATU-R transmitter PSD mask**

#### A.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDus* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the Channel Discovery Phase;
- *REFPSDus* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the Transceiver Training Phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDus* – *PCBus* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum transmit PSD level allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is –38 dBm/Hz.

#### A.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see A.2.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power in the voiceband, measured at the U-R interface, and that which is delivered to the Plain Old Telephone Service (POTS) interface, shall not exceed +15 dBrn (see ITU-T Rec. G.996.1 [3] for method of measurement);
- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.0 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stop bands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 12.5 dBm.

## A.3 Initialization

For this annex, no additional requirements apply (relative to the main body of this Recommendation).

## A.4 Electrical characteristics

This clause specifies the combination of ATU-x and high-pass filter, as shown in Figures 5-4 and 5-5; further information about the low-pass filter is specified in Annex E.

### A.4.1 Definition of impedance states

The source and load impedances of the ATU-R shall comply with the following, where $Z_S$ and $Z_L$ are the source and the load impedances in the active state and $Z_{S\text{-}hi}$ and $Z_{L\text{-}hi}$, the source and load impedances in the high impedance state, shall be greater than $Z_S$ and $Z_L$, respectively. Vendors are encouraged to select $Z_{S\text{-}hi}$ and $Z_{L\text{-}hi}$ to be significantly higher than $Z_S$ and $Z_L$.

The following requirements on the ATU-R allow for multiple ATU-R installations on the same pair of lines, although only a single ATU-R should be active at any given time. The definitions of these parameters and test procedures are defined in A.4.4.

In each of the four ATU-R impedance states defined in Table A.3, the ATU-R transmitter shall meet the ATU-R transmit PSD mask defined in A.2.

**Table A.3/G.992.3 – ATU-R impedance states**

| ATU-R state | Source impedance | Load impedance |
|---|---|---|
| Unpowered | $Z_{S\text{-}hi}$ | $Z_{L\text{-}hi}$ |
| Disabled<br>(powered with transmitter and receiver inactive) | $Z_{S\text{-}hi}$ | $Z_{L\text{-}hi}$ |
| Inactive<br>(powered with transmitter inactive and receiver active to detect C-TONES) | $Z_{S\text{-}hi}$ | $Z_{L\text{-}hi}$ |
| Active<br>(powered with transmitter and receiver active and initializing or in showtime) | $Z_S$ | $Z_L$ |

The applicability of these impedance states and related requirements to a "gateway device" (i.e., one which is the single device between the access network and the home wiring) is under study.

### A.4.2 POTS current and voltage specification

All electrical characteristics shall be met in the presence of all POTS loop currents from 0 mA to 100 mA, and differential loop voltages as follows:

- DC voltages of 0 V to –60 V.
- Ringing signals no larger than 103 V rms at any frequency from 20 to 30 Hz with a DC component in the range from 0 V to –60 V.

### A.4.3 Electrical characteristics for the ATU-C and for the ATU-R in the active state

#### A.4.3.1 DC characteristics

The input DC resistance of the ATU-x at the U-x interface shall be greater than or equal to 5 MΩ.

NOTE – The most common implementation of the splitter filters is with the low-pass and high-pass connected in parallel at the U-x port. In this arrangement the high-pass filter will typically block DC with capacitors.

#### A.4.3.2 Voiceband characteristics

##### A.4.3.2.1 Input impedance

The imaginary part of the ATU-x input impedance, as measured at the U-x interface, at 4 kHz shall be in the range of 1.1-2.0 kΩ (approximately equivalent to a 20-34 nF capacitor) for the ATU-R (or the ATU-C that has an integrated splitter and high-pass function) and in the range of 500 Ω to 1.0 kΩ (approximately equivalent to 40-68 nF) for the ATU-C designed to be used with an external splitter. In both cases, the imaginary part of the impedance shall increase monotonically below 4 kHz.

Refer to Annex E for additional information.

#### A.4.3.3 ADSL band characteristics

##### A.4.3.3.1 Longitudinal balance

Longitudinal balance at the U-R interface shall be greater than 40 dB over the 30 kHz (see Figure A.1) to 1104 kHz frequency range.

If only the HPF part of the POTS splitter is integrated in the ATU, the measurement of the longitudinal balance in the specified band shall be performed as shown in Figure A.4. If both the LPF and the HPF parts of the POTS splitter are integrated in the ATU, the measurement of the longitudinal balance in the specified band shall be performed with the POTS interfaces terminated with ZTR, as shown in Figure A.5.

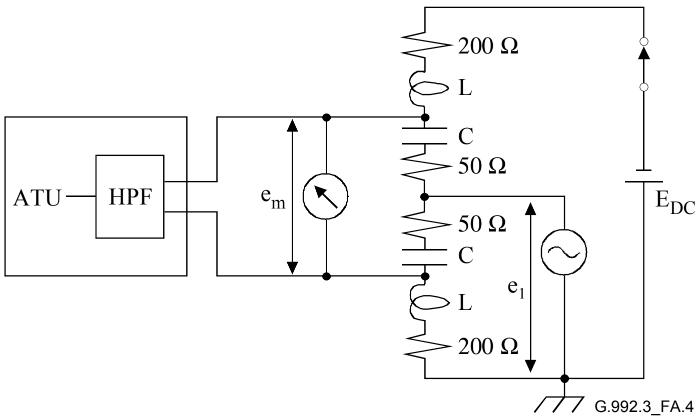



**Figure A.4/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance above 30 kHz measurement method (only HPF integrated)**

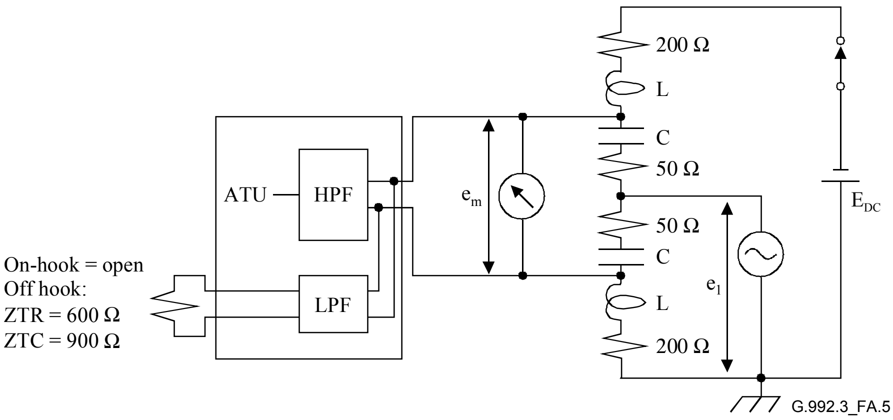



**Figure A.5/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance above 30 kHz measurement method (HPF and LPF integrated)**

The balance shall be measured both in the presence and absence of a DC bias voltage, with the modem under test powered, active and quiet. In some jurisdictions and at some instances, the amount of DC bias may be greater or smaller than this value, however, this level should be sufficient to indicate if any DC bias related balance problems exist. The bias voltage shall be connected using well matched inductors. The impedance of the inductors shall be ≥ 5000j Ω over the frequency range. The 200 Ω resistors have been included for safety reasons.

Capacitors are included in the test setup to prevent large DC current through the 50 Ω resistors. Their impedance should be ≤ | –0.5j Ω | over the frequency range.

The inductors and capacitors included in the set-up need to be matched so as not to affect the results. When larger ratios of the impedance of the inductors and capacitors to the 50 Ω resistors are used, less matching is required in these devices. Inductor matching is typically easier to achieve if a bifilar winding on a single core is used to create the matched pair. Adequate care should be taken to insure no resonance occurs within the measurement frequency range. This may require the use of two inductors in series (of different size) to meet this requirement when the measurement is

broadband. It is also important to ensure that in tests that have DC current flowing, no saturation occurs in the inductors. It should also be noted that some types of capacitors vary in value with applied voltage, in general high quality plastic types should be suitable.

Longitudinal balance (*LBal*) is defined by the equation:

$$LBal = 20\log\left|\frac{e_1}{e_m}\right|\text{dB}$$

where:

$e_1$ = the applied longitudinal voltage (referenced to the building or green wire ground of the ATU);

$e_m$ = the resultant metallic voltage appearing across a terminating resistor.

The test circuit should ideally exhibit 20 dB better balance than is required of the device under test (if less is achieved, a greater error will be present in the measurement). To ensure this has been met, the device under test should be replaced by two 50 Ω resistors and a suitable blocking capacitors to ground, as shown in Figure A.6. The test circuit is suitably balanced if it exceeds the balance requirements by 20 dB when Tip and Ring are connected in either configuration (Tip to A with Ring to B, and Tip to B with Ring to A) to the calibration impedance. Failure to reach this balance indicates an imbalance in either the test circuitry or the calibration impedance. An additional resistor is needed in the calibration circuit when the device under test has the HPF and LPF integrated as in Figure A.5. This resistor provides a DC current path thus testing that the test circuit inductors are not saturated by the DC currents that flow under these test conditions.

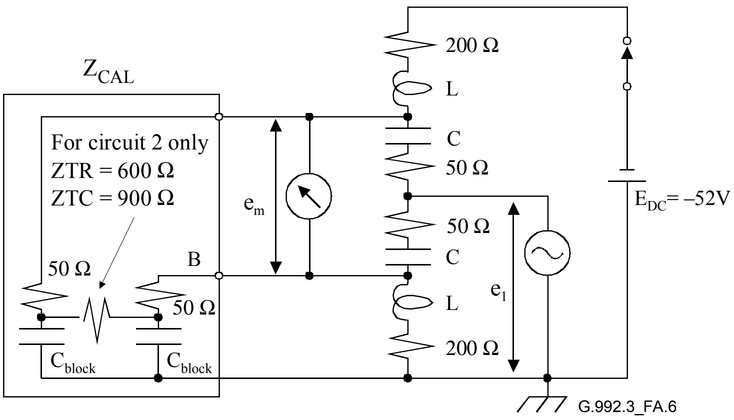



**Figure A.6/G.992.3 – Calibration circuit**

### A.4.4 Electrical characteristics for the ATU-R in the high impedance state

The high-impedance state shall consist of the Unpowered, the Disabled and the Inactive impedance states, as defined in Table A.3.

NOTE – The electrical characteristics for the ATU-R in the high-impedance state are specified for a single ATU-R, with the intend to allow up to three ATU-Rs in the High Impedance state to be connected to the line in parallel, in addition to an ATU-R in the active state at any given time.

#### A.4.4.1 DC characteristics

The input DC resistance of the ATU-R at the U-x interface shall be greater than or equal to 5 MΩ.

### A.4.4.2 Voiceband characteristics

#### A.4.4.2.1 Insertion (bridging) loss

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the High Impedance state shall be less than 0.33 dB at 3.4 kHz, and shall be less than 1 dB at 12 and 16 kHz. This is to facilitate the insertion loss of three ATU-R's on the same line to be less than 1 dB at 3.4 kHz, and to be less than 3 dB at 12 and 16 kHz.

#### A.4.4.2.2 Insertion (bridging) loss distortion

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss distortion in the High Impedance state, as referred to the insertion loss at 3.4 kHz, shall be less than ±0.33 dB over the 200 to 4000 Hz frequency range. This is to facilitate insertion loss distortion of three ATU-R's in the 200 to 4000 Hz frequency range to be less than ±1dB.

#### A.4.4.2.3 Intermodulation distortion

A 4-tone set as specified in ITU-T Rec. O.42 [6], at a level of –9 dBm , when applied to the ATU-R in the High Impedance state, shall produce second and third order intermodulation distortion products at least 80 dB and 85 dB, respectively, below the received signal level.

### A.4.4.3 ADSL band characteristics

#### A.4.4.3.1 Insertion (bridging) loss

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the High Impedance state for the signal received by the active ATU-C shall be less than 0.33 dB at 100 kHz (a frequency in the active ATU-R transmit band).

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the High Impedance state for the signal received by the active ATU-R shall be less than 0.33 dB at 500 kHz (a frequency in the active ATU-R receive band).

#### A.4.4.3.2 Insertion (bridging) loss distortion

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss distortion in the High Impedance state for the signal transmitted by the active ATU-R shall be less than ±0.33 dB, over the 25 to 1104 kHz frequency range.

### A.4.4.4 Characteristics above the ADSL band

#### A.4.4.4.1 Insertion (bridging) loss

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the High Impedance state shall be less than 0.33 dB at 5 MHz and at 9 MHz.

#### A.4.4.4.2 Insertion loss (bridging) distortion

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss distortion shall be less than ±0.33 dB over the 4 to 10 MHz frequency range.

# Annex B

## Specific requirements for an ADSL system operating in the frequency band above ISDN as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.961 Appendices I and II

This annex defines those parameters of the ADSL system that have been left undefined in the body of this Recommendation because they are unique to an ADSL service that is frequency-division duplexed with ISDN Basic Access on the same digital subscriber line. The scope is to establish viable ways enabling the simultaneous deployment of ADSL and 160 kbit/s (2B + D) Basic Rate Access with the constraint to use existing transmission technologies as those specified in ITU-T Rec. G.961 [1] Appendices I and II.

### B.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

#### B.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table B.1. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

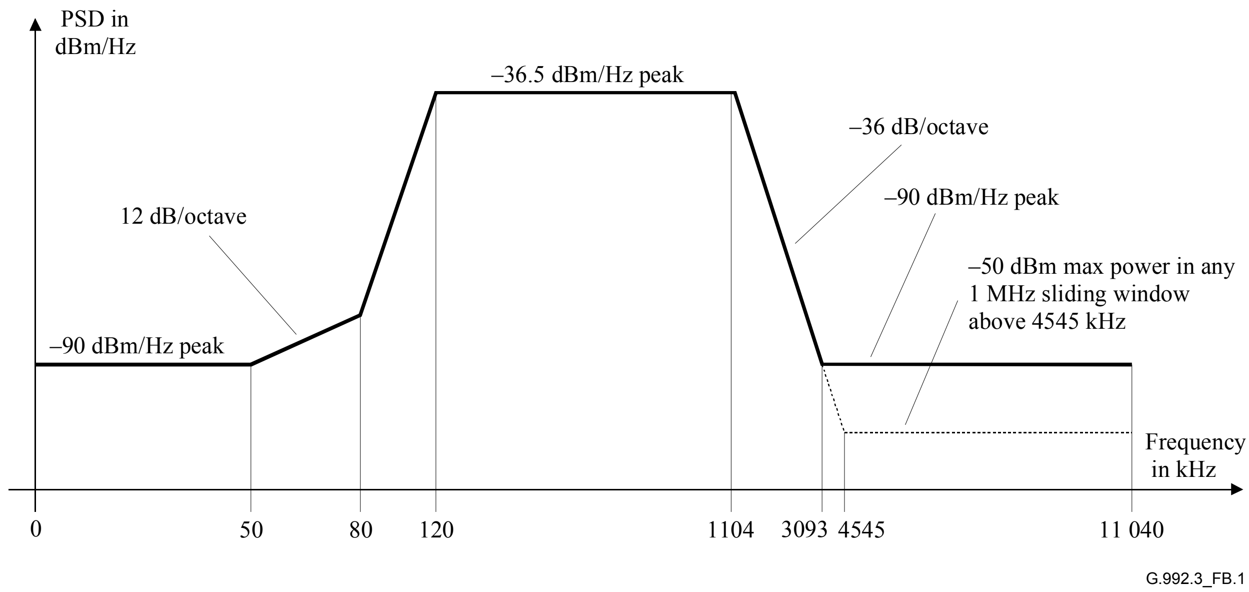
**Table B.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C control parameter settings**

| Parameter | Default setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCds* | 256 | |
| *NOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPds* | 19.9 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |

#### B.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 120 kHz (see Figure B.1) to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., for ADSL over ISDN implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure B.1 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stop-band is the ISDN band and is defined as frequencies below 120 kHz (see Figure B.1) kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.




| Frequency band *f* (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \leq 50$ | –90 |
| $50 < f \leq 80$ | $-90 + 12 \times \log_2(f/50)$ |
| $80 < f \leq 120$ | $-81.8 + 77.4 \times \log_2(f/80)$ |
| $120 < f \leq 1104$ | –36.5 |
| $1104 < f \leq 3093$ | $-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$ |
| $3093 < f \leq 4545$ | –90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$dBm |
| $4545 < f \leq 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm |

**Figure B.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for overlapped spectrum operation**

All PSD measurements made at the Line port of the ISDN splitter shall measure the spectral power into a resistive load having the same value as the design impedance for ADSL (i.e., 100 Ω).

The ISDN port of the ISDN splitter shall be terminated with the appropriate 2B1Q or 4B3T design impedance for ISDN-BA as defined in ETSI TS 102 080 [7].

It is intended that the degradation impact on the ISDN-BA line system performance be no more than 4.5 dB and 4 dB, for 2B1Q and 4B3T line codes respectively, at the insertion loss reference frequency.

### B.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDds* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the Channel Discovery Phase;
- *REFPSDds* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the Transceiver Training Phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDds* – *PCBds* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum transmit PSD allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is –40 dBm/Hz.

#### B.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see B.1.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds – PCBds*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 20.4 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds – PCBds*) by more than 0.9 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stop bands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

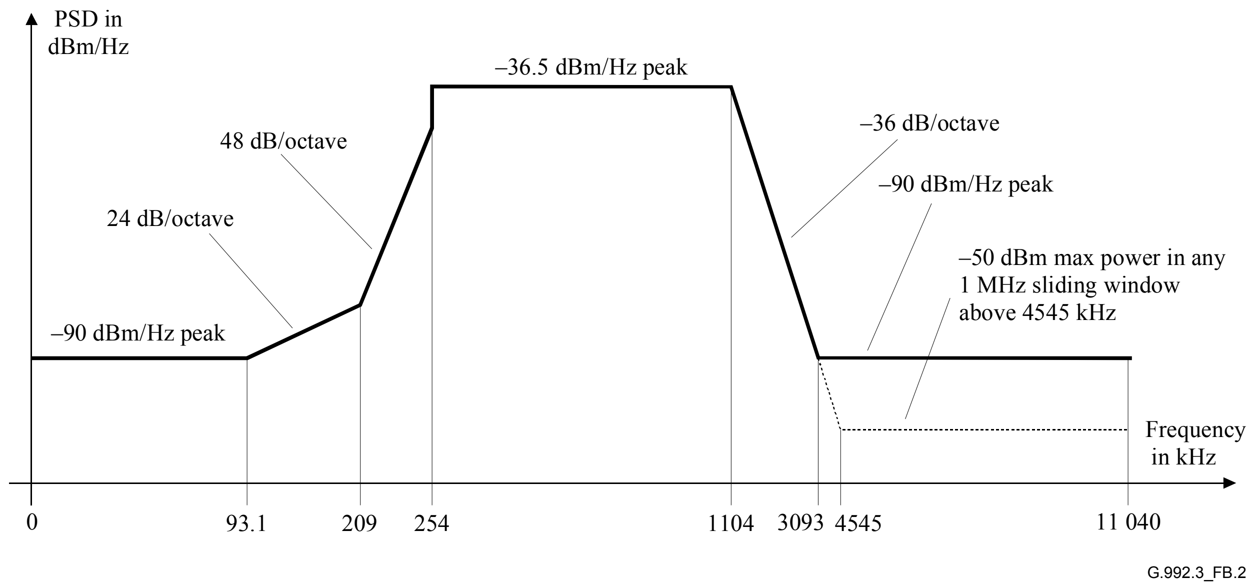
For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 19.9 dBm.

### B.1.3 ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

Figure B.2 defines the spectral mask for the ATU-C transmitted signal, which results in reduced NEXT into the ADSL upstream band, relative to the mask in B.1.2. Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in B.1.2 only in the band from 50 kHz to 254 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 254 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 254 kHz and includes the ISDN band; the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.




| Frequency band (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \leq 93.1$ | –90 |
| $93.1 < f \leq 209$ | $-90 + 24 \times \log_2(f/93{,}1)$ |
| $209 < f \leq 254$ | $-62 + 48 \times \log_2(f/209)$ |
| $254 < f \leq 1104$ | –36.5 |
| $1104 < f \leq 3093$ | $-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$ |
| $3093 < f \leq 4545$ | –90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz] window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$dBm |
| $4545 < f \leq 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz] window of –50 dBm |

**Figure B.2/G.992.3 – ATU-C Transmitter PSD Mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation**

All PSD measurements made at the Line port of the ISDN splitter shall measure the spectral power into a resistive load having the same value as the design impedance for ADSL (i.e., 100 Ω).

The ISDN port of the ISDN splitter shall be terminated with the appropriate 2B1Q or 4B3T design impedance for ISDN-BA as defined in ETSI TS 102 080 [7].

It is intended that the degradation impact on the ISDN-BA line system performance be no more than 4.5 dB and 4 dB, for 2B1Q and 4B3T line codes respectively, at the insertion loss reference frequency.

### B.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See B.1.2.1.

### B.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See B.1.2.2. In addition, for non-overlapped spectrum operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 19.8 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 19.3 dBm.

## B.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

### B.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table B.2. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

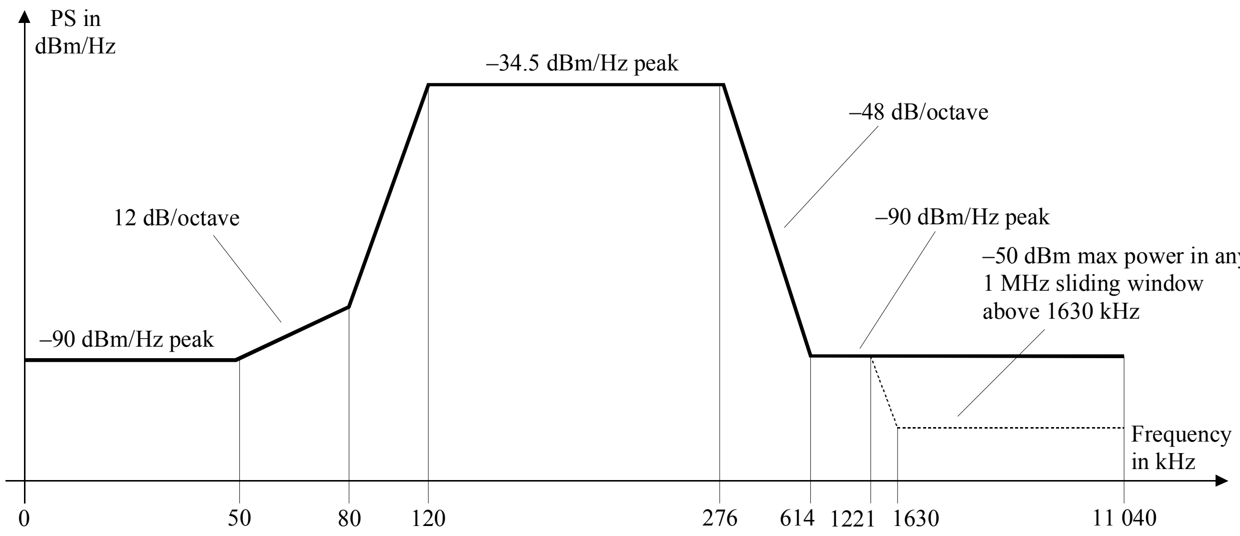
**Table B.2/G.992.3 – ATU-R control parameter settings**

| Parameter | Default setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCus* | 64 | |
| *NOMPSDus* | –38 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDus* | –38 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPus* | 13.3 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| Tones 1 to 32 | Enabled/Disabled | Signifies that the transmission of upstream tones 1 to 32 (or a subset thereof) is enabled/disabled.<br>Negociated in the G.994.1 Phase (see B.3). |

### B.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 120 kHz (see Figure B.1) to 276 kHz and is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

Figure B.3 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stop-band is the ISDN band and is defined as frequencies below 120 kHz (see Figure B.1) kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 276 kHz.




| Frequency band $f$ (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \leq 50$ | –90 |
| $50 < f \leq 80$ | $-90 + 12 \times \log_2(f/50)$ |
| $80 < f \leq 120$ | $-81.8 + 80.9 \times \log_2(f/80)$ |
| $120 < f \leq 276$ | –34.5 |
| $276 < f \leq 614$ | $-34.5 - 48 \times \log_2(f/276)$ |
| $614 < f \leq 1221$ | –90 |
| $1221 < f \leq 1630$ | –90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-90 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1221) + 60)$ dBm |
| $1630 < f \leq 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with maximum power in the$[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50dBm |

NOTE – The upstream PSD mask is intended for use with ISDN 2B1Q and ISDN 4B3T. However, some deployments have reported field issues with ISDN 4B3T NT activation when operating with ADSL overlay. ISDN passband versus ADSL passband tradeoff and ISDN splitter characteristics need further study. A result thereof could be a limitation of the ADSL transmit power below 138 kHz when operation over ISDN 4B3T. Such transmit power limitation can be achieved through frequency domain masking of the tones below tone index 33 (if the ATU-R transmitter supports tones 1 to 32) or through time domain filtering with filter rolloff from 138 kHz (if the ATU-R transmitter does not support tones 1 to 32).

**Figure B.3/G.992.3 – ATU-R transmitter PSD mask**

All PSD measurements made at the Line port of the ISDN splitter shall measure the spectral power into a resistive load having the same value as the design impedance for ADSL (i.e., 100 Ω).

The ISDN port of the ISDN splitter shall be terminated with the appropriate 2B1Q or 4B3T design impedance for ISDN-BA as defined in ETSI TS 102 080 [7].

It is intended that the degradation impact on the ISDN-BA line system performance be no more than 4.5 dB and 4 dB, for 2B1Q and 4B3T line codes respectively, at the insertion loss reference frequency.

### B.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDus* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the Channel Discovery Phase;

- *REFPSDus* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the Transceiver Training Phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDus* – *PCBus* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 μs.

The maximum transmit PSD allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is –38 dBm/Hz.

### B.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see B.2.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.8 dBm.
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stop bands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 13.3 dBm.

### B.2.3 Data subcarriers (replaces 8.8.1.1)

The channel analysis (see 8.13.5) allows for a maximum of 63 data carriers to be used (i.e., $i = 1$ to 63). However, the use of carriers $i = 1$ to 32 is optional and their use is negociated through G.994.1 (see B.3). The lower limit on $i$ is partly determined by the ISDN/ADSL splitting filters. If FDM is used to separate the upstream and downstream ADSL signals, the upper limit is set by down-up splitting filters.

In all cases, the cut-off frequencies of these filters are completely at the discretion of the manufacturer, and the range of usable $i$ is determined during the channel estimation in transceiver training (see 8.13.4). Implementations should, however, be designed such that, when interworking with implementations of other manufacturers, the resulting range of usable $i$ enables the performance requirements to be met.

### B.2.4 Modulation by the inverse discrete Fourier transform (supplements 8.8.2)

If the use of tones 1 to 32 is enabled (i.e., G.994.1 MS codepoint = 1), modulation by the IDFT shall apply as defined in 8.8.2.

If the use of tones 1 to 32 is disabled (i.e., G.994.1 MS codepoint = 0), the modulation by the IDFT shall apply as defined in 8.8.2, with the additional requirement that:

$$Z_i = 0, \text{for } i = 1 \text{ to } 32, \quad \text{if the ATU-R has set the G.994.1 CLR codepoint} = 1;$$

or :

$$Z_i = \text{conj}\left(Z_{64-i}\right), \text{for } i = 1 \text{ to } 31 \text{ and } Z_{32} = 0, \ \text{if the ATU-R has set the G.994.1 CLR codepoint} = 0;$$

NOTE – The modulation (demodulation) by the IDFT (DFT) allows for implementation with a mirrored complex conjugate transmitter (receiver). In this case, the tones 1 to 32 cannot be used. This is indicated by the transmitter (receiver) by setting the G.994.1 CLR (CL) codepoint to 0.

## B.3 Initialization

### B.3.1 Handshake – ATU-C (supplements 8.13.2.1)

#### B.3.1.1 CL messages (supplements 8.13.2.1.1)

See Table B.3.

**Table B.3/G.992.3 – ATU-C CL message NPar(2) bit definitions**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | If set to ONE, signifies that the ATU-C is capable of receiving upstream tones 1 to 32. |

#### B.3.1.2 MS messages (supplements 8.13.2.1.2)

**Table B.4/G.992.3 – ATU-C MS message NPar(2) bit definitions**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | Set to ONE if and only if this bit was set to ONE in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. Signifies that the transmission of upstream tones 1 to 32 (or a subset thereof) is enabled (set to 1) or disabled (set to 0). |

### B.3.2 Handshake – ATU-R (supplements 8.13.2.2)

#### B.3.2.1 CLR messages (supplements 8.13.2.2.1)

See Table B.5.

**Table B.5/G.992.3 – ATU-R CLR message NPar(2) bit definitions for Annex B**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | If set to ONE, signifies that the ATU-R is capable of transmitting upstream tones 1 to 32. |

#### B.3.2.2 MS messages (supplements 8.13.2.2.2)

See Table B.6.

**Table B.6/G.992.3 – ATU-R MS message NPar(2) bit definitions for Annex B**

| NPar(2) bit | Definition |
|---|---|
| Tones 1 to 32 | Set to ONE if and only if this bit was set to ONE in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. Signifies that the transmission of upstream tones 1 to 32 (or a subset thereof) is enabled (set to 1) or disabled (set to 0). |

### B.3.3 Spectrum bounds and shaping parameters

Spectrum bounds and shaping parameters shall apply for the upstream subcarriers as defined in 8.13.2.4 (with $NSCus$ = 64, see Table B.2).

For implementations using a mirrored complex conjugate transmitter, an IDFT size of 32 shall be indicated in G.994.1 (see 8.13.2). The minimum $tss_i$ values shall be calculated according to Equation 8-1 (see 8.13.2.4) with SUPPORTEDset evidently limited to subcarriers in the 33 to 63 range, $N = 32$, $NSC = 64$ and $fs = 552$ kHz. This results in an S(f) which is periodic with 276 kHz. Because of this periodicity, and in order to avoid redundant $tss_i$ information in G.994.1, spectrum shaping parameters shall be defined only on subcarriers 32 and above in the G.994.1 CLR message (i.e., the first breakpoint frequency in the CLR message shall be at subcarrier index 32 or higher).

### B.4 Electrical characteristics

This clause specifies the combination of ATU-x and high-pass filter, as shown in Figures 5-4 and 5-5; further information about the low-pass filter is specified in Annex E.

All electrical characteristics shall be met in the presence of all of the ISDN signals, as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.961 [1] Appendices I and II (as applicable to the ISDN service).

#### B.4.1 Electrical characteristics for the ATU-C and for the ATU-R in the active state

##### B.4.1.1 DC characteristics

The input DC resistance of the ATU-x at the U-x interface shall be greater than or equal to 5 MΩ.

NOTE – The most common implementation of the splitter filters is with the low-pass and high-pass connected in parallel at the U-x port. In this arrangement, the high-pass filter will typically block DC with capacitors.

##### B.4.1.2 ISDN band characteristics

###### B.4.1.2.1 ADSL noise interference into the ISDN circuit

This is the specification for the lower stopband PSD of the ATU-C and ATU-R (see B.2.1 and B.2.2, respectively).

##### B.4.1.3 ADSL band characteristics

###### B.4.1.3.1 Longitudinal balance

Longitudinal balance at the U-R interface shall be greater than 40 dB over the 120 kHz (see Figure B.1) to 1104 kHz frequency range. The method of measurement shall be identical to the method defined for ADSL over POTS in A.4.1.3.1.

# Annex C

# Specific requirements for an ADSL system operating in the same cable as ISDN as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.961 Appendix III

For further study.

# Annex D

# ATU-C and ATU-R state diagrams

### D.1 Introduction

This annex provides state diagrams for the ATU-C and ATU-R, some portions of which are mandatory to guarantee interworking between different manufacturers' units, and some portions of which are optional.

### D.2 Definitions

The following terms and abbreviations are used in this annex. Where states or events have been defined elsewhere in this Recommendation, the definitions are referenced here for convenience.

**D.2.1 LOS failure**: An LOS failure is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of contiguous LOS defect, or, if LOS defect is present when the criteria for LOF failure declaration have been met (see LOF failure definition below). An LOS failure is cleared after 10 ± 0.5 s of no LOS defect.

**D.2.2 LOF failure**: An LOF failure is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of contiguous SEF defect, except when an LOS defect or failure is present (see LOS failure definition above). An LOF failure is cleared when LOS failure is declared, or after 10 ± 0.5 s of no SEF defect.

**D.2.3 persistent LOF failure**: Persistent LOF failure is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of near-end LOF failure with SEF defect still present. LOF failure and SEF defect are defined for operations and maintenance in D.2.1 and 8.12.1.

**D.2.4 persistent LOS failure**: Persistent LOS is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of near-end LOS failure with LOS defect still present. LOS failure and LOS defect are defined for operations and maintenance in 9.3.

**D.2.5 high_BER-ss**: High bit error ratio in received data, showtime (re)sync event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a resync attempt (on the showtime signal being received) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to the SEF (severely errored frame) defect defined for operations and maintenance (see 8.12.1).

**D.2.6 high_BER-st**: High bit error ratio in received data, showtime (re)train event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a retrain attempt (on the showtime signal being received) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to a high level of near-end LCD, CRC or FEC anomalies over some period of time or to the SEF (severely errored frame) or LOM (loss of margin) defect (see 8.12.1).

**D.2.7 high_BER-hs**: High bit error ratio in received data, re-initialize through G.994.1 event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a full re-initialization (including a G.994.1 session) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to a high level of near-end LCD, CRC or FEC anomalies over some period of time or the SEF (severely errored frame) or LOM (loss of margin) defect (see 8.12.1). It may also relate to far-end performance primitives.

**D.2.8 high_BER-si**: High bit error ratio in received data, re-initialize through short initialization event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a short re-initialization (not including a G.994.1 session) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to a high level of near-end LCD, CRC or FEC anomalies over some period of time or the SEF (severely errored frame) or LOM (loss of margin) defect (see 8.12.1). It may also relate to far-end performance primitives.

**D.2.9 host control channel**: For the ATU-C, this is a configuration control channel from some host controller, such as a Network Management System (NMS) outside or a management entity within the Access Node. For the ATU-R, this is a Personal Computer (PC) outside or a management entity within the Network Termination., which controls one or more ATU-C line units.

## D.3 State diagrams

State diagrams are given in Figure D.1 for the ATU-C, and in Figure D.2 for the ATU-R. States are indicated by ovals, with the name of the state given within the oval. The states are defined in Table D.1 for the ATU-C and in Table D.2 for the ATU-R. Transitions between states are indicated by arrows, with the event causing the transition listed next to the arrow. For some events, the source of the event is indicated with letter(s) and a colon preceding the event name; a key to the source events is provided at the bottom of each figure. All states except *Retrain* and *Resync* are mandatory.

In the state diagram for the ATU-C, a C-IDLE state would be desired to guarantee a quiet mode, which may be useful prior to provisioning, to allow certain tests (e.g., MLT), or to discontinue service. A selftest function is desirable, but it may be a vendor/customer option to define when selftest occurs (e.g., always at power-up or only under CO control), and which transition to take after successfully completing selftest (e.g., enter C-IDLE, or enter C-SILENT1 (see ITU-T Rec. G.994.1), or enter C-INIT/TRAIN).

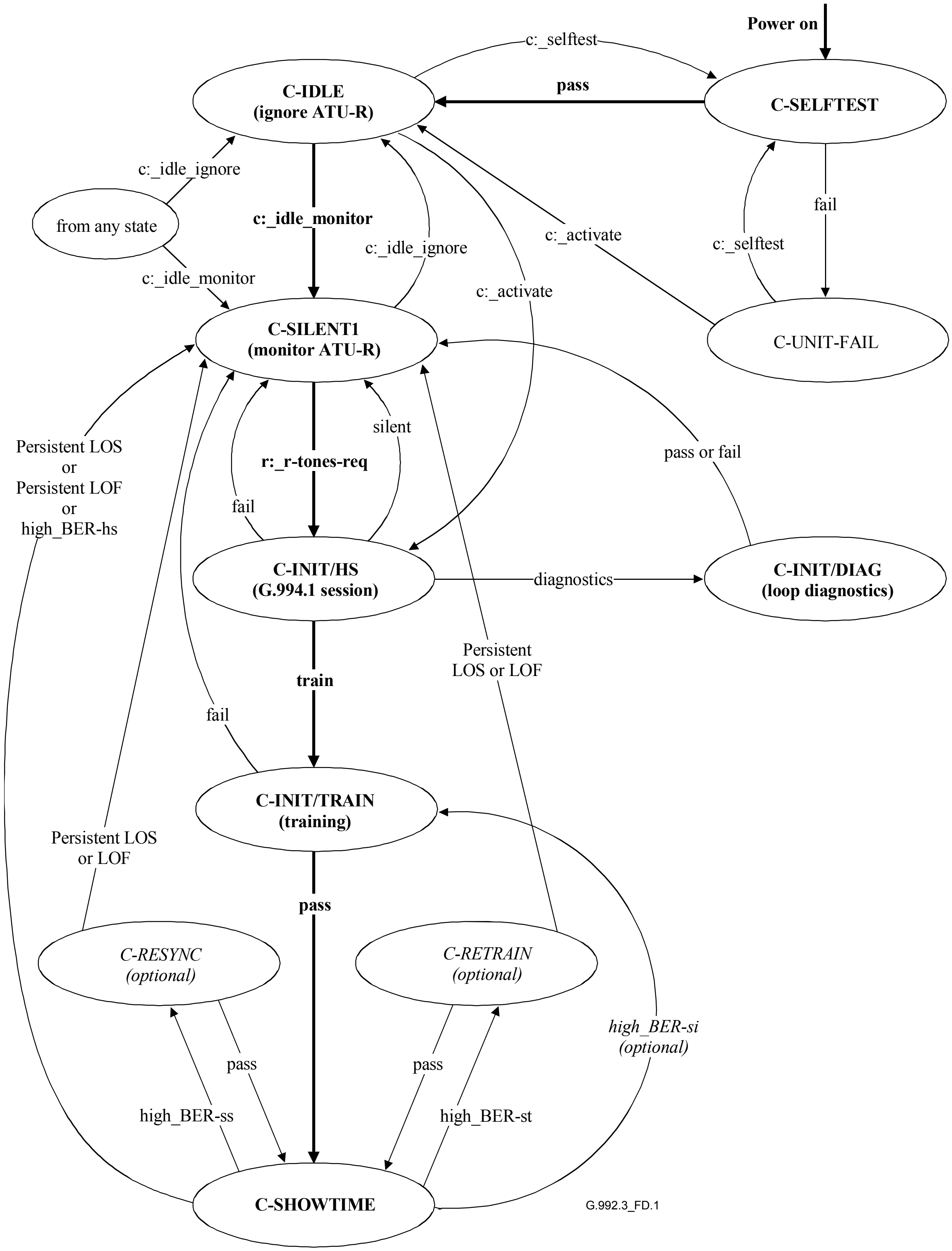
A variety of "host controller" commands (events preceded by "c:_") are shown as non-mandatory in the ATU-C state diagram to provide example events and transitions between states. The way in which these events are implemented is left to the vendor since many options are possible (e.g., separate host controller port on the ATU-C, switches or other front-panel controls, fixed options).

The receiving ATU shall transition state upon Persistent LOS and/or LOF failure. This implies that:

- If no high_BER-hs or high_BER-is events cause the receiving ATU to transition state earlier, then the persistency allows the transmitting ATU to detect the LOS or LOF failure condition through the indicator bits, before the receiving ATU transitions state (i.e., removes the showtime signal from the line);
- If the ATU-C transitions from C-SHOWTIME to C-SILENT1, then the ATU-R shall detect a Persistent LOS Failure, shall transition to R-SILENT0 followed by R-INIT/TRAIN and shall transmit R-TONES-REQ within a maximum of 6 s after the ATU-C transitioning to C-SILENT.

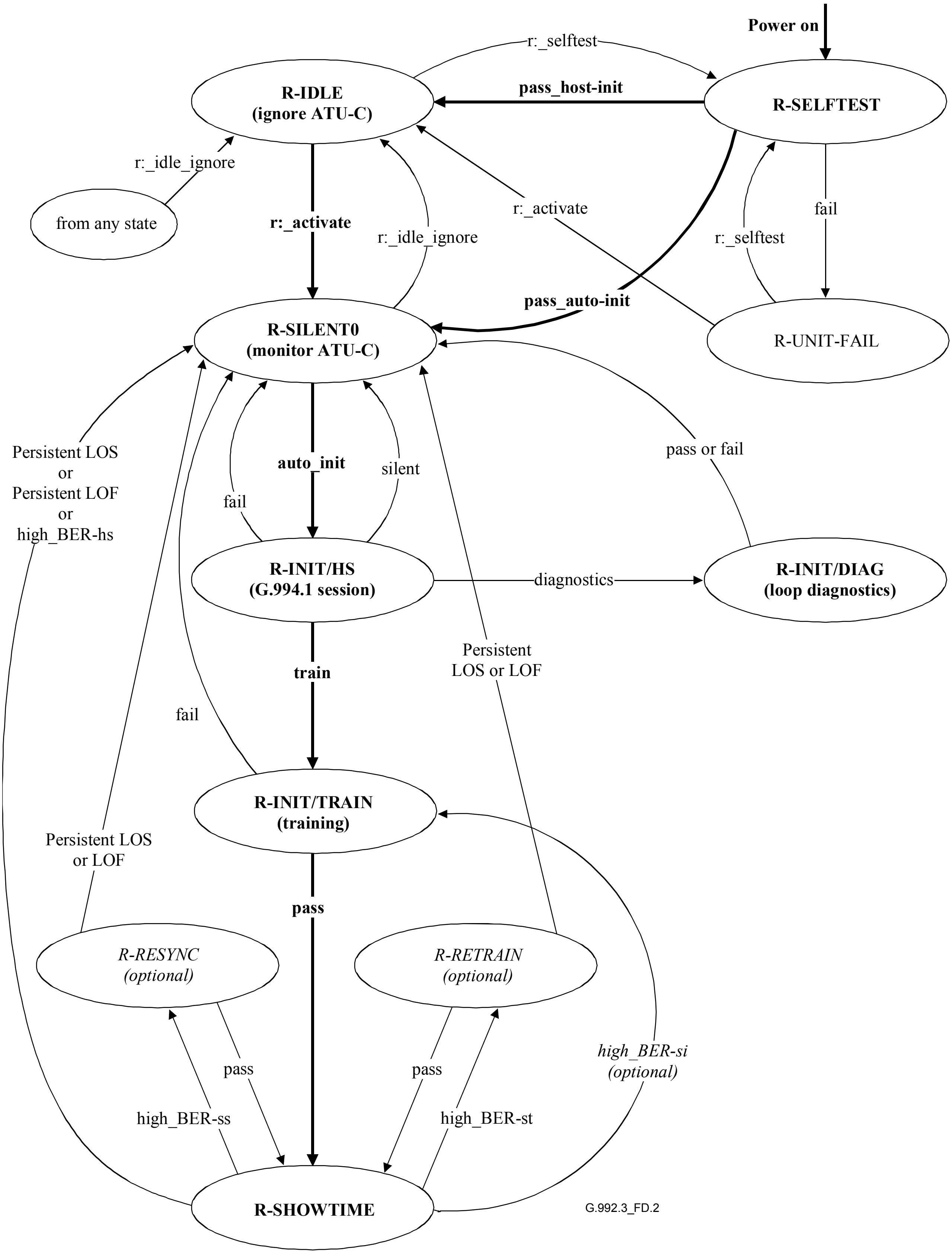
The receiving ATU also transitions state upon a high_BER event. These events are vendor-specific and are (but are not required to be) related to near-end and/or far-end performance primitives (see D.2). As an example, the ATU may define an high_BER event as 30 s of persistent near-end or far-end LOM defect. The ATU should trade-off the persistency in the high_BER events to, on the one hand, quickly recover data integrity, but on the other hand, not to unnecessarily interrupt data transmission. This trade-off may be enhanced if the ATU is able to detect and quantify instantaneous changes in line conditions (e.g., is able to detect hook state changes or the impact thereof, see 8.13.3.1.11 and 8.13.3.2.11).

A *Retrain* state and a *Resync* state (both without interruption of the showtime signal) are optional in both state diagrams. Vendor proprietary algorithms may be used to restore frame and data integrity. An optional short initialization (with interruption of the showtime signal) is defined in 8.14, which omits the G.994.1 session from the initialization and attempts to minimize the durations of the variable length states of the initialization performed in the INIT/TRAIN state.




NOTE 1 – Event are received from the ATU-C host controller (c:_) or from the ATU-R (r:_);
NOTE 2 – The main sequence of states is shown in **bold**;
NOTE 3 – Optional (vendor proprietary) states and transitions are shown in *italics*;
NOTE 4 – States are defined in Table D.1 and definitions in D.2.

**Figure D.1/G.992.3 – State diagram for the ATU-C**




NOTE 1 – Event are received from the ATU-C host controller (c:_) or from the ATU-R (r:_);
NOTE 2 – The main sequence of states is shown in **bold**;
NOTE 3 – Optional (vendor proprietary) states and transitions are shown in *italics*;
NOTE 4 – States are defined in Table D.2 and definitions in D.2.

**Figure D.2/G.992.3 – State diagram for the ATU-R**

**Table D.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C state definitions**

| State name | Description |
|---|---|
| C-SELFTEST (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered after power-up in which the ATU performs a self test;<br>• Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface);<br>• Receiver off (no response to R-TONES-REQ);<br>• No response to host control channel;<br>• If selftest pass then transition to C-IDLE;<br>• If selftest fail then transition to C-UNIT-FAIL. |
| C-UNIT-FAIL (mandatory) | • Steady state entered after an unsuccessful ATU self test;<br>• Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface);<br>• Receiver off (no response to R-TONES-REQ);<br>• Monitor host control channel if possible (allows the host controller to retrieve self test results). |
| C-IDLE (mandatory) | • Steady state entered after successful self test;<br>• Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface);<br>• Receiver off (no response to R-TONES-REQ);<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| C-SILENT1 (mandatory) | • Steady state defined in G.994.1, entered upon host controller command;<br>• Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface);<br>• Receiver on (monitor for R-TONES-REQ, if detected, transition to C-INIT/HS state);<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| C-INIT/HS (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered to perform G.994.1 phase of initialization;<br>• Transmitter on (start with transmitting C-TONES);<br>• Receiver on (start with monitoring for R-SILENT0);<br>• Monitor host control channel;<br>• If silent period then transition to C-SILENT1;<br>• If loop diagnostics mode then transition to C-DIAGNOSTICS;<br>• Else transition to C-INIT/TRAIN. |
| C-INIT/TRAIN (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization;<br>• Transmitter on (start with C-QUIET/C-COMB);<br>• Receiver on (start with monitoring for R-QUIET/R-COMB);<br>• If init pass then transition to C-SHOWTIME;<br>• If init fail then transition to C-SILENT1;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| C-INIT/DIAG (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization in loop diagnostics mode;<br>• Transmitter on (start with C-QUIET/C-COMB);<br>• Receiver on (start with monitoring for R-QUIET/R-COMB);<br>• Transition to C-SILENT1;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| C-SHOWTIME (mandatory) | • Steady state entered to perform bit pump functions (frame bearers active);<br>• On-line reconfigurations and transitions into and from the low power state occur within this state;<br>• If persistent LOS or LOF failure then transition to C-SILENT1;<br>• If (vendor discretionary) high_BER-ss, high_BER-st, high_BER-hs or high_BER-si event then transition to respectively C-RESYNC, C-RETRAIN, C-SILENT1 or C-INIT/TRAIN;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |

**Table D.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C state definitions**

| State name | Description |
|---|---|
| C-RESYNC (optional state and vendor proprietary resync procedure) | • Temporary state entered upon high_BER-ss event (see D.2), in which ATU tries to recover frame integrity from received showtime signal (e.g., from the synchronization symbols);<br>• Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal;<br>• Declare SEF defect;<br>• If resync pass then clear SEF defect and transition to C-SHOWTIME;<br>• If resync fail then time-out on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to C-SILENT1;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| C-RETRAIN (optional state and vendor proprietary retrain procedure) | • Temporary state entered upon high_BER-st event (see D.2), in which ATU tries to recover data integrity from received showtime signal;<br>• Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal;<br>• Declare SEF defect;<br>• If retrain pass then clear SEF defect and transition to C-SHOWTIME;<br>• If retrain fail then time-out on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to C-SILENT1;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |

**Table D.2/G.992.3 – ATU-R state definitions**

| State name | Description |
|---|---|
| R-SELFTEST (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered after power-up in which the ATU performs a self test;<br>• Transmitter off (QUIET at U-R interface);<br>• Receiver off (no response to C-TONES);<br>• No response to host control channel;<br>• If selftest pass then transition to R-IDLE if ATU is under host control or transition to R-SILENT0 if ATU is in automatic training mode;<br>• If selftest fail then transition to R-UNIT-FAIL. |
| R-UNIT-FAIL (mandatory) | • Steady state entered after an unsuccessful ATU self test;<br>• Transmitter off (QUIET at U-R interface);<br>• Receiver off (no response to C-TONES);<br>• Monitor host control channel if possible (allows the host controller to retrieve self test results). |
| R-IDLE (mandatory) | • Steady state entered after successful self test if ATU is under host control;<br>• Transmitter off (QUIET at U-R interface);<br>• Receiver off (no response to C-TONES);<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| R-SILENT0 (mandatory) | • Temporary state defined in G.994.1 entered after selftest pass if ATU is in automatic training mode or with host controller command;<br>• Transmitter off (transmit R-SILENT0);<br>• Receiver on (monitor for C-TONES, if detected, transition to R-INIT/HS state);<br>• Automatic training: immediate transition to R-INIT/HS (unless delayed for silent period);<br>• Monitor host control channel. |

**Table D.2/G.992.3 – ATU-R state definitions**

| State name | Description |
|---|---|
| R-INIT/HS (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered to perform G.994.1 phase of initialization;<br>• Transmitter on (start with transmitting R-TONES-REQ);<br>• Receiver on (start with monitoring for C-TONES);<br>• Monitor host control channel;<br>• If silent period then transition to R-SILENT0;<br>• If loop diagnostics mode then transition to R-DIAGNOSTICS;<br>• Else transition to R-INIT/TRAIN. |
| R-INIT/TRAIN (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization;<br>• Transmitter on (start with R-QUIET/R-COMB);<br>• Receiver on (start with monitoring for C-QUIET/C-COMB);<br>• If init pass then transition to R-SHOWTIME;<br>• If init fail then transition to R-SILENT0;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| R-INIT/DIAG (mandatory) | • Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization in loop diagnostics mode;<br>• Transmitter on (start with R-QUIET/R-COMB);<br>• Receiver on (start with monitoring for C-QUIET/C-COMB);<br>• Transition to R-SILENT0;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| R-SHOWTIME (mandatory) | • Steady state entered to perform bit pump functions (frame bearers active);<br>• On-line reconfigurations and transitions into and from the low power state occur within this state;<br>• If persistent LOS or LOF failure then transition to R-SILENT0;<br>• If (vendor discretionary) LOF-ss, high_BER-st, high_BER-hs or high_BER-si event, transition to respectively R-RESYNC, R-RETRAIN, R-SILENT0 or R-INIT/TRAIN state.<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| R-RESYNC optional state and vendor proprietary resync procedure) | • Temporary state entered upon high_BER-ss event (see D.2), in which ATU tries to recover frame integrity from received showtime signal (e.g., from the synchronization symbols);<br>• Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal;<br>• Declare SEF defect;<br>• If resync pass then clear SEF defect and transition to R-SHOWTIME;<br>• If retrain fail then time-out on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to R-SILENT0;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |
| R-RETRAIN (optional state and vendor proprietary retrain procedure) | • Temporary state entered upon high_BER-st event (see D.2), in which ATU tries to recover data integrity from received showtime signal;<br>• Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal;<br>• Declare SEF defect;<br>• If retrain pass then clear SEF defect and transition to R-SHOWTIME;<br>• If retrain fail then time-out on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to R-SILENT0;<br>• Monitor host control channel. |

# Annex E

# POTS and ISDN Basic Access Splitters

The purpose of the POTS splitter is twofold. For ADSL signals, protection from the high-frequency transients and impedance effects that occur during POTS operation, ringing transients, ring trip transients, and off-hook transients and impedance changes, is provided. For POTS voiceband service, the low-pass filters provide protection from ADSL signals which may impact, through non-linear or other effects, remote devices (handset, fax, voiceband, modem, etc.) and central office operation. This filtering should be performed while maintaining the quality of the end-to-end voiceband connection (i.e., between the POTS and PSTN interfaces).

Likewise, the ISDN Basic Access splitter is also twofold.

## E.1 Type 1 – POTS splitter – Europe

ADSL/POTS splitters shall comply with in ETSI Technical Specification TS 101 952-1 [8]. The relevant sub-parts are the following:

- Sub-part 1-1: Technical specification of the low pass part of ADSL/POTS splitters;
- Sub-part 1-2: Technical specification of the high pass part of ADSL/POTS splitters.

### E.1.1 Phoneline networking equipment isolation

To allow phoneline networking terminals (i.e., ITU-T Recs G.989.1 and G.989.2) to operate without compromise from bridging loss caused by a low impedance at the remote splitter POTS port, an impedance range at the remote splitter POTS port is defined for frequencies in the 2 to 10 MHz band.

#### E.1.1.1 Remote splitter POTS port shunt impedance

The total (across tip and ring at the POTS port) impedance in the 2 to 10 MHz frequency band should be at least 160 Ω.

The inclusion of series components to meet this specification shall not affect the other specified parameters such as DC resistance, longitudinal balance, tip to ring capacitance measurements under 200 Hz, or return loss requirements.

## E.2 Type 2 – POTS splitter – North America

### E.2.1 Introduction

This clause contains specifications for a POTS splitter appropriate to North America. The requirements contained in E.2 shall be met for a POTS splitter designed for deployment in North America. The purpose of the low-pass filters is twofold. For ADSL signals, protection from the high-frequency transients and impedance effects that occur during POTS operation, ringing transients, ring trip transients, and off-hook transients and impedance changes, is provided. For POTS voiceband service, the low-pass filters provide protection from ADSL signals which may impact, through non-linear or other effects, remote devices (handset, fax, voiceband, modem, etc.) and central office operation. This filtering should be performed while maintaining the quality of the end-to-end link, that is, between the POTS and PSTN interfaces of Figure 5-4.

### E.2.1.1 POTS splitter function location

Two POTS splitter functions are defined; one for the remote (R) end and one for the central office (CO) end. The function can be implemented either internally to the ATU-x modem or externally. In either case, all functions specified are required (exception is maintenance test signatures, see E.2.1.7).

In Figure E.2, the capacitors are shown as 0.12 µF. These capacitors are for DC blocking. They work in concert with the input to the modem's HPF function and are to be included in the input impedance calculation of the modem. This point is not available for inspection when the CO splitter function is provided internally to the modem and, therefore, the capacitors do not appear explicitly. The DC blocking function is, however, provided in the normal HPF function. This difference is taken into account in the test setups in this annex.

In a case where some or all of the HPF function are incorporated in the external CO POTS splitter, the 0.12 µF capacitors do not appear since the DC blocking will be included in the HPF function. Incorporating some or all of the HPF in the CO POTS splitter is for further study.

### E.2.1.2 Frequencies used in testing

Two bands of frequencies are used for testing:

- Voiceband (VB) frequencies are from 0-4 kHz.
- ADSL Band frequencies are from 30-1104 kHz.

Testing is not performed between 4-30 kHz but it is expected that the LPF will be well behaved in that area.

All external POTS splitters with LPF or LPF/HPF included shall meet specifications between 30 and 1104 kHz.

Not all integral modem designs are intended to occupy the full spectrum between 30 and 1104 kHz. In each implementation, testing may be performed only on the utilized frequency band. The vendor in literature and in each test report shall explicitly state the band of frequencies used in testing each modem.

### E.2.1.3 Balanced terminations

All testing is done in a BALANCED (i.e., metallic) method. One end of some setups may contain an unbalanced connection to facilitate testing methodology if the resultant measurement maintains balance.

### E.2.1.4 Single ended testing

Single ended testing is performed on each POTS splitter function. Specifications contained in this annex are written for single splitter functions, not end-to-end. Compliance with this annex does NOT guarantee end-to-end performance since the modems are not included in this annex testing.

### E.2.1.5 POTS splitter functions

The external central office POTS splitter may be mounted some distance from the ATU-C modem. To protect from DC faults, DC blocking capacitors shall be included on the xDSL port of the POTS Splitter. These capacitors form part of the input to the xDSL HPF function and must be included in calculations of that input impedance (approximately 20-34 nF). If the POTS splitter function is included entirely within the modem, the capacitors shall be included as part of the HPF function. See Figure E.1.

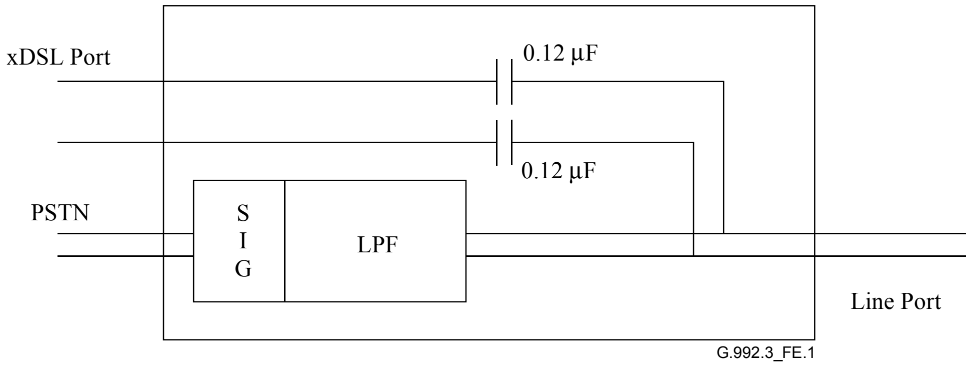



**Figure E.1/G.992.3 – External POTS central office splitter without HPF function**

The DC blocking capacitors are for the external POTS splitter, without the HPF function, only. Internal splitter function or external splitters with a complete HPF function may incorporate this capacitance in the input to the HPF function. The DC blocking capacitors are optional on splitters integrated within the equipment closely associated with the ATU-C. See Figure E.2.

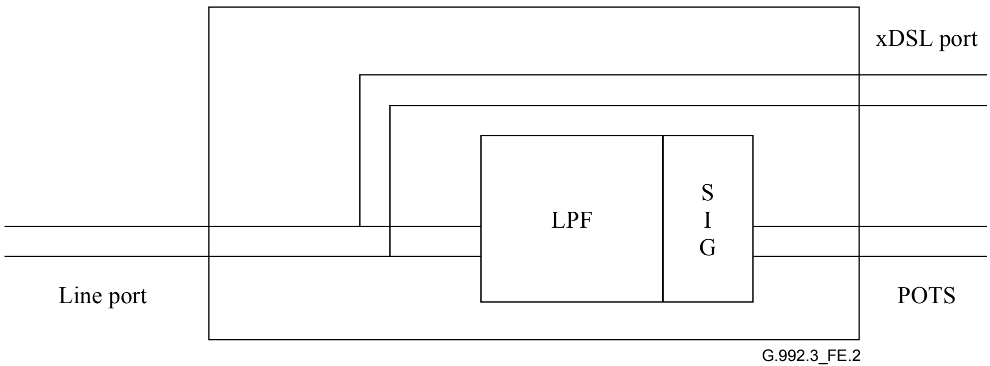
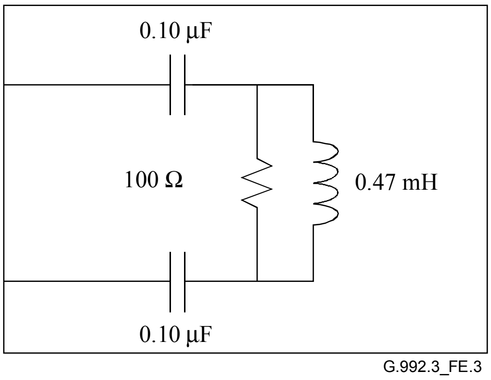
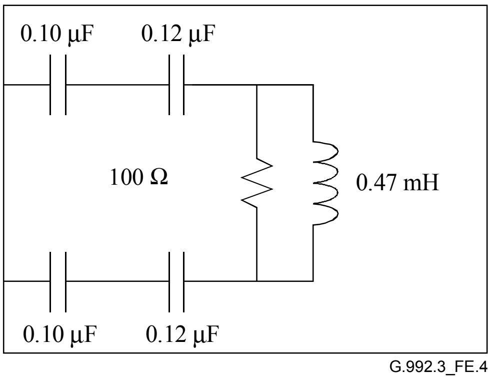



**Figure E.2/G.992.3 – External POTS remote splitter**

### E.2.1.6 ZHP defined

To facilitate testing of the POTS splitter independently of the actual modem or specific vendor, two ZHPs are defined in Figures E.3 and E.4 to allow proper termination of the xDSL port during voiceband testing. The ZHP is valid only for voiceband frequencies. The combination of capacitors in the ZHP-r is only representative. The input shall be 27 nF, however derived.




NOTE – Component tolerances: Capacitors: 2.5%, Resistors: 1%, Coils: 5%.

**Figure E.3/G.992.3 – ZHP definition for external central office splitter**

**Figure E.4/G.992.3 – ZHP definition for remote end**

### E.2.1.7 Maintenance test signatures

If the maintenance test signatures are provided, they shall be as shown in Figure E.5.

In order to allow the POTS splitter to be managed by the network operational support systems and to be identified by metallic loop test systems, the POTS splitter function may contain signatures that are activated only by the metallic test systems. The signatures are unique for ADSL and are different for each end of the loop. All central office end POTS splitters shall have the same signature and all remote end POTS splitters shall have the same signature. The signatures are designed to be active only during the maintenance test mode and will not interfere with normal operation of the circuit. The signatures are located on the POTS/PSTN side of the LPF function, protecting the ADSL band frequencies from the non-linear effects of the diodes. The signatures are defined in Figure E.5.

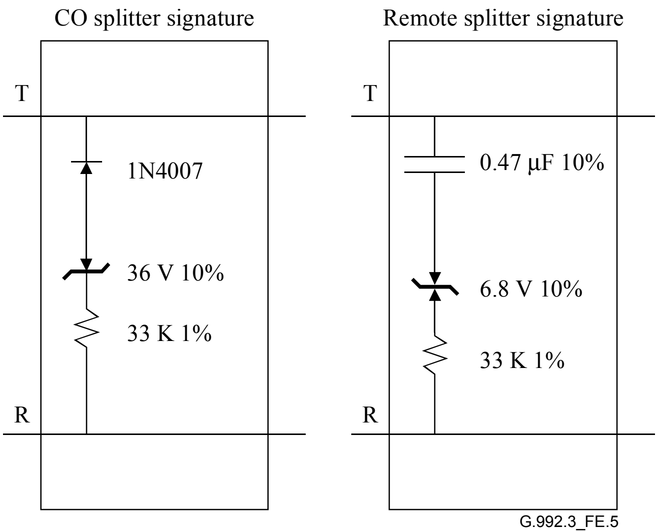



**Figure E.5/G.992.3 – Maintenance test signatures**

### E.2.2 DC characteristics

All requirements shall be met in the presence of all POTS loop currents from 0 mA to 100 mA. The low-pass filter shall pass POTS tip-to-ring DC voltages of 0 V to –60 V DC and ringing signals no larger than 103 $V_{rms}$ superimposed on the DC signal at any frequency from 20 to 30 Hz.

The DC resistance from tip-to-ring at the PSTN interface with the U-C interface shorted, or at the POTS interface with the U-R interface shorted, shall be less than or equal to 25 Ω. The DC resistance from tip to ground and from ring to ground at the PSTN interface with the

U-C interface open, or at the POTS interface with the U-R interface open, shall be greater than or equal to 5 MΩ.

### E.2.3 Voiceband characteristics

#### E.2.3.1 Metallic balanced (differential mode)

##### E.2.3.1.1 Test loops

Loops to be used for testing are divided into two groups. This is done to obtain more specific requirements under the widely varying conditions of short and long loops and to account for the effect of the opposite splitter impedances being "seen" through the loop and affecting performance.

- Short loops: 0, 152 m (0.5 kft), 619 m (2.0 kft), 1520 m (5 kft) pairs of 26 AWG cables.
- Long loops: resistance design loops T #7, T #9, and T #13 and loops C #4, C #6, C #7 and C #8.

Test loops are defined in ITU-T Rec. G.996.1 [3].

##### E.2.3.1.2 Insertion loss at 1004 Hz

For each of the test loops specified in E.2.3.1.1, and using the test setup shown in Figures E.6 and E.7, the insertion loss from the source to the termination shall be measured with and without the splitter/ZHP combination inserted.

The increase in insertion loss at 1004 Hz on any of the test loops, due to the addition of the splitter/ZHP, shall be less than specified in Table E.1.

**Table E.1/G.992.3 – Loss due to addition of splitter/ZHP**

| Description | Loss |
|---|---|
| Short loop, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | < 1.0 dB CO end |
| Long loop, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | < 0.75 dB CO end |
| Short loop, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | < 1.0 dB R end |
| Long loop, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | < 0.75 dB R end |

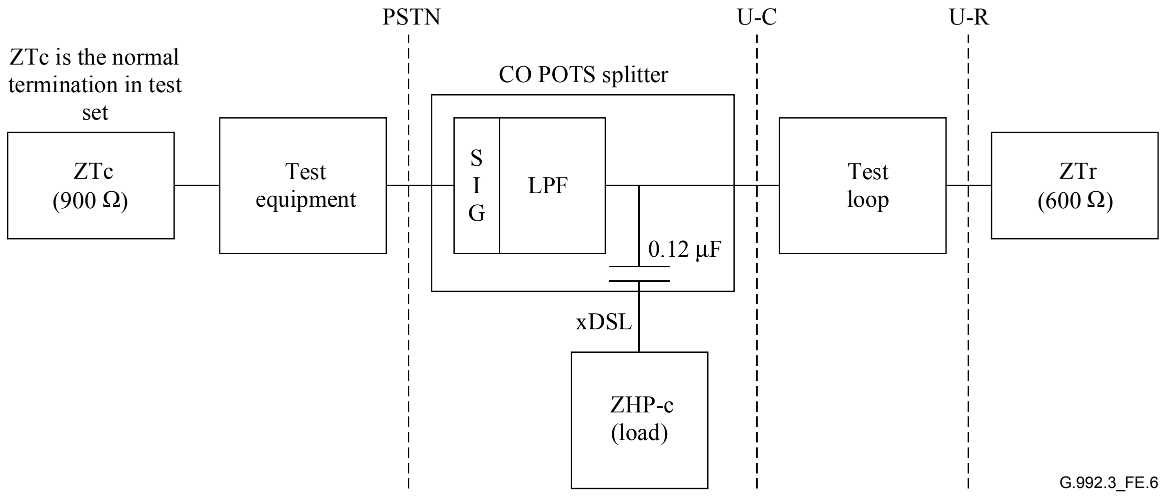
##### E.2.3.1.3 Attenuation distortion in the voiceband

The variation of insertion loss with frequency shall be measured using the test setup in Figures E.6 and E.7. The defined ZHP will be attached to the xDSL port of the splitter. If the splitter is an internal part of the ATU, then the modem remains attached as the xDSL load. The increase in attenuation distortion, relative to the 1004 Hz insertion loss, caused by the POTS splitter with the ZHP (or modem) load attached using each of the test loops identified above, shall be less than that specified in Table E.2.

**Table E.2/G.992.3 – Increase in attenuation distortion caused by POTS splitter**

| Description | Loss (Note) | |
|---|---|---|
| | 0.2-3.4 kHz | 3.4-4.0 kHz |
| Short loop, CO splitter, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | +1.5 to –1.5 | +2.0 to –2.0 |
| Long loop, CO splitter, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | +0.5 to –1.5 | +1.0 to –1.5 |
| Short loop, R splitter, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | +1.5 to –1.5 | +2.0 to –2.0 |
| Long loop, R splitter, $ZTc = 900$, $ZTr = 600$ | +0.5 to –1.5 | +1.0 to –1.5 |
| NOTE – Attenuation is a positive value, gain is a negative value. | | |

Figure E.6 defines the test configuration and the value of the test components that shall be used for transmission measurements in the voiceband for the central office POTS splitter.

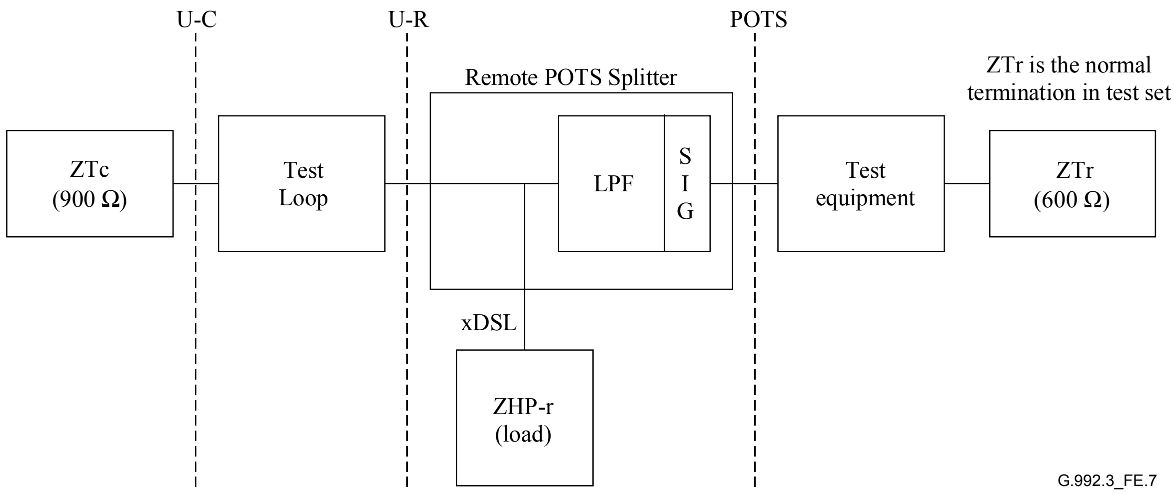



ZHP-c = the impedance presented to the POTS connection by an ATU-C through the capacitance of the POTS splitter DC blocking capacitors

NOTE – The DC blocking capacitors are only for the external POTS splitter without the HPF function. Internal splitter function or external splitters with a complete HPF function may incorporate this capacitance in the input to the PHF function.

**Figure E.6/G.992.3 – Transmission measurements in voiceband for the central office splitter**

Figure E.7 defines the test configuration and the value of the test components that shall be used for transmission measurements in the voiceband for the remote POTS splitter.




ZTc = 900 Ω
ZTr = 600 Ω
ZHP-r = the impedance presented to the POTS connection by an ATU-R

**Figure E.7/G.992.3 – Transmission measurements in voiceband for the remote POTS splitter**

#### E.2.3.1.4 Delay distortion

The delay distortion of the POTS splitter shall be measured using Figures E.6 and E.7. The increase in delay distortion caused by the POTS splitter in each of the test loops shall be less than that specified in Table E.3.

**Table E.3/G.992.3 – Increase in delay distortion caused by POTS splitter**

| Description | Delay distortion | |
|---|---|---|
| | 0.6-3.2 kHz | 0.2-4.0 kHz |
| Short loop, CO splitter, *ZTc* = 900, *ZTr* = 600 | 200 µs | 250 µs |
| Long loop, CO splitter, *ZTc* = 900, *ZTr* = 600 | 200 µs | 250 µs |
| Short loop, R splitter, *ZTc* = 900, *ZTr* = 600 | 200 µs | 250 µs |
| Long loop, R splitter, *ZTc* = 900, *ZTr* = 600 | 200 µs | 250 µs |

#### E.2.3.1.5 Return loss

Figures E.8 and E.9 define the test configuration and the value of the test components that shall be used for impedance measurements in the voiceband for both the central office and remote POTS splitter units.

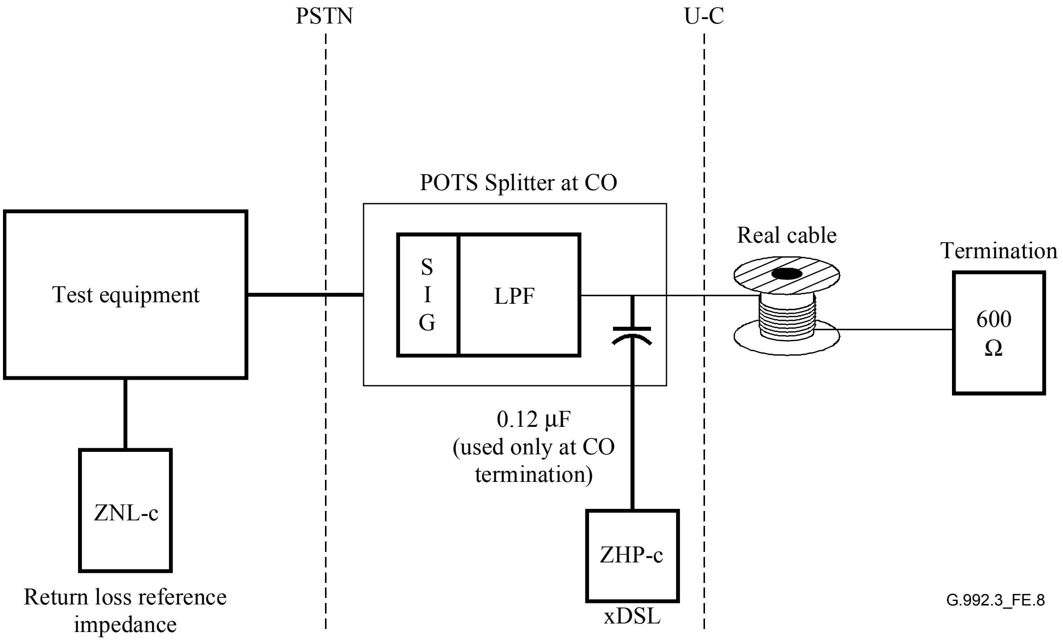
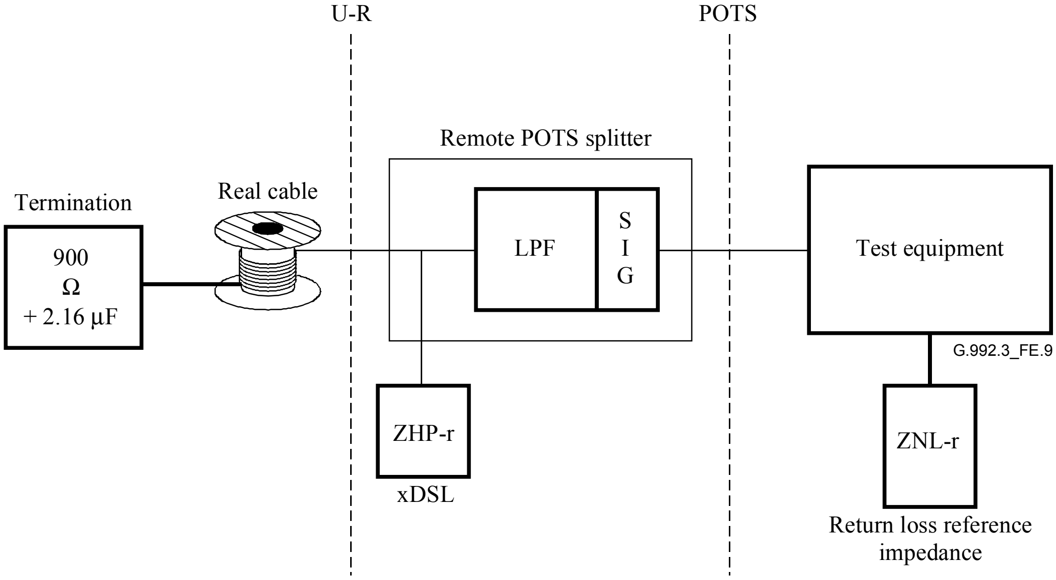



**Figure E.8/G.992.3 – CO POTS splitter return loss setup**




ZNL-c (see Note 2) = 800 Ω in parallel with the series connection of a 100 Ω resistor and a 50 nF capacitor (long loop model seen from CO)
ZNL-r (see Note 2) = 1330 Ω in parallel with the series connection of a 348 Ω resistor and a 100 nF capacitor (long loop model seen from RT)
ZHP-c = the impedance presented to the POTS connection by an ATU-C through the capacitance of the POTS splitter DC blocking capacitors
ZHP-r = the impedance presented to the POTS connection by an ATU-R

NOTE 1 – The DC blocking capacitors are for the external POTS splitter without the HPF function only. Internal splitter function or external splitters with a complete HPF function may incorporate this capacitance in the input to the HPF function.
NOTE 2 – This value comes from the Bellcore LSSGR as a reference compromise impedance for non-loaded cable.

**Figure E.9/G.992.3 – Remote POTS splitter return loss setup**

The return loss of each splitter under the specified conditions, either with or without the ZHP attached, shall be greater than the values specified in Table E.4.

**Table E.4/G.992.3 – Splitter return loss**

| Description | Zref | Zterm (Ω) | ERL (dB) | SRL-L (dB) | SRL-H (dB) | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| CO splitter | *ZNL-c* | 600 | 8 | 5 | 5 | |
| CO splitter | *ZNL-c* | 600 | N/A | N/A | 2 | Single freq. |
| RT splitter | *ZNL-r* | 900 | 6 | 5 | 3 | |
| RT splitter | *ZNL-r* | 900 | N/A | N/A | 2 | Single freq. |
| NOTE – Individual frequencies start at 2200 Hz and sweep to 3400 Hz. | | | | | | |

### E.2.3.1.6 Distortion

The distortion contributed by the low-pass filter shall be measured using the test configuration of Figures E.6 and E.7 and the null loop.

With an applied 4-tone set as specified in ITU-T Rec. O.42 [6], at a level of –9 dBm, the second and third order intermodulation distortion products shall be at least 57 dB and 60 dB, respectively, below the received signal level.

### E.2.3.2 Longitudinal balance of POTS splitter

The longitudinal balance of the POTS splitter can be measured using two different techniques. One technique is to treat the POTS splitter as a separate entity which requires using the 2 PORT testing technique. The other technique is to test the CO splitter containing the POTS splitter, ATU-C and CO line card combination as a one port network. This one port network would require using the 1 PORT testing technique.

#### E.2.3.2.1 Longitudinal balance of POTS splitter using 2 PORT testing technique

This method shall be used to test a POTS splitter when it is treated as a separate entity.

The longitudinal balance of the POTS splitter (without loops), measured in either direction between the POTS/PSTN and line port, as a two-port device, shall be measured in accordance with the latest North American measurement practices. In the case where DC blocking capacitors are included as part of the splitter function on the xDSL port, the xDSL port shall be shorted. Otherwise, the xDSL port shall be open. Because of the maintenance signatures, the applied longitudinal voltage shall be maximum 3.0 V p-p. The balance shall be greater than 58 dB for frequencies between 200 Hz-1 kHz with a straight line level decreasing to 53 dB at 3 kHz. A DC bias current of 25 mA will be applied.

The termination of the test set is set for series-balance measurement per the latest North American measurement practices. Prior to testing, a test circuit balance (calibration) of 77 dB (58 + 19 dB) will be achieved to ensure 1 dB accuracy.

Figure E.10 shows the test setup for the external CO POTS splitter. The xDSL port is shorted. If testing longitudinal balance on an integrated CO modem, the ATU-C shall be connected but powered down.

Figure E.11 shows the test setup for the external remote POTS splitter.

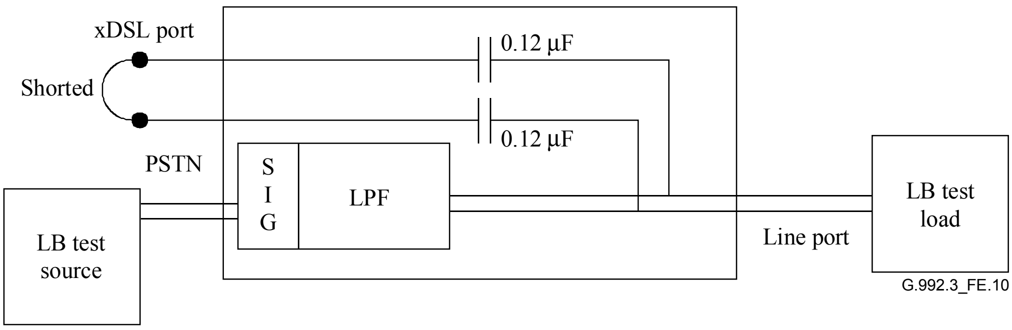



**Figure E.10/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance CO test setup**

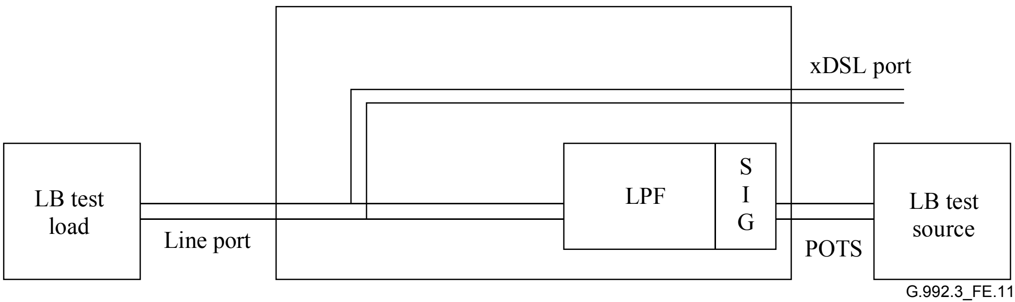



**Figure E.11/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance remote test setup**

#### E.2.3.2.2 Longitudinal balance of POTS splitter using 1 PORT testing technique

This method shall be used to test a CO splitter when the POTS splitter, ATU-C and CO line card combination is treated as a one port network.

The longitudinal balance of the combined POTS splitter, ATU-C and CO line card (without loops) shall be measured in accordance with the latest North American measurement practices. Because of the maintenance signatures, the applied longitudinal voltage shall be maximum 3.0 V p-p. The balance shall be greater than 52 dB for frequencies between 200 Hz-3.2 kHz. A DC POTS load to generate a bias current of 25 mA will be used.

Prior to testing, a test circuit balance (calibration) of 71 dB (52 + 19 dB) will be achieved to ensure 1 dB accuracy.

Figure E.12 shows the test setup for the POTS splitter, ATU-C and CO line card combination one port network.

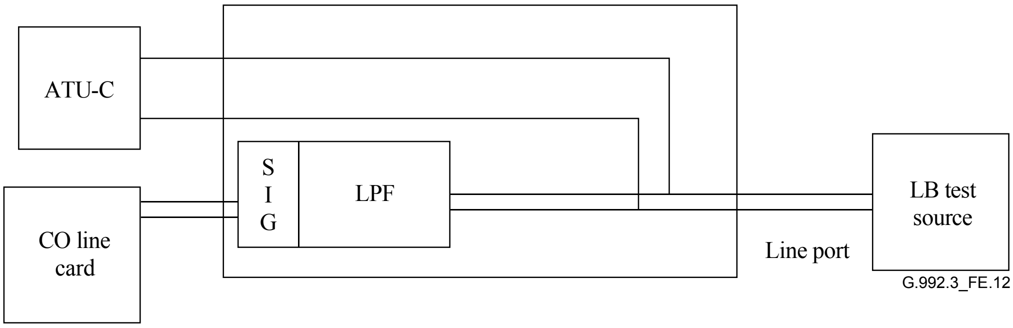



**Figure E.12/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance CO test setup for 1 PORT networks**

### E.2.3.3 Transparent testing capacitance

To allow the current metallic test systems to continue to test with current test capabilities, an input impedance is defined for a special, narrow-frequency band.

#### E.2.3.3.1 Tip to ring capacitance

The intent of this requirement is to limit the maximum capacitance seen by metallic line testing systems. By setting this limit, the metallic test systems can still test POTS services with the accuracy and dependability they have today.

Overall, the admittance of the POTS or PSTN port shall be capacitive.

The capacitance present at either the POTS or PSTN interfaces in the frequency range of 20-30 Hz shall be a maximum of 300 nF. This amount includes the capacitance of the two POTS splitters with attached modems.

The following, per end, maximum/minimum measurements as shown in Figure E.13 shall be met:

- POTS splitter, either CO or remote without the modem connected:
  - 115 nF Max.
  - 20 nF Min.
- Modem input allowance, including the DC blocking capacitors at the CO end:
  - 35 nF Max.
  - 20 nF Min.

- Modem with integral POTS splitter function or external POTS splitter with both HPF and LPF functions, are the sum of the above:
  - 150 nF Max.
  - 40 nF Min.

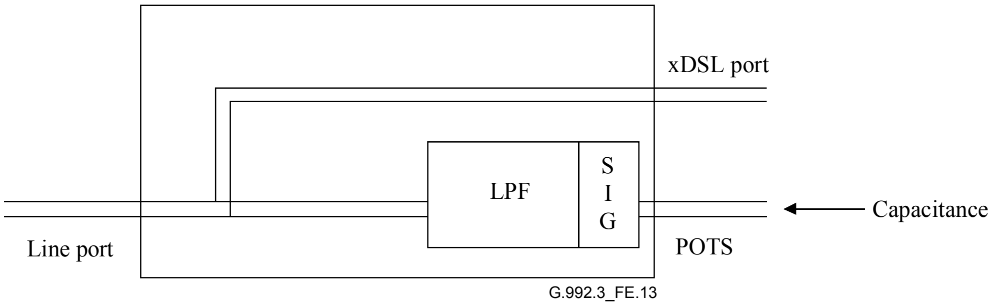



**Figure E.13/G.992.3 – Capacitance test**

#### E.2.3.3.2 Capacitance to ground

There should be no designed AC path to ground. In order to maintain the ability to test accurately, the maximum stray capacitance to ground from either leg of the POTS splitter shall be less than 1.0 nF.

### E.2.4 ADSL band testing

#### E.2.4.1 ADSL band attenuation

The insertion loss of the low-pass filter and ZHP (i.e., the difference in attenuation measured with and without the filter) measured as shown in Figures E.14 and E.15 shall be greater than 65 dB from 32 to 300 kHz and 55 dB from 300 to 1104 kHz with an input level of 10 dBm.

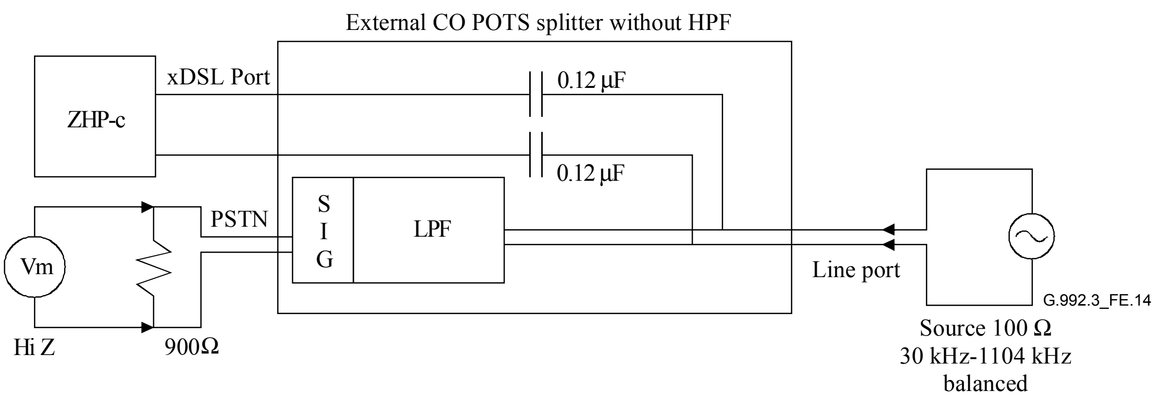



**Figure E.14/G.992.3 – Measurement of the CO splitter attenuation in the ADSL band**

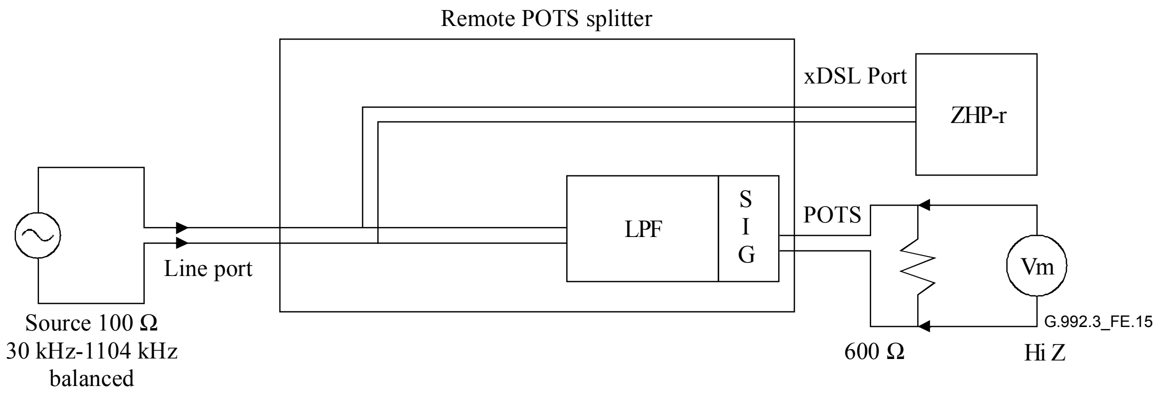



**Figure E.15/G.992.3 – Measurement of the remote splitter attenuation in the ADSL band**

### E.2.4.2 Input impedance (loading of ADSL signal path)

The insertion loss caused by the low-pass filter in the band from 30 to 1104 kHz between nominal impedances with an input level of –10 dBm, as shown in Figures E.16 and E.17 shall be no more than 0.25 dB.

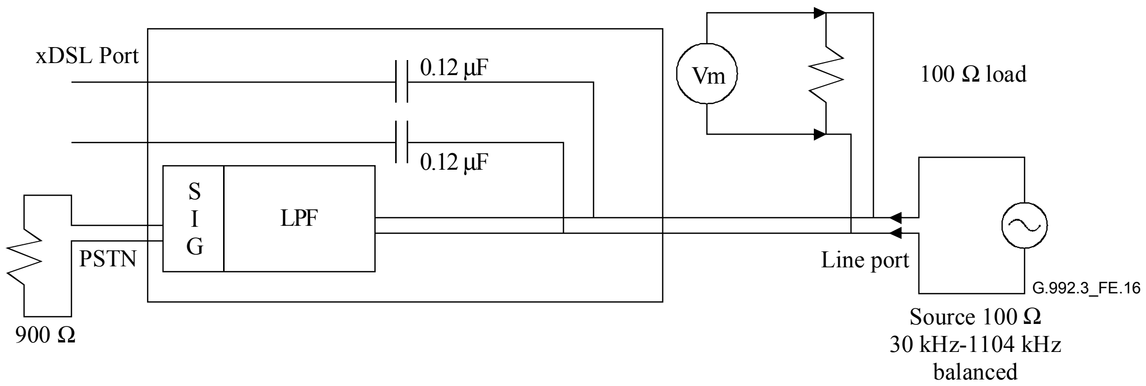



**Figure E.16/G.992.3 – Measurement of loading effect of the CO splitter in the ADSL band**

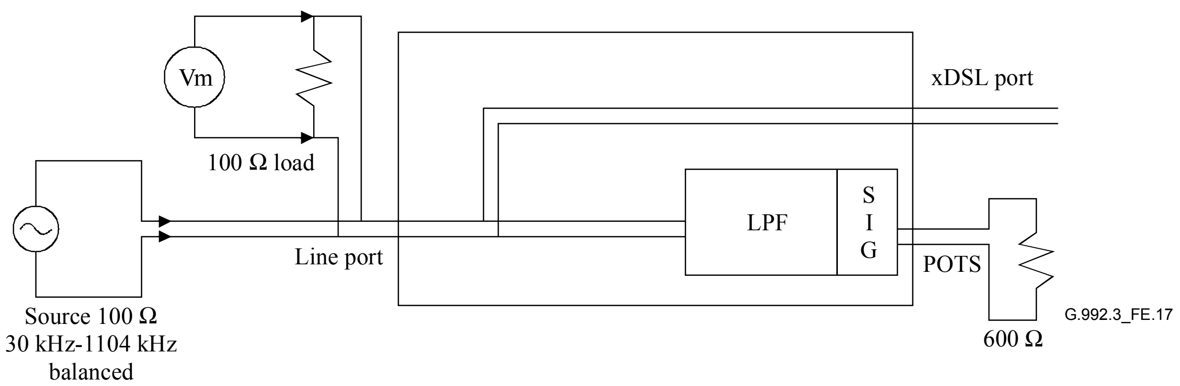



**Figure E.17/G.992.3 – Measurement of loading effect of the remote splitter in the ADSL band**

### E.2.5 Home premises physical considerations

#### E.2.5.1 Wiring considerations

The running of ADSL signals and POTS signals together within a single multiple pair cable cross couples POTS noises into the received ADSL signals. These POTS noises are generated as the result of ringing, ringing trip, dial pulsing, and on/off hook operation. The levels of these noises are great enough that without adequate pair-to-pair isolation, errors in the received data are possible. This quality of service degradation may be mitigated by the use of interleaving or error control in any higher-level data communications protocol.

The wiring configuration reference model, using separate cables, for an external POTS Splitter is shown in Figure E.18. If POTS and ADSL are to be run in the same cable, intercable isolation is assumed to be a minimum of 80 dB between pairs (i.e., CAT5 cable). It must be noted that the length of interpremises cabling must be included in the transmission link budgets. Use of other cable types (i.e., Quad or Standard twisted pairs) with lower separation specifications may result in higher errors and lower performance.

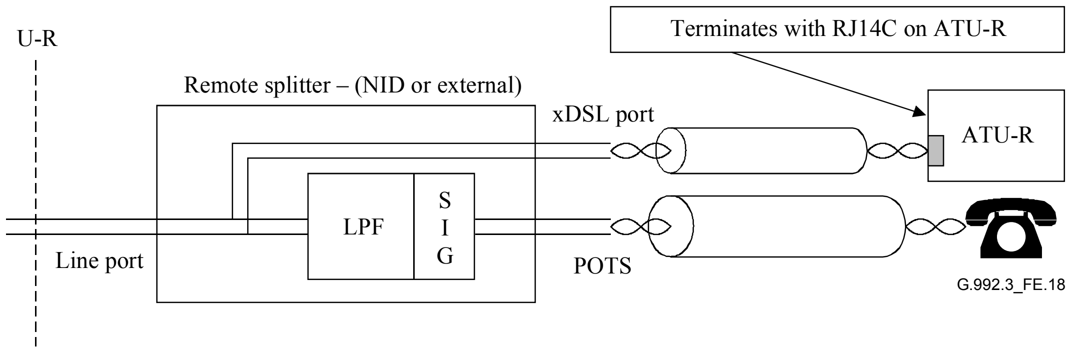



**Figure E.18/G.992.3 – Home premises wiring on separate sheaths for ATU-R**

### E.2.6 Phoneline networking equipment isolation

To allow phoneline networking terminals (i.e., ITU-T Recs G.989.1 and G.989.2) to operate without compromise from bridging loss caused by a low impedance at the remote splitter POTS port, an impedance range at the POTS port is defined for frequencies in the 2 to 10 MHz band.

#### E.2.6.1 Remote splitter POTS port shunt impedance

The total (across tip and ring at the POTS port) impedance in the 2 to 10 MHz frequency band should be at least 160 Ω.

The inclusion of series components to meet this specification shall not affect the other specified parameters such as DC resistance, longitudinal balance, tip to ring capacitance measurements under 200 Hz, or return loss requirements.

### E.3 Type 3 – ISDN (ITU-T Rec. G.961 Appendix I or II) Splitter – Europe

ADSL/ISDN splitters shall comply with in ETSI Technical Specification TS 101 952-1 [8]. The relevant sub-part is the following:

- Sub-part 1-3: Technical specification of ADSL/ISDN splitters.

## E.4 Type 4 – POTS splitter – Japan

This clause describes specifications and testing methods for a POTS splitter appropriate to Japan. Both a central office (CO) POTS splitter and a remote POTS splitter shall conform to them.

### E.4.1 Introduction

#### E.4.1.1 Frequencies and level of voiceband signal

The frequencies and level of the voiceband signal provided by the local switch (LS) are as follows:

- Signal frequency: 0.2-4.0 kHz.
- Signal level: maximum of +3 dBm.

A signal of +36 dBm at 400 Hz is also used as a howler signal.

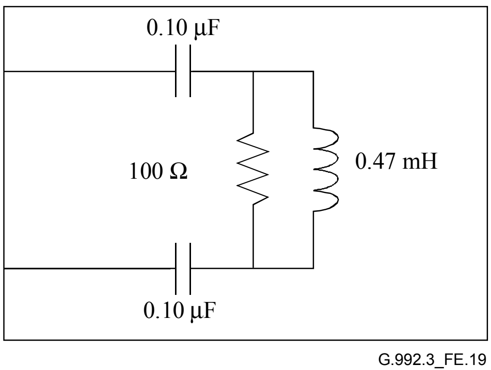
#### E.4.1.2 DC blocking capacitor for external POTS splitter

The external POTS splitter, either CO or remote, may be located some distance from ATU-C or ATU-R modem. To protect against DC faults, DC blocking capacitors of 0.12 µF per wire (as shown in Figures E.20 and E.21) should be included in the xDSL port of the external POTS splitter. These capacitors configure parts of the input to the xDSL HPF function, so they shall be incorporated in the input capacitance specified in E.4.2.6.1.

The DC blocking capacitors are only for the external POTS splitter. When the POTS splitter, either CO or remote, is included entirely within the ATU-C or ATU-R modem, the DC blocking capacitors are not necessary for the internal POTS splitter.

#### E.4.1.3 ZHP definition

To facilitate testing of the POTS splitter independently of the actual modem, a ZHP is defined to allow proper termination of the xDSL port during voiceband testing. The ZHP is valid only for voiceband frequencies. It shall be as shown in Figure E.19.




NOTE – Component Tolerances: Capacitors: 2.5%, Resistors: 1%, Coils: 5%.

**Figure E.19/G.992.3 – ZHP definitions**

### E.4.2 DC characteristics

This clause contains the DC specifications, such as the loop DC current, the ringing, the L1-to-L2 DC voltage, the loop DC resistance, the isolation resistance, the L1-to-L2 capacitance, and the capacitance to ground, and the methods for measuring them.

All requirements shall be met in the presence of all POTS loop currents ranging from 0 to 130 mA.

#### E.4.2.1 Loop DC current

The POTS splitter shall ensure normal operation for loop DC currents ranging from 0 to 130 mA.

### E.4.2.2 Ringing

The POTS splitter shall accept the following ringing signals:

- Ringing frequency: 15-20 Hz;
- Ringing AC (superimposed on DC): 83 Vrms Max;
- DC: 53 V Max.

### E.4.2.3 L1-to-L2 DC voltage

The POTS splitter shall accept POTS L1-to-L2 DC voltages of 0 to ±53 V. In addition, it shall be able to withstand a POTS L1-to-L2 voltage of up to 120 V for at least 10 s.

NOTE – In addition, the resistibility of the POTS splitter to overvoltages and overcurrents should be compliant to the requirements and test procedures specified in [B13] for equipments installed in a telecommunications centre and in [B14] for equipments installed in customer premises.

### E.4.2.4 DC resistance

The L1-to-L2 DC resistance, at the PSTN port with the line port shorted, or at the POTS port with the line port shorted, shall be less than or equal to 40 Ω.

### E.4.2.5 Isolation resistance

The isolation resistance of the POTS splitter shall remain intact under the following conditions.

#### E.4.2.5.1 L1-to-L2 isolation resistance

The L1-to-L2 isolation resistance at the PSTN port with the line port opened, or at the POTS port with the line port opened, shall be greater than or equal to 10 MΩ.

#### E.4.2.5.2 Isolation resistance to ground

The isolation resistance to ground at the PSTN port with the line port opened, or at the POTS port with the line port opened, shall be greater than or equal to 10 MΩ.

### E.4.2.6 Capacitance

The capacitance of the POTS splitter and modem shall satisfy the following requirements.

#### E.4.2.6.1 L1-to-L2 capacitance

The L1-to-L2 capacitance at the PSTN or POTS port and the modem input allowance shall be as shown in Table E.5.

**Table E.5/G.992.3 – L1-to-L2 capacitance**

| | |
|---|---|
| POTS splitter, either CO or remote, without the modem connected | 250 nF Max (DC-30 Hz) |
| Modem input allowance, including the DC blocking capacitors built in the POTS splitter | 35 nF Max (DC-30 Hz) |
| Modem with internal POTS splitter is the sum of the above | 285 nF Max (DC-30 Hz) |
| Modem input allowance, excluding the DC blocking capacitors built in the POTS splitter (see Note) | 84 nF Max (DC-30 Hz) |
| NOTE – The capacitance summing up the ATU-R and the external remote POTS splitter is allowed up to 334 nF Max in a case that the ATU-R is connected to the line directly without passing the external remote POTS splitter and a phone only is connected at the POTS port without the ATU-R connected at the xDSL port of the external remote POTS splitter. | |

#### E.4.2.6.2 Capacitance to ground

The capacitance to ground at the PSTN port with the line port opened, or at the POTS port with the line port opened, shall be less than or equal to 1.0 nF.

### E.4.3 AC characteristics

This clause contains the AC specifications of the voiceband, such as the insertion loss, the attenuation variation, the delay distortion, the return loss, the longitudinal balance, the distortion caused by harmonics, and the termination, and the methods for measuring them. In addition, it contains specifications and measurement methods for the out band and the ADSL band.

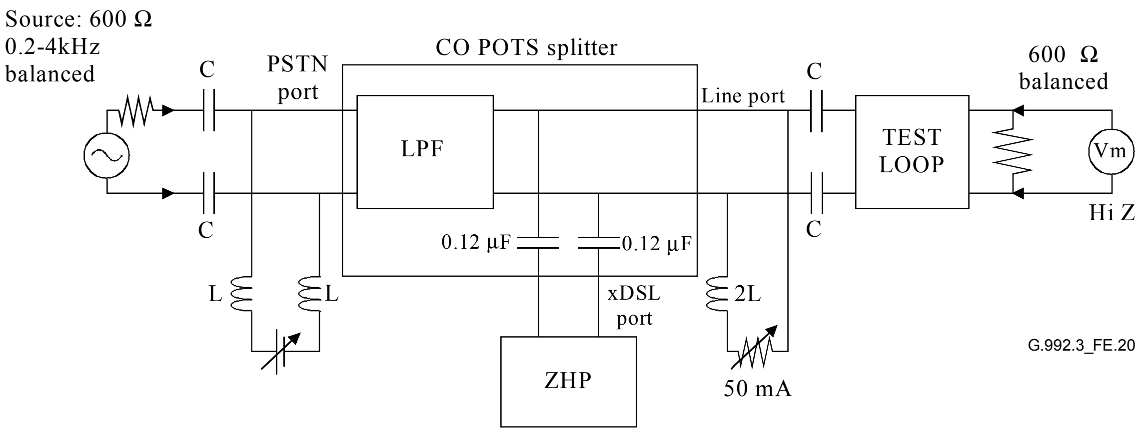
#### E.4.3.1 Voiceband

This clause describes the AC characteristics in the voiceband.

#### E.4.3.1.1 Insertion loss (at 1 kHz)

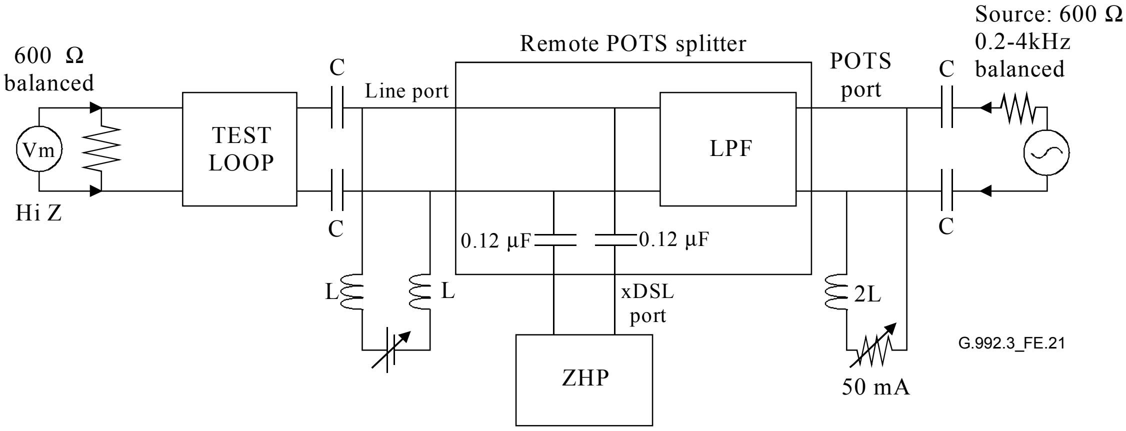
The insertion loss of the POTS splitter shall be less than or equal to ±1.0 dB at 1 kHz. Using the test set-up shown in Figures E.20 and E.21, the insertion loss from the source to termination shall be measured with and without the POTS splitter and the xDSL port terminal impedance combination inserted, and with an input level of 0 dBm (600 Ω). For the CO POTS splitter test in Figure E.20, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP. For the remote POTS splitter tests, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP for a first test in Figure E.21a and open impedance unconnecting ZHP for a second test in Figure E.21b.

A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. The C and L in Figures E.20 and E.21 are for superimposing the DC bias current. Proper values of the C and L should be set for testing voiceband frequencies ranging from 0.2 kHz to 4 kHz, and C ≥ 20 µF and L ≥ 15 H may be one of the proper values.

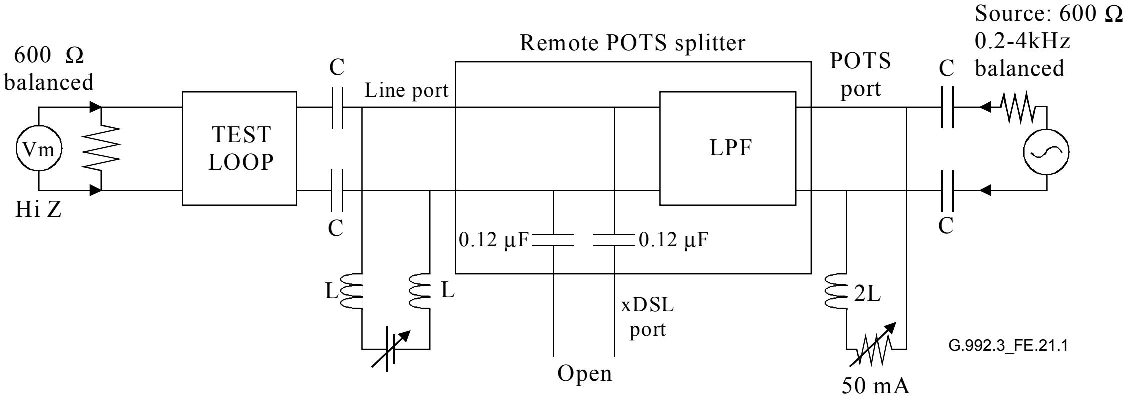



NOTE – The test loop is specified in Figure E.22.

**Figure E.20/G.992.3 – Transmission measurements in the voiceband for the CO POTS splitter**



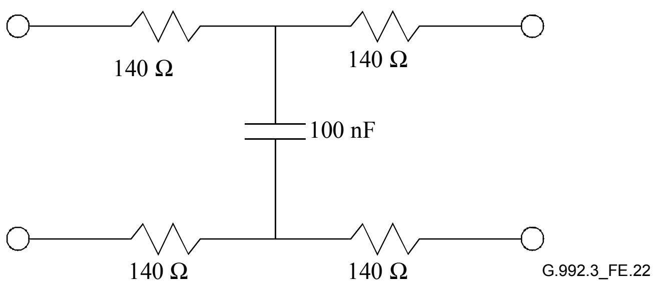

a) First test




b) Second test

NOTE – The test loop is specified in Figure E.22.

**Figure E.21/G.992.3 – Transmission measurements in the voiceband for the Remote POTS splitter**




NOTE – This test loop model is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

**Figure E.22/G.992.3 – Test loop definition**

#### E.4.3.1.2 Attenuation distortion in voiceband variation

The variation of insertion loss value from that measured with 1 kHz shall be measured using the test set-up in Figures E.20 and E.21, and with an input level of 0 dBm (600 Ω). The increase in attenuation distortion, relative to the 1 kHz insertion loss, caused by the POTS splitter with the ZHP (or modem) load attached using the test loop defined by Figure E.22, between 0.2 and 3.4 kHz shall be less than ±1.0 dB and between 3.4 kHz and 4.0 kHz shall be less than ±1.5 dB.

A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of the C and L should be set for testing voiceband frequencies ranging from 0.2 kHz to 4 kHz, and C ≥ 20 µF and L ≥ 15 H may be one of the proper values.

#### E.4.3.1.3 Absolute group delay and group delay distortion

The absolute group delay of the POTS splitter at the frequency of minimum group delay shall not exceed 150 µs. The group delay distortion of the POTS splitter shall lie within the limits shown below, where the group delay distortion is defined as the increase from the minimum value of absolute group delay:

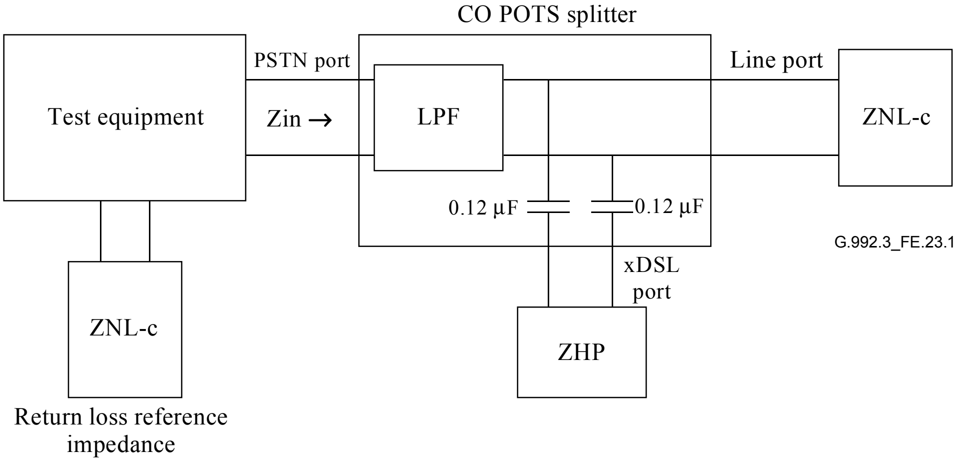
- 0.2-0.6 kHz: maximum of 250 µs
- 0.6-3.2 kHz: maximum of 200 µs
- 3.2-4.0 kHz: maximum of 250 µs

The absolute group delay and group delay distortion of the POTS splitter shall be measured using the test set-up and conditions defined in Figures E.20 and E.21.

#### E.4.3.1.4 Return loss

Figure E.23-1 defines the test configuration and the values of the test components that shall be used for impedance measurements in the voiceband for both the CO splitter. The terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP. Figures E.23-2 and E.23-3 define the test configuration and the values of the test components that shall be used for impedance measurements in the voiceband for the remote POTS splitter. The terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP for a first test in Figure E.23-2, and open impedance unconnecting ZHP for a second test in the Figure E.23-3. The return loss of each splitter under the specified conditions shall be as follows:

- 11 dB (0.2-1.5 kHz)
- 10 dB (1.5-2.0 kHz)
- 9 dB (2.0-3.4 kHz)



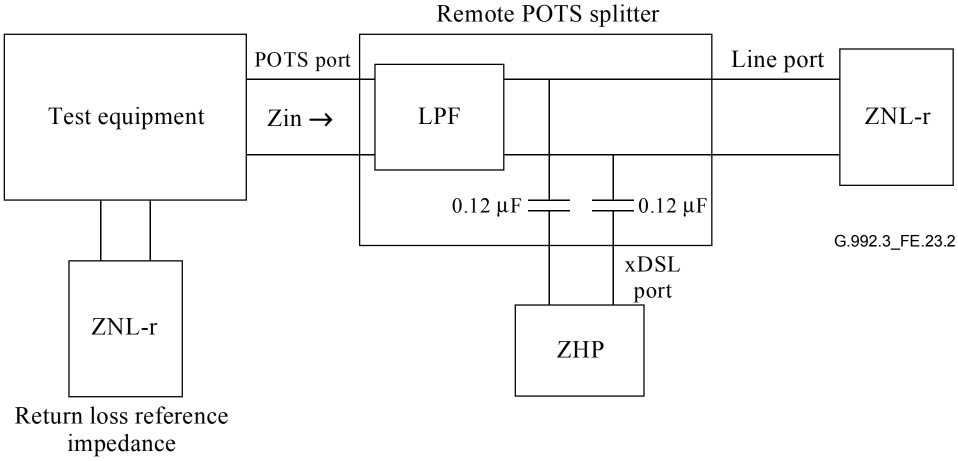

$$\text{ReturnLoss} = -20\ \text{Log} \left| \frac{\text{ZNL-c} - \text{Zin}}{\text{Zin} + \text{ZNL-c}} \right| \text{dB}$$

Where:

ZNL-c = 150 Ω + (830 Ω // 72 nF)

NOTE – The ZNL-c is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

**Figure E.23-1/G.992.3 – Impedance measurements in the voiceband for the CO POTS splitter**



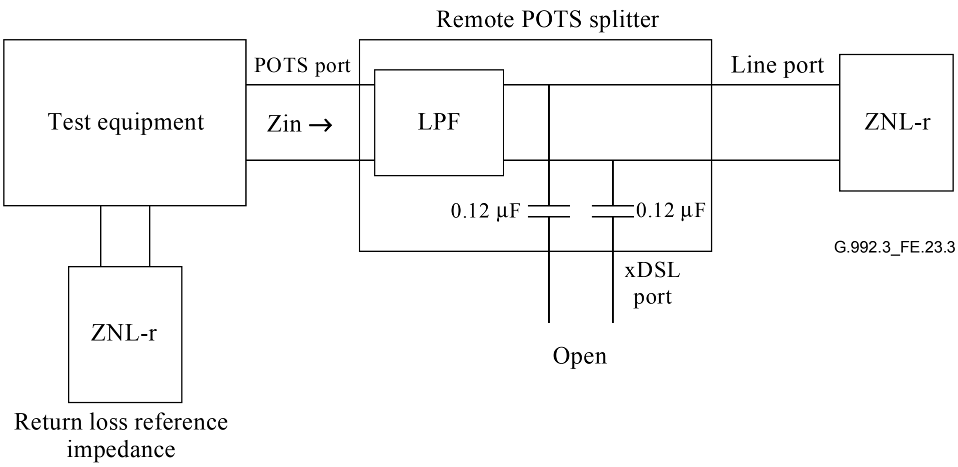

$$\text{ReturnLoss} = -20\ \text{Log} \left| \frac{\text{ZNL-r} - \text{Zin}}{\text{Zin} + \text{ZNL-r}} \right| \text{dB}$$

Where:

ZNL-r = 150 Ω + (72 nF // (830 Ω + 1 µF))

NOTE – The ZNL-r is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

**Figure E.23-2/G.992.3 – Impedance measurements in the voiceband for the Remote POTS splitter (First Test)**




$$\text{ReturnLoss} = -20 \text{ Log} \left| \frac{\text{ZNL-r} - \text{Zin}}{\text{Zin} + \text{ZNL-r}} \right| \text{dB}$$

Where:

ZNL-r = 150 Ω + (72 nF // (830 Ω + 1 µF))

NOTE – The ZNL-r is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

**Figure E.23-3/G.992.3 – Impedance measurements in the voiceband for the Remote POTS splitter (Second Test)**

#### E.4.3.1.5 Non-linear distortion

The distortion contributed by the low-pass filter shall be measured using the test configurations in Figures E.20 and E.21, and the null loop.

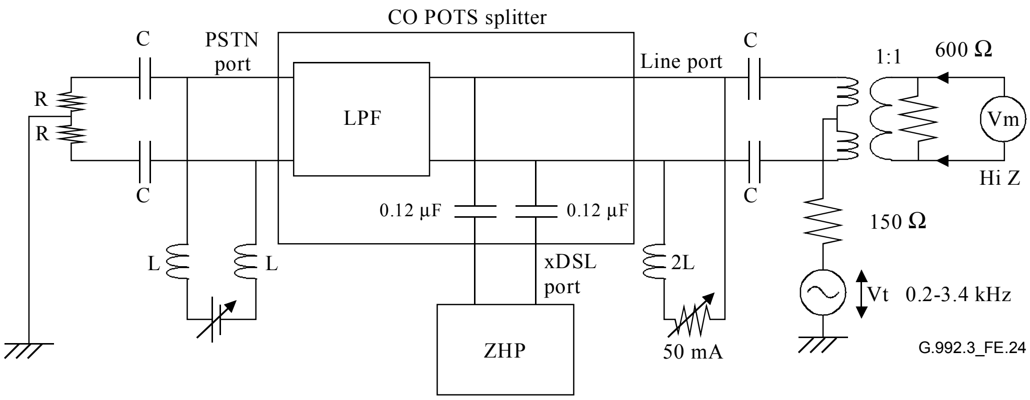
The testing method shall comply with ITU-T Rec. O.42 [6].

With an applied tone set, at a level of –9 dBm, the second and third order intermodulation distortion products shall be at least 57 dB and 60 dB, respectively, below the received signal level.

#### E.4.3.1.6 Longitudinal balance

The longitudinal balance of the POTS splitter shall be greater than 58 dB for frequencies ranging from 0.2 to 3.4 kHz. Test setups are shown in Figures E.24, E.25-1 and E.25-2. For the CO POTS splitter test in Figure E.24, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP. For the remote POTS splitter tests, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP for a first test in Figure E.25-1, and open impedance unconnecting ZHP for a second test in Figure E.25-2.

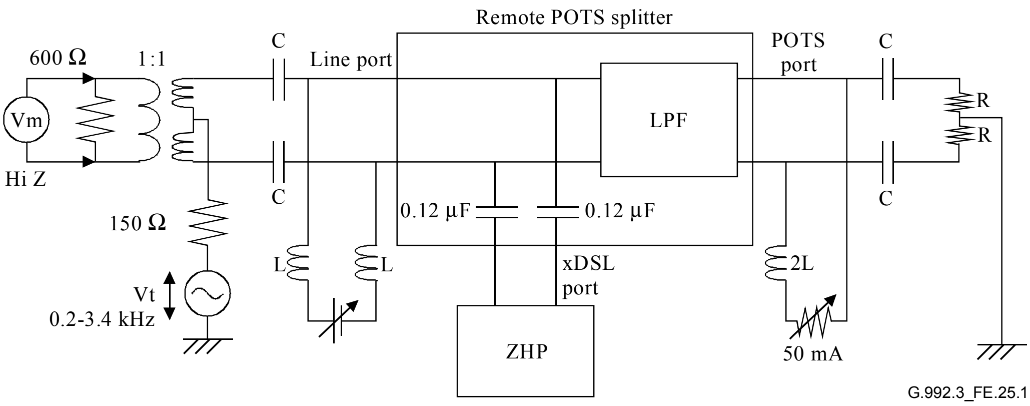
A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of the C and L in Figures E.24, E.25-1 and E.25-2 should be set for testing voiceband frequencies ranging from 0.2 kHz to 3.4 kHz, and C ≥ 20 µF and L ≥ 15 H may be one of the proper values. The longitudinal voltage of 3.0 $V_{pp}$ shall be imposed as the Vt in the figures.




Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm/Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

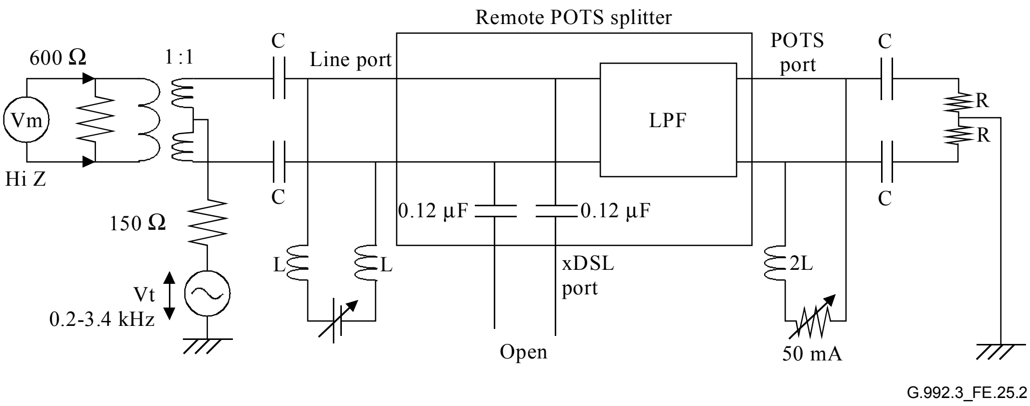
**Figure E.24/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance CO test setup**




Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm/Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

**Figure E.25-1/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance remote test setup (First Test)**




Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm/Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

**Figure E.25-2/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance remote test setup (Second Test)**

### E.4.3.2 Out band

The band between the voiceband and ADSL band is defined as the out band. The attenuation in the out band of the low-pass filter of the remote POTS splitter (i.e., the difference in attenuation measured with and without the low-pass filter), shown in Figure E.27, shall be greater than or equal to $26.48 \times \log_2(f/4)$ dB for 4.0 kHz ≤ f < 25 kHz (where f in kHz) with an input level of 10 dBm (see Notes 1 and 2). A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of the C and L in Figure E.27 should be set for testing the frequency range from 4 kHz to 25 kHz, and C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 1.5 H may be one of the proper values. This out band attenuation specification is only for the remote POTS splitter, and is not applied to the CO POTS splitter (see Note 3). The out band is used with pulse metering (16 kHz), and OVS signals (7.8 kHz), etc. The service splitters supporting these circuits as using out band signals are outside scope of this annex.

NOTE 1 – The ATU-R transmit power spectral density (PSD) should be less than or equal to $-97.5 + 26.48 \times \log_2(f/4)$ dBm/Hz for 4.0 kHz ≤ f < 8.06 kHz (where f in kHz) in order to suppress ATU-R transmit signal leakage into phones through the low-pass filter of the remote POTS splitter, assuming the above out band sloped attenuation specification for the remote POTS splitter.

NOTE 2 – The digital modem defined in ITU-T Rec. V.90 at a signal rates of up to 56 kbit/s downstream might be affected in several decrements of 8/6 kbit/s by the low-pass filter cut-off characteristics. The service splitter fully supporting the V.90 modem with no performance degradation is outside scope of this annex.

NOTE 3 – The cut-off frequency of the low-pass filter of the CO POTS splitter should be less than or equal to 8.58 kHz in order to suppress ATU-R transmit signal leakage into the CO analogue line card through the low-pass filter of the CO POTS splitter, when the loop is short and the ATU-R transmit signal attenuation on the CO side is small, where the assumptions are that the characteristics of the low-pass filter built in the CO analogue line card is compliant with [B18], and the transmission characteristics at 2-wire analogue interfaces is compliant with [B19] and [B20].

### E.4.3.3 ADSL band

This clause describes the AC characteristics in the ADSL band.

#### E.4.3.3.1 ADSL band attenuation

The attenuation in the stop band of the low-pass filter (i.e., the difference in attenuation measured with and without the low-pass filter), shown in Figures E.26 and E.27, shall be greater than 65 dB for the CO POTS splitter and 70 dB for the remote POTS splitter for frequencies ranging from 25 kHz to 300 kHz with an input level of 10 dBm (100 Ω). For frequencies ranging from 300 kHz to 1104 kHz, the attenuation shall be greater than 55 dB for the CO and remote POTS splitters in the same test conditions (see Note). A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of the C and L in Figures E.26 and E.27 should be set. C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 0.5 H may be one of the proper values for testing the frequency range from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz. As testing the out band (see E.4.3.2) together with the ADSL band, C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 1.5 H may be one of the proper values for testing the frequency range from 4 kHz to 1104 kHz.

NOTE – The attenuation of CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL (ITU-T Rec. G.993.1 [13]) should also be greater than 55 dB for frequencies ranging from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz. Proper values of the C and L (e.g., C ≥ 0.2 µF and L ≥ 5 mH) in Figures E.26 and E.27 should be set for testing in the frequency range from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz.

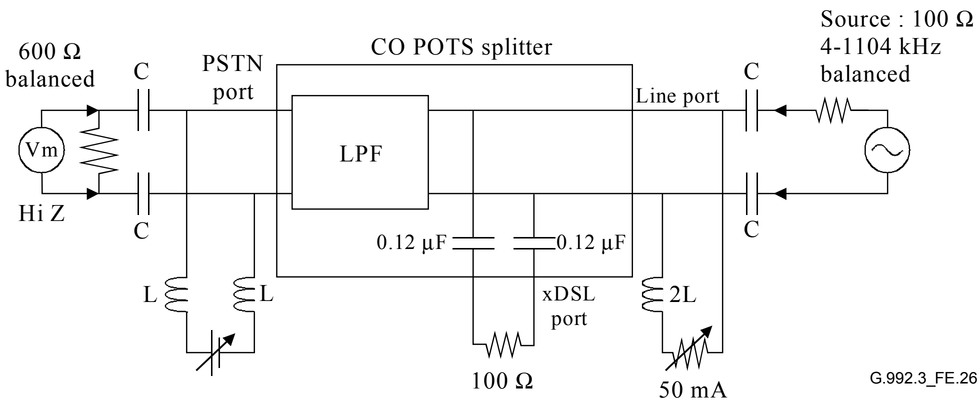



**Figure E.26/G.992.3 – Measurement of the CO POTS splitter attenuation in the ADSL band**

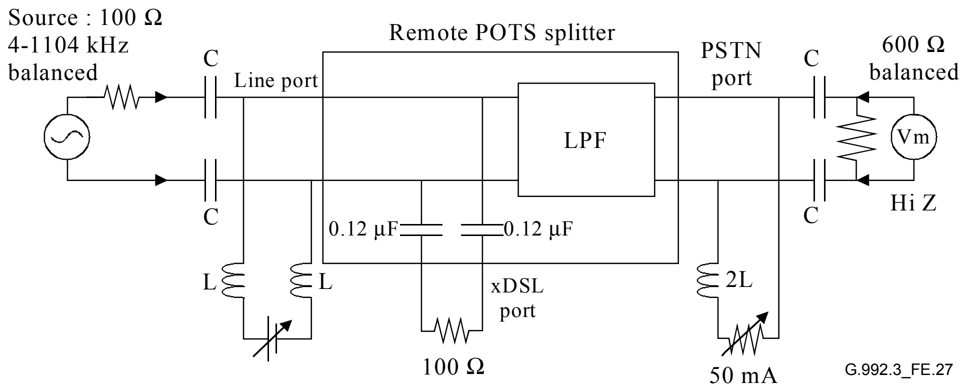
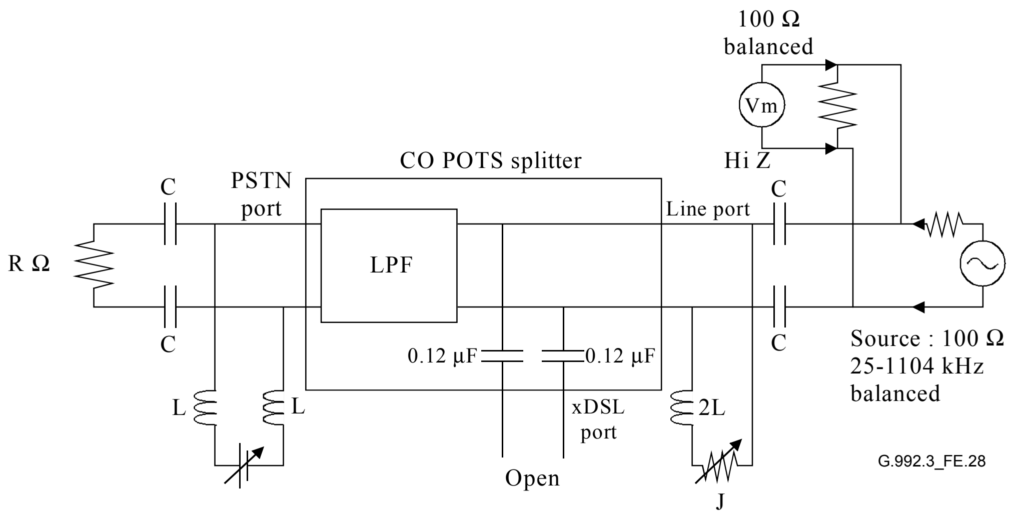



**Figure E.27/G.992.3 – Measurement of the remote POTS splitter attenuation in the ADSL band**

### E.4.3.3.2 ADSL band insertion loss as LPF loading effect

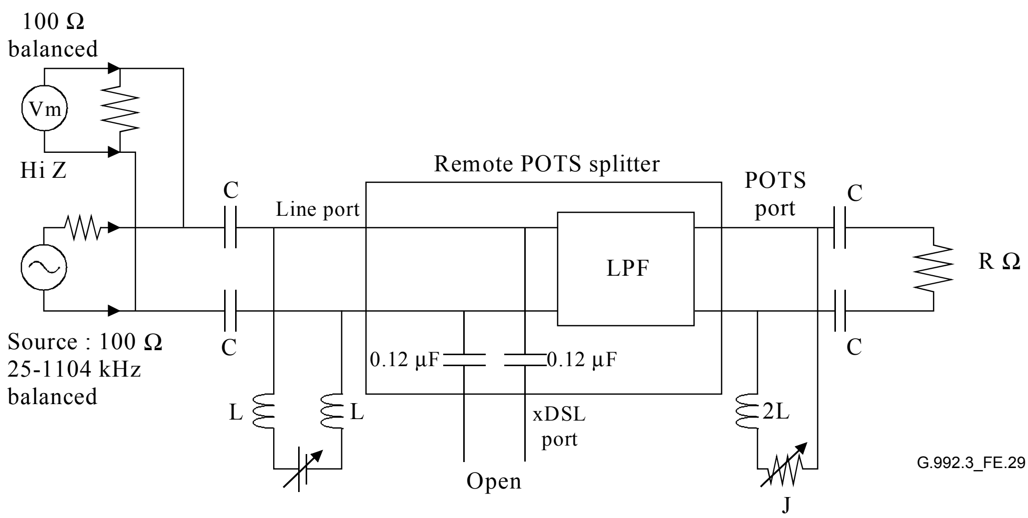
The insertion loss caused by loading the low-pass filter in the band from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz (see Note) with an input level of –10 dBm (100 Ω), as shown in Figures E.28 and E.29, shall be less than 0.35 dB. The requirement shall be met for the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of both 600 Ω and open. A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied in the test case of the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of 600 Ω. No DC bias current of 0 mA shall be applied in the test case of the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of open. Proper values of the C and L in Figures E.28 and E.29 should be set for testing the frequency range from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz, and C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 0.5 H may be one of the proper values.

NOTE – The insertion loss for CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL (ITU-T Rec. G.993.1 [13]) should be less than 1.5 dB for frequencies ranging from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz. Proper values of the C and L in Figures E.28 and E.29 should be set. C ≥ 0.2 µF and L ≥ 5 mH may be one of the proper values for testing the frequency range from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz.




Where: R = 600 Ω, J = 50 mA
R = open, J = 0 mA

**Figure E.28/G.992.3 – Measurement of loading effect of the CO POTS splitter in the ADSL band**




Where: R = 600 Ω, J = 50 mA
R = open, J = 0 mA

**Figure E.29/G.992.3 – Measurement of loading effect of the remote POTS splitter in the ADSL band**

### E.4.3.3.3 ADSL band return loss as LPF loading effect

The return loss caused by loading the low-pass filter in the band from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz against the reference impedance of 100 Ω, as shown in Figure E.30, shall be greater than 14 dB (see Note). The requirement shall be met for the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of both 600 Ω and open.

NOTE – The return loss for CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL (ITU-T Rec. G.993.1 [13]) should also be greater than 12 dB in the band from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz.

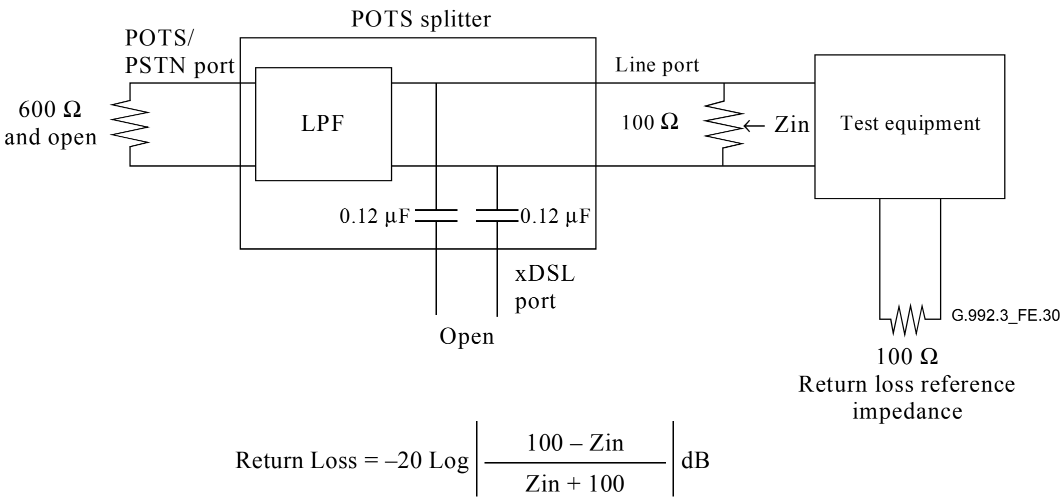



**Figure E.30/G.992.3 – Impedance measurements in the ADSL band for the CO and remote POTS splitters**

### E.4.3.3.4 ADSL band longitudinal balance

The longitudinal balance of the POTS splitter shall be greater than 40 dB for frequencies ranging from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz (see Note). A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of the C and L in Figures E.31 and E.32 should be set for testing the frequency range from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz, and C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 0.5 H may be one of the proper values. The longitudinal voltage of 3.0 $V_{pp}$ shall be imposed as the Vt in the figures.

NOTE – The longitudinal balance for CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL (ITU-T Rec. G.993.1 [13]) should also be greater than 40 dB for frequencies ranging from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz. Proper values of the C and L in Figures E.31 and E.32 should be set for testing the frequency range from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz, and C ≥ 0.2 µF and L ≥ 5 mH may be one of the proper values.

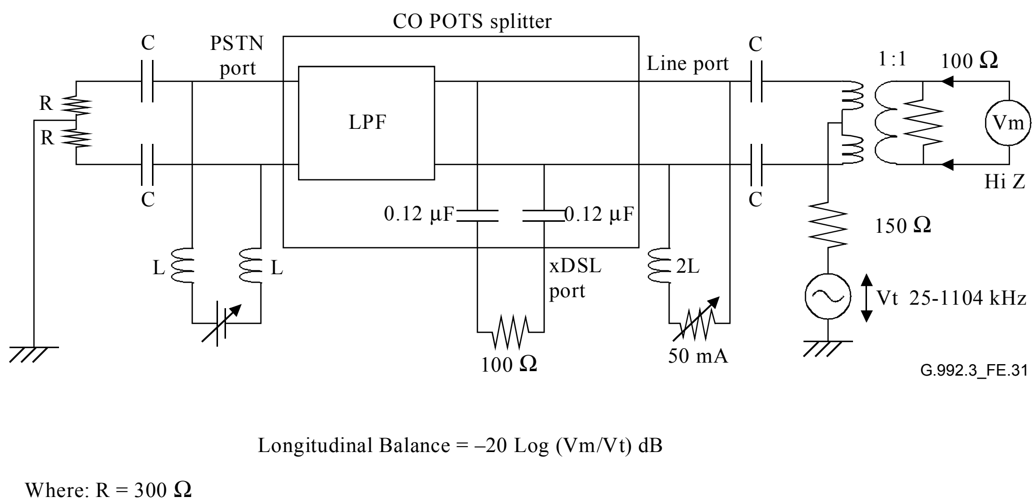



**Figure E.31/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance CO test setup in the ADSL band**

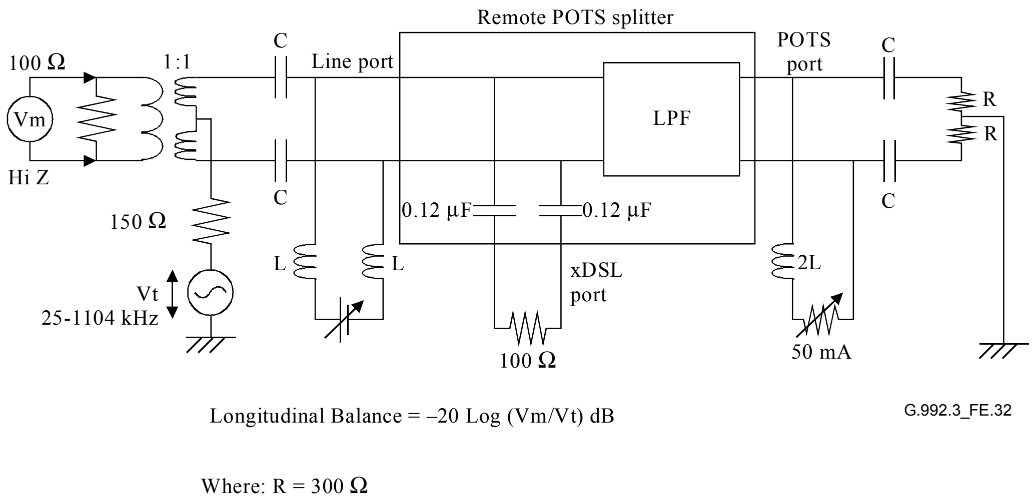



**Figure E.32/G.992.3 – Longitudinal balance remote test setup in the ADSL band**

# Annex F

# ATU-x performance requirements for region A (North America)

## F.1 Performance requirements for operation of ADSL over POTS (Annex A)

### F.1.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to A.1.2 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in DSL Forum TR-048 [9], as applicable to North America for testing of physical layer aspects (i.e., excluding clause 9), with the ATU control parameters set as defined in F.1.3.

The pass/fail criteria contained in DSL Forum TR-048 [9] shall apply as requirements for conformance to this Recommendation.

### F.1.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to A.1.3 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in DSL Forum TR-048 [9], as applicable to North America for testing of physical layer aspects (i.e., excluding clause 9), with the ATU control parameters set as defined in F.1.3.

The pass/fail criteria contained in DSL Forum TR-048 [9] shall apply as requirements for conformance to this Recommendation.

### F.1.3 ATU control parameter settings

For the purpose of testing according to DSL Forum TR-048 [9], the ATU control parameters shall be set as follows:

- Rate adaptive at Init mode (see 8.5) shall be used, except for DSL Forum TR-048 [9] clauses 8.2 and 8.5.2, which shall use fixed rate;
- Trellis coding is allowed;
- The target noise margin shall be set to 6 dB upstream and downstream;
- Single latency path and Single Frame Bearer operation;

- Framing message based overhead data rate shall be set to MSGmin = 6 kbit/s;
- Fast Mode shall be tested with a nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay ≤ 4 ms;
- Interleaved Mode shall be tested with a nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay ≤ 20 ms;
- The minimum noise margin shall be set to 0 dB;
- No limitation of maximum noise margin (set to at least 30 dB);
- For testing of operation in the presence of Impulse Noise events (DSL Forum TR-048 [9] clause 8.8), the ATU shall be configured in interleaved mode.

The nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay is defined in 5.2.

### F.2 Performance requirements for operation of All Digital Mode ADSL (Annex I)

#### F.2.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to I.1.2 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in F.1.1.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

#### F.2.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to I.1.3 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for non-overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in F.1.2.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

## Annex G

## ATU-x performance requirements for region B (Europe)

### G.1 Performance requirements for operation of ADSL over POTS (Annex A)

#### G.1.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to A.1.2 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in ETSI TS 101 388 [10], Chapter 5, Transmission performance objectives and test methods, as applicable to EC ADSL over POTS.

#### G.1.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to A.1.3 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in ETSI TS 101 388 [10], Chapter 5, Transmission performance objectives and test methods, as applicable to FDD ADSL over POTS.

### G.2 Performance requirements for operation of ADSL over ISDN (Annex B)

#### G.2.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to B.1.2 and B.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in ETSI TS 101 388 [10], Chapter 5, Transmission performance objectives and test methods, as applicable to EC ADSL over ISDN.

### G.2.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to B.1.3 and B.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in ETSI TS 101 388 [10], Chapter 5, Transmission performance objectives and test methods, as applicable to FDD ADSL over ISDN.

## G.3 Performance requirements for operation of All Digital Mode ADSL (Annex I)

### G.3.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to I.1.2 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in G.1.1.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

### G.3.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to I.1.3 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for non-overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in G.1.2.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

## G.4 Performance requirements for operation of All Digital Mode ADSL (Annex J)

### G.4.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to J.1.2 and J.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over ISDN, as defined in G.2.1.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

### G.4.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to J.1.3 and J.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for non-overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over ISDN, as defined in G.2.2.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

# Annex H

# Specific requirements for a synchronized symmetrical DSL (SSDSL) system operating in the same cable binder as ISDN as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.961 Appendix III

For further study.

# Annex I

# All digital mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS

## I.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

### I.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table I.1. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

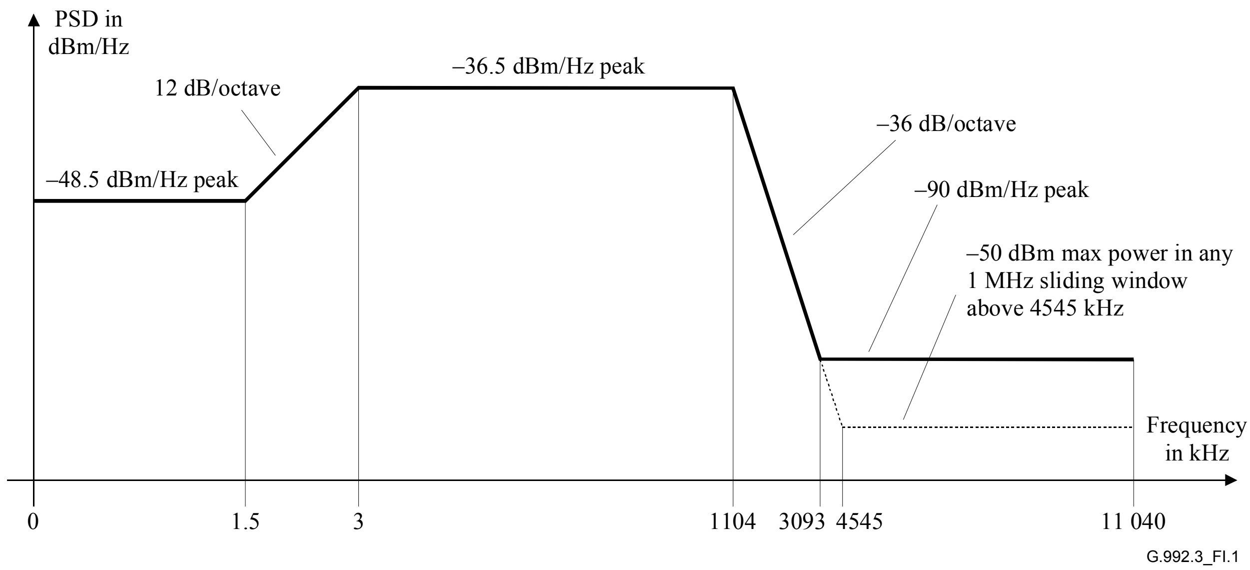
**Table I.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C control parameter settings**

| Parameter | Default setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCds* | 256 | |
| *NOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPds* (operation per I.1.2) | 20.4 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |

### I.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 3 to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure I.1 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.




| Frequency band *f* (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \le 1.5$ | –48.5 |
| $1.5 < f \le 3$ | $-36.5 + 12 \times \log_2(f/3)$ |
| $3 < f \le 1104$ | –36.5 |
| $1104 < f \le 3093$ | $-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$ |
| $3093 < f \le 4545$ | –90 peak, with max power in the [*f*, *f* + 1 MHz] window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm |
| $4545 < f \le 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with max power in the [*f*, *f* + 1 MHz] window of –50 dBm |
| NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in a 100 Ω resistive termination.<br>NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.<br>NOTE 3 – Above 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth. Below 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 100 Hz resolution bandwidth.<br>NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.<br>NOTE 5 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface | |

**Figure I.1/G.992.3 – All digital mode ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for overlapped spectrum operation**

NOTE – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (Annex A/G.992.1 and Annexes A and B/G.992.2) there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the All-Digital Loop downstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS upstream channel at frequencies below 138 kHz. Detailed study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the downstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).

### I.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDds* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the Channel Discovery Phase;
- *REFPSDds* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the Transceiver Training Phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDds* – *PCBds* +3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum passband transmit PSD level allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is –40 dBm/Hz.

#### I.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see I.1.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds* – *PCBds*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 20.9 dBm.
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds* – *PCBds*) by more than 0.9 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stop bands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 20.4 dBm.

### I.1.3 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation over POTS, as defined in Figure A.2 in A.1.3, with the following modification:

For $0 < f < 4$, the PSD shall be below –97.5 dBm/Hz (no extra limitation of max power in 0-4 kHz band).

Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in I.1.2 only in the band below 138 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 138 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 138 kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

#### I.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See A.1.3.1.

#### I.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See A.1.3.2.

## I.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

### I.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table I.2. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

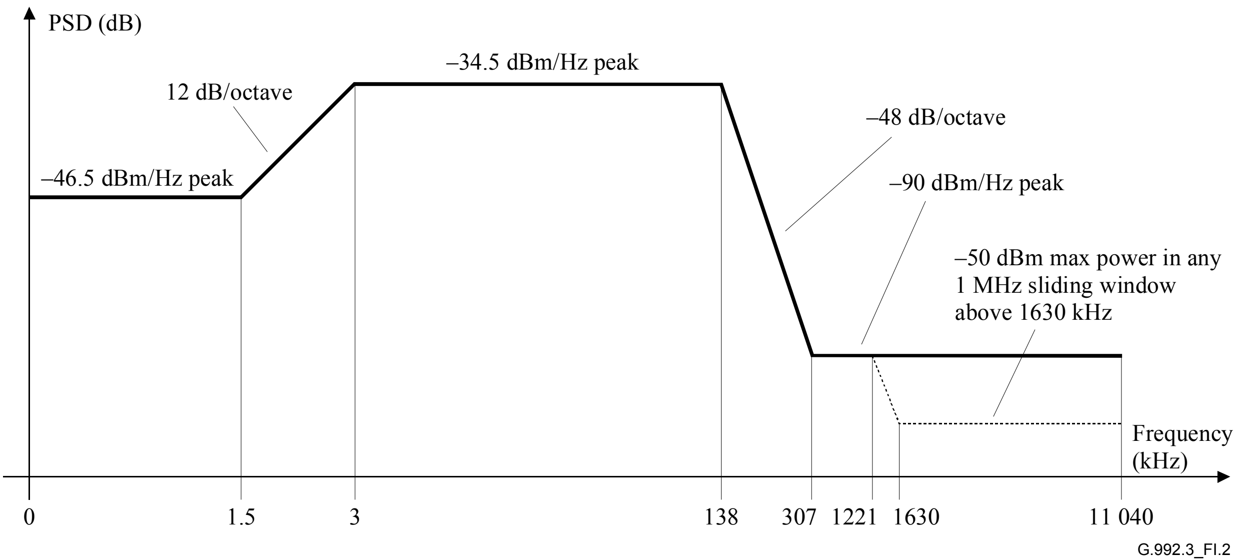
**Table I.2/G.992.3 – ATU-R control parameter settings**

| Parameter | Default Setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCus* | 32 | |
| *NOMPSDus* | –38 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDus* | –38 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPus* | 13.3 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |

### I.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 3 to 138 kHz and is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure I.2 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 138 kHz.




| Frequency band *f* (kHz) | Equation for line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \leq 1.5$ | –46.5 |
| $1.5 < f \leq 3$ | $-34.5 + 12 \times \log_2(f/3)$ |
| $3 < f \leq 138$ | –34.5 |
| $138 < f \leq 307$ | $-34.5 - 48 \times \log_2(f/138)$ |
| $307 < f \leq 1221$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 100$ kHz$]$ window of –42.5 dBm |
| $1221 < f \leq 1630$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-90 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1221) + 60)$ dBm |
| $1630 < f \leq 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm |

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are into a 100 Ω resistive termination.

NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.

NOTE 3 – Above 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth. Below 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 100 Hz resolution bandwidth.

NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.

NOTE 5 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface (see Figure 5-6)

**Figure I.2/G.992.3 – All digital mode ATU-R transmitter PSD mask**

### I.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDus* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the Channel Discovery Phase;
- *REFPSDus* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the Transceiver Training Phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDus* – *PCBus* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum transmit PSD allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is –38 dBm/Hz.

### I.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see I.2.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.8 dBm.
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band, shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stop bands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 13.3 dBm.

## I.3 Initialization

For this annex, no additional requirements apply (relative to the main body of this Recommendation).

## I.4 Electrical characteristics

### I.4.1 Wetting current (Region A – North America)

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall support wetting current functionality and related characteristics. The operator may disable the provisioning of wetting current at the ATU-C.

The ATU-R shall be capable of drawing between 1.0 and 20 mA of wetting (sealing) current from the remote feeding circuit. The maximum rate of change of the wetting current shall be no more than 20 mA per second.

The ATU-C may optionally supply power to support wetting current. The minimum voltage should be high enough to ensure a minimum of 32 V at the inputs of the ATU-R. The potential from tip to ground should be zero or negative. In no case shall the voltage or current accessible to the user (in the network or at the ATU-R) exceed the maximum values required for conformance to regional safety requirements.

NOTE – One method to ensure conformance with regional safety requirements would be to design for compliance with the most recent edition of [B15], with appropriate consideration for national deviations.

#### I.4.1.1 Metallic termination

A metallic termination at the ATU-R shall be provided in conjunction with the use of wetting current (see I.4.1).

Table I.3 and Figure I.3 give characteristics that apply to the DC metallic termination of the ATU-R. The metallic termination provides a direct current path from tip to ring at the ATU-R, providing a path for sealing current. By exercising the nonlinear functions of the metallic termination, a network-side test system may identify the presence of a conforming ATU-R on the customer side of the interface. The characteristics of the metallic termination shall not be affected by whether the ATU-R is powered in any state, or unpowered.

There are two operational states of the DC metallic termination:

a) the ON or conductive state;

b) the OFF or nonconductive state.

##### I.4.1.1.1 ON state

The application of a voltage across the metallic termination greater than $V_{AN}$, the activate/non-activate voltage, for a duration greater than the activate time shall cause the termination to transition to the ON state. The activate/nonactivate voltage shall be in the range of 30.0 to 39.0 V. The activate time shall be in the range of 3.0 to 50.0 ms. If a change of state is to occur, the transition shall be completed within 50 ms from the point where the applied voltage across the termination first exceeds $V_{AN}$ Application of a voltage greater than $V_{AN}$ for a duration less than 3.0 ms shall not cause the termination to transition to the ON state. See Table I.3 and Figure I.3.

While in the ON state, when the voltage across the termination is 15 V, the current shall be greater than or equal to 20 mA. The metallic termination shall remain in the ON state as long as the current is greater than the threshold $I_{HR}$ (see Table I.3 and Figure I.3) whose value shall be in the range of 0.1 to 1.0 mA. Application of 90.0 V through 200 to 4000 Ω (for a maximum duration of 2 s) shall result in a current greater than 9.0 mA.

##### I.4.1.1.2 OFF state

The metallic termination shall transition to the OFF state if the current falls below the threshold $I_{HR}$ whose value shall be in the range of 0.1 to 1.0 mA for a duration greater than the "guaranteed release" time (100 ms) (see Table I.3 and Figure I.3). If a change of state is to occur, the transition shall be completed within 100 ms from the point where the current first falls below $I_{HR}$ If the current falls below $I_{HR}$ for a duration of less than 3.0 ms, the termination shall not transition to the OFF state. While in the OFF state, the current shall be less than 5.0 µA whenever the voltage is less than 20.0 V. The current shall not exceed 1.0 mA while the voltage across the termination remains less than the activate voltage.

Descriptive material can be found in Table I.3 and Figure I.3.

#### I.4.1.2 ATU-R capacitance

While the metallic termination is OFF, the tip-to-ring capacitance of the ATU-R when measured at a frequency of less than 100 Hz shall be 1.0 µF ± 10%.

### I.4.1.3 Behavior of the ATU-R during metallic testing

During metallic testing, the ATU-R shall behave as follows:

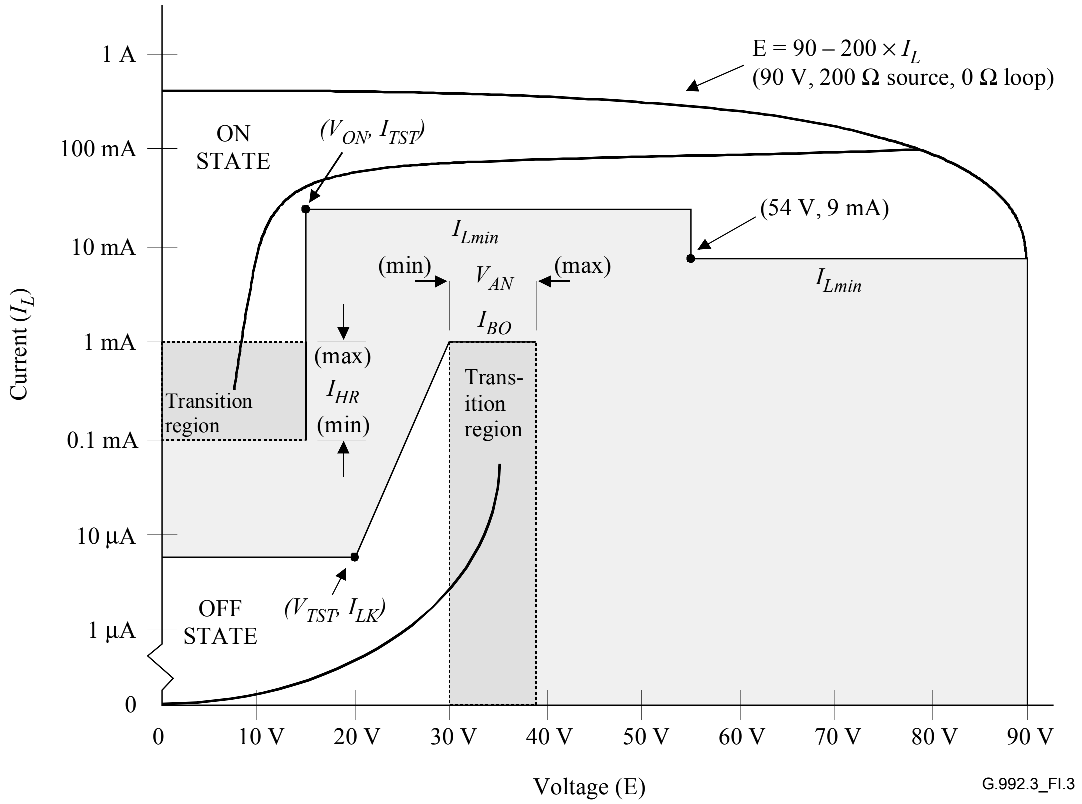
a) When a test voltage of up to 90 V (see Note) is applied across the loop under test, the ATU-R shall present its DC metallic termination as defined in I.4.1.1, Table I.3, and Figure I.3, and not trigger any protective device that will mask this signature. The series resistance (test system + test trunk + loop + margin) can be from 200 to 4000 Ω (balanced between the two conductors);

b) The ATU-R may optionally limit current in excess of 25 mA (20 mA maximum sealing current + 5 mA implementation margin).

NOTE – One test system in common use today applies 70 V DC plus 10 Vrms AC (84.4 V peak) to one conductor of the loop while grounding the other conductor.

**Table I.3/G.992.3 – Characteristics of DC metallic termination at the ATU-R**

| Characteristic | Value |
|---|---|
| Type of operation | Normally OFF DC termination. Turned ON by application of metallic voltage. Held ON by loop current flow. Turned OFF by cessation of loop current flow. |
| Current in the ON state and at 15 V | ≥ 20 mA |
| DC voltage drop (when ON) at 20 mA current | ≤ 15 V |
| DC current with application of 90 V through 4000 Ω for up to 2 s. | min 9 mA (see Note). See Figure I.3. |
| DC leakage current (when OFF) at 20 V | ≥ 5.0 μ A |
| Activate/non-activate voltage | 30.0 V DC ≤ $V_{AN}$ ≤ 39.0 V DC |
| Activate (break over) current at $V_{AN}$ | ≤ 1.0 mA |
| Activate time for voltage ≥ $V_{AN}$ | 3 ms to 50 ms |
| Hold/release current | 0.1 mA ≤ $I_{HR}$ ≤ 1.0 mA |
| Release/non-release time for current ≤ $I_{HR}$ | 3 ms to 100 ms |
| NOTE – This requirement is intended to ensure a termination consistent with test system operation. | |




**DC Characteristics**

| Parameter | Meaning | Limit | Condition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| $I_{LK}$ | Leakage current | $I_{LT} \leq 5$ µA | $V_{TST} = 20$ V | Test voltage |
| $V_{AN}$ | Activate/Non-activate voltage | 30 V $\leq V_{AN} \leq$ 39 V | | |
| $I_{BO}$ | Break over current | $I_{B0} \leq 1.0$ mA | | |
| $I_{HR}$ | Hold/Release current | 0.1 mA $\leq I_{HR} \leq$ 1.0 mA | | |
| $V_{ON}$ | ON voltage | $V_{0N} \leq 15$ V | $I_{TST} = 20$ mA | Test current |
| $I_{Lmin}$ | Minimum ON current | 9 mA | 54 V | |

**Figure I.3/G.992.3 – Illustration of DC characteristics of the ATU-R (bilateral switch and holding current)**

### I.4.2 Wetting current (Region B – Europe)

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall support wetting current functionality and related characteristics. The operator may disable the provisioning of wetting current at the ATU-C.

The ATU-R shall be capable of drawing between 0.2 and 3 mA of wetting (sealing) current from the remote feeding circuit.

The ATU-C may optionally supply power to support wetting current. In no case shall the voltage or current accessible to the user (in the network or at the ATU-R) exceed the maximum values required for conformance to regional safety requirements.

NOTE – One method to ensure conformance with regional safety requirements would be to design for compliance with the most recent edition of [B16], with appropriate consideration for national deviations.

### I.4.3 ADSL band characteristics

#### I.4.3.1 Longitudinal balance

Longitudinal balance at the U-R interface shall be greater than 40 dB over the 5 kHz to 1104 kHz frequency range.

Test setup and methodology is defined in A.4. The measurement of the longitudinal balance in the specified band shall be performed as shown in Figure A.4. The balance shall be measured in the absence of a DC bias voltage, with the modem under test active (i.e., powered with transmitter and receiver active and initializing or in showtime).

# Annex J

# All Digital Mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN

## J.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

### J.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table J.1. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

**Table J.1/G.992.3 – ATU-C control parameter settings**

| Parameter | Default setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCds* | 256 | |
| *NOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDds* | –40 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPds* (operation per J.1.2) | 20.4 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |

### J.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation, as defined in Figure I.1 in I.1.2.

The passband is defined as the band from 3 to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

NOTE – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (Annex A/G.992.1 and Annexes A and B/G.992.2) there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the All-Digital Loop downstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS upstream channel at frequencies below 138 kHz. Detailed study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the downstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).

#### J.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

See I.1.2.1.

#### J.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

See I.1.2.2.

### J.1.3 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation over ISDN, as defined in Figure B.2.

Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in I.1.2 only in the band below 254 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 254 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 254 kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

#### J.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See B.1.2.1.

#### J.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See B.1.2.2.

## J.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

### J.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R Control Parameter Settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table J.2. Control Parameters are defined in 8.5.

**Table J.2/G.992.3 – ATU-R control parameter settings**

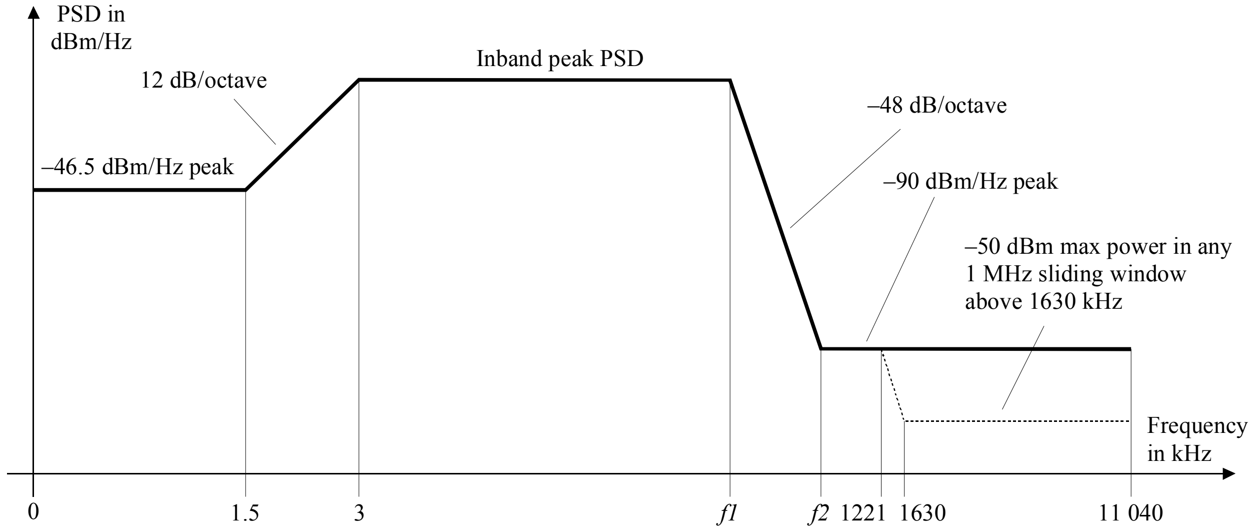
| Parameter | Setting | Characteristics |
|---|---|---|
| *NSCus* | 64 | |
| *NOMPSDus* | –41 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMPSDus* | –38 dBm/Hz | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |
| *MAXNOMATPus* | 13.4 dBm | Setting may be changed relative to this value during G.994.1 phase, see 8.13.2. |

### J.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements 8.10)

The ATU-R transmit PSD shall comply to one of the allowed family of spectral masks ADLU-32, ADLU-36,… ADLU-64 (see Note 1). Each of the spectral marks shall be as defined in Figure J.1 and Table J.3.

The passband is defined as the band from 3 kHz to an upperbound frequency *f*1, defined in Table J.3. It is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure J.1 defines the family of ATU-R spectral masks for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stop-band is defined as frequencies greater than the passband upperbound frequency *f*1 defined in Table J.3. The Inband_peak_PSD and the frequencies *f*1 and *f*2 shall be as defined in Table J.3.



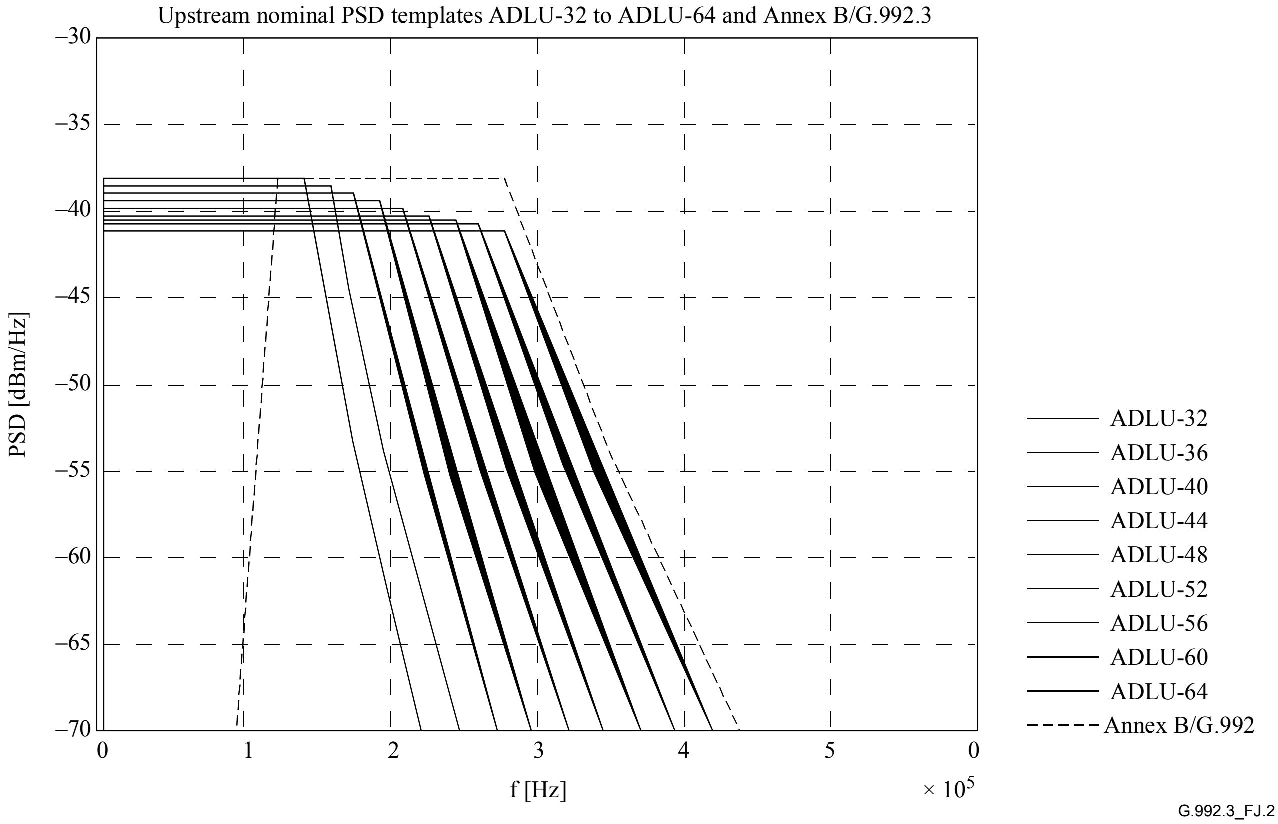

| Frequency band $f$ (kHz) | Equation for Line (dBm/Hz) |
|---|---|
| $0 < f \le 1.5$ | –46.5 |
| $1.5 < f \le 3$ | $-46.5 + (\text{Inband\_peak\_PSD} + 46.5) \times \log_2(f/1.5\text{ kHz})$ |
| $3 < f \le f1$ | Inband_peak_PSD |
| $f1 < f \le f2$ | $\text{Inband\_peak\_PSD} - 48 \log_2(f/f1)$ |
| $f2 < f \le 1221$ | –90 |
| $1221 < f \le 1630$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1\text{ MHz}]$ window of $(-30 - 48 \log_2(f/1221\text{ kHz}))$ dBm |
| $1630 < f \le 11\,040$ | –90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1\text{ MHz}]$ window of –50 dBm |
| NOTE 1 – All PSDs measurements are into a 100 Ω resistive termination.<br>NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and the PSD values are exact, the indicated slopes are approximate.<br>NOTE 3 – Above 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth. Below 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 100 Hz resolution bandwidth.<br>NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.<br>NOTE 5 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface, as defined in Figure 5-6. | |

**Figure J.1/G.992.3 – The family of ATU-R transmitter PSD masks**

**Table J.3/G.992.3 – Inband peak PSD and the frequencies $f1$ and $f2$**

| Upstream mask-number | Designator | Template nominal PSD (dBm/Hz) | Template maximum aggregate transmit power (dBm) | Inband peak PSD (dBm/Hz) | Frequency $f1$ (kHz) | Frequency $f2$ (kHz) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | ADLU-32 | –38.0 | 13.4 | –34.5 | 138.00 | 307 |
| 2 | ADLU-36 | –38.5 | 13.4 | –35.0 | 155.25 | 343 |
| 3 | ADLU-40 | –39.0 | 13.4 | –35.5 | 172.50 | 379 |
| 4 | ADLU-44 | –39.4 | 13.4 | –35.9 | 189.75 | 415 |
| 5 | ADLU-48 | –39.8 | 13.4 | –36.3 | 207.00 | 450 |
| 6 | ADLU-52 | –40.1 | 13.4 | –36.6 | 224.25 | 485 |
| 7 | ADLU-56 | –40.4 | 13.4 | –36.9 | 241.50 | 520 |
| 8 | ADLU-60 | –40.7 | 13.4 | –37.2 | 258.75 | 554 |
| 9 | ADLU-64 | –41.0 | 13.4 | –37.5 | 276.00 | 589 |

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level and nominal passband aggregate transmit power are given in Table J.3. The family of ATU-R transmit spectral templates corresponding to the ATU-R transmit spectral masks are shown in Figure J.2. For comparison, the ATU-R transmit spectral template for ADSL over ISDN (see Annex B) is also shown.




NOTE 1 – The ATUR selects a transmit PSD mask from the family of upstream transmit PSD masks specified in Table J.3, based on the limitations imposed by the CO-MIB (which are exchanged during the G.994.1 Phase of initialization, see 8.13.2.4) and based on the capabilities of its transmit PMD function.

NOTE 2 – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (Annex A/G.992.1, Annexes A and B/G.992.2, Annex A/ G.992.3 and Annex A/G.992.4), there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the All-Digital Loop upstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS downstream channel at frequencies above 138 kHz. Detailed study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the upstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).

**Figure J.2/G.992.3 – The family of ATU-R transmit spectrum templates**

### J.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDus* + 1dB, for initialization signals up to and including the Channel Discovery Phase;
- *REFPSDus* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the Transceiver Training Phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDus* – *PCBus* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum transmit PSD allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

### J.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

(see J.2.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband, shall not exceed ($MAXNOMATPus - PCBus$) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.9 dBm.
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band, shall not exceed ($MAXNOMATPus - PCBus$) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stop bands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

## J.3 Initialization

For this annex, no additional requirements apply (relative to the main body of this Recommendation).

## J.4 Electrical characteristics

The ATU shall meet the electrical characteristics defined in I.4.

# Annex K

# TPS-TC functional descriptions

This annex contains the functional descriptions of various TPS-TC types that may be used within the G.992.3 transceivers.

## K.1 STM Transmission Convergence (STM-TC) function

### K.1.1 Scope

The STM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional STM-TC stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the STM-TC stream. The STM-TC stream is presented synchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

The support for a plesiochronous interface is under study.

### K.1.2 References

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no STM-TC specific references.

### K.1.3 Definitions

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no STM-TC specific definitions.

### K.1.4 Abbreviations

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no STM-TC specific abbreviations.

### K.1.5 Transport capabilities

The STM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional STM-TC stream in either the upstream and downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the STM-TC stream. The STM-TC stream is presented synchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

After each of the transmit STM-TC procedures has been applied, transport of the STM-TC stream to a receive STM-TC function is carried out by underlying PMS-TC and PMD layers through a series of data frames and PMD symbols. The STM-TC transport capabilities are configured by control parameters described in K.1.7. The control parameters provide for the application appropriate data rates and characteristics of the STM-TC stream. The values of all control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The receive STM-TC functions recover the input signal that was presented to the corresponding transmit STM-TC function, those signals having been transported across the STM-TC, PMS-TC, and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

The transmit STM-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane and control plane within the ATU. As a data plane element, the transmit STM-TC function accepts one STM-TC stream from the V-C or T-R reference points. The stream is associated with one, and only one, STM-TC function. These input signals are conveyed to the receive STM-TC interface as depicted in Figure K.1. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the STM-TC frame bearers. The STM-TC stream is presented synchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

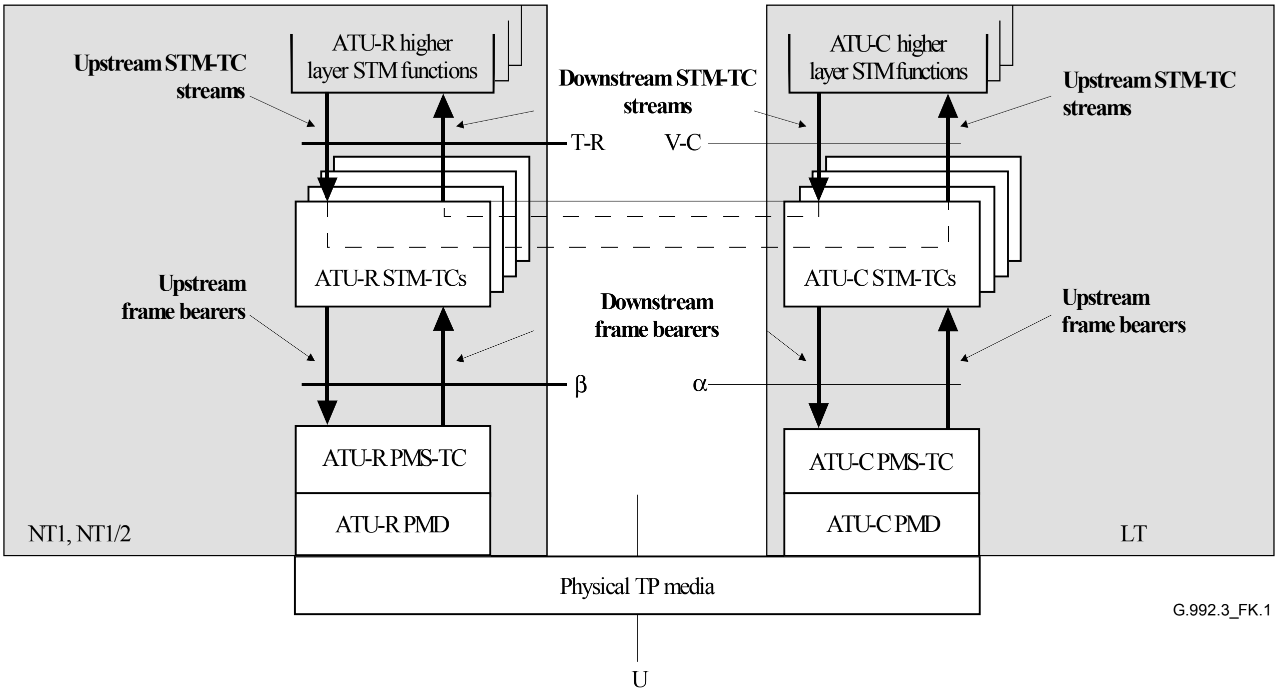



**Figure K.1/G.992.3 – STM-TC transport capabilities within the user plane**

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the STM-TC function. However, there are some specific indicator bits and overhead response definitions for the STM-TC function as defined in this annex.

### K.1.6 Interface primitives

Each ATU-C STM-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure K.2. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to a higher layer STM function. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to the PMS-TC function. The signals at the left and right edges convey control primitives.

Each ATU-R STM-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure K.3. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from Figure K.1.

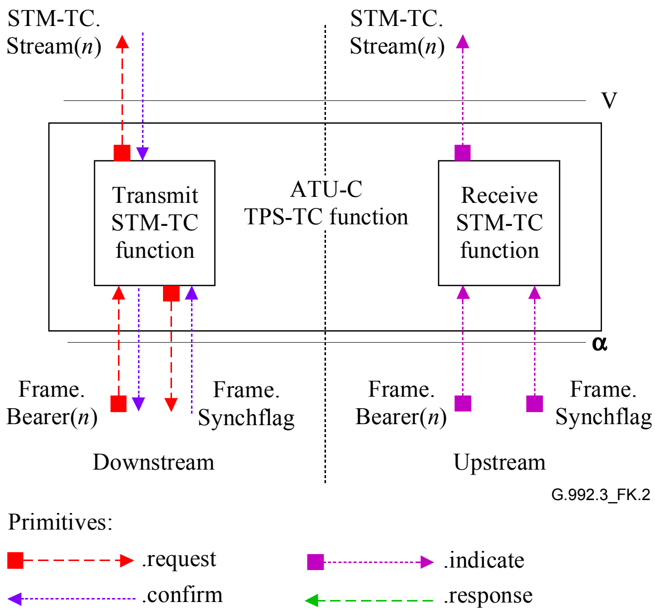



**Figure K.2/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-C STM-TC function**

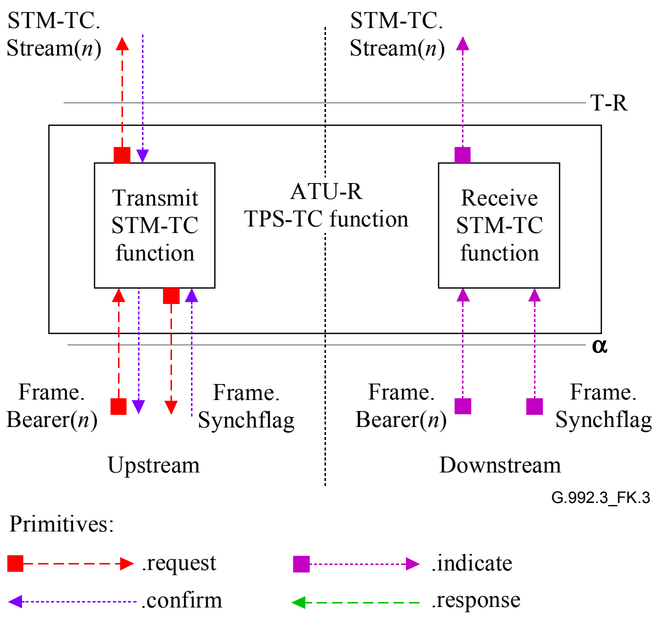



**Figure K.3/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-R STM-TC function**

The signals shown in Figures K.2 and K.3 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between a higher layer STM function and STM-TC function are described in Table K.1. These primitives support the exchange of frame bearer data and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC configuration. They also support coordinated online reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

**Table K.1/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives between STM higher layer functions and the STM-TC function**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| TPS-TC.Stream($n$).STM | .request | This primitive is used by the transmit STM-TC function to request one or more octets from the transmit higher layer STM function to be transported. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the STM-TC configuration (and underlying functions). Primitives are labeled $n$, where $n$ corresponds to the TPS-TC function id (e.g., $n = 0$ for TPS-TC #0). |
| | .confirm | The transmit higher layer STM function passes one or more octets to the STM-TC function to be transported with this primitive. Upon receipt of this primitive, the STM-TC function shall perform the Data Plane Procedures in K.1.8. |
| | .indicate | The receive STM-TC function passes one or more octets to the receive higher layer STM function that have been transported with this primitive. |

### K.1.7 Control parameters

The configuration of the STM-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table K.2 in addition to those specified in the main body of this Recommendation. The values of these control parameters are set communicated during initialization or reconfiguration of an ATU pair. All the values are determined by application requirements and means that are beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

**Table K.2/G.992.3 – STM-TC Parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| Minimum net data rate $net\_min_n$ | The minimum net data rate supported by the STM-TC stream #$n$. The ATU shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to provide $net\_min_n$ data rate. |
| Maximum net data rate $net\_max_n$ | The maximum net data rate supported by STM-TC stream #$n$. During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the net data rate shall not exceed this value. |
| Minimum reserved data rate $net\_reserve_n$ | The minimum reserved data rate supported by STM-TC stream #$n$ that shall always be available upon request by an appropriate reconfiguration procedure. The value of $net\_reserve_n$ shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_reserve_n \leq net\_max_n$. |
| Maximum PMS-TC latency $delay\_max_n$ | The STM-TC stream #$n$ shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $delay_p$ is no larger than this control parameter $delay\_max_n$. |

**Table K.2/G.992.3 – STM-TC Parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| Maximum PMS-TC BER $error\_max_n$ | The STM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with bit error ratio not to exceed $error\_max_n$, referenced to the output of the PMS-TC function in the receiver. The modem shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to assure this value. |
| Minimum PMS-TC impulse noise protection $INP\_min_n$ | The ATM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $INP_p$ is not lower than this control parameter $INP\_min_n$. |

If the values of $net\_min_n$, $net\_max_n$, and $net\_reserve_n$ are set to the same value, then the STM-TC stream is designated as a fixed data rate STM-TC stream (i.e., RA_mode = MANUAL, see Table 8-6). If $net\_min_n = net\_reserve_n$ and $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n$, then the STM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate STM-TC stream. If the value of $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n \neq net\_reserve_{max}$, then the STM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate STM-TC stream with reserved data rate allocation.

During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the actual net data rate $net\_act_n$ for stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $net\_act_{p.n}$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$. However, in case the $net\_min_n = net\_max_n$, the $net\_act_n$ may exceed the $net\_max_n$ by up to 4 kbit/s, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity (see Table 7-7). The latency $delay\_act_n$ shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $delay_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and constrained such that $delay\_act_n \leq delay\_max_n$ The values $net\_act_n$ and $delay\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

The impulse noise protection $INP\_act_n$ of transport of stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $INP_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $INP\_act_n \geq INP\_min_n$. The values $net\_act_n$, $delay\_act_n$ and $INP\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

### K.1.7.1 Valid configurations

The configurations listed in Table K.3 are valid for the STM-TC function.

**Table K.3/G.992.3 – Valid configuration for STM-TC function**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 1 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $delay\_max_n$ | $0 \leq delay\_max_n \leq$ the largest value of $delay_p$ (see 7.6.1) for supported valid framing configurations. $delay\_max_n = 0$ is a special value indicating no delay bound is being imposed. $delay\_max_n = 1$ is a special value indicating the lowest delay is being imposed (see 7.3.2.2/G.997.1). |
| $error\_max_n$ | $10^{-3}$, $10^{-5}$, $10^{-7}$ |
| $INP\_min_n$ | 0, 1/2, 1, 2 |

#### K.1.7.2 Mandatory configurations

If implementing a STM-TC, an ATU shall support all combinations of the values of STM-TC control parameters for a STM-TC function displayed in Tables K.4 and K.5 in the downstream and upstream directions, respectively. The transmitter and receiver shall support mandatory features displayed in the tables.

**Table K.4/G.992.3 – Mandatory downstream configuration for STM-TC function**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 1 |
| *net_min* | $net\_min_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s. |
| $delay\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $error\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $INP\_min_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed. | |

**Table K.5/G.992.3 – Mandatory upstream control configuration for STM-TC function**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 1 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $delay\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $error\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $INP\_min_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed. | |

### K.1.8 Data plane procedures

Upon receipt of the Frame.Bearer.request($n$) primitive, the transmit STM-TC function shall signal a TPS-TC.Stream.STM.request to the STM higher layer function, requesting data for transport.

Upon receipt of a TPS-TC.STM.confirm($n$) primitive, the receive STM TC function #$n$ shall signal a Frame.Bearer($n$).confirm primitive to the PMS-TC function, providing data for transport.

Upon receipt of the Frame.Bearer.indicate($n$) primitive, the receive STM TC function #$n$ shall signal a TPS-TC.Stream.STM.indicate to the STM higher layer function, providing data that has been transported.

### K.1.9 Management plane procedures

#### K.1.9.1 Surveillance primitives

Surveillance primitives for the STM-TC function are under study.

#### K.1.9.2 Indicator bits

TIB#0 and TIB#1 shall be set to a 1 for use in 7.8.2.2.

#### K.1.9.3 Overhead command formats

##### K.1.9.3.1 Inventory command

The octets returned for the overhead inventory command for TPS-TC capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-15 based upon the STM-TC capabilities octets transmitted during the most recent initialization procedure. The capabilities octets are defined in Table K.6.

##### K.1.9.3.2 Control value read command

The octets returned for the overhead control parameter read command for TPS-TC control parameters capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-17 based upon the control parameters currently in use by the STM-TC receiver function. The control parameter shall be transmitted in the format displayed in Table K.7.

##### K.1.9.3.3 Management counter read command

The TPS-TC octets in the response to the overhead management counter read command corresponding to the STM-TC function are under study. The block of counter values corresponding to the STM-TC function returned in the message depicted in Table 9-20 shall have zero length.

### K.1.10 Initialization procedure

STM-TC functions shall be configured fully prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD function in a manner that is outside the scope of the Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via a G.994.1 MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using a G.994.1 CL or CLR message.

#### K.1.10.1 ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about each upstream and downstream STM-TC function supported within an ATU shall be as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via G.994.1 at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once prior to enabling an STM-TC function between ATU-C and ATU but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- Maximum net data rate that can be supported by the STM-TC function;
- Maximum latency that might be acceptable for the STM-TC function. The method for setting this value is out of the scope of the Recommendation.

This information for an STM-TC function is represented using a block of G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.6.

**Table K.6/G.992.3 – Format for an STM-TC CL and CLR message**

| Spar(2) bit | Definition of related Npar(3) octets |
|---|---|
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #3, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #3, if present. |
| | **Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets** |
| | A parameter block of 8 octets containing:<br>– the value of *net_max*;<br>– the value of *net_min*;<br>– the value of *net_reserve*;<br>– the value of *delay_max*;<br>– the value of *error_max*; and<br>– the minimum Impulse Noise Protection *INP_min*.<br>The unsigned 12-bit *net_max, net_min* and *net_reserve* values represent the data rate divided by 4000 bit/s.<br>The *delay_max* is a 6-bit unsigned value expressed in ms. A value of 000000 indicates no delay bound is being imposed.<br>The *error_max* is a 2-bit indication, defined as 00 for an error ratio of 1E-3, 01 for an error ratio of 1E-5, and 10 for an error ratio of 1E-7. The value 11 is reserved.<br>The *INP_min* is a 2 bits indication, defined as 00 for *INP* = 0, 01 for *INP* = 1/2, 10 for *INP* = 1 and 11 for *INP* = 2. *INP_min* = 0 is a special value indicating no impulse noise protection bound is being imposed. |

### K.1.10.2 G.994.1 mode select message

Each of the control parameters for each upstream and downstream STM-TC function shall be as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 as part of the MS message. This information for each enabled STM-TC function shall be selected using a MS message prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization.

The configuration for an STM-TC function is represented using a block of G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.7.

**Table K.7/G.992.3 – Format for an STM-TC MS message**

| **Spar(2) bit** | **Definition of related Npar(3) octets** |
|---|---|
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Downstream STM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #3, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Upstream STM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #3, if present. |
| | **Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets** |
| | A parameter block of 8 octets containing:<br>– the value of *net_max*;<br>– the value of *net_min*;<br>– the value of *net_reserve*;<br>– the value of *delay_max*;<br>– the value of *error_max*; and<br>– the minimum Impulse Noise Protection *INP_min*.<br>The format of the octets is as described in Table K.6. |

### K.1.11 On-line reconfiguration

The on-line reconfiguration of the STM-TC generally requires the STM-TC to communicate peer-to-peer through means outside the scope of this Recommendation. There is no specified mechanism to modify the value of the control parameters of the STM-TC function. The value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated from the underlying PMS-TC latency path function.

#### K.1.11.1 Changes to an existing stream

Reconfiguration of an existing STM-TC function occurs only at boundaries between octets. The transmit STM-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters, *net_act*, and *delay_act* to generate octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive. The receive STM-TC function procedures process octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive using the new values of the control parameters.

### K.1.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the STM-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

### K.1.12.1 L0 Link state operation

The STM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in K.1.8 and K.1.9 as well as those in the main body of the Recommendation while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in K.1.7, as well as those provided in the main body of the Recommendation shall apply.

#### K.1.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

During a transition from link state L0 to state L2, the value of control parameters are not modified. However, the value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state shall be made as described in K.1.11.1.

#### K.1.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific STM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

### K.1.12.2 L2 link state operation

The STM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in K.1.8 and K.1.9 as well as those in the main body of the Recommendation while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in K.1.7, as well as those provided in the main body of the Recommendation shall apply. However, the operating limits imposed by the control parameters *net_min*, *net_reserve*, and *delay_max* shall not apply while in the L2 link state.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C STM-TC shall monitor its interface for the arrival of primitives that indicate data rates larger than the reduced data rates must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the procedure described in 9.5.3.4 to return to the link state L0.

#### K.1.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation. The values of the control parameters are not modified upon return to the L2 link state; however, during a transition from link state L2 to state L0, the values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state shall be made as described in K.1.11.1.

#### K.1.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

Transitions to link state L3 shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation. No specific STM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

### K.1.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, no specific procedures are specified for the STM-TC function.

#### K.1.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in K.1.10 as well as in the main body of the Recommendation.

## K.2 ATM Transmission Convergence (ATM-TC) function

### K.2.1 Scope

The ATM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional ATM-TC stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the ATM-TC stream. The ATM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

### K.2.2 References

References applicable to this annex are included in clause 2.

### K.2.3 Definitions

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no ATM-TC specific definitions.

### K.2.4 Abbreviations

Abbreviations applicable to this annex are included in clause 4.

### K.2.5 Transport capabilities

The ATM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional ATM-TC stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the ATM-TC stream. The ATM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

After each of the transmit ATM-TC procedures has been applied, transport of the ATM-TC stream to a receive ATM-TC function is carried out by underlying PMS-TC and PMD layers through a series of data frames and PMD symbols. The ATM-TC transport capabilities are configured by control parameters described in K.2.7. The control parameters provide for the application appropriate data rates and characteristics of the ATM-TC stream. The values of all control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The receive ATM-TC functions recover the input signal that was presented to the corresponding transmit ATM-TC function, those signals having been transported across the ATM-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

The transmit ATM-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane and control plane within the ATU. As a data plane element, the transmit ATM-TC function accepts one ATM-TC stream from the V-C or T-R reference points. The stream is associated with one, and only one, ATM-TC function. These input signals are conveyed to the receive ATM-TC interface as depicted in Figure K.4. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the ATM-TC frame bearers. The ATM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

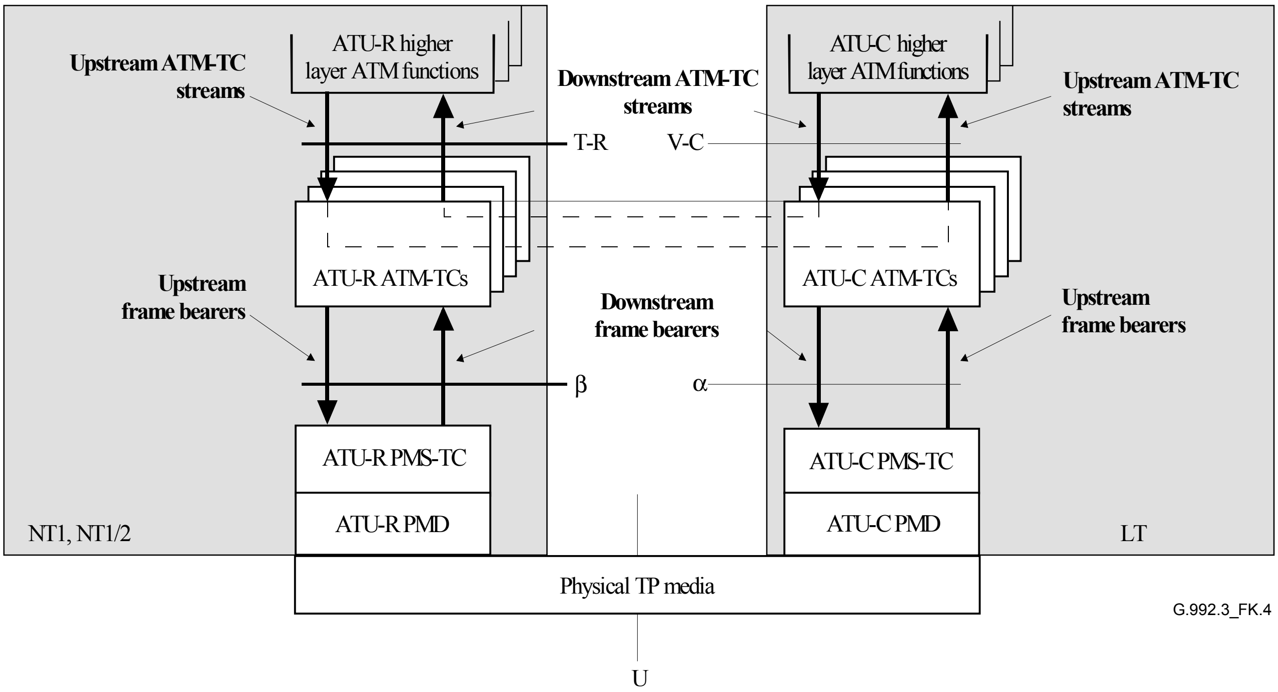



**Figure K.4/G.992.3 – ATM-TC transport capabilities within the user plane**

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the ATM-TC function. However, there are some specific indicator bit and overhead response definitions for the ATM-TC function as defined in this annex.

### K.2.5.1 Additional functions

In addition to transport functions, the transmit ATM-TC function also provides procedures for rate decoupling of the ATM-TC stream and the frame bearer by ATM idle cell insertion, ATM header error control generation, and scrambler.

The receive ATM-TC function reverses each of the listed procedures so that the transported information may be recovered. Additionally, the ATU receive framing function provides several supervisory indications and defect signals associated with some of these procedures (e.g., ATM cell delineation status, HEC error check failure) as described in 8.12.1.

### K.2.6 Interface primitives

Each ATU-C ATM-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure K.5. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to a higher layer ATM function. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to the PMS-TC function. The signals at the left and right edges convey control primitives.

Each ATU-R ATM-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure K.6. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from Figure K.5.

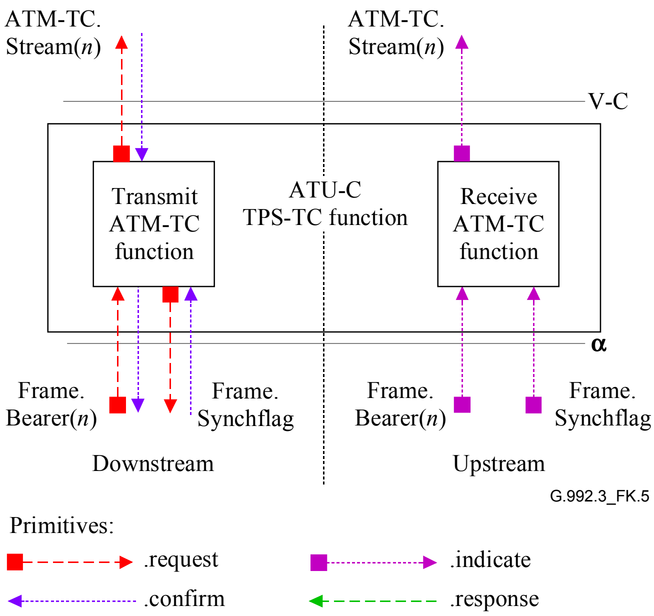



**Figure K.5/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-C ATM-TC function**

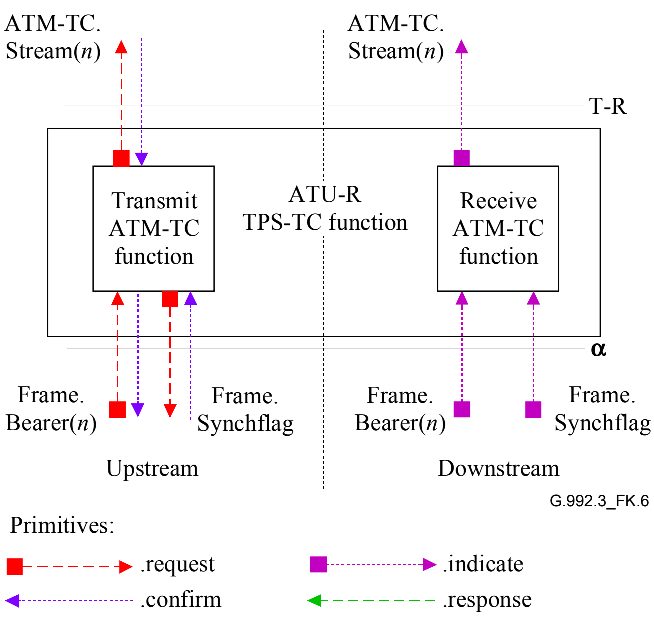



**Figure K.6/G.992.3 – Signals of the ATU-R ATM-TC function**

The signals shown in Figures K.5 and K.6 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between a higher layer ATM function and ATM-TC function are described in Table K.8. These primitives support the exchange of stream and frame bearer data and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC configuration. They also support coordinated on-line reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

**Table K.8/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives between ATM higher layer functions and the ATM-TC function**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| TPS-TC.Stream($n$). ATM | .request | This primitive is used by the transmit ATM-TC function to request one or more ATM cells from the transmit higher layer ATM function to be transported. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the ATM-TC configuration (and underlying functions). Primitives are labeled $n$, where $n$ corresponds to the TPS-TC function id (e.g., $n = 0$ for TPS-TC #0). |
| | .confirm | The transmit higher layer ATM function passes one or more ATM cells to the ATM-TC function to be transported with this primitive. Upon receipt of this primitive, the ATM-TC function shall perform the procedures in K.2.8.2. |
| | .indicate | The receive ATM-TC function passes one or more ATM cells to the receive higher layer ATM function that have been transported with this primitive. |

### K.2.7 Control parameters

The configuration of the ATM-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table K.9 in addition to those specified in the main body of this Recommendation. The values of these control parameters are set communicated during initialization or reconfiguration of an ATU pair. All the values are determined by application requirements and means that are beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

**Table K.9/G.992.3 – ATM-TC parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| Minimum net data rate $net\_min_n$ | The minimum net data rate supported by the ATM-TC stream #$n$. The ATU shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to provide $net\_min_n$ data rate. |
| Maximum net data rate $net\_max_n$ | The maximum net data rate supported by ATM-TC stream #$n$. During activation and reconfiguration procedures, the net data rate shall not exceed this value. |
| Minimum reserved data rate $net\_reserve_n$ | The minimum reserved data rate supported by ATM-TC stream #$n$ that shall always be available upon request by an appropriate reconfiguration procedure. The value of $net\_reserve_n$ shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_reserve_n \leq net\_max_n$. |
| Maximum PMS-TC latency $delay\_max_n$ | The ATM-TC stream #$n$ shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $delay_p$ is no larger than this control parameter $delay\_max_n$. |
| Maximum PMS-TC BER $error\_max_n$ | The ATM-TC stream #$n$ shall be transported with bit error ratio not to exceed $error\_max_n$, referenced to the output of the PMS-TC function in the receiver. The modem shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to assure this value. |
| Minimum PMS-TC impulse noise protection $INP\_min_n$ | The ATM-TC stream #$n$ shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $INP_p$ is not lower than this control parameter $INP\_min_n$. |
| IMA Compatibility Mode flag IMA_flag | This single bit flag controls specialized functionality of the ATM-TC function. If set to one, the specialized functionality is enabled. See K.2.8.2 and K.2.8.5. More information on the IMA operation mode is available in [B17]. |

If the values of $net\_min_n$, $net\_max_n$, and $net\_reserve_n$ are set to the same value, then the ATM-TC stream is designated as a fixed data rate ATM-TC stream (i.e., RA_mode = MANUAL, see Table 8-6). If $net\_min_n = net\_reserve_n$ and $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n$, then the ATM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate ATM-TC stream. If the value of $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n \neq net\_reserve_{max}$, then the ATM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate ATM-TC stream with reserved data rate allocation.

During activation and reconfiguration procedures, the actual net data rate $net\_act_n$ for stream #$n$ shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $net\_act_{p.n}$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$. However, in case the $net\_min_n = net\_max_n$, the $net\_act_n$ may exceed the $net\_max_n$ by up to 4 kbit/s, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity (see Table 7-7). The latency $delay\_act_n$ of transport of stream #$n$ shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $delay_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $delay\_act_n \leq delay\_max_n$. The values $net\_act_n$ and $delay\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

The impulse noise protection $INP\_act_n$ of transport of stream #$n$ shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $INP_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $INP\_act_n \geq INP\_min_n$. The values $net\_act_n$, $delay\_act_n$ and $INP\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

#### K.2.7.1 Valid configurations

The configurations listed in Table K.10 are valid for the ATM-TC function.

**Table K.10/G.992.3 – Valid configuration for ATM-TC function**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 2 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $delay\_max_n$ | $0 \leq delay\_max_n \leq$ the largest value of $delay_p$ (see 7.6.1) for supported valid framing configurations. $delay\_max_n = 0$ is a special value indicating no delay bound is being imposed. $delay\_max_n = 1$ is a special value indicating the lowest delay is being imposed (see 7.3.2.2/G.997.1). |
| $error\_max_n$ | $10^{-3}$, $10^{-5}$, $10^{-7}$ |
| $INP\_min_n$ | 0, 1/2, 1, 2 |
| $IMA\_flag$ | 0 and 1 |

#### K.2.7.2 Mandatory configurations

If implementing an ATM-TC, an ATU shall support all combinations of the values of ATM-TC control parameters for ATM-TC function #0 displayed in Tables K.11 and K.12 and in the downstream and upstream directions, respectively. The transmitter and receiver shall support mandatory features displayed in the tables.

**Table K.11/G.992.3 – Mandatory downstream configuration for ATM-TC function #0**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 2 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s. |
| $delay\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $error\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $INP\_min_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| *IMA_flag* | All valid values shall be supported. |
| NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed. | |

**Table K.12/G.992.3 – Mandatory upstream control configuration for ATM-TC function #0**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 2 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $delay\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $error\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $INP\_min_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| *IMA_flag* | All valid values shall be supported. |
| NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed. | |

## K.2.8 Data plane procedures

### K.2.8.1 Block diagram

Figure K.7 depicts the functions within a transmit ATM-TC function that supports one unidirectional ATM-TC stream and one frame bearer. The ATM-TC stream is shown at the leftmost edge of Figure K.7. The output signal from the ATM-TC function forms a frame bearer (i.e., input to the transmit TPS-TC function), is depicted at the rightmost edge of Figure K.7.

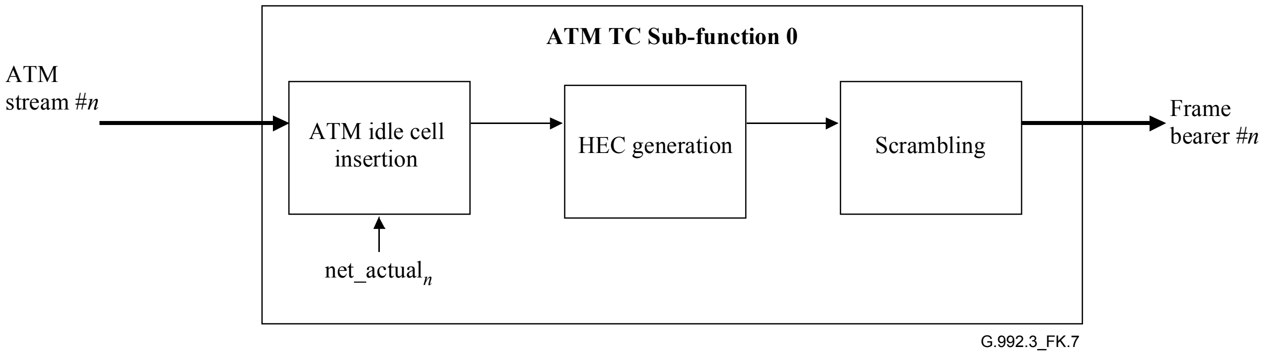



**Figure K.7/G.992.3 – Block diagram of transmit ATM-TC function**

In the ATM-TC stream and within the ATM-TC function, data octets are transmitted MSB first in accordance with ITU-T Rec. I.361 [11] and ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12]. All serial procedures within the ATM-TC function begin MSB first. Below the α and β interfaces of the ATU (starting with the Frame.Bearer primitives), data octets are transported LSB first. As a result, the MSB of the first octet of the first ATM-TC.Stream(*n*).confirm primitive will be the LSB of the first octet of the first Frame.Bearer(*n*).confirm primitive. The labelling of bits within the ATM-TC layer and at the frame bearer is depicted in Figure K.8.

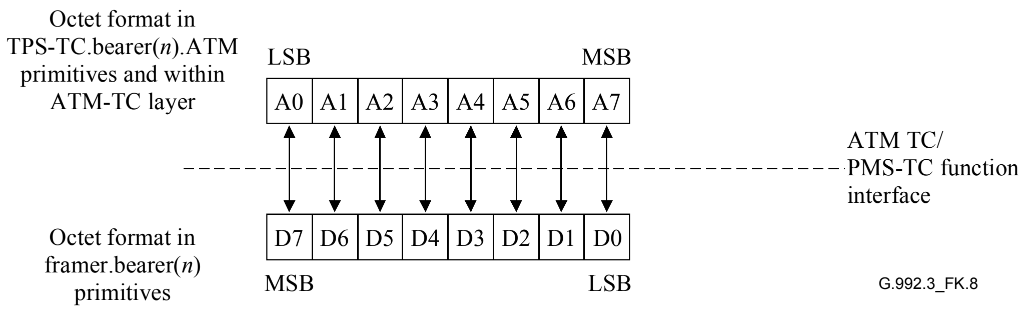



**Figure K.8/G.992.3 – Bit mapping of the user plane transport function of the ATM-TC function**

### K.2.8.2 Rate matching by idle cell insertion

ATM idle cells shall be inserted by the transmit function to provide ATM cell rate decoupling. If the IMA_flag is not asserted, ATM idle cells shall not be delivered to higher layers functions by the receive ATM-TC functions. If the control variable IMA_flag is asserted, all ATM cells received and delineated shall be passed in TPS-TC.Stream(*n*).ATM.indicate primitive.

ATM idle cells are identified by the standardized pattern for the cell header given in ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12].

Cell rate decoupling is expected to be performed by the IMA function when the control variable IMA_flag is asserted. The ATM-TC function therefore inserts a minimum number of idle cells, i.e., no cells are inserted if exact rate decoupling is performed by the IMA function.

### K.2.8.3 HEC octet

The transmit ATM-TC function shall generate a HEC Octet as described in ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12], including the recommended modulo 2 addition (XOR) of the pattern binary $01010101_b$ to the HEC bits.

The HEC covers the entire cell header. The generator polynomial coefficient set used and the HEC sequence generation procedure shall be in accordance with ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12].

### K.2.8.4 Cell delineation

The receiver ATM-TC function shall perform cell delineation. The cell delineation procedure permits the identification of ATM cell boundaries in the Frame.Bearer.indicate primitives. The procedure uses the HEC field in the cell header. Cell delineation shall be performed using a coding law by checking the HEC field in the cell header according to the algorithm described in ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12]. The cell delineation procedure is depicted as a state machine in Figure K.9. Each state is described in Table K.13.

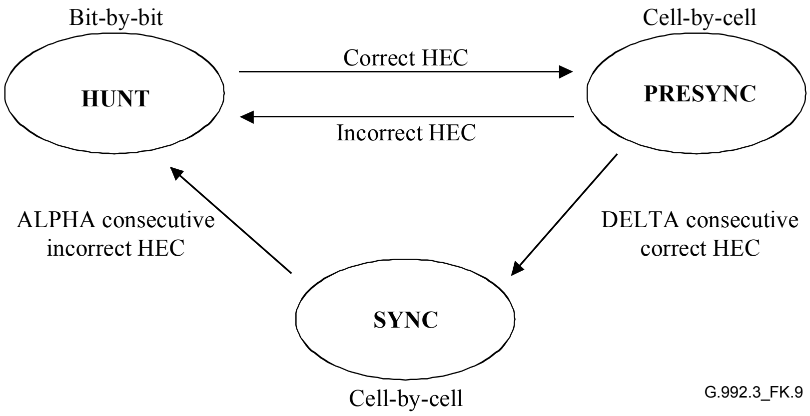



**Figure K.9/G.992.3 – Cell delineation procedure state machine**

**Table K.13/G.992.3 – ATM cell delineation procedure states**

| State | Definition |
|---|---|
| HUNT | In the HUNT state, the cell delineation procedure shall be performed by checking bit by bit for the correct HEC. Once such an agreement is found, it is assumed that one header has been found, and the method enters the PRESYNC state. When octet boundaries are available, the cell delineation procedure may be performed octet by octet. |
| PRESYNC | In the PRESYNC state, the cell delineation procedure shall be performed by checking cell by cell for the correct HEC. The procedure repeats until the correct HEC has been confirmed DELTA times consecutively. If an incorrect HEC is found, the procedure returns to the HUNT state. |
| SYNC | In the SYNC state the cell delineation procedure shall return to the HUNT state if an incorrect HEC is obtained ALPHA times consecutively. |

No recommendation is made for the values of ALPHA and DELTA, because the choice of these values is not considered to effect interoperability. However, it should be noted that the use of the values suggested in ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12] (ALPHA = 7, DELTA = 6) may be inappropriate due to the ATU transport characteristics.

### K.2.8.5 ATM cell error detection

The receiver ATM-TC function shall implement error detection over the entire cell header as defined in ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12]. The code specified in ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12] is capable of single bit error correction and multiple bit error detection. However, HEC error correction shall not be implemented by the ATU, and any HEC error shall be considered as a multiple bit error.

If the control variable IMA_flag is not asserted, ATM cells detected to be in error shall not be passed in a TPS-TC.Stream(*n*).ATM.indicate primitive. If the control variable IMA_flag is asserted, all ATM cells received and delineated shall be passed in TPS-TC.Stream(*n*).ATM.indicate primitive.

#### K.2.8.6 Scrambler

The transmit ATM-TC function shall scramble the cell payload field to improve the security and robustness of the HEC cell delineation mechanism. The self synchronizing scrambler uses the polynomial $X^{43} + 1$. The scrambler procedures defined in ITU-T Rec. I.432.1 [12] shall be implemented.

### K.2.9 Management plane procedures

#### K.2.9.1 Surveillance primitives

The ATM-TC function surveillance primitives are ATM path related. Both anomalies and defects are defined for each receiver ATM-TC function.

Three near-end anomalies are defined as follows:

- No Cell Delineation (ncd-*n*) anomaly: An ncd-*n* anomaly occurs immediately after receiving the first Frame.Bearer(*n*).indicate primitive. The anomaly terminates when the cell delineation process of the receive ATM-TC function #*n* transitions to the SYNC state. Once cell delineation is acquired, subsequent losses of cell delineation shall be considered as ocd-*n* anomalies.
- Out of Cell Delineation (ocd-*n*) anomaly: An ocd-*n* anomaly occurs when the cell delineation process of receive ATM-TC sub-function #*n* transitions from the SYNC state to the HUNT state. An ocd-*n* anomaly terminates when the cell delineation process transitions from PRESYNC state to SYNC state or when the lcd-*n* defect is asserted.
- Header Error Check (hec-*n*) anomaly: A hec-*n* anomaly occurs each time the ATM cell header process of receiver ATM-TC function #*n* detects an error.

These near end anomalies are counted locally per ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. The values of the counter may be read or reset via local commands not defined in this Recommendation.

Three far-end anomalies are defined as follows:

- Far-end No Cell Delineation (fncd-*n*) anomaly: An fncd-*n* anomaly is a ncd-*n* anomaly detected at the far end.
- Far-end Out of Cell Delineation (focd-*n*) anomaly: An focd-*n* anomaly is an ocd-*n* anomaly detected at the far end.
- Far-end Header Error Check (fhec-*n*) anomaly: An fhec-*n* anomaly is an hec-*n* anomaly detected at the far end.

These far-end anomalies are not individually observable. The count of these far-end anomalies may be read and reset via overhead commands defined in 9.4.1.6. The format of the counters shall be as described in K.2.9.3.3.

One near-end defect is defined as follows:

- Loss of Cell Delineation (lcd-*n*) defect: An lcd-*n* defect occurs when at least one ocd-*n* anomaly is present in each of four consecutive overhead channel periods and no sef-*n* defect is present. An lcd-*n* defect terminates when no ocd-*n* anomaly is present in four consecutive overhead channel periods.

This near-end defect is processed locally per ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4].

One far-end defect is defined as follows:

- Far-end Loss of Cell Delineation (flcd-*n*) defect: An flcd-*n* defect is a lcd-*n* defect detected at the far end. This defect shall be carried in the bit oriented portion of the overhead structured as defined in 7.8.2.1.

This far-end defect is directly observed through an indicator bit as described in K.2.9.2.

### K.2.9.2 Indicator bits

The (logical OR of the) near end defect lcd-*n* and the near-end anomalies ncd-*n* and ocd-*n* shall be mapped onto the TPS-TC indicator TIB#0 and transported as described in 7.8.2.2. The bit shall be encoded as a 1 when inactive for use in 7.8.2.2.

The TIB#1 shall be set to a 1 for use in 7.8.2.2.

NOTE – The TIB#0 corresponds to the NCD indicator bit defined in ITU-T Rec. G.992.1.

### K.2.9.3 Overhead command formats

#### K2.9.3.1 Inventory command

The octets returned for the overhead inventory command for TPS-TC capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-15 based upon the ATM-TC capabilities octets transmitted during the most recent initialization procedure. The capabilities octets are defined in Table K.15.

#### K.2.9.3.2 Control value read command

The octets returned for the overhead control parameter read command for TPS-TC control parameters capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-17 based upon the control parameters currently in use by the ATM-TC receiver function. The control parameter shall be transmitted in the format displayed in Table K.16.

#### K2.9.3.3 Management counter read command

The TPS-TC management counters in the response to the overhead management counter read command corresponding to the ATM-TC function shall be provided as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.997.1 [4]. The block of counter values corresponding to the ATM-TC function returned in the message depicted in Table 9-20 shall be as depicted in Table K.14.

**Table K.14/G.992.3 – ATU management counter values**

| Octets | Element name |
|---|---|
| | ATM-TC |
| 4 | Counter of the HEC anomalies |
| 4 | Counter of total cells passed through HEC function |
| 4 | Counter of total cells passed to the upper layer ATM function |
| 4 | Counter of total bit errors detected in ATM idle cells payload |

### K.2.10 Initialization procedure

ATM-TC functions shall be configured fully prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD function in a manner that is outside the scope of the Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via a G.994.1 MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using a G.994.1 CL or CLR message.

#### K.2.10.1 G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about each upstream and downstream ATM-TC function supported within an ATU shall be as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via G.994.1 at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once prior to enabling an ATM-TC function between ATU-C and ATU-R, but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- Maximum net data rate that can be supported by the ATM-TC function;
- Maximum latency that might be acceptable for the ATM-TC function. The method for setting this value is out of the scope of the Recommendation.

This information for an ATM-TC function is represented using a block of G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.15.

**Table K.15/G.992.3 – Format for an ATM-TC CL and CLR message**

| Spar(2) bit | Definition of related Npar(3) octets |
|---|---|
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #3, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #3, if present. |
| | **Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets** |
| | A parameter block of 8 octets containing:<br>– the maximum supported value of *net_max*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *net_min*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *net_reserve*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *delay_max*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *error_max*;<br>– the minimum Impulse Noise Protection *INP_min*; and<br>– the support of *IMA_flag*.<br>The format of the octets is as described in Table K.6. The *IMA_flag* is a single bit indication, set to 1 if IMA is supported and set to 0 if IMA is not supported or disabled. |

### K.2.10.2 G.994.1 mode select message

Each of the control parameters for each upstream and downstream ATM-TC function shall be as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 as part of the MS message. This information for each enabled ATM-TC function shall be selected using a MS message prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization.

The configuration for an ATM-TC function is represented using a block of G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.16.

**Table K.16/G.992.3 – Format for an ATM-TC MS message**

| Spar(2) bit | Definition of related Npar(3) octets |
|---|---|
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Downstream ATM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #3, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Upstream ATM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #3, if present. |
| | **Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets** |
| | A parameter block of 8 octets containing:<br>– the value of *net_max*;<br>– the value of *net_min*;<br>– the value of *net_reserve*;<br>– the value of *delay_max*;<br>– the value of *error_max*;<br>– the minimum Impulse Noise Protection *INP_min*; and<br>– the value of the *IMA_flag*.<br>The format of the octets is as described in Table K.15. |

### K.2.11 On-line reconfiguration

The on-line reconfiguration of the ATM-TC generally requires the ATM-TC to communicate peer-to-peer through means outside the scope of this Recommendation. There is no specified mechanism to modify the value of the control parameters of the ATM-TC function. The value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated from the underlying PMS-TC latency path function.

#### K.2.11.1 Changes to an existing stream

Reconfiguration of an existing ATM-TC function occurs only at boundaries between octets. The transmit ATM-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters, *net_act*, and *delay_act* to generate octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive. The receive ATM-TC function procedures process octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive using the new values of the control parameters.

### K.2.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the ATM-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

#### K.2.12.1 L0 link state operation

The ATM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in K.2.8 and K.2.9 as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in K.2.7, as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this text, shall apply.

##### K.2.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

During a transition from link state L0 to state L2, the value of control parameters are not modified. However, the value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state shall be made as described in K.2.11.1.

##### K.2.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific ATM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

#### K.2.12.2 L2 link state operation

The ATM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in K.2.8 and K.2.9 as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in K.2.7 as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this text shall apply. However, the operating limits imposed by the control parameters *net_min*, *net_reserve*, and *delay_max* shall not apply while in the L2 link state.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C ATM-TC shall monitor its interface for the arrival of primitives that indicate that data rates larger than the reduced data rates must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the procedure described in 9.5.3.4 to return to the link state L0.

##### K.2.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. The values of the control parameters are not modified upon return to the L2 link state; however, during a transition from link state L2 to state L0, the values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state shall be made as described in K.2.11.1.

##### K.2.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

Transitions to link state L3 shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific ATM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

#### K.2.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, no specific procedures are specified for the ATM-TC function.

##### K.2.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in K.2.10 as well as in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex.

## K.3 Packet transmission convergence function (PTM-TC)

### K.3.1 Scope

The PTM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional packet stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Packet boundaries, octet boundaries, and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the PTM-TC stream. The PTM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

The PTM-TC function is defined in terms of the PTM-TC defined in Annex H.1/G.993.1 [13]. Referring to the reference model of that annex, the PTM-TC of VDSL is defined connecting above the PMS-TC function to either a fast or slow channel through the a/b interface. This same function is used for K.3 and is defined to connect to a single PMS-TC latency path function.

### K.3.2 References

References applicable to this annex are included in clause 2.

### K.3.3 Definitions

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no PTM-TC specific definitions.

### K.3.4 Abbreviations

Abbreviations applicable to this annex are included in clause 4.

### K.3.5 Transport capabilities

The transport capabilities of the PTM-TC function are described in H.2/G.993.1 [13]. Only the mandatory capabilities that support a single PTM-TC shall be used with this Recommendation.

The PTM-TC transport capabilities are configured by control parameters described in K.3.7. The control parameters provide for the application appropriate data rates and characteristics of the PTM-TC stream. The values of all control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU.

The transmit PTM-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane within the ATU. As a data plane element, the transmit PTM-TC function accepts one PTM-TC stream from a PTM entity across the V-C or T-R reference points. The stream is associated with one and only one PTM-TC function.

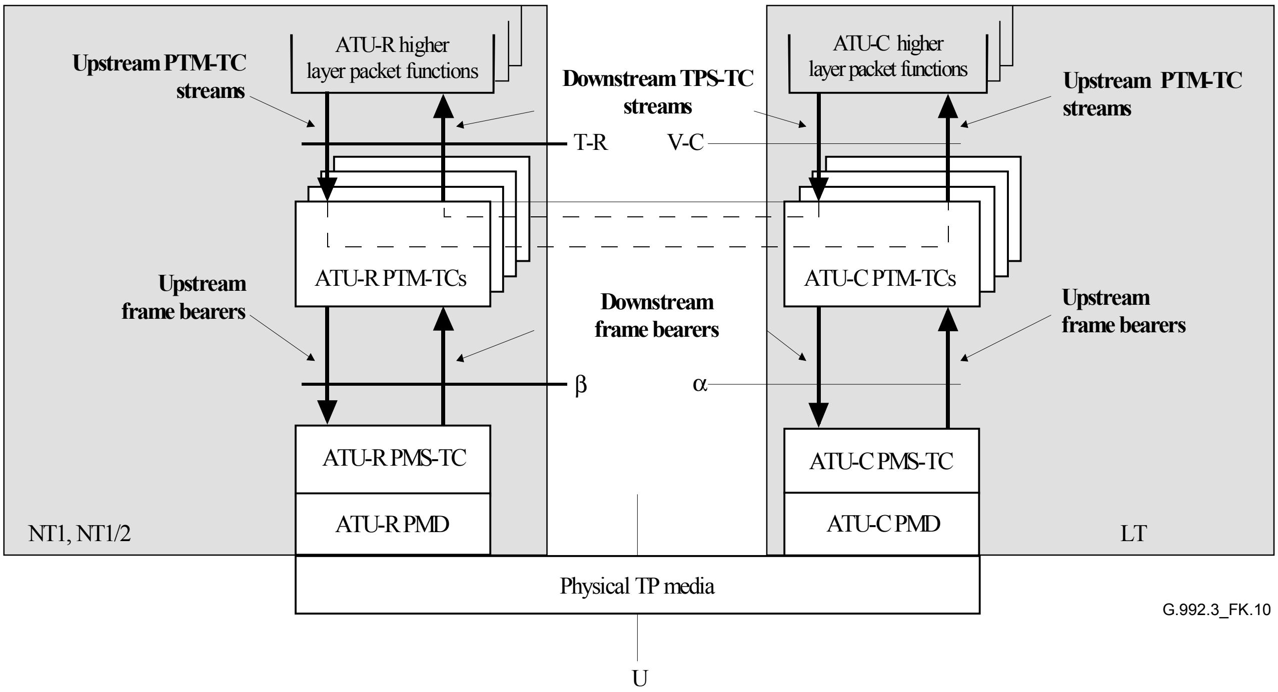



**Figure K.10/G.992.3 – PTM-TC transport capabilities within the user plane**

### K.3.6 Interface primitives

Each ATU-C PTM-TC function has many interface signals as described in H.3/G.993.1 [13]. The interface signals between the PTM-TC and PMS-TC conform to those required by the TPS-TC function in the main body of this Recommendation. To map the signal interfaces required in Annex H/G.993.1 [13] to the signal primitives required in the TPS-TC function of this Recommendation, the procedure in Table K.17 shall be used. The optional bit clock signals defined in Annex H/G.993.1 [13] are not used.

**Table K.17/G.992.3 – Signalling primitives mapping from G.993.1 PTM-TC to G.992.3 PTM-TC functions**

| Signal | Primitive | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Frame.Bearer(*n*) | .request | Whenever this .request primitive is asserted by the ATU PMS-TC function, the PTM-TC primitive O_synct signal shall be considered asserted. Primitives are labeled *n*, where *n* corresponds to the TPS-TC function id (e.g., *n* = 0 for TPS-TC #0). |
| | .confirm | Whenever the PTM-TC signal O_synct is asserted, the octet data contained on the PTM-TC Tx signal shall be passed to the ATU PMS-TC in this .confirm primitive. |
| | .indicate | Whenever this .indicate primitive is asserted by the ATU PMS-TC function, the octet data contained within it shall be placed onto the PTM-TC signal Rx and the PTM-TC O_syncr signal is asserted. |

### K.3.7 Control parameters

The configuration of the PTM-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table K.18 in addition to those specified in the main body of this Recommendation. The values of these control parameters are set communicated during initialization or reconfiguration of an ATU pair. All the values are determined by application requirements and means that are beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

**Table K.18/G.992.3 – PTM-TC parameters**

| Parameter | Definition |
|---|---|
| Minimum net data rate $net\_min_n$ | The minimum net data rate supported by the PTM-TC stream #*n*. The ATU shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to provide $net\_min_n$ data rate |
| Maximum net data rate $net\_max_n$ | The maximum net data rate supported by PTM-TC stream #*n*. During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the net data rate shall not exceed this value. |
| Minimum reserved data rate $net\_reserve_n$ | The minimum reserved data rate supported by PTM-TC stream #*n* that shall always be available upon request by an appropriate reconfiguration procedure. The value of $net\_reserve_n$ shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_reserve_n \leq net\_max_n$. |
| Maximum PMS-TC latency $delay\_max_n$ | The PTM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $delay_p$ is no larger than this control parameter $delay\_max_n$. |
| Maximum PMS-TC BER $error\_max_n$ | The PTM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with bit error ratio not to exceed $error\_max_n$, referenced to the output of the PMS-TC function in the receiver. The modem shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to assure this value. |
| Minimum PMS-TC impulse noise protection $INP\_min_n$ | The ATM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $INP_p$ is not lower than this control parameter $INP\_min_n$. |

If the values of $net\_min_n$, $net\_max_n$, and $net\_reserve_n$ are set to the same value, then the PTM-TC stream is designated as a fixed data rate PTM-TC stream (i.e., RA_mode = MANUAL, see Table 8-6). If $net\_min_n = net\_reserve_n$ and $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n$, then the ATM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate ATM-TC stream. If the value of $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n \neq net\_reserve_{max}$, then the PTM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate ATM-TC stream with reserved data rate allocation.

During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the actual net data rate $net\_act_n$ for stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $net\_act_{p.n}$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$. However, in case the $net\_min_n = net\_max_n$, the $net\_act_n$ may exceed the $net\_max_n$ by up to 4 kbit/s, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity (see Table 7-7). The latency $delay\_act_n$ of transport of stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $delay_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and constrained such that $delay\_act_n \leq delay\_max_n$. The values $net\_act_n$ and $delay\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

The impulse noise protection $INP\_act_n$ of transport of stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $INP_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $INP\_act_n \geq INP\_min_n$. The values $net\_act_n$, $delay\_act_n$ and $INP\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

### K.3.7.1 Valid configurations

The configurations listed in Table K.19 are valid for the PTM-TC function.

**Table K.19/G.992.3 – Valid configuration for PTM-TC function**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 3 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations |
| $delay\_max_n$ | $0 < delay\_max_n \leq$ the largest value of $delay_p$ (see 7.6.1) for supported valid framing configurations. $delay\_max_n = 0$ is a special value indicating no delay bound is being imposed. $delay\_max_n = 1$ is a special value indicating the lowest delay is being imposed (see 7.3.2.2/G.997.1). |
| $error\_max_n$ | $10^{-3}$, $10^{-5}$, $10^{-7}$ |
| $INP\_min_n$ | 0, 1/2, 1, 2 |

### K.3.7.2 Mandatory configurations

If implementing a PTM-TC function, an ATU shall support all combinations of the values of PTM-TC control parameters for PTM-TC function #0 displayed in Tables K.20 and K.21 in the downstream and upstream directions, respectively. The transmitter and receiver shall support mandatory features displayed in the tables.

**Table K.20/G.992.3 – Mandatory downstream configuration for PTM-TC function #0**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 3 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s. |
| $delay\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $error\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $INP\_min_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed. | |

**Table K.21/G.992.3 – Mandatory upstream control configuration for PTM-TC function #0**

| Parameter | Capability |
|---|---|
| $type_n$ | 3 |
| $net\_min_n$ | $net\_min_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbits/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_max_n$ | $net\_max_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $net\_reserve_n$ | $net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s, (see Note). |
| $delay\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $error\_max_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| $INP\_min_n$ | All valid values shall be supported. |
| NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed. | |

### K.3.8 Functionality

The functionality of the PTM-TC shall be as defined in H.4/G.993.1 [13] and shall include encapsulation, packet error monitoring, data rate decoupling, and frame delineation.

### K.3.9 Management plane procedures

#### K.3.9.1 Surveillance primitives

The PTM-TC function surveillance primitives are PTM data path related and defined in H.3.1.4/G.993.1 [13]. Anomalies and defects are under study.

#### K.3.9.2 Indicator bits

The indicator bits TIB#0 and TIB#1 shall be set to a 1 for use in 7.8.2.2.

#### K.3.9.3 Overhead command formats

##### K.3.9.3.1 Inventory command

The octets returned for the overhead inventory command for TPS-TC capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-15 based upon the ATM-TC capabilities octets transmitted during the most recent initialization procedure. The capabilities octets are defined in Table K.22.

##### K.3.9.3.2 Control value read command

The octets returned for the overhead control parameter read command for TPS-TC control parameters capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-17 based upon the control parameters currently in use by the ATM-TC receiver function. The control parameter shall be transmitted in the format displayed in Table K.23.

##### K.3.9.3.3 Management counter read command

The TPS-TC octets in the response to the overhead management counter read command corresponding to the PTM-TC function are under study. The block of counter values corresponding to the PTM-TC function returned in the message depicted in Table 9-20 shall have zero length.

### K.3.10 Initialization procedure

PTM-TC functions shall be configured fully prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD function in a manner that is outside the scope of the Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via G.994.1 a MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using a G.994.1 CL or CLR message.

#### K.3.10.1 G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about each upstream and downstream PTM-TC function supported within an ATU shall be defined in G.994.1 as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via G.994.1 at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once prior to enabling a PTM-TC function between ATU-C and ATU-R but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- Maximum net data rate that can be supported by the PTM-TC function;
- Maximum latency that might be acceptable for the PTM-TC function. The method for setting this value is out of the scope of the Recommendation.

This information for a PTM-TC function shall be represented using a block of G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.22.

**Table K.22/G.992.3 – Format for a PTM-TC CL and CLR message**

| **Spar(2) bit** | **Definition of related Npar(3) octets** |
|---|---|
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #3, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #3, if present. |
| | **Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets** |
| | A parameter block of 8 octets containing:<br>– the maximum supported value of *net_max*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *net_min*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *net_reserve*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *delay_max*;<br>– the maximum supported value of *error_max*; and<br>– the minimum Impulse Noise Protection *INP_min*.<br>The format of the octets is as described in Table K.6. |

### K.3.10.2 G.994.1 mode select message

Each of the control parameters for each upstream and downstream PTM-TC function shall be as defined in ITU-T Rec. G.994.1 as part of the MS message. This information for each enabled PTM-TC function shall be selected using a MS message prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization.

The configuration for a PTM-TC function shall be represented using a block of G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.23.

**Table K.23/G.992.3 – Format for an PTM-TC MS message**

| Spar(2) bit | Definition of related Npar(3) octets |
|---|---|
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Downstream PTM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #3, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #0 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #0, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #1 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #1, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #2 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #2, if present. |
| Upstream PTM TPS-TC #3 | A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #3, if present. |
| | **Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets** |
| | A parameter block of 8 octets containing:<br>– the value of *net_max*;<br>– the value of *net_min*;<br>– the value of *net_reserve*;<br>– the value of *delay_max*;<br>– the value of *error_max*; and<br>– the minimum Impulse Noise Protection *INP_min*.<br>The format of the octets is as described in Table K.6. |

### K.3.11 On-line reconfiguration

The on-line reconfiguration of the PTM-TC generally requires the PTM-TC to communicate peer-to-peer through means outside the scope of this Recommendation. There is no specified mechanism to modify the value of the control parameters of the PTM-TC function. The value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated from the underlying PMS-TC latency path function.

### K.3.11.1 Changes to an existing stream

Reconfiguration of an existing PTM-TC function occurs only at boundaries between octets. The transmit ATM-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters, *net_act*, and *delay_act* to generate octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive. The receive PTM-TC function procedures process octets that follow the signalling of the Frame

Synchflag.indicate primitive using the new values of the control parameters.

### K.3.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the PTM-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

#### K.3.12.1 L0 link state operation

The PTM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in K.3.8 and K.3.9 as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in K.3.7 as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this text shall apply.

##### K.3.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

During a transition from link state L0 to state L2, the value of control parameters are not modified. However, the value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state shall be made as described in K.3.11.1.

##### K.3.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific PTM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

#### K.3.12.2 L2 link state operation

The ATM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in K.3.8 and K.3.9, as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in K.3.7 as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this text shall apply. However, the operating limits imposed by the control parameters *net_min*, *net_reserve*, and *delay_max* shall not apply while in the L2 link state.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C ATM-TC shall monitor its interface for the arrival of primitives that indicate that data rates larger than the reduced data rates must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the procedure described in 9.5.3.4 to return to the link state L0.

##### K.3.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. The values of the control parameters are not modified upon return to the L2 link state; however, during a transition from link state L2 to state L0, the values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state shall be made as described in K.3.11.1.

##### K.3.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

Transitions to link state L3 shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific PTM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

#### K.3.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, no specific procedures are specified for the PTM-TC function.

### K.3.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in K.3.10 as well as in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex.

# Appendix I

## ATM layer to physical layer logical interface

This appendix describes the logical interface between the ATM Layer and the Physical Layer. The Physical Layer (i.e., the ATU) consists of the Cell Specific Transmission Convergence Sublayer ( ATM TPS-TC), the Mux/Sync Control block (ADSL framing and FEC in the PMS-TC) and the other physical layer functions (modulation in the PMD), as defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8 respectively, and shown in Figure 5-1.

The ATM layer to Physical Layer interface (named V-C at the ATU-C and named T-R at the ATU-R) are shown in Figure I.1. TxRef* is optional at ATU-C, RxRef* is optional at ATU-R.

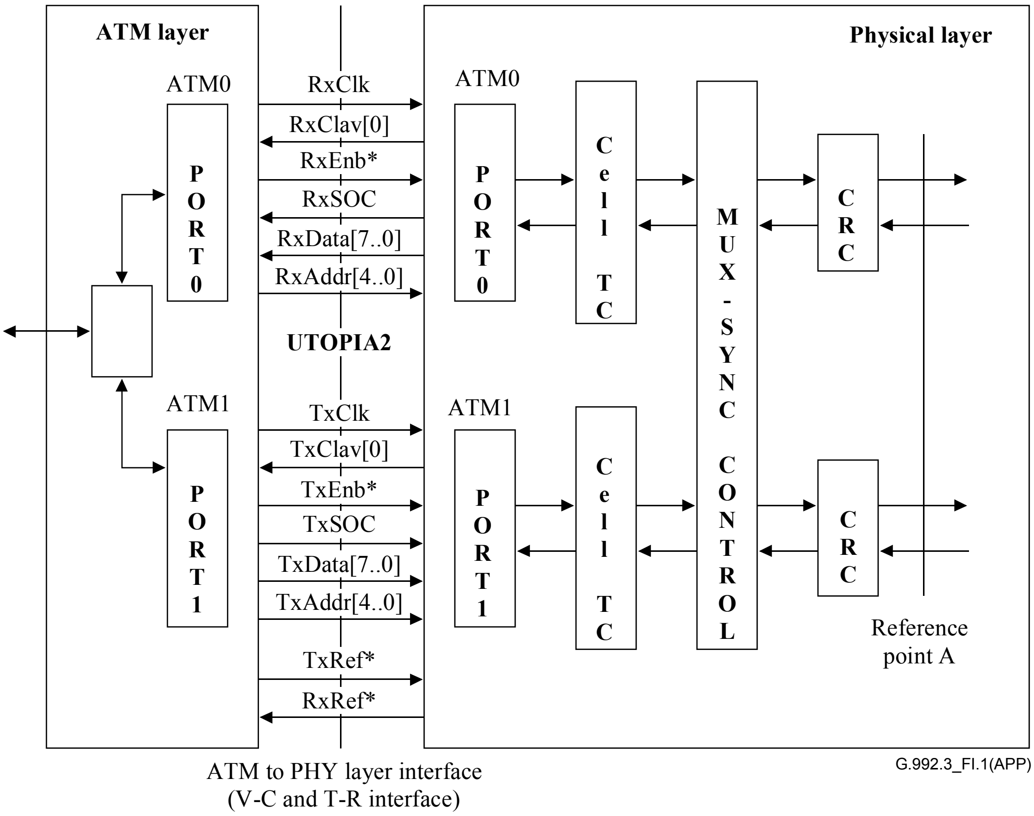



**Figure I.1/G.992.3 – ATM to physical layer logical interface at ATU-C and ATU-R**

The ATM Layer performs cell multiplexing from and demultiplexing to the appropriate physical port (i.e., latency path – fast or interleaved) based on the Virtual Path Identifier (VPI) and Virtual Connection Identifier (VCI), both contained in the ATM cell header. Configuration of the cell demultiplexing process is done by ATM Layer management.

A Cell Specific Transmission Convergence sublayer (ATM TPS-TC) is provided for each latency path separately. Cell TC functionalities are specified in 7.2.3.

The logical input and output interfaces at the V-C reference point for ATM transport is based on the UTOPIA Level 2 interface with cell level handshake. The logical interface is given in Table I.1 and Table I.2 and shown in Figure I.1. When a flow control flag is activated by the ATU-C (i.e., the ATU-C wants to transmit or receive a cell), the ATM layer initiates a cell Tx or cell Rx cycle (53 octet transfer). The ATU-x should support transfer of a complete cell within 53 consecutive clock cycles. The UTOPIA Tx and Rx clocks are mastered from the ATM layer. The same logical input and output interfaces based on the UTOPIA Level 2 interface can be used at the T-R reference point in the ATU-R.

**Table I.1/G.992.3 – UTOPIA level 2 ATM interface signals for Tx**

| Signal name | Direction | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Transmit Interface** | | |
| TxClk | ATM to PHY | Timing signal for transfer |
| TxClav[0] | PHY to ATM | Asserted to indicate that the PHY Layer has buffer space available to receive a cell from the ATM Layer (de-asserted 4 cycles before the end of the cell transfer) |
| TxEnb* | ATM to PHY | Asserted to indicate that the PHY Layer must sample and accept data during the current clock cycle |
| TxSOC | ATM to PHY | Identifies the cell boundary on TxData |
| TxData[7..0] | ATM to PHY | ATM Cell Data transfer (8-bit mode) |
| TxAddr[4..0] | ATM to PHY | PHY device address to select the device that will be active or polled for TxClav status |
| TxRef* | ATM to PHY | Network Timing Reference (8 kHz timing signal) (only at V-C interface) |

**Table I.2/G.992.3 – UTOPIA level 2 ATM interface signals for Rx**

| Signal name | Direction | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Receive Interface** | | |
| RxClk | ATM to PHY | Timing signal for transfer |
| RxClav[0] | PHY to ATM | Asserted to indicate to the ATM Layer that the PHY Layer has a cell ready for transfer to the ATM Layer (de-asserted at the end of the cell transfer) |
| RxEnb* | ATM to PHY | Asserted to indicate that the ATM Layer will sample and accept data during the next clock cycle |
| RxSOC | PHY to ATM | Identifies the cell boundary on RxData |
| RxData[7..0] | PHY to ATM | ATM Cell Data transfer (8-bit mode) |
| RxAddr[4..0] | ATM to PHY | PHY device address to select the device that will be active or polled for RxClav status |
| RxRef* | PHY to ATM | Network Timing Reference (8 kHz timing signal) (only at T-R interface) |

More details on the UTOPIA Level 2 interface can be found in [B5].

# Appendix II

## Compatibility with other customer premises equipment

G.992.3 ATU-R transceivers may share the CPE wiring plant with other equipment, e.g., networking devices, over the POTS splitter.

Some networking devices can operate above 4 MHz on customer premises phone wiring. To prevent signals from such networking devices from aliasing into the G.992.3 frequency band, the inclusion of an adequate downstream receiver anti-aliasing filter in the G.992.3 ATU-R is recommended, collocated with the ATU-R shown in Figures 5-4 and 5-5. The filter may take the form of an external in-line filter, may be integrated into the G.992.3 ATU-R, or may be integrated in the POTS splitter as specified in Annex E.

Home networking devices may coexist with voice terminals and non-voice terminals on the TELE/POTS port side (the port in Figures 5-4 and 5-5 that attaches to the wire leading to the telephone set or voiceband modem) of the POTS splitter used in the G.992.3 application to isolate the customer premises wiring from the ADSL signal. It is desirable that the remote POTS splitter be compatible with other customer premises wiring devices (e.g., the TELE/POTS port impedance above 4 MHz should be considered).

# Appendix III

## The impact of primary protection devices on line balance

### III.1 Scope

This appendix is to help guide operators in choosing appropriate protection devices for lines deploying G.992.3. It does not address the intended protection characteristics of these devices, only the potential unintended effects on line impedance and line balance. A significant change in impedance will reduce the received signal. Imbalance can impair performance on the imbalanced line by increasing the coupled crosstalk and RFI ingress. It can also impair performance on other pairs in the cable by increasing the cross talk, and cause interference into devices outside the cable by causing RFI egress. Each of these issues is discussed.

### III.2 Background

In many jurisdictions, primary protection devices are required to limit the chance of fire or a shock to personnel. A secondary purpose of these protection devices is to reduce the probability of equipment damage, through over-voltage or over-current, when exposed to foreign potentials as can be caused by lightning, power line contacts, power line induction, or ground potential rise. Figure III.1 shows a typical arrangement of protection devices. It should be noted that not all protection components will be required in all jurisdictions, and different arrangements are possible.

In many jurisdictions, there is a required first level of protection at the building entry. This is usually in the Network Interface Device (NID) at the subscriber premises and at the Main Distribution Frame (MDF) in the Central Office. This first level of protection is intended to protect against personal and property damage but may be followed by additional protection devices to fully protect against equipment damage. When the protector is legally required and is located at the customer premises location, it is referred to as the Primary Protection device. When it is located in the NID it is also referred to as the station protector.

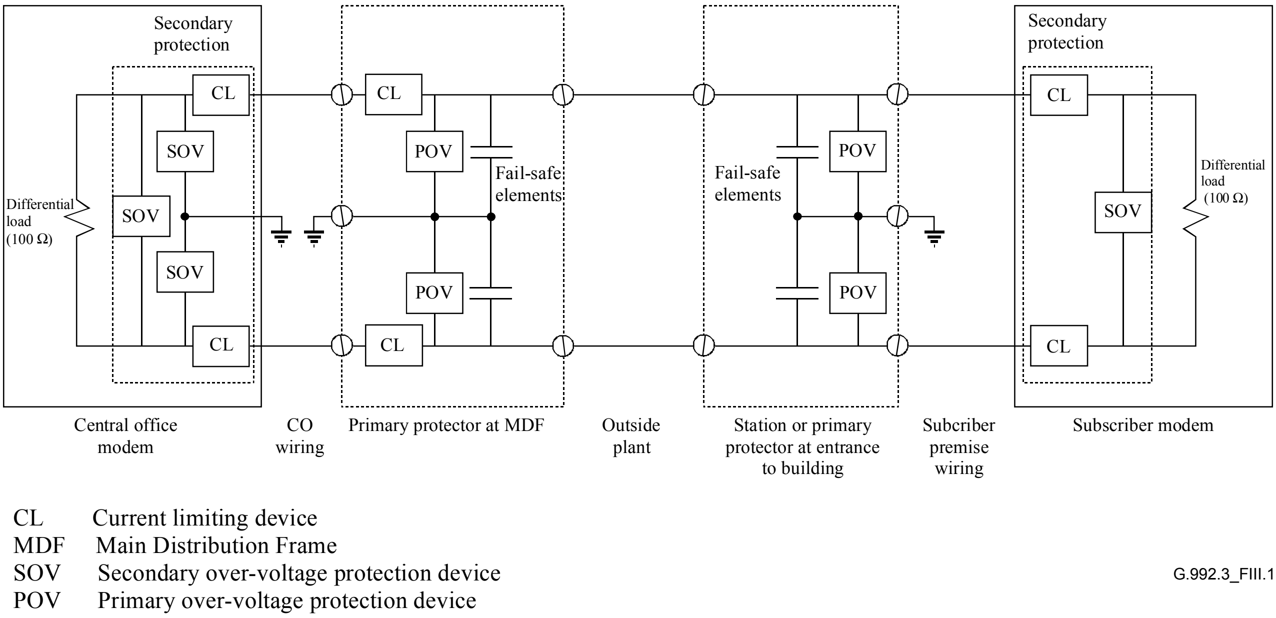



**Figure III.1/G.992.3 – Typical arrangement of protection devices**

The effect of the protection device on line balance is important in all levels of protection devices. However, this discussion focuses on the building entry devices as they are usually specified by the operator. Additional protection devices found within modems will be covered by the balance requirements of the modem.

Primary protection devices may be fused or fuseless; however, in practice there is a strong preference for fuseless protectors for safety reasons. Fuseless over-voltage protection devices include Carbon block, two or three Element Gas Tubes, Solid State silicon avalanche or Metal Oxide Varistor (MOV) devices and combinations of device types. They are deployed between tip and ground and ring and ground as shown in Figure III.1. Typically, a fail-safe mechanism is used in parallel to the device. Gas tube devices often also have a parallel air gap as additional fail-safe mechanism. Optionally, a current limiting component such as a resistor, PTC or fuse is placed in series between the primary protector and secondary protector to prevent the secondary protector from operating first thereby drawing unacceptable levels of current into the building.

Secondary protection devices, when present, are placed between the primary devices and the terminal equipment. The same elements are used but are generally more sensitive. A current limiting component such as a resistor, PTC or fuse is placed in series between the primary protector and secondary protector to prevent the secondary protector from operating first, thereby drawing unacceptable levels of current into the building.

The over-voltage protection elements differ in their cost and protection characteristics (speed of action, ability to self-restore, and operating voltage), and operator preferences have varied over time and region. The characteristics relevant to xDSL performance are the impedance they present at the frequencies used by the xDSL service and whether they present a different impedance from tip and from ring to ground under normal operating conditions. In the case of services over POTS, normal operating conditions in North America include up to –52 V applied to Ring, with Tip at 0V.

Solid State Over Voltage Protection devices (SSOVP) incorporate with back-to-back silicon avalanche diodes. Thus, the silicon avalanche diodes are always reverse biased when either polarity of voltage is applied. Silicon avalanche diodes capacitance vary with reverse or forward bias. With a hard reverse bias, such as would occur to the device from Ring to ground in an on-hook condition, a reduction in capacitance of 1/2 to 1/3 of the unbiased capacitance is possible. Gas and Carbon block and Metal Oxide Varistor (MOV) devices do not exhibit large changes in capacitance. (MOV

devices are technically a solid state device but do not appear to be sold under the name SSOVP by the industry.) Hybrid devices typically combine a gas tube protection device with a MOV device to get the desirable characteristics of each. There is, however, nothing that would prevent the combination of Gas tubes with Silicon diodes from being referred to as a hybrid device.

### III.3 Recommended maximum capacitance of over-voltage protectors

Solid state based devices for telephony typically have capacitance in the 60 to 200 pF range with 0 DC bias, and Gas Tube devices in the 2-30 pF range. This capacitance is significant as it shunts the differential impedance of the line.

To maintain a minimum of 1000 Ω in parallel with the differential (nominally 100 Ω load requires the capacitance be less than the value shown in the Table III.1). Note that two devices appear in series from tip to ring, thus a single device must present a minimum of 500 Ω.

**Table III.1/G.992.3 – Maximum capacitance to ground to maintain 500 Ω at top frequency of xDSL service**

| ITU-T Recommendation | Top frequency of Recommendation | Max. capacitance (pF) |
|---|---|---|
| G.991.2 | 385 kHz | 826 |
| G.992.2 | 552 kHz | 575 |
| G.992.1 | 1.024 MHz | 310 |
| G.993.1 and G.989.1 | 10 MHz | 31 |

In North America, it is unlikely that existing devices will exceed 200 pF as this is the maximum capacitance allowed Tip to Ground, Ring to Ground, or Tip to Ring by the regional specification on primary protectors (see III.5). Thus, for G.991.2, G.992.1, G.992.2, G.992.3 and G.992.4, this parameter is not a significant factor. For G.993.1, and G.989.1 this requirement on impedance would tend to limit the protection choices to gas tube, or carbon block. A lower impedance of 250 Ω or 62 pF would also allow Hybrid devices using MOV elements. Given the widely varying line impedance at these frequencies, the lowering of the differential impedance of the line from approximately 100 Ω to approximately 83 Ω that would occur with this additional capacitance may be acceptable.

### III.4 Capacitance matching requirements of over-voltage protectors

Line balance is important to xDSL services as it determines the level of cross talk within a cable, and the ingress and egress from the cable. The amount of signal transferred between two pairs due to imbalance is a function of the product of the imbalance of the interfering pair and that of the victim pair. Thus, if each had 40-dB balance, the cross talk would be down around 80 dB from the differential level on the interfering pair.

Data from cable measurements at 80 kHz of NEXT cross talk in PIC can be used to generate Table III.2. From these results, we can see that at 40 dB balance no significant change will occur to the performance predictions based on 1% worst coupling in the frequencies from 552 kHz to 10 MHz. However, it would have a small impact on the 50% cross talk levels in a sparsely filled cable. Thus, even 40-dB balance for frequencies above 500 kHz will not invalidate cross talk predictions.

**Table III.2/G.992.3 – Data of NEXT cross talk in PIC cables measured at 80 kHz and extended to higher frequencies**

| Frequency | 1% cross talker (dB) | 10% cross talker (dB) | 50% cross talker (dB) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 80 kHz | 69.7 | 78.9 | 92.7 |
| 552 kHz | 57.2 | 66.4 | 80.2 |
| 1.0 MHz | 53.1 | 62.3 | 76.1 |
| 10 MHz | 38.3 | 47.5 | 61.2 |

The second concern of ingress and egress from the cable is also directly dependent on cable balance. Table III.3 shows average cable balance from a study in Germany. The data correspond roughly to measurements taken in North America.

**Table III.3/G.992.3 – Data of average cable balance based on measurements taken in Germany**

| Frequency (MHz) | Average LCL balance of cables (dB) |
|---|---|
| 0.2-0.5 | 57.9 |
| 0.5-1.0 | 54.6 |
| 1.0-2.0 | 50.7 |
| 2.0-5.0 | 47.6 |
| 5.0-10 | 44.1 |

Where possible the line balance of the protection device should meet or exceed the typical balance of the cable or ingress and egress issues will be increased. The precise values required to meet egress requirements will vary with the nature of the service being interfered with, and the regulatory definition of "interference".

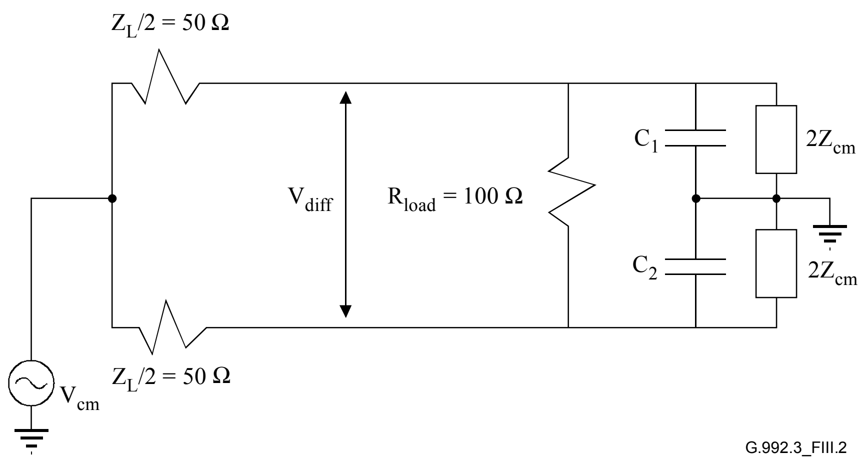



**Figure III.2/G.992.3 – Schematic used to determine line balance due to mismatched capacitance in protective devices**

Figure III.2 shows a schematic of the line driven in common mode and terminated in an xDSL modem. The differential impedance of the line is shown as a simplified 100 Ω. The capacitors, $C_1$ and $C_2$, represent the capacitance to ground of the protective devices. The common mode impedance to ground could be defined either by the cable itself or the modem terminating the line.

The common mode impedance of the cable can be highly variable as it depends on the position of the pair with respect to ground. The full equation for balance given the above circuit is:

$$LineBalance\,(dB) = 20\times\log_{10}\left(\frac{\frac{2}{Z_L}\left[j\omega C_2 - j\omega C_1\right]}{\left(j\omega C_1 + \frac{1}{2Z_{cm}} + \frac{2}{Z_L}\right)\left(j\omega C_2 + \frac{1}{2Z_{cm}} + \frac{2}{Z_L}\right) + \frac{1}{R_L}\left(j\omega C_1 + j\omega C_2 + \frac{1}{Z_{cm}} + \frac{4}{Z_L}\right)}\right)$$

When $Z_L = R_L$ and $Z_{cm}$, $1/j\omega C_1$, $1/j\omega C_2 >> R_L$, then, the formula simplifies to:

$$LineBalance\,(dB) = 20\times\log_{10}\left(50\times\pi\times\left(C_2 - C_1\right)\times f\right) = 20\times\log_{10}\left(50\times\Delta C\times\pi\times f\right)$$

With $Z_L = R_L = 100\ \Omega$, reducing $Z_{cm}$ from infinite to 200 Ω will improve the balances in Table III.4 by approximately 1.5 dB.

**Table III.4/G.992.3 – Required capacitance matching with $Z_{cm}$ = 10 kΩ to achieve balances from 40 to 60 dB at the top frequency of several xDSL services**

| ITU-T Recommendation | Top frequency of Recommendation | Max. ΔC between tip and ground, and ring and ground to maintain stated Balance | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 40 dB Balance (pF) | 45 dB Balance (pF) | 50 dB Balance (pF) | 55 dB Balance (pF) | 60 dB Balance (pF) |
| G.991.2 | 385 kHz | 165 | 92 | 52 | 29 | 16 |
| G.992.2<br>G.992.4 | 552 kHz | 115 | 64 | 36 | 20 | 11 |
| G.992.1<br>G.992.3 | 1.104 MHz | 57 | 32 | 18 | 10 | 5 |
| G.989.1 | 10 MHz | 6.3 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 1.1 | 0.6 |
| G.993.1 | 12 MHz | 5.3 | 2.9 | 1.6 | 0.9 | 0.5 |

The ΔC must be maintained under all the bias conditions the protection devices will be placed. Thus, if POTS service is on the same line as the xDSL service the ΔC must be maintained when one device has –52 bias (North American numbers) and the other has zero bias applied. If no POTS service will ever be present, consideration must be made for the inherent impedance match without bias of the two devices within the protector to each other, the peak signal swing, and any sealing currents that may be applied to keep the splices clean.

### III.5 References

The regional specification on primary protectors applicable in North-America is:

GR-974-CORE Issue 2, *Generic Requirements for Telecommunications Line Protector Units (TLPUs)*, December 1999.

The ITU-T K-series Recommendations contain requirements for resistibility of telecommunication equipment against electro-magnetic effects and characteristics of protection components.

Telecommunication equipment is required to have an inherent resistibility so that it can be installed without additional protection components when the risk for overvoltages or overcurrents is deemed sufficiently low by the operator. When there is deemed to be a significant risk for electro-magnetic threats that exceed the inherent resistibility of the equipment, additional protection components are installed on the telecommunication and/or power lines. These components are called "primary

protection" and they are installed by the operator. The resistibility Recommendations contain tests to insure the coordination between primary protection and the inherent protection of the equipment. ITU-T Rec. K.46 provides guidance for the operators on the decision to install primary protection.

Resistibility Recommendations:

- K.44 (2/2000) defines the different resistibility tests.
- K.20 (2/2000) specifies the applicable tests and acceptance criteria for equipment installed in the central office, e.g., Access Node.
- K.21 (10/2000) specifies the applicable tests and acceptance criteria for equipment installed on the customer premises, e.g., ADSL modem.
- K.45 (2/2000) specifies the applicable tests and acceptance criteria for equipment installed in the outside plant, e.g., Access Node installed in a cabinet.

Recommendations on protective components:

- K.36 (5/1996) provides guidance on the selection of protective components.
- K.12 (2/2000) specifies the characteristics of different types of gas discharge tubes that can be installed in telecommunication networks.

  Characteristics related to the transmission capabilities of the line:

  – Insulation resistance higher than 1000 MΩ initially, higher than 100 MΩ after the life tests;

  – Capacitance less than 20 pF between terminals. This characteristic is not tested after the life tests.
- K.28 (3/1993) specifies the characteristics of semi-conductor arrestor assemblies.

  Characteristics related to the transmission capabilities of the line:

  – Insulation resistance 165 KΩ to 100 MΩ, depending on the applied DC voltage;

  – Capacitance less than 200 pF between any 2 terminals. The capacitance measurement is not specified with a DC bias.
- K.30 (3/1993) defines characteristics of positive temperature coefficient (PTC) thermistors used for overcurrent protection, and provides test methods. It does not specify the values of the different parameters as these may be very different depending on the application.

# Appendix IV

# Bibliography

[B1] ITU-T Recommendation G.995.1 (2001), *Overview of digital subscriber line (DSL) Recommendations*.

[B2] ITU-T Recommendation O.41 (1994), *Psophometer for use on telephone-type circuits*.

[B3] ITU-T Recommendation V.11 (1996), *Electrical characteristics for balanced double-current interchange circuits operating at data signalling rates up to 10 Mbit/s*.

[B4] Technical Report No. 28 (1994), *A Technical Report on High-bit rate Digital Subscriber Lines*, Committee T1-Telecommunications.

[B5] ATM Forum (June 1995), Specification af.phy-0039.000, *Utopia Level 2: Version 1.0*.

[B6] ANSI/EIA/TIA-571 (1991), *Environmental considerations for telephone terminals*.

[B7] ANSI T1.101 (1994), *Synchronization Interface Standards for Digital Networks,* Committee T1-Telecommunications, 1997.

[B8] ANSI T1.413 (1995), *Network and Customer Installation Interfaces – Asymmetrical Digital Subscriber Line (ADSL) Metallic Interface*.

[B9] ANSI T1.601 (1993), *Telecommunications – Interface between carriers and customer installations – Analogue voice-grade switched access lines using loop-start and ground-start signalling*.

[B10] ANSI T1.421 (2002), *In-Line Filter for Use with Voiceband Terminal Equipment Operating on the Same Wire Pair with High Frequency (up to 12 MHz) Devices*.

[B11] ANSI T1.417 (2001), *Spectrum Management For Loop Transmission Systems*.

[B12] IEEE Standard 455 (1985), *Test procedures for measuring longitudinal balance of telephone equipment operating in the voiceband*.

[B13] ITU-T Recommendation K.20 (2000), *Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in the telecommunications centre to overvoltages and overcurrents*.

[B14] ITU-T Recommendation K.21 (2000), *Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in customer premises to overvoltages and overcurrents*.

[B15] Underwriter Laboratories, Inc. UL 60950, Third Edition, *Standard for Safety of Information Technology Equipment*.

[B16] CENELEC EN 60950-1 (2001), *Information technology equipment – Safety – Part 1: General Requirements.*

[B17] ATM Forum (March 1999), Specification af.phy-0086.001, *Inverse Multiplexing for ATM (IMA), Version 1.1*.

[B18] ITU-T Recommendation G.712 (2001), *Transmission performance characteristics of pulse code modulation channels*.

[B19] ITU-T Recommendation Q.552 (2001), *Transmission characteristics at 2-wire analogue interfaces of digital exchanges*.

[B20] ITU-T Recommendation G.121 (1993), *Loudness ratings (LRs) of national systems*.

## SERIES OF ITU-T RECOMMENDATIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| Series A | Organization of the work of ITU-T |
| Series B | Means of expression: definitions, symbols, classification |
| Series C | General telecommunication statistics |
| Series D | General tariff principles |
| Series E | Overall network operation, telephone service, service operation and human factors |
| Series F | Non-telephone telecommunication services |
| **Series G** | **Transmission systems and media, digital systems and networks** |
| Series H | Audiovisual and multimedia systems |
| Series I | Integrated services digital network |
| Series J | Cable networks and transmission of television, sound programme and other multimedia signals |
| Series K | Protection against interference |
| Series L | Construction, installation and protection of cables and other elements of outside plant |
| Series M | TMN and network maintenance: international transmission systems, telephone circuits, telegraphy, facsimile and leased circuits |
| Series N | Maintenance: international sound programme and television transmission circuits |
| Series O | Specifications of measuring equipment |
| Series P | Telephone transmission quality, telephone installations, local line networks |
| Series Q | Switching and signalling |
| Series R | Telegraph transmission |
| Series S | Telegraph services terminal equipment |
| Series T | Terminals for telematic services |
| Series U | Telegraph switching |
| Series V | Data communication over the telephone network |
| Series X | Data networks and open system communications |
| Series Y | Global information infrastructure and Internet protocol aspects |
| Series Z | Languages and general software aspects for telecommunication systems |

Printed in Switzerland
Geneva, 2003